Conservation of this volume was made possible through the generous support of
PETER WARRIAN
and the Friends of the Library

PIMS

PONTIFICAL INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2011 with funding from
University of Toronto

http://www.archive.org/details/radulfidedicetod02dice

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

38086.

THE INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES
NOV 13 1958
LIBRARY
20702

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

RADULFI DE DICETO DECANI LUNDONIENSIS OPERA HISTORICA.

THE

HISTORICAL WORKS

OF

MASTER RALPH DE DICETO,

DEAN OF LONDON.

EDITED FROM THE ORIGINAL MANUSCRIPTS

BY

WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., M.R.I.A.,

REGIUS PROFESSOR OF MODERN HISTORY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD,
FELLOW OF ORIEL COLLEGE AND RECTOR OF CHOLDERTON;
SOMETIME LIBRARIAN TO THE ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY AND KEEPER OF THE MSS AT LAMBETH.

VOL. II.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMAN & Co., PATERNOSTER ROW; TRÜBNER & Co., LUDGATE HILL
ALSO BY PARKER & Co., OXFORD;
MACMILLAN & Co., CAMBRIDGE;
A. & C. BLACK, EDINBURGH; AND A. THOM, DUBLIN.

1876.

DA
25
.B8
v.68

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

	Page
PREFACE - - - - - -	vii
APPENDIX TO THE PREFACE:	
I. COLLATION OF MS. C. C. C. C. 76 - -	lxi
II. INSTITUTION OF R. DE VERNEY TO THE CHURCH OF AYNHO, VACANT BY THE RESIGNATION OF RALPH DE DICETO -	lxviii
III. STATUTE OF RESIDENCE MADE BY RALPH DE DICETO, DEAN, AND THE CANONS OF S. PAUL'S IN 1192 - - -	lxix
IV. CONFIRMATION OF RALPH DE DICETO'S GIFT OF HIS HOUSE TO THE DEANERY OF S. PAUL'S - - - -	lxxiii
V. POETICAL EXTRACTS WRITTEN ON THE SPARE LEAVES OF THE LAMBETH MS. -	lxxiv
VI. LETTER OF RICHARD I. TO ARCHBISHOP HUBERT ON AN INQUEST INTO THE FUNDS RAISED FOR THE RANSOM - -	lxxix
VII. LETTER OF RICHARD I. TO ARCHBISHOP HUBERT ON TOURNAMENTS - -	lxxx
VIII. MISCELLANEOUS NOTES FROM THE LAMBETH MS. - - - - -	lxxxii
YMAGINES HISTORIARUM - - - -	3
OPUSCULA - - - - - -	177
GLOSSARY - - - - - -	289
INDEX - - - - - -	291

PREFACE.

PREFACE.

In the Preface to the First Volume of this work I have attempted to collect and arrange such particulars as have been preserved of the life and career of the author, and to give some account of the existing manuscripts on which the present edition is based. Such further remarks as the republication of so important a book seems to demand may be arranged under three heads. First, it is desirable to ascertain, if possible, the time at which Ralph de Diceto began to record contemporaneous memoranda, and so to determine the date or dates at which his history was undertaken. Secondly, the literary history of the work before us must be supplemented with a short inquiry into the sources of information to which the author was indebted, whether those sources were found in earlier historical compilations or were resorted to at first hand by Ralph as a *bonâ fide* compiler; we should know to what extent he owed his information upon contemporary events to the good offices of the ministers with whom he was connected by the ties of personal friendship, or to the memoranda of other writers on the same period. This will enable us, in the third place, to attempt an estimate of the value of the particular contributions which he makes to the varied history of the time; the extent to which the book before us was circulated in the middle ages, its reputation as a work of authority and as a treasury upon which later writers drew. It must be understood that this review applies mainly and primarily

Plan of the following Preface.

Date at which the work was composed.

Sources of information.

Historical value of the work.

to the Abbreviationes and Imagines, and to the Opuscula only in so far as they contribute towards the elucidation of the history of those books.

The book drawn up late in the author's life.

I. It is obvious at a glance that the historical work before us belongs to the later half of its author's career. The latter portions of the Abbreviationes and the earlier years of the Imagines alike afford proof, by the scantiness of their details, that if they are to be called original at all, they were drawn up long after the freshness of first impressions had departed. A considerable part of these entries is, however, not entitled to the credit of originality; the Chronicle of Robert de Monte and the letters of Gilbert Foliot supply nearly all the information that is given until the close of the Becket struggle, and certain evidence of originality is not forthcoming for some years after that point. As we do not possess the original draft of the entire work, we are obliged to argue backwards from an ascertained point, at which we know our author to have been employed in the composition of his book in that form in which it has come down to us. Such a date we find certainly in the year 1196, when William Longchamp transmitted to

Limiting dates.

Ralph de Diceto the letter addressed by the Old Man of the Mountain to the duke of Austria, that he might notice it in his chronicles.[1] This proves that the author was then well known to be constructing a contemporary history. An earlier date, found in the list of historical writers at the beginning of the Abbreviationes, enables us to fix the point of time at which the book took its present shape: "Ralph, the dean of the church of Lon-" don, began the book which is called Ymagines His-" toriarum at the year 1147, and continued it down to " the year 1190."[2] In the year 1190, then, the work had so far advanced as to be capable of being considered

[1] Vol. ii. p. 128; "ut de illo " agatis in cronicis vestris."

[2] Vol. i. p. 23.

a completed chronicle, and that year may be accepted as a date at which the two earlier MSS. were in the process of transcription, at least up to the record of the events of the year. The Lambeth MS. (A.) furnishes a still earlier date. The obscure expression found in the Prologue (vol. i. p. 18), "annum a tempore gratiæ "MCLXXXVIII. tibi metam constitue," seems to show that the work of transcription had begun in the case of that particular manuscript in 1188, whilst the fact that MS. B. altered MCLXXXVIII. into MCXC.[1] would show that the copying of the second best manuscript began two years later. We may then accept the year 1188 as the date at which the author had so far completed his design as to have begun to throw his own personal reminiscences into a consecutive form, continuing and amplifying the chronicle derived from his predecessors. Other slight indications would be found, if it were necessary to press them, to lead to the same conclusion. In particular, the general introduction, which describes the contents of the work (vol. i. p. 34), contains no reference to any event later than the close of the struggle between Henry II. and his sons, an era which cannot be placed earlier than 1183, when the younger king died, and which could scarcely be referred to the year 1189, in which Henry himself died, without some more distinct mention of the facts of his death and of Richard's succession.[2] Again, the title of the several divisions of the book, more than once repeated, always describes Ralph de Diceto as dean at the time of writing;[3] whilst the letters to

The two earliest MSS. were in course of transcription in 1190.

Probably begun as early as 1188.

Latest event noted in the Introduction.

Written by Ralph whilst he was dean.

[1] Vol. i. p. 18, note. The change of hand in the annals of the year 1187, noted vol. i. p. 47, may also be interpreted as showing that that portion of the work was being transcribed at a date not far removed from the events recorded. It is not a little significant, however, that this break in the penmanship takes place at the date of bishop Foliot's death, and that MS. B. closes just before the death of Richard Fitzneal; vol. ii. pp. 159, 163.

[2] "Quo fine quieverit controversia diutius inter regem Henricum "secundum et filios suos habita;" vol. i. p. 34.

[3] Vol. i. pp. 263, 267, 291.

and from the archbishop of Lyons, which appear in the first page of both manuscripts, could not have been written before the year 1181, in which John of Poictiers was translated to Lyons.[1] The date 1188, however, occurring in the Prologue, renders it unnecessary to adduce these, and proves that however much earlier our author began to prepare his materials, he had in that year carried them sufficiently forward to be written out in the careful hand and with the elegant marginal marks which characterize the existing manuscripts. From that year onwards, the annals must be regarded as unquestionably contemporaneous.

The annals must be contemporaneous from 1188 onwards.

But it does not follow that the same contemporaneous character does not belong to the history of several preceding years, although in reference to those preceding years the extant MSS. must not be regarded as a first draft. It is necessary therefore to approximate, as nearly as the internal evidence of the work admits, to an initial limit. And here we must not be misled by our author's assertion that it is in 1147 that he begins the Imagines Historiarum:[2] that date marks the beginning of the narrative, not the date at which the compilation was begun. To that year Robert de Monte had served as a sufficient guide: from that year the author claims the merit of original authorship. Why the year 1147 is given as the point up to which Robert de Monte wrote is not clear; for not only did he continue his work down to the year 1186, but Ralph himself used it down to the year 1171,[3] and possibly as late as the year 1183.[4] It is clear that Ralph wrote no part of his Imagines so early as 1147; the first piece of original composition in the book, if indeed it is

The Imagines begin in 1147.

[1] Vol. i. p. 5.
[2] Vol. i. p. 23.
[3] Vol. i. p. 346.
[4] Vol. ii. pp. 20, 21. Robert de Monte died June 24, 1186, and seems to have been at work at his chronicle to the last; Hardy, Catalogue of Materials, ii. 443.

original, being the description of Anjou and Aquitaine introduced under the years 1150 and 1151. The very mistakes in the computation of the years 1148 to 1152 which occur in Robert de Monte are likewise reproduced by our author. We are not, however, justified in throwing forward the initial date of the dean's labours to the year at which Robert de Monte finished his work; the occasional coincidences in diction may be explained on a hypothesis that the two writers were in communication with one another, and for some particulars Robert is as likely to have been indebted to Ralph as Ralph to Robert. A comparison, then, of the two works does not much help us, and we have to depend chiefly on the internal evidence of the Imagines. This internal evidence may, for the illustration of this special point, be briefly summed up. The original matter contained in the Abbreviationes begins with the year 1136; it is confined to the domestic affairs of the chapter of S. Paul's and two or three events which took place in France during the years in which I have supposed our author to have been studying at Paris.[1] The exact dates of the ordination of Richard of Belmeis[2] and other local incidents Ralph would most likely find in the records of his cathedral, even if they were not among the family memoranda to which he probably had access; they afford no indication of contemporary notation. The ordination of Richard, however, might be well remembered afterwards as having taken place on the very day of archbishop Theobald's election. Turning to the Imagines, we find that with the exception of the descriptions of Anjou and Aquitaine, the account of the consecrations of Richard of Belmeis, Roger of Pont l'Evêque, Robert bishop of Exeter, and the two bishops who were consecrated just before and after archbishop Theobald's death, our author has, until he reaches the story of Thomas Becket, only one passage which is not

Where does the original matter begin?

Events touching the history of S. Paul's as early as 1136.

[1] Vol. i. Pref. pp. xx., xxxi. | [2] Vol. i. p. 252.

either a direct transcript or a paraphrase of Robert de Monte. That passage is the very curious account of the pacification between Stephen and Henry, which it is not at present possible to ascribe to any known earlier writer, but which very possibly was not the composition of our author.[1] On this I shall remark further on; it is sufficient to observe here that it might have been written at any period of the reign of Henry II. The original matter is thus reduced to the record of episcopal consecrations, at some of which Ralph was no doubt present. But he has not given the exact dates, as he would have done if he had noted them at the time, nor did he take the trouble to ascertain them, as he might have done from the registers which we must suppose the bishops thus early to have kept.

Account of the pacification of 1153.

Little original matter before the year 1162.

We thus come down to the year 1162. From that date to the year 1172 the Imagines almost exclusively follow the fortunes of Becket and the train of events consequent on his death. They are carefully drawn up, so carefully as to form the most convenient summary that we have of the several points and stages of the great dispute; they are very valuable as the work of an intelligent, comparatively impartial eye-witness, such as we know Ralph de Diceto to have been. But they cannot be said materially to increase our knowledge; although impartial, they have none of the vividness of first impressions; and a careful examination of them would show that they contain nothing beyond what a witness with a good memory, and with ample documentary evidence before him, might draw up many years after the events. They are so far original as not to borrow in any ascertainable degree the wording of the martyr's biographers; otherwise they are no more than an abridgment or summary of the case. Looked at more closely, they are not above suspicion of error. In one

Character of the Imagines from 1162 to 1172.

[1] Vol. i. pp. 296, 297.

point, the date of the excommunications of 1166, the writer has not given the true date, preserved by John of Salisbury, but has placed on Ascension Day the event which took place on Whitsunday.[1] The consecration, too, of the bishop of Worcester is misplaced by a whole year.[2] These are oversights which might easily occur to a writer drawing up his annals a few years after the events, but not such as would be likely to occur if the author, who in the former matter was himself both consulted and employed as a negotiator, had been writing at the time. It is certain, moreover, that Ralph, as Foliot's archdeacon, would have all the materials, both at the time and afterwards, ready to his hand. Far the largest part of this division of the Imagines consists of transcripts of letters in the bishop's own collection. When we come to the details of the martyrdom, we find traces of similarity between the language of our author and that of William FitzStephen.[3] These traces may be read two ways; if Ralph used the work of William FitzStephen, he must have written this after the year 1181, for the biographer refers to him personally as being dean of London when he himself was writing Becket's life;[4] if William FitzStephen used the language of Ralph, it is a curious exception to his usual plan, and still more curious that, having been an eye-witness of the great event, he should clothe his description in the words of one who was not. Perhaps the most likely explanation may be that suggested in the note on the passage, that the two writers had talked the matter over together before writing.

Errors in chronology in this part of the work.

It consists largely of copies of documents.

Possible traces of one of Becket's biographers.

From 1162, then, to 1171 every incident recorded in the Imagines may be described as derived from the memorials of Becket and Foliot, or from the annals of Robert de Monte, with one or two significant exceptions. These are the mention of the false prophecy in 1163, that

Exceptions to this statement.

[1] Vol. i. p. 318; cf. vol. i. Pref. p. xliv.

[2] See below, p. xxxiv.

[3] Vol. i. pp. 342 sq.; cf. Fitz-Stephen, S. T. C., i.

[4] S. T. C., i. 225; cf. vol. i. Pref. pp. xlii., xliii.

Matter of the Imagines from 1162 to 1172, which seems to be original.

Henry should never return to England;[1] the dating of the homage of the Scottish and Welsh princes at Woodstock on the 1st of July in the same year;[2] the promotion of John of Canterbury to the see of Poictiers;[3] the condemnation of the heretics in the council of Oxford in 1166;[4] the preparations for revolt made by Ralph of Fougeres,[5] and the collection of money for the succour of Palestine the same year.[6] But every one of these may have been found in letters and memorials which have not been preserved; the collection of the money would certainly be ordered by public letters; the preparations of Ralph of Fougeres are referred to without much reticence in Becket's letters and the story is told at length in Robert de Monte;[7] the condemnation of the heretics at Oxford is the subject of a chapter in William of Newburgh, and was likewise mentioned by Walter Map.[8] The others are points which certainly do not involve the necessity of supposing them to be contemporary memoranda.

The following years have the same general characteristics.

The same general impression results from the reading of the two or three following years. Our author's knowledge of Foliot's journey to Italy was derived from Foliot's letters;[9] so also was the notice of his absolution and rehabilitation.[10] Yet from this point the work begins to wear more than before the look of originality. The dating of the death of the bishop of Winchester in 1171,[11] of the council of Windsor in September 1172,[12] and of the death of the bishop of Norwich in 1173,[13] many of the incidents and dates of the war of

[1] Vol. i. p. 308.

[2] Vol. i. p. 311; R. de Monte mentions the Scottish homage without a date.

[3] Vol. i. p. 311.

[4] Vol. i. p. 318.

[5] Vol. i. p. 329.

[6] Vol. i. p. 329; even here, however, Robert de Monte gives nearly the same information in different words.

[7] See especially S. T. C., iv. 167, 186, 196.

[8] W. Newb. lib. ii. c. 13. W. Map, de Nugis Curialium, dist. i. c. 30.

[9] Vol. i. pp. 335, 337: see the reference to his letter to Master David, in the preface to the first volume, p. xlvii.

[10] Vol. i. pp. 347, 351; see preface to vol. i. pp. xlvi., xlvii., and the authorities there quoted.

[11] Vol. i. p. 347.

[12] Vol. i. p. 353.

[13] Vol. i. p. 354.

1173 and 1174, are additions to our knowledge of the time derived from other sources. But still two points meet us; the information is always most full where bishop Foliot is most concerned, and there is a certain looking forward to an unhappy end in the fortunes of the younger king. A great deal of the narrative might be supplied by the reading of the "Gesta regis Henrici," which was probably accessible after the year 1177; but it is not necessary to insist upon this, and it is far from accounting for all the details. The long list of judgments which have befallen rebellious sons[1] is more likely to have been drawn up in 1183 than in 1173.

Information possibly derived from Foliot.

It is, however, to this point of the annals that we must, I think, assign the first marks of contemporaneity, although it still appears probable that they were digested into their present form somewhat later. The rebellion of 1173 was a part of the history on which the author bestowed especial pains, and to which he invites special attention in the Prologue. It is even possible that he intended to draw it out as a separate work; it is certain that after narrating it his interest again flags, and he confines himself to documentary or official matters. On the whole I think that the period at which we can certainly describe Ralph as a contemporary annalist must be regarded as beginning after his appointment to the deanery, 1180 or 1181. Roughly it may coincide with the division between the two volumes of the present edition. The happy omens of the marriage of William de Mandeville[2] could scarcely have been thought worth notice after it was known that there was no issue of the marriage; the anticipations of the marriage of the heiress of Châteauroux, which appear in the year 1178,[3] would be out of place if they were inserted after 1184, when she was left a widow; the good wishes on the marriage of Agnes and Alexius[4] could scarcely have

Marks of contemporaneous annotation from 1173 onwards.

Approximate date of the commencement of the work.

[1] Vol. i. pp. 355, 356.
[2] Vol. ii. p. 3.
[3] Vol. i. p. 425.
[4] She was left a widow and forced to marry her husband's murderer in 1183; vol. i. p. 431; ii. p. 12.

Marks of later manipulation.

been written after October 1183. The account of the weather of 1179 looks natural enough.[1] On the other hand the statement made under the year 1132, that Henry the Lion, who was expelled from Germany in that year, spent more than three years in his father-in-law's dominions, could not have been made in its present form before the year 1185.[2] From the year 1183, however, there can be no doubt that the annals were drawn up regularly and contemporaneously. Several of the points here adverted to will require further notice in their bearing on our other questions of discussion.

Sources of our author's information.

II. The second point to be noticed is the extent and nature of the sources of information on which our author has relied for his narrative. The question naturally divides itself into two branches; what were the books which he used in the process of compiling the Abbreviationes? and who or what were the authorities that furnished the details of his more original work, the Imagines?

Ralph de Diceto was a man of learning.

The former question is equivalent to an inquiry into the extent of the author's learning. This it may be at once allowed was very great. Ralph de Diceto was not indeed the equal of John of Salisbury in either the extent of his reading, his readiness in illustration, his originality of thought, his critical power, or his careful exactness. But he stands high in the second class of medieval scholars. He took great pains to make himself acquainted with all the accessible stores of early history. He had a direct knowledge of the Latin poets, of some of the great Latin fathers, and of the civil and canon law; a knowledge which is illustrated, although not abundantly, by quotation. He was familiar with the later Latin writers who, like Cassiodorus and Sidonius Apollinaris, lay somewhat out of the line of ordinary theological and historical reading in his day. He was not very critical in the use of his authorities: his chrono-

[1] Vol. i. p. 436.

[2] Vol. ii. pp. 12, 13.

logy during a great portion of the Abbreviationes is not only confessedly weak,[1] but in some places wantonly careless. In more than one passage, such as the illustration drawn from the history of Jephthah, he does not seem to have taken ordinary pains to understand what he was recording;[2] and, later on, many of his genealogical details require to be tested and supplemented by reference to the original authorities, before they can be regarded as approximately correct. But with these drawbacks, and some of them may be the result of clerical error rather than of actual carelessness, his learning is seen to be great and various.

He was not very critical.

It is not necessary to suppose that, in the list of illustrious writers which he prefixes to the Abbreviationes, Ralph intended to give an account of the sources from which his own work was derived, yet it will be found that a majority of the writers thus enumerated were directly used by him. Forty-seven names are given in the list; of these Jerome appears three times, the work of Justin appears under the name of Trogus Pompeius as well as his own; Josephus, Paul the deacon, and Sigebert of Gemblours likewise appear twice. Of the forty-one thus remaining, Philo and Chrysostom, and the theological works of Justinian, either as being inaccessible through translations or as affording nothing directly useful, may be set aside. Of the rest Ralph certainly used, and freely and familiarly used, the following; Justin's abridgment of Trogus Pompeius,[3] Aulus Gellius,[4] Eutropius through the medium of the Historia Miscella,[5] Jerome,[6] Ruffinus,[7] Augustine de Civitate Dei,[8] Gennadius,[9] Orosius,[10] Cas-

He used a large number of the books mentioned in his catalogue of illustrious writers.

[1] See especially his warnings about the impossibility of exact accuracy in ancient dates, vol. i. pp. 19, 65, 110, 136, 156, &c.

[2] Vol. i. p. 355.

[3] Vol. i. pp. 24, 356, 357 sq.

[4] Vol. i. pp. 37, 38 sq., 64.

[5] Vol. i. pp. 37, 47, 48 sq.

[6] Vol. i. pp. 25, 29, 54, 58, 62, 66, 67, 69.

[7] Vol. i. pp. 57, 71, 71, 76.

[8] Vol. i. pp. 26, 27, 37, 49, 68, 77, 82.

[9] Vol. i. p. 28.

[10] Vol. i. p. 28.

List of writers used by our author.

siodorus,[1] Paul the deacon,[2] Gregory of Tours,[3] Isidore,[4] Bede,[5] the chronicle which he knew as Hamonius Floriacensis,[6] but which is better known as the work of Hugh of Fleury, Marianus Scotus,[7] Ivo of Chartres,[8] Sigebert of Gemblours,[9] Hugh of S. Victor,[10] and Robert de Monte.[11] Josephus,[12] Hegesippus,[13] Ethicus,[14] and Eusebius,[15] perhaps also the Tripartite history,[16] he knew through translations. Tertullian he refers to as an authority, but does not quote.[17] Regino of Prum, and Witikind he seems to quote at second hand.[18] Only ten books thus remain unaccounted for, Valerius Maximus, Julius Africanus, Hilary of Poictiers, Prosper of Aquitaine, Idacius Lemicensis, Jordanes, Victor Tunnutensis, Gildas, Odo of Cluny and Liutprand. But it is not improbable that Prosper, Odo, and Liutprand were really known to him ; Prosper would almost certainly have been employed in adjusting or confusing the chronology, although in a careful preparation of the text I have found nothing that proves this to have been the case. Besides these our author quotes Julius Cæsar,[19] Suetonius,[20] Solinus,[21] Florus,[22] Apuleius,[23] Virgil,[24] Lucan,[25] Martial,[26] Statius,[27] Claudian,[28] the apocryphal correspondence of S. Paul with Seneca,[29] Vegetius,[30] the register of Gregory the

---

[1] Vol. i. pp. 34, 87, 101.
[2] Vol. i. pp. 99, .
[3] Vol. i. pp. 88, 101, 360, 363.
[4] Vol. i. pp. 81, 96, 293.
[5] Vol. i. pp. 30, 66 ; and continuously from p. 85.
[6] Vol. i. pp. 48, 77 sq., 157, 158.
[7] Vol. i. pp. 65, 70, 362, 363.
[8] Vol. i. pp. 32, 33, 297, 305, 413.
[9] Vol. i. pp. 78 sq., and continuously from p. 79 onwards ; p. 208.
[10] Vol. i. pp. 31, 79, 364.
[11] Vol. i. pp. 30, 31, 159, 160 sq., 366.
[12] Vol. i. pp. 61, 359, 360.
[13] Vol. i. pp. 26, .
[14] Vol. i. pp. 41, .
[15] Vol. i. pp. 55, 56 sq.
[16] Vol. i. p. 86.
[17] Vol. i. p. 19.
[18] Vol. i. pp. 360, 361, 363, 364.
[19] Vol. i. pp. 24, 293.
[20] Vol. i. pp. 51, 52.
[21] Vol. i. p. 24.
[22] Vol. i. p. 25.
[23] Vol. i. pp. 46, 47.
[24] Vol. i. pp. 25, 54.
[25] Vol. ii. p. 116.
[26] Vol. i. p. 294.
[27] Vol. i. p. 421.
[28] Vol. ii. pp. 115, 178.
[29] Vol. i. p. 59.
[30] Vol. i. p. 95.

Great,[1] Sidonius Apollinaris,[2] Einhard,[3] Fulbert of Chartres;[4] of writers on British and English history, Geoffrey of Monmouth,[5] William of Malmesbury,[6] the life of S. Osyth,[7] the Historia Eliensis,[8] Florence of Worcester,[9] Henry of Huntingdon,[10] Ailred of Rievaulx,[11] Eadmer,[12] the letters of S. Anselm,[13] and the ancient lists of the bishops; and of foreign writers on more recent history, William of Jumieges,[14] William of Poictiers,[15] and the author of the Gesta Consulum Andegavensium.[16] The notes of the present edition will probably be found to furnish all that is necessary for the purpose of reference to these several books, and incidentally for an analysis of our author's compilation which it is unnecessary now to investigate at any length. Books quoted by our author.

Such a list of references is sufficient to prove the learning and industry of our author. In some instances, perhaps, the citation is at second hand; the quotations from the classic poets all wear the appearance of trite and commonplace usage; and the more obscure of the historians perhaps were only known through the Historia Miscella or Sigebert of Gemblours. But this is not the case with the great works more directly useful for the purpose of history. The plan of the Abbreviationes seems to have been to adopt for the string of the chronology the best and clearest authority; for the præ-Christian history, the lists of names of the patriarchs, judges, kings, and high priests, made out from the Bible, Josephus, A good deal derived from original reading.

---

[1] Vol. i. pp. 101, 102 sq.
[2] Vol. i. pp. 87, 88, 197, 409, 420; ii. 101.
[3] Vol. i. p. 132.
[4] Vol. ii. p. 177.
[5] Vol. i. pp. 66, 80, 91; ii. 202 sq.
[6] Vol. i. pp. 74, 75, 109, 194, &c.
[7] Vol. i. p. 111.
[8] Vol. i. p. 172.
[9] Vol. i. p. 110.
[10] Vol. i. p. 136, &c., &c.
[11] Vol. i. p. 299.
[12] Vol. i. pp. 198, 199, 204, 218, 219.
[13] Vol. i. pp. 228–231, 238.
[14] Vol. i. pp. 138, 140, 142, 143; ii. 243–262.
[15] Vol. ii. pp. 262–265.
[16] Vol. i. pp. 139, 143, 148 sq.; ii. 267 sq.

Our author's plan of abridgment.

Eusebius, and Jerome; from the date where Jerome ends, the chronology of Sigebert of Gemblours and Robert de Monte is followed, down to the close of the Abbreviationes; but the result is not a mere copy or abridgment. When the skeleton of the work was arranged, the author returned to his library, and reading over his favourite books, incorporated long extracts from them in the vacant spaces of his chronological table. It is thus that we find the prologues or abridgments of prologues by Justin, Hegesippus, Augustine, Orosius, Eusebius, Bede, Robert de Monte, Hugh of S. Victor, and Ivo of Chartres, introduced as prefatory to the Abbreviationes. Their appearance in that place is not accidental: the author in his own prologue expresses his intention of inserting them. It is thus that we find the long series of illustrations of Roman manners drawn from Aulus Gellius. The

Extracts from the Noctes Atticæ.

Noctes Atticæ must have been familiarly known to the writer, who not only makes long excerpts at the beginning of the book, but quotes them more than once further on.[1] The curious confusion between Pythagoras and Protagoras which catches the eye in two or three of these excerpts,[2] is not peculiar to Ralph de Diceto. John of Salisbury himself tells the story of Euathlus[3] in connexion with Pythagoras, and adds that it does not affect the point of the story, whether it be referred to the philosopher or, as Quintilian and Aulus Gellius had told it, to the sophist. The mistake would seem to show that Ralph knew both the versions of the story. The great number of excerpts and the exact references prove satisfactorily that he used the Noctes at first hand.

This habit of making illustrative extracts in the course of reading is proved by the poetical excerpts from Sido-

---

[1] For example, vol. i. p. 181.

[2] Vol. i. pp. 37–39.

[3] Polycraticus. lib. v. c. 12: "nec "multum refert ad propositum Py- "thagoras an Protagoras, sicut "Quintiliano placet et Aulo Gellio, "litigaverit; neque enim vis est in "nomine, dum constet rem ambi- "guam sine temeritate diffiniri non "posse."

nius, Hildebert, and Bernard of Chartres which appear on the fly-leaves of the Lambeth MS. and are printed in the appendix to this preface. The practice in its application becomes, however, somewhat confusing; in many places the character of the anecdote inserted seems to indicate that curiosity, rather than edification, may have prompted the selection; and the chronology is sacrificed cruelly. The dates seem to be inserted almost at random; as, for instance, in the story of the famine and plague under Justinian, in the story of Narses, and in the extracts from the letters of Gregory.[1] The plan of work thus indicated explains rather than excuses the weakness of the chronology.

Other illustrative extracts.

There are three sets of extracts in the Abbreviationes which require special notice in connexion with this branch of inquiry, although I am not able to advance more in the way of explanation than is already stated in the notes.

Points requiring special discussion.

The first of these is the series of notices of Byzantine history in the age of Justinian and Justin, and especially in reference to the building of the church of S. Sophia, which appear under the dates A.D. 532, 553, and 566.[2] A very careful examination of both Greek and Latin authors has failed to produce a satisfactory explanation of the source from which they were derived. In this I have not depended on my own power of research only; Dr. Unger, of Goettingen, who has made Byzantine history and the history of Byzantine art a subject of special study, has investigated the point with no better success. The passages present certain points of likeness with places in Agathias and Procopius on which no doubt the veritable history of the matters referred to is based; but they are in close and marked relation with an anonymous Greek tract, "De Antiquitatibus Constantinopolitanis," printed by

The notices of the building of the church of S. Sophia.

---

[1] Vol. i. pp. 97, 99, 101, &c.

[2] Vol. i. pp. 91, 97, 98, 99.

[3] See the reference in vol. i. p. 94, note.

Their relation to the anonymous writer on the Antiquities of Constantinople.

Banduri in the first volume of the "Imperium Orientale." Yet not only is it a question whether the Greek of the tract is as early as the date of Ralph de Diceto, but the correspondence is not so exact as to imply that the dean obtained these passages through a translation from this particular Greek tract. The obscure and involved Latin of Ralph shows, indeed, that they are a translation, but his text contains particulars which are not in the Greek, and omits others which are found there. The only conclusion that can for the present be drawn from these facts is, that the anonymous Greek writer had used earlier materials, which through an otherwise unknown translation had found their way into our author's hands, perhaps in a separate form, more probably as a note in the margin of the often annotated and amplified Historia Miscella.

Stories of the emperor Henry III. and his times.

The second series of extracts which puzzle us will be found under the year 1036.[1] They are a collection of stories introduced with a reference to the emperor Henry III. The stories themselves are well known; most of them appear in the pages of William of Malmesbury, and in language not far removed from that of our author. But there are some facts which seem to point to another source. In the first place the resemblance of language is not so close as it usually is when our author is making a long extract; in the second place they contain one anecdote, that of the ugly priest who sang, "It "is He that hath made us, and not we ourselves,"[2] which is not told by Malmesbury; and in the third place they are introduced with some prefatory words that are on any hypothesis perplexing. "It is both known to the "notaries and reduced to the form of record, in what "points the emperors of old, now at Rome, now at Con- "stantinople, closely attending to the benefit of the "commonwealth, have gained the greatest renown. "Thus the strenuousness of Julius Cæsar, the felicity of

[1] Vol. i. pp. 176–180.

[2] Vol. i. p. 178.

" Augustus, the liberality of Titus, the innocence of " Trajan, the faith of Constantine, the penitence of " Theodosius, the magisterial eminence of Justinian, the " magnanimity of Charles, the facetiousness of Henry, " you may admire and rival, when the world shall " acknowledge you placed on the imperial throne."[1] It is difficult to say what meaning these words could have in their present collocation, unless they are an extract from some such book as the "De Nugis Curialium" of Walter Map, or the Polycraticus of John of Salisbury, drawn up for the use of some one who had the prospect of becoming emperor. A book of this sort, a *Liber Facetiarum*, was written by Gervase of Tilbury for the younger king Henry, son of Henry II. From this lost work perhaps Ralph de Diceto culled the present extracts.[2] Or if we suppose such a book to have been written for the emperor Henry V., it might have been brought to England by the empress Matilda early enough to be used by William of Malmesbury, and by our dean after him. If these suppositions be rejected, I can only suppose that Ralph, having made his extracts from William of Malmesbury, added the recommendation for the reader to imitate these imperial characteristics in a jesting spirit, of which some other passages furnish illustration, and that he added the story of the ugly priest from some other floating store of anecdotes.

The prefatory remark on imperial character.

The third series of extracts is of much greater importance. It comprises the long and broken narrative of the growth of the house of Anjou, which the author marks out in the beginning of his work as the third of five topics to which he has given special attention.[3] The interest of the extracts themselves is not very great. They are an abridgment, in the form of a biographical sketch of the successive counts of Anjou, of

The account of the origin of the house of Anjou.

[1] Vol. i. p. 176.

[2] Leibnitz, Scriptores Rer. Brunsv., i. 883.

[3] " Qualiter Andegavia proficiens " et succrescens fines suos dilata- " verit in immensum ;" vol. i. p. 34.

They are extracts from the "Gesta Consulum Andegavensium."

the work long known as the "Gesta Consulum Andegavensium," which is now believed to be the composition of a certain Abbot Odo of Marmoutier, who wrote before the middle of the twelfth century.[1] The "Gesta Consulum" were edited by D'Achery in his Spicilegium, and may be found in the third volume of the second edition. Large extracts are likewise reprinted in "The Recueil des Historiens de France,"[2] and the whole work reappears in the Chroniques d'Anjou, published in 1856 by the Historical Society of France, under the editorship of MM. Marchegay and Salmon. The precise question now raised is this: did Ralph de Diceto simply abridge the Gesta Consulum, or did he transcribe an abridgment made by some other writer? The abridgment does not so closely follow the wording of the original as the "Gesta Normannorum," now published among the Opuscula,[3] follows the language of William of Jumieges; and now and then a particular is noted that seems to be drawn from some other source. But notwithstanding these slight indications, Ralph might have retained the undisputed claim to the abridgment had it not been for the existence of a MS. tract in the library of the Abbey of S. Victor, at Paris,[4] bearing the

The Victorine MS.

[1] According to the preface of M. E. Mabille, prefixed in 1871 to the edition of the Chroniques d'Anjou, published in 1856, Odo of Marmoutier concluded his work with the year 1137, and it was continued by an anonymous writer down to 1150. Our author's extracts, however, do not come down nearly so far as 1137; see the annals of 1110 and 1119, vol. i. pp. 239, 243.

[2] Recueil, &c., vol. vii. 256–258; ix. 25; x. 248–258; xi. 265–274; xii. 495–504.

[3] Vol. ii. pp. 241–262.

[4] MS. S. Victor, 419. This MS., which contains a large number of extracts from other works on French history, is fully described by M. Leopold Delisle in his edition of Robert de Monte, the first volume of which was published in 1872; p. xxiv. The date of the MS. is late, between 1387 and 1407, and may very well be a series of extracts taken at once and directly from Diceto, in which case the argument in the text would be superfluous. As, however, the question has been raised, it may as well be argued. The MS. is now in the National Library, "Fonds Latin, n. 14,663, jadis n. 287." I have to thank M. Paul Meyer for directing my attention to the real sources of information respecting it.

title "De Origine Comitum Andegavensium," and ascribed to a certain Thomas Pactius, prior of Loches. The work of Thomas of Loches. This Thomas Pactius, or Thomas de Parcé, was a well known person, who acted as notary to Fulk of Anjou, was chaplain to Geoffrey Plantagenet, and is ascertained from his attestation of charters to have been at Loches, as dean, as late as 1154.[1] On the evidence of the monk John of Marmoutier, Thomas annotated and re-issued the Gesta Consulum,[2] and in the belief that the extracts in question were drawn from the work of Thomas Pactius, some portions of the book were printed in the Recueil des Historiens de France.[3] As the work of Thomas Pactius, too, it is reproduced from the original MS. by MM. Marchegay and Salmon in the Chroniques d'Anjou. The editors of the Recueil seem to have doubted the justice of this description, and determined that the work was really drawn up by Gervase, prior of S. Serenicus, who was, in a letter still extant, pressed by Robert de Monte to undertake a book of the kind.[4] This conclusion seems to be accepted by Sir Thomas Duffus Hardy in the second volume of the Catalogue of Materials for British History.[5] On this hypothesis, and indeed if the work were really done by the prior of Loches, or by a contemporary of his, it must have been drawn up between the year 1183 when the young king Henry died, and the year 1188 when the Abbreviationes which contain it were finally written out. But M. E. Mabille, in an elaborate introduction prefixed in 1871 to the edition of the Chroniques d'Anjou, has shown that the true work of Thomas de Parcé is contained in another manuscript, as yet unpublished, which is an expansion

[1] M. E. Mabille in his introduction to the Chroniques d'Anjou has worked out the history of Thomas de Parcé, pp. xiv.–xxv.

[2] Chroniques d'Anjou, p. 353.

[3] Recueil des Historiens de France, vol. xii. pp. 534.

[4] Recueil, &c., vol. xii. Pref. p. xliv. See Guibert. Noviogent., Opp. p. 715.

[5] Catalogue of Materials, vol. ii. p. 472.

rather than an abridgment of the Gesta Consulum, and which has no characteristics in common with the extracts in question.[1] Thomas Pactius, therefore, satisfactorily disappears.

The Victorine MS. is a collection of extracts from the work of Ralph.

In the course of a very careful collation of MSS. for this edition, I have been led to the belief that, instead of supposing Ralph de Diceto to have used any such compilation and incorporated it in his work, we must regard the tract found in the Victorine MS. as being simply a transcript of the passages on the growth of the house of Anjou which occur in the Abbreviationes and Imagines. The most accurate comparison of the edition of MM. Marchegay and Salmon with the MSS. of Ralph de Diceto proves that it is only in the minutest and most insignificant particulars that any variation between the two texts can be discerned at all. Now Ralph de Diceto, although in most instances a servile copyist, is nowhere an exact copyist; he seldom departs from the language of the exemplar, but he omits words very constantly and purposely; his work is therefore styled "Abbreviationes." But in the case of the transcripts from his own books, instances of which we have in the "Series "Causæ," and in the Annals of the Archbishops of Canterbury in the Corpus MS. lxxvi., he is punctiliously exact. At the very first glance, then, it seems more probable that the Victorine MS. should be a transcript from Ralph's work than that the reverse should be the case. But a point that seems decisive of the question is this: The writer of the Victorine MS. arranges his matter precisely in the order in which it appears in the MSS. of Diceto; that order is natural enough in the latter, a work that contains much that is not connected with Anjou, and which treats the Angevin history with the usual marks of digression and resumption. This is obvious without further examination, although the

[1] It is described in the Introduction, pp. xxiii. and xxiv.

sequence of events in the two books does not involve any departure from the common order, except in one instance. That is the following: the Victorine MS., according to its editors, places the history of the rebellion of Geoffrey Martel against Fulk Nerra, under the year 1173,[1] in the middle of the reign of Henry II. This appears to them to be either inexplicable or accidental, and they accordingly desert their MS., and replace the little episode in its historical order. But when we turn to the Imagines, we find that this story of the rebellion of the son against the father is one of the moral examples adduced by Ralph de Diceto in connexion with the rebellion of the younger Henry in 1173.[2] It is clear then that the original from which the writer of the Victorine MS. copied was either the work of Ralph de Diceto himself, or a set of extracts from it; it is possible that the writer had the work of Ralph before him and had been told to extract from it all passages bearing on the history of Anjou as they came. Most of the earlier ones he would find distinguished by the mark of the lance in the margin of the book. The later ones he would have to search out for himself, and finding the story of Fulk Nerra under the year 1173, he incorporated it under that date.

Proof of this

Our inferences need not stop here, for it now becomes highly probable that original from which the Victorine MS. was taken, proceeded from the Pauline Scriptorium. I have already referred to the fact that our author, writing in 1188, specified five separate points on the elucidation of which much labour had been spent. The whole passage is worth attention. "I. At what times, "when, and by whose ministry the kings of the English "received the rite of consecration and the diadem of "the kingdom. II. What privileges the Church of "Canterbury enjoys according to the institutions of the "Roman pontiffs. III. How Anjou has, advancing and

Possibly Ralph himself arranged these Angevin notes in a separate work.

[1] Chroniques d'Anjou, p. 333. | [2] Vol. i. p. 366.

The marked passages in the work.

"increasing, extended its limits to an immensity. IV. "What questions arose between the kingdom and the "priestdom in the times of Anselm and Thomas, arch-"bishops of Canterbury; and (V.) With what an end "the struggle too long waged between king Henry the "Second and his son was concluded, the diligent reader "will find in the following pages."[1] These five are five out of twelve of the special points marked by rubricated figures in the margin of the MS.[2] Three of the others, the schisms, the persecutions, and the councils, are mentioned in the Prologue more briefly; of the remaining four, the sixth, the elections of the archbishops of Canterbury, comes into natural connexion with the fifth; the seventh, the history of the dukes of Normandy, is the subject of a separate work; and the tenth and eleventh, the history of the counts of Anjou and dukes of Normandy who were also kings of England, is of course the main subject of the principal work. Now it is a very significant fact that two out of these five specialized and marked subjects were made the topics of two smaller tracts, both consisting of exact extracts from the larger book. Whether it was that the marginal figures suggested that it would be easy to make the excerpts, or that they were originally inserted to facilitate the process of excerption, the result is the same. The "Series "Causæ" is nothing more than the excerpted history of Becket,[3] the "Annales Archiepiscoporum," is the excerpted history of the see of Canterbury.[4] Looking further, we find the first special point, where and by whom the kings were crowned treated in a special tract of the Opuscula;[5] whilst the story of the rebellion and death of the younger Henry, although it may not

Two sets of marked passages formed into smaller tractates.

---

[1] Vol. i. p. 34.
[2] See vol. i. pp. 3, 4.
[3] Vol. ii. pp. 279–285.
[4] See below, pp. lxi.–lxviii.
[5] Vol. ii. pp. 234 sq. It is also included in the Annales de Archiepiscopis; see below, pp. lxi., lxiii.

occur in a separate form, is so fully and rhetorically told in the principal work that it seems to have been written with an intention of separate publication. What then is more likely than that Ralph de Diceto should direct the excerpting of the passages touching the house of Anjou, for separate circulation in France, and that the tract should have found its resting place in the religious house, where he may himself have received his education, and where his friend Arnulf of Lisieux was resting at the moment that he wrote ?

Possibly this tract on Anjou was a third.

Whether, however, we accept this account as proved or probable, whether we suppose Ralph himself to have made the abridgment, or to have copied one made by some other author, as against the Victorine MS. his claim of priority is indisputable.

To these three series of extracts, each of which involves a disputed point, I might add a fourth, and ask to whom we are indebted for the life of S. Anselm, which fills five pages of the Abbreviationes.[1] Although I have not ventured to advance it to the dignity of large type as containing original matter, I am inclined to think that it may be our author's work, drawn from Eadmer, with somewhat more of critical care and independent treatment than he has used elsewhere. I need hardly add that neither here nor in the passages already noticed, do the MSS. afford any clue to the question whether these portions are original or not.

Question as to the life of S. Anselm.

Further than this it is not necessary to examine into the authorities of the Abbreviationes; they are sufficiently indicated in the marginal notes, and an investigation into their value would not be pertinent to the analysis of the Abbreviationes, but involve an inquiry into the whole contents of the great library which furnished the materials. It is clear that Ralph was a laborious and experienced compiler; that his critical

The Abbreviationes are analyzed in the notes.

[1] Vol. i. pp. 223–227. The whole of it is reproduced exactly in the Annals in MS. C.C.C.C. 76.

Ralph's character as an abridger.

power was less marked than his industry, and that he rarely or never attempted, by manipulating the language of his original, to give it the polish and finish which he tried to achieve for his own independent composition. His faults of chronology and arrangement will come before us again when we attempt to put an estimate on his contribution to historical knowledge more generally considered.

Question as to the Imagines.

So much then for the Abbreviationes. The Imagines are an original composition, in reference to which we can only ask what contemporary writers may have helped to supply dates and other particulars, and secondly, what friends or opportunities the dean of S. Paul's had that might contribute other valuable elements in the process of composition.

Our author's debt to Robert de Monte.

The first question may be answered, so far as our present object is concerned, in a word. The obligations of our author to Robert de Monte are unquestionable. Of the other extant histories of the time, the "Gesta "Regis Henrici" only were known to him: this appears to be proved by the fact that in the Opuscula he transcribes the pedigree of the Spanish kings as given in the Gesta[1]; but further light may be thrown upon the relation of the two writers at the next stage of our inquiries. It is just possible that the dean may have seen the chronicles of Hoveden, Gervase and William of Newburgh, all of which were being written at the same time, but there is, I think, no evidence amounting to even a presumption, that he used them. Of the lost histories we can only say that as dean of S. Paul's he may have used the Tri-columnis of Richard Fitz-Neal his bishop, or the "Gesta "Henrici" of Peter of Blois his fellow canon, if Peter of Blois ever wrote such a book. Richard Fitz-Neal was a canon of S. Paul's long before 1188, and it is not at all improbable that he would communicate the materials he had collected to the dean. But unless the "Gesta"

He may have known other contemporary chronicles.

He may have used the Tri-columnis.

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 240, 241.

known under the name of Benedict, do, as I have conjectured in the preface to my edition of that work, represent the Tricolumnis, I am not able to suggest any argument that would show him to have done so.[1]

He received important aid from friends at court.

As for the second point, the assistance which Ralph received or might have received from the great men of his own time, it is hardly necessary to do more than to refer to the particulars collected in the preface to our first volume. He was on terms of close friendship with Gilbert Foliot and Richard of Ilchester, two of Henry's most trusted servants; and the earlier details of the Imagines are all are drawn from sources which this close association would put in his possession. It may almost be said that, up to the death of Foliot, the most important portions of the work owe their authoritative character to the presumption that they were drawn up under his revision, as they were certainly drawn from materials which he could most readily supply. After Foliot's death Richard Fitz-Neal,[2] William Longchamp,[3] and Walter of Coutances[4] would seem to have been the main helpers or contributors of letters. But both earlier and later we can detect a wider circle. John of Oxford, closely connected as he was with Foliot and Richard of Ilchester, no doubt supplied the long and amusing account of his journey to the Sicilian coast in 1176[5]; other particulars

---

[1] Bened. vol. i. Pref. lviii.–lxiii. The conjecture, that the "Gesta" may represent the Tricolumnis, for it was merely a conjecture, commended itself to Dean Milman, who in the Annals of S. Paul's expressed an opinion that the presumptions were sufficient. But it has been learnedly and weightily examined by Dr. Liebermann in his essay on the Dialogus de Scaccario, and declared to be untenable. As a mere conjecture it is not worth defending, and perhaps there are passages in the Imagines which may seem to have as good a title to represent the Tricolumnis; but it is unnecessary to treat a chance hypothesis as if it were a formed opinion or dogmatic statement.

[2] See especially the letters in the Imagines, vol. ii. pp. 74, 77, 78, 88, 98; cf. ii. 99, 103, 107.

[3] Vol. ii. pp. 83, 127.

[4] See the series of letters from vol. ii. p. 112, onwards.

[5] Vol. i. pp. 416, 417.

Other friends who may have helped.

of Sicilian history may have been furnished by the archdeacon of Rochester, Paris, a canon of S. Paul's, nephew of Robert Pullus,[1] and himself a likely candidate for an Italian bishopric; or by Peter of Blois who had been one of the instructors of William the Good; or by Master Thomas Brown of the Exchequer, who had been a minister of king Roger and was in close association with Richard Fitz-Neal, the treasurer.[2] Herbert of Middlesex, the archbishop of Compsa, may himself have supplied something, although either Ralph was misled by the report of his death in 1184[3] or the Italian historians have confounded him with another person. But the conjectural friendships which may have assisted a man in the position of Ralph de Diceto are innumerable; and our general conclusion does not require that we should have recourse to conjecture. As the hand of Gilbert Foliot may be traced in the earlier part, so may the aid of Richard Fitz-Neal, William Longchamp, and Walter of Coutances in the later portions of the Imagines. Of much that he relates Ralph must himself have been an eye-witness; the documentary illustrations we cannot doubt were largely supplied by them.

What is the value of our author as a contemporary annalist.

III. We thus come to the third point in our review, and inquire what is the special value of the particular contributions made by our author to the history of his time; a question which cannot be answered without some more minute illustration of the positions already laid down. Looking first at the chronological details of the Imagines, we are obliged to repeat that chronological exactness is not our author's strong point, and an examination of

---

[1] Vol. i. p. 417. Newcourt, Repertorium, i. 129.

[2] The career of Master Thomas Brown is yet unexplored; vestiges of his service during king Roger's reign are, however, extant in Sicilian records, where he appears even in Greek as "*μάστρο Θωμᾶ τοῦ βρόννου.*" See Cusa, Diplomi Greci ed Arabi di Sicilia (Palermo, 1868), p. 312, an extract from which has been kindly furnished me by Dr. Pauli. The document quoted is dated in 1143.

[3] Vol. ii. p. 37.

some few of his dates confirms the belief that in the earlier years of that work he is writing from memory, supplemented only occasionally by documentary evidence, or from documentary evidence supplemented by memory. Some little detail is necessary here, for the dates of public events ought to furnish a crucial test of contemporary writing, and of the exactness of annalistic work which is not strictly contemporary. Setting aside then the misdating of public events from 1148 to 1153, in which years our author was misled by the authority of Robert de Monte, we may compare his dates with the authoritative computation in the following instances:

The early part of the Imagines is not contemporary.

1. The consecration of Roger of Pont l'Eveque on the feast of S. Paulinus 1154, is confirmed by the evidence of Gervase of Canterbury and other historians.[1]

List of dates from 1154 to 1169.

2. The date of the coronation of Henry II. Dec. 19, 1154,[2] was an event of public interest which scarcely could leave room for error.

3. The birth of Henry, the second son of the king, Feb. 28, 1155, is from Robert de Monte (vol. i. p. 301).

4. The marriage of the younger Henry, November 2, 1160 (p. 304).

5. The death of Richard II. of Belmeis, May 4, 1162 (p. 306).

6. The election of Thomas Becket on May 23 ; his ordination on June 2nd ; and his consecration on June 3rd, (pp. 306, 307).

7. The landing of Henry II. in England, Jan. 25, 1163 (p. 308).

8. The election of Gilbert Foliot, March 4, and his translation, April 28, 1163 (p. 309).

9. The council of Tours, May 21st, 1163 (p. 310).

10. The Scottish homages at Woodstock, July 1, 1163 (p. 311).

---

[1] Vol. i. p. 298 ; Gervase, c. 1376.

[2] Vol. i. p. 299. It was the Sunday before Christmas ; yet different days of the month are given by Gervase and Robert de Monte.

11. The summons of the earl of Clare to do homage to Becket, July 22 (p. 311).

12. The consecration of Roger bishop of Worcester, August 26, 1163 (p. 312).

13. The council of Clarendon, Jan. 25, 1164 (p. 312).

14. The excommunications at Vezelai, placed on Ascension day, 1166 (p. 318).

15. The death of Robert bishop of Lincoln, Jan. 26, 1167 (p. 329).

16. The excommunication of Foliot at Clairvaux, Palm Sunday, 1169 (p. 333).

17. The conference at Montmartre, Nov. 18, 1169 (p. 335).

These seventeen dates are all that our author furnishes us during the first twenty years of the period described in the Imagines. Of these two are wrong; the excommunication at Vezelai was issued on Whit Sunday not on Ascension day[1]; and bishop Roger of Worcester was consecrated, not on August 26, 1163, but on August 23, 1164. The latter date is proved by the evidence of Gervase and the annals of Tewkesbury[2]; the day given by our author was not a Sunday, on which day consecrations were invariably performed; and Robert of Melun, bishop of Hereford, who was consecrated December 23, 1163, is distinctly addressed by Becket as "fili mi primogenite," showing that he was senior to Roger of Worcester.[3] Our author has misplaced this event by a whole year.

Two erroneous dates out of seventeen.

In the fifth, eighth, tenth, and eleventh cases our author is a primary authority. In the fifteenth, the death of the bishop of Lincoln, he varies a month from the Lincoln obituary, which places it on December 26;[4] but in this case one authority is as good as the

[1] See vol. i. pref. p. xliv.

[2] Gervase, Chron. c. 1389; Ann. Tewkesb., ed. Luard, p. 49.

[3] S. T. C. iii. 274, Epist. cxxiii. He is also styled "electus" when Robert of Melun is called Herefordensis, S. T. C., ii. 256.

[4] MS. Lansdowne 969 cf. Hardy's Le Neve, vol. ii. p. 8.

other. All the other dates are of well known events, in which error was scarcely possible.

Comparison of our author's dates with those of the Gesta, from 1169 to 1177.

From the point now reached Ralph may have had the assistance of the "Gesta," which begin at Christmas 1169. We proceed with the analysis:

1. The court at Nantes, Christmas 1169 (vol. i. p. 337).[1]

2. The absolution of Foliot, Easter 1170 (p. 338).[2]

3. The meeting of the bishops in London "circa idus "Julii;" where Julii is a clerical error for Junii, too common to be important here, but not likely to be made at the moment (p. 338).[3]

4. The coronation of the younger Henry, placed on June 18th, 1170 (p. 338).[4]

5. The landing of Becket, December 1, 1170 (p. 339).[5]

6. Becket's arrival at Southwark, December 18, 1170 (p. 342).[6]

7. Becket's preaching on Christmas Day, and his martyrdom on the 29th of December 1170 (p. 342).[7]

8. The absolution of Foliot at Gisors, early in August 1171 (p. 347).[8]

9. Henry's landing, August 6 (p. 348).[9]

10. The death of the bishop of Winchester, August 8 (p. 348).

11. Henry's landing in Ireland, October 16 (p. 348).[10]

12. The reopening of Canterbury Cathedral, December 21, 1171 (p. 349).[11]

13. A thunderstorm on Christmas night, 1171 (p. 350).

---

[1] Benedict, i. 3.

[2] Cf. S. T. C., iv. 152.

[3] See Gervase, Chron. c. 1410.

[4] This date is given likewise in the Capitula Imaginum (vol. i. p. 271), which proves that the error was not a mere accident: see below, p. xxxix.

[5] FitzStephen, S. T. C. i. 281. Cf. Benedict, i. p. 9, note 5.

[6] Cf. S. T. C. i. 286.

[7] Cf. S. T. C. i. 292.

[8] Cf. S. T. C., vi. 262.

[9] "Tertio nonas Augusti, feria "tertia;" Bened. i. 24; Gervase, c. 1419; the 3rd of August was Tuesday.

[10] "xvi° kalendas Septembris" (for Novembris), Bened. i. 25, note 10; the text corrects itself by stating that the day was the Sunday after S. Calixtus.

[11] Cf. Gervase, c. 1421.

Comparison of the dates of the Imagines and the Gesta.

14. The king's embarkation in Ireland, and landing at S. David's, Easter 1172 (p. 351).[1]

15. Foliot's purgation at Aumâle, May 1, 1172 (p. 351).

16. The coronation of the young king and queen at Winchester, placed on August 21, 1172 (p. 352).[2]

17. The council of clergy at Windsor, September 1, 1172 (p. 353).[3]

18. The meeting of the princes, February 12, 1173, at Montferrand (p. 353).[4]

19. The death of the bishop of Norwich, January 16, 1173 (p. 354); placed by Gervase on Jan. 20, 1174.

20. A meeting of bishops at Lambeth, March 2, 1173 (p. 354).[5]

21. The flight of the young Henry from Argentan, March 23, 1173 (p. 355).[6]

22. The inthronization of the bishops elect of Winchester and Ely, May 17, 1173 (p. 368).

23. The orders given for an election to Canterbury, dated "pridie nonas Julii," where again "Julii" is a clerical error for "Junii," as is shown both by the reading of the other MS. and by the next date (p. 368).

24. The arrival of the archbishop elect at Canterbury, June 8 (p. 372).

25. The count of Boulogne mortally wounded on the feast of S. James; the anger of the saint being specially noticed, in consequence of the count's perjury (p. 373).

26. The siege of Verneuil, July 15th, 1173 (p. 374).[7]

---

[1] According to the Gesta (Bened. i. 30) the royal household embarked on Easterday, April 16, but the king waited till the Monday, and landed near S. David's the same day, April 17.

[2] "Sexto kalendas Septembris," Bened. i. 31. Gervase, c. 1421.

[3] Gervase, c. 1423.

[4] "Ante Purificationem Sanctæ "Mariæ," Bened. i. 35. Cf. R. de Monte.

[5] "Mense Februarii," Gerv. c. 1423.

[6] "Octava idus Martii, feria "quinta ante mediam Quadragesi-"mam," Bened. i. 42: there is a misprint in the edition, which may be corrected by Walter of Coventry. i. p. 213.

[7] "Circa octavas apostolorum "Petri et Pauli," Bened. i. 49.

Comparison of the dates of the Imagines and Gesta.

27. The flight of Lewis, August 9, 1173 (p. 375).[1]

28. The siege of Leicester, July 3 to July 28, 1173 (p. 376).[2]

29. The landing of the earl of Leicester, September 29; the capture of Haghenet, October 13; and the battle of Fornham, placed in one MS. on the 17th of October, and in the other on the 16th of November (pp. 377, 378).[3]

30. The surrender of Axholm, May 5, 1174 (p. 379).

31. Henry II. enters Maine, April 30; keeps Whitsuntide, May 12, 1174, at Poictiers (pp. 379, 380).

32. The young king at Witsand, July 14, 1174 (p. 381).

33. The landing of the Flemings, May 15 (p. 381).[4]

34. The capture of Norwich by the Flemings, June 18 (p. 381).[5]

35. The arrival of Richard of Ilchester at Bonneville, June 24 (p. 381).

36. The king's embarkation "octavo idus Junii," a clerical error for "Julii" (p. 382).[5]

37. His penance at Canterbury "iiii^{to} idus Junii," again a clerical error.[6]

38. Henry's arrival at Huntingdon, July 19; the capture of Huntingdon, which had been besieged since

---

[1] "In vigilia Sancti Laurentii," Bened. i. 56, 55.

[2] "Circa festum Sanctæ Mariæ "Magdalenæ," Bened. i. 58.

[3] The earl lands, according to the Gesta, "circa festum Sancti Lucæ "Ewangelistæ," October 18, Bened. i. 60; Gerv. c. 1426; besieges Haghenet, "statim post festum Omnium "Sanctorum," and takes it in three days, *ib.* p. 61: yet "appropinquante "festo Omnium Sanctorum," he marches to Fornham, and "xvii^{o} "kalendas Novembris," is defeated and taken. This is confusion worse confounded. If we suppose the writer to have put the feast of S. Luke by mistake for the feast of S. Matthew, and All Saints' Day, in the first passage, for Michaelmas, the dates will nearly coincide with those of our author.

[4] Compare Bened. i. 68.

[5] "Octavo idus Julii," Bened. i. 72.

[6] According to the Gesta Henry left Southampton for Canterbury on the day after he landed, July 9; fulfilled his pilgrimage on the Friday, and started on Saturday the 13th for London, Bened. i. 72. Cf. Gervase, c. 1427.

Comparison of the dates of the Imagines and Gesta.

May 8, on the 20th of July, and of the other castles, July 22 (pp. 383, 384).[1]

39. The submission of Hugh Bigot, July 25 (p. 385).[2]

40. The re-embarkation of the king, August 7; and his arrival at Rouen, August 11 (p. 385).[3]

41. The siege of Rouen by Lewis and the younger Henry, July 22 to August 14 (pp. 386, 387).[4]

42. The embarkation of the archbishop elect at Genoa, January 14; his confirmation, April 2, at Anagni; his embarkation on his return, May 26; the consecration of the elect of Bath, June 23; and the archbishop's arrival at home, September 3rd (pp. 388–391).[5]

43. The burning of Canterbury Cathedral, September 5 (p. 391).[6]

44. The consecration of four bishops at Canterbury, October 6 (p. 392).[7]

45. The departure of the elect of Lincoln from England, October 8 (p. 393).

46. The death of Robert, the chancellor of Flanders, October 5 (p. 393).[8]

47. The conference of the kings between Tours and Amboise, in which peace was made between Henry and his sons (p. 394).[9]

These dates are all or nearly all that occur from the

---

[1] Huntingdon was taken "die "Dominica sequenti, scilicet xii° "kalendas Augusti;" Bened. i. 72.

[2] "viii° kalendas Augusti;" Bened. i. 73.

[3] "In crastino applicuit . . . . "scilicet vi° idus Augusti, feria "quinta," Bened. i. 74: he arrives at Rouen "die Dominica sequenti," *ibid.*

[4] The flight of Lewis is dated "xix° kalendas Septembris, feria "quarta, in ipsa vigilia Assump-"tionis Beatæ Mariæ;" Bened. i. 76.

[5] The language of our author in reference to these details may be compared with that of Reginald of Bath in a letter to the king, preserved in the Gesta, i. 69, 70.

[6] Bened. i. 80; Gervase, c. 1428.

[7] Bened. i. 81; Gervase, c. 1428.

[8] See Bened. i. 49, where this fact is mentioned by anticipation in a way that shows even the Gesta to be not exactly contemporaneous.

[9] Richard submitted "nono ka-"lendas Octobris feria secunda," in Poictou, Bened. i. 76; the young king surrendered September 30, *ib.* p. 77; the day after the conference between Tours and Amboise.

murder of Becket to the close of the rebellion of 1173–4, and it is important to compare them with those of the "Gesta Henrici," in which special attention is given to the events of the same period. Setting aside those dates which, like 5, 6, 7, 12, and 37, would be found in the Becket biographies, and those which bear particularly on Foliot's history, or on ecclesiastical events in which he would certainly be engaged, such as numbers 2, 3, 8, 15, 17, 20, 23, 24, and 44; the remainder refer to events of common interest. The first date is common. The first coronation of the young king (No. 4) is misdated in Diceto, who has placed it on the 18th of June instead of the 18th of the kalends of July. Henry's landing (No. 9) in 1171 is given in the Gesta, with a double notation, the day of the week as well as the day of the month, Tuesday, August 3, three days earlier than the date in the Imagines. Ralph's computation of the king's landing in Ireland (No. 11) is also one day wrong, if the circumstantial details of the Gesta are regarded as increasing the authority of that work; and there is the same slight divergence in the account of his return (No. 14). In the notices of the Winchester coronation in 1172 (No. 16) there is a startling discrepancy: our author places it on August 21st; in the Gesta it is given as Sunday, August 27th. Here again the Gesta must be right and our author wrong. The meeting of the princes at Montferrand, dated in the Gesta "ante Purifi-"cationem," is placed by Ralph on the 12th of February (No. 18). Owing to the different dates on which the visitors may be supposed to have arrived, both dates may be true; but our author gives no information that he might not have drawn from the Gesta. When we come to the details of the rebellion we naturally expect still greater difficulties, for the chronology of the Gesta is neither sound nor consistent, whilst our author calls particular attention to the exactness with which he has treated the subject. In the first place, the flight of the

Examination of the dates.

Estimate of our author's chronology.

young king from Argentan (No. 21) is placed in the Gesta on the 8th of March, "the Thursday before Midlent," in the Imagines on the 10th of the kalends of April. Now the 8th of March was not the Thursday before Midlent, and the 23rd of March was the Friday after Midlent. We may reconcile the two by supposing that the latter was really the day on which the young king reached the French court, but as it appears in the text it is the date of the flight. The date of the wounding of the count of Boulogne (No. 25) is not given in the Gesta. The siege of Verneuil (No. 26) is dated more exactly in the Imagines than in the Gesta; in placing the flight of the French on August 9, the two agree, and a curious parallelism here occurs, for whilst our author marks the apostle S. James, on whose day the count of Boulogne was wounded, as punishing the crime of perjury, that being the day on which in the preceding year the count had sworn to maintain peace with Henry II.; so here the author of the Gesta makes S. Lawrence exact the penalty for the perjury which Lewis had committed in his treatment of the townsmen of Verneuil.

Question of the Norfolk campaign of 1173.

The dates of the siege of Leicester are given precisely by Ralph de Diceto (No. 28), loosely in the Gesta. The same difference is traceable in the history of the campaign in Norfolk: the Gesta represent the earl of Leicester as landing about S. Luke's day, taking Haghenet after All Saints' day, and yet as defeated and captured at Fornham on the 16th of October.[1] The Imagines fix the day of landing on Michaelmas day, but in dating the battle of Fornham the two best manuscripts differ, the Lambeth MS. giving October 17, the Cotton MS. November 16. As the earl is represented as disgusting Hugh Bigot by his long delay after the capture of Haghenet, October 13,

[1] This difficulty ought to be solved easily by reference to other annalists, but it is curious that so little of the details of the struggle is preserved by other authors than those we are comparing.

and as three days can hardly be regarded as "mora "onerosa";[1] the balance of probability seems to be in favour of the November date; but this does not afford sufficient reason for discarding the accepted computation. Comparison of the exact dates of Ralph de Diceto.

The surrender of Axholm (No. 30) is told in books in very similar words, but is undated in the Gesta. The keeping of Whitsuntide (No. 31) at Poictiers is peculiar to the Imagines. The Gesta place the young king at Gravelines in June 24, the Imagines (No. 32) at Witsand on the 14th of July. The landing of the Flemings and capture of Norwich (Nos. 33, 34) are undated in the Gesta. Ralph's dates for Henry's return to England, his visit to Canterbury and the other events of his visit (Nos. 36–40) are, although marked by clerical error, sufficiently in accordance with those of the Gesta to preclude any practical confusion. The siege of Rouen (No. 41) is told in the same way by both. The meeting of the princes between Tours and Amboise is dated in the Gesta on the morrow of S. Michael, in the Imagines on the 11th of October: this discrepancy can only be explained by supposing that the two dates mark two distinct stages of the negotiation. The account of the movements of the archbishop of Canterbury which completes the list, saving only the dates of the deaths of some of the bishops, is so evidently drawn from some contemporary letter that it requires no special criticism.

The result of this examination seems to me to prove that the chronology of our author, even where he professes to have taken particular pains, is not to be accepted without suspicion of carelessness, and that such carelessness as shows that the notes for this part of the work were not contemporaneous. Both the agreement with and the discrepancies from the Gesta tend further to show that both writers had access to common stores of information which are not preserved; the Gesta, moreover, being somewhat more exact as to foreign transactions and Conclusion on this question.

[1] See vol. i. p. 377. Gervase, however, places the battle in the month of October, c. 1426.

the Imagines as to English ones; the former following more closely the movements of the king and the latter giving more full details of ecclesiastical business.

Continuation of the comparison of dates from 1174 to 1177.

The Imagines and the Gesta occupy common ground for four years after the peace; but their narratives have fewer details in common, owing no doubt to the absence of any series of dramatic events like the war that would give a plot to both. It is unnecessary therefore to continue the method of close comparison that we have employed above; and enough to mark the main coincidences and special discrepancies, which of course are few. In the year 1175 both authorities place the date at which the count of Flanders took the cross, on the 11th of April:[1] as the day was Good Friday, the coincidence proves nothing; but their agreement in the date of the landing of the kings, "septimo idus Maii" is significant,[2] especially as it is followed by a clerical error in our author's text, placing the council of Westminster on the 16th of the kalends of July instead of the 15th of the kalends of June.[3] Here it is clear that Ralph wrote with the canons of the council before him although he did not take the trouble to copy them; "as for the "statutes of the council," he says, "if you consider them "well, you will find very few which might not be incor- "porated in the 'Corpus Canonum.'"[4] Yet in the next paragraph he gives, with a date that serves to correct the clerical error already mentioned, a letter from the king announcing to the clergy the recent pacification.[5] The royal pilgrimage to Canterbury, which the Gesta mention without a date, is fixed by our author to the 28th of May;[6] and the confirmation of the bishop of Lincoln is in the same way dated on the 9th of July;[7] but the

[1] Imagines, vol. i. p. 399; Bened. i. 83.

[2] Imagines, vol. i. p. 399; Bened. i. 84.

[3] Imagines, vol. i. p. 399; Bened. i. 84.

[4] Imagines, vol. i. p. 399.

[5] Vol. i. p. 400.

[6] Vol. i. p. 399; Bened. i. 91.

[7] Vol. i. p. 401; Bened. i. 93.

important events of Henry's visit to York are altogether unnoticed by Ralph.[1] As if to counterbalance this, the Gesta date loosely "a little before Christmas" the death of Reginald of Cornwall which our author fixes to July 1,[2] and "before Christmas" the deposition of the abbot of Peterborough, which took place, according to Ralph, on the 30th of October.[3]

Looseness of dating in the Gesta.

In 1176 the two books have in common the dates of the commission of Itinerant justices, January 26,[4] and the council at Westminster, March 14.[5] They differ in the day of the defeat of the emperor by the Lombards, the Gesta making the common confusion between June and July.[6] The Imagines give more precise dates as to the marriage negotiations between the king of Sicily and Johanna the daughter of Henry II.,[7] and the Gesta devote more attention to the quarrel for precedence between the archbishops of Canterbury and York.[8] The latter mention under this year the death of Ralph of Châteauroux which is referred to by Ralph de Diceto in 1178.[9] The two authorities, however, rather supplement than check one another, and the details are given more precisely in the Imagines. The reverse is the case in 1177, the history of which is worked out with the greatest care in the Gesta, and slurred over in seven pages in the Imagines; a large part of those seven pages being filled with copies of documents.[10] Ralph's

The two works rather supplement than confirm one another.

---

[1] Bened. i. 94 sq.

[2] Bened. i. 105; Imag. vol. i. p. 401.

[3] Bened. i. 106; Imag. vol. i. p. 402.

[4] Vol. i. p. 404; Bened. i. 107.

[5] Vol. i. p. 405; Bened. i. 112.

[6] Vol. i. p. 408, "iiii° kalendas "Junii," Bened. i. 126, note 1.

[7] Vol. i. pp. 408, 414, 415, 416–418: yet the Gesta mention the loss of the ships which contained the presents, and although the dates are more exact in the Imagines, the details are far more numerous in the Gesta.

[8] Bened. i. 118, 119.

[9] "Eodem anno obiit Radulfus "de Dolis," Bened. i. 127. Our author does not say that Ralph died in 1178, but simply mentions the fact that Henry became guardian of the heiress and would in good time find her a husband; vol. i. p. 425.

[10] Vol. i. pp. 418–424.

history of the year reads in fact as a very jejune abstract of the Gesta, with some additional news from Palestine.

Chronology of the Imagines from 1177.

From the year 1177, where the earliest MS. of the Gesta ends, we have no co-ordinate authority by which to test our author's accuracy. Up to the year 1180, moreover, the cursory character of his narration seems to show that he was himself at a loss for a guide; and from that point, as we have seen, his notes bear more clear marks of original and contemporaneous composition. In 1178, however, we have valuable dates of the return of the bishop of Winchester from Normandy,[1] of a visit of the archbishop of Rheims to England,[2] and of the coronation of the emperor at Arles.[3] Notices of the winter floods and of an eclipse of the sun, as well as of the return of William Mandeville from Palestine,[4] read like personal reminiscences. Yet in 1179 we fall back again into generalities, only redeemed by the carefully written account of Henry's legal policy, which is one of the most important sections of the entire work.

I do not propose to follow our author through those years in which he is clearly a contemporaneous authority. His plan loses continuity, but it gains no doubt in accuracy and reality of interest. But our question is now of chronological exactness only, and on that little more need be said. Some other points of interest occur even in this matter which it is impossible to discuss here. I think it is questionable whether he has not antedated the birth of John by a whole year.[6] In the history of the year 1191 the divergence of the MSS. as to the date of the return of the archbishop of Rouen raises an important chronological question,[7] although it

Questions of the year 1166 and 1191.

[1] Vol. i. p. 424.

[2] Vol. i. p. 426.

[3] Vol. i. pp. 427, 428.

[4] Vol. i. pp. 424, 428.

[5] Vol. i. pp. 434–437.

[6] Imagines, vol. i. pp. 271, 325, where it is dated in 1166; Robert de Monte places it at Christmas, 1167; he was probably the more careful writer, and his notes are more certainly contemporaneous.

[7] The Lambeth MS. places this event on the 27th of June, the Cotton MS. on the 28th of April, Gervase states that it occurred about Midsummer. The only difficulty which

does not affect the general view of the sequence of events which I endeavoured to draw out in the preface to the third volume of Roger Hoveden. I pass on now from this hasty estimate of our author's value as a chronologist to the further question of his value as an historian.

Notice of the more important historical passages.

Of the important substantive contributions to the history of a very interesting period, which are presented to us in the Imagines, only a few can or need be here indicated. The value of most of them depends on what is a higher characteristic even than exactness of chronology, the historic insight which distinguishes what is best worth preserving. To begin at the beginning: the sketch of the terms of agreement between Henry and Stephen,[1] which, whether drawn by Ralph or by some earlier writer, appears first in his pages, is an absolutely invaluable text for the history of the ensuing reign, and, curious and enigmatical in its form, contains the germ of almost all that is valuable in the constitutional history of the time. Now and then a very brief note throws full light across a difficult or obscure subject; such is the account of Ralph of Warneville, the sacrist of Rouen and treasurer of York, whom the king in 1173 made chancellor, "who changed not his way of life, which "was not very different from the life of a private man, "preferring to commit the discharge of his functions in "the king's court to Walter of Coutances, rather than

Peace of 1153.

Ralph of Warneville.

---

the divergence raises is one that existed already, why, if the earlier date be accepted, should the archbishop have so long kept back his instructions. I have taken the later date in my preface to Hoveden, vol. iii. pref. pp. lviii., and Constitutional History, i. 499; but the argument with which it connects itself is not affected if the earlier date be preferred. It is enough that he was not in England on the 25th of April, and that he had returned before the 25th of July.

[1] Vol. i. pp. 296, 297. Compare M. Paris, ed. Luard, ii. 191; Rob. de Monte (Recueil des Historiens de France, xiii. 296); John of Hexham, ed. Raine, p. 171; W. Newb. lib. ii. cc. 1–3.

Important historical passages in the Imagines.

" by lavish expenses and a luxurious table to invite the " courtiers every day to spread the glory of his name." The passage not only shows us how the king was able so long to dispense with a chancellor altogether, but contains a covert reflexion on the way in which the great servants of the state rose to great dignities in the church. Another, describing the composition of the rebel party in 1173, sums up the real causes of disaffection in a way that is perhaps as good as anything that William of Newburgh could have said. " These men, " whom for just and provable causes the king had con- " demned to forfeiture, joined the party of his son, not " because they regarded his as the juster cause, but be- " cause the father, with a view of increasing the royal " dignity, was trampling on the necks of the proud and " haughty, was overthrowing the suspected castles of " the country, or bringing them under his own power; " because he ordered and even compelled the persons " who were occupying the properties belonging to his " own table and to the exchequer to be content with " their own patrimony; because he condemned traitors " to exile, punished robbers with death, terrified thieves " with the gallows, and mulcted the oppressors of the " poor with the loss of their own money."[2] So well could a patriotic and educated man see the close connexion that subsisted between Henry's reforms and the opposition which they produced. A similar passage occurs where the writer is dealing with the policy of the peace-makers at the close of the revolt: the king " judging it " worthy of his royal majesty to recall his subjects " from the practice of marching through the country,"— the attempts to wage private war,—" from burning the " houses of the people, from plundering the poor, from " oppressing the widows and orphans, from cruelty to

Political feeling in 1173.

Peace policy of Henry II.

[1] Vol. i. p. 367.

[2] Vol. i. p. 371: it is worth comparing with the famous passage in William of Newburgh on the anarchy of Stephen's reign, lib. i. c. 22.

" prisoners, ravishing of maidens, and most of all from " bloodshed, always turned away his eyes and heart " from tyranny. As for the unwonted humiliation of " the French and the Flemings, and their purpose of " reconciling himself and his sons, he never in the least " doubted that it proceeded from the inability to resist " him."[1] Yet for the sake of his sons he allowed himself with his eyes open to be overreached by the mediators. A most important point of contrast between father and son is pointed out a little further on; the father compelled none of his prisoners to pay ransom, the son took large sums from all whom himself or his allies had entrapped into his hands.[2] Ralph is never slow to recognize or record a good trait in the elder king; he writes with pleasure how during the dearth of 1176, Henry II., from the first of April to harvest, found provisions for ten thousand men every day, and spent on the religious and the poor all the stores collected on his demesnes in Maine and Anjou.[3] With a similar intention no doubt of giving what he believed to be true views of his sovereign's character, he puts into the mouth of Henry, setting sail for England in 1174, the significant adjuration, " If I have set before my eyes " the things that make for the peace of clergy and " people, if the king of heaven has ordained that peace " shall be restored by my arrival, then according to his " mercy let him grant me a haven of safety. But if He " is turned away and has determined to visit my king- " dom with a rod, then be it not given me to reach " the confines of the land."[4]

Illustrative passages.

Henry took no ransoms from his prisoners.

Henry's bounty in time of death.

The king's prayer in 1174.

Not, however, to multiply quotations unnecessarily, I will mention some of the passages in which our author shows a political insight that speaks well for the age.

---

[1] Vol. i. p. 394.
[2] Vol. i. p. 395.
[3] Vol. i. p. 406.
[4] Vol. i. p. 382. We may add our author's vindication of Henry's good faith in the case of Cadwallon, vol. i. p. 437; and the mention of his paying his son's debts, *ib.* p. 404.

Illustrative passages.

In describing the conference at Montmartre in 1169, he takes the opportunity of laying down the principle of union between church and state; "Ecclesiastical dignity "rather advances than abolishes royal dignity, and "royal dignity is wont rather to preserve than to "destroy ecclesiastical liberty; for the two, the ecclesiastical dignity and the royal, meet as it were in a "mutual embrace, since kings cannot obtain salvation "without the church, and the church cannot obtain "peace without the protection of the king."[1] The longest and most important passage of this kind is that in which Henry's legal changes in 1179 are sketched; it is too long to be given here, and is well known as a classical passage on the subject.[2] Very valuable in the same subject matter are the notes on the new coinage of 1180, the misconduct and banishment of Philip Aymar;[3] and on the accepted theory as to the lawfulness of the secular employment of the clergy, in reference to which the often quoted case of bishop Roger of Salisbury is again adduced.[4] The description of the council of Clerkenwell in 1185 is an invaluable proof that, powerful as Henry II. was at the time, and despotic as were his instincts, he did bonâ fide consult his people, ask their advice and listen to their arguments. The king, in the hearing of the patriarch and the master of the hospital, adjures the assembled bishops, earls, and barons to say publicly what they think is best for him; his heart, he says, is fully bent to observe by all means the counsel he shall have from them. The question for deliberation is, which is the more prudent course, should the king in person succour the crusaders, or should he refuse for any reason whatever to desert his royal duties towards England, the government of which he had so long ago undertaken in the face of the mother church.

Church and State.

Legal reforms in 1179.

The council of Clerkenwell in 1185.

[1] Vol. i. p. 335.
[2] Vol. i. pp. 434–437.
[3] Vol. ii. p. 7.
[4] Vol. i. p. 435; vol. ii. p. 77. This is in fact a favourite topic with our author, as may be seen in his Opuscula, vol. ii. pp. 178, 179, 222 note, &c.

Some of the hearers, the historian continues, recurred in thought at once to the three promises of the coronation oath of which he gives the wording; adding "to the "whole of the assembly it seemed better, and far more "wholesome for the king's soul that he should govern "his realm with due moderation, and defend it from the "irruptions of barbarians and from foreign nations, than "that in his own proper person he should provide for the "safety of the easterns; to determine anything definite "about his sons seemed unfitting, inasmuch as they were "not present."[1] We may suspect that the king had felt the pulse of the council, and perhaps inspired the speakers, but here is undeniably the form of free and unfettered deliberation. Two other references must suffice, showing our author's acquaintance with the springs of politics and with the details of public business; the passage in which John's intrigues with Philip during Richard's captivity are described, as directed to secure the exclusion of Arthur from the hope of succession which the Bretons had conceived in his behalf;[2] and the account given of the means by which Richard's ransom was raised.[3]

Illustrative passages.

The council of Clerkenwell proves that deliberation is real.

The same historical instinct which is evident in these passages is shown in the choice of the documents which are freely, if not lavishly, inserted in the Imagines; although the want of minute accuracy derogates from their value even more than the inexactness of the chronology diminishes the authority of the direct narration.

Our author's choice of documents.

In very many cases the letters and other documents given are abridged, or presented only in abstract. Where we possess the originals, as in several instances we do in the collected epistles of Foliot, this is less important; these instances serve to show that in the process of abridgment little that was worthy of historical notice was omitted.

Method of abridgment of documents.

---

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 33, 34.

[2] Vol. ii. p. 106.

[3] Vol. ii. p. 110.

Documents inserted by Ralph in the Imagines.

Among the more valuable documents preserved by our author, the following are the most noteworthy: the bull "Laudabiliter," by which Adrian IV. bestowed Ireland on Henry II.;[1] the letter in which Alexander III. explained to Lewis VII. the mystical meaning of the present of the Golden Rose;[2] the message of Henry II. to the Council of Westminster announcing the pacification, in 1175;[3] the extremely important letter of Henry to the pope in 1176, in which he declares the concessions which he has made to the legate Hugo Pierleoni,[4] and which is one of the most interesting extant records in its bearing on the relations of the church and the state resulting from the struggle for the constitutions of Clarendon; a letter of similar character from the pope to the bishops[5] directing them not to hear suits in which temporal property are involved; the long letter of the German prelates to the pope in 1186;[6] the correspondence between Philip and Richard preparatory to the starting of the Crusade;[7] the series of articles passed by the clergy of Normandy in 1190, which seem to be a sort of constitutional settlement of the questions that had been fought out in England, on the relations of the royal and ecclesiastical courts;[8] and lastly, the royal letters which exercised so curious and significant influence on the constitutional crisis of 1191, when Longchamp was deprived of the justiciarship.[9] The letters of the archbishop of Rouen which occur in the latter pages of the Imagines are less important, but scarcely less interesting, as illustrating the last years of the union between Normandy and England, the gradual widening of the fundamental rifts that, a very few years later, and under no very strong additional impulse, effected the final disruption.

---

[1] Vol. i. p. 300.
[2] Vol. i. p. 310.
[3] Vol. i. p. 400.
[4] Vol. i. p. 410.
[5] Vol. i. pp. 427, 428.
[6] Vol. ii. pp. 44–47.
[7] Vol. ii. pp. 71, 73.
[8] Vol. ii. pp. 86–88.
[9] Vol. ii. pp. 90, 91.

Illustrations of foreign history.

The contributions to foreign history which are scattered up and down in the Imagines are of varying importance. We have of course much French and Flemish detail, inseparable from the main course of the narrative. The notices of Spanish, Portuguese, and Byzantine history are less valuable, although now and then they contribute an important date, as in the account of the siege of Santarem and of the capture of Silvia.[1] But the references to the history of Germany, and of Italy in its relations to the empire, are numerous and precious; and it is not easy to see what reason besides their inherent importance the author could have found for introducing them. It must suffice in this place to point out the most significant. The elective character of the imperial crown is more than once commented on.[2] The custom of employing the three archbishops of Mentz, Cologne, and Treves as archchancellors, is suggested as illustrating Henry's purpose of retaining Becket, as archbishop, in the chancery;[3] the Italian expeditions of the emperor in 1174[4] and 1176[5] are noted with minute dates, and the very curious letter of the Milanese to the Bolognese, reporting the victory over Frederick is preserved, the author's fancy being caught apparently by the commentary which it contains on a verse of Sidonius Apollinaris. The account of the meeting of Frederick and Alexander at Venice is given very briefly;[6] perhaps Ralph de Diceto knew that the letters on the subject, as well as the canons of the Westminster and Lateran councils, were fully given by other writers who were working like himself on the period;[7] but the account of the coronation of the emperor at Arles and of the empress

---

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 29, 65.
[2] Especially vol. i. pp. 362, 427.
[3] Vol. i. p. 308; ii. p. 280.
[4] Vol. i. p. 397.
[5] Vol. i. pp. 408, 409.
[6] Vol. i. p. 421.
[7] Especially Benedict, i. 183 sq.; Hoveden, ii. 141; Gervase, Chron. c. 1439, all of whom drew from the same stock of papal letters.

Notices of foreign history in the Imagines.

at Vienne, more than atone for the omission.[1] These details possessed it would seem some special interest for Ralph, who devotes nearly a page to an explanation of the relations of the Burgundian kingdom to the empire. Further on, especially after the fall of Henry the Lion and the series of events that brought him to England,[2] the notices of the acts of Frederick and his Henry VI. are more frequent. In 1184 the meeting of the pope and Emperor at Verona,[3] and the council at Mentz; in 1185 the visit of Philip of Flanders to Henry and their joint excursion to Italy are mentioned;[4] in 1186 the coronation of the emperor and his son and daughter-in-law.[5] The long letter of the German clergy, already noticed for its documentary value, is given nearly in full.[6] In 1188 we have a letter of Henry to Frederick and the emperor's answer, on the furtherance of the crusade,[7] and the strange letter of challenge in which Frederick defied Saladin.[8] In 1189 the starting of the crusade from Ratisbon [9] and in 1190 the emperor's march and death in the Salef[10] are dispatched in a few words; and later on the imperial affairs are noted chiefly in connexion with either the family of Henry the Lion or the imprisonment of Richard. In 1191, however, the coronation of Henry VI. is mentioned;[11] in 1194 we have a letter addressed by the emperor to Richard on the admission of Otho to the imperial service;[12] and in 1195 one from Henry VI.

---

[1] Vol. i. pp. 426, 427.

[2] In connexion with this history we have, first, the proposal of marriage conveyed by Reginald of Cologne, vol. i. p. 318; the marriage escort, the earls of Struguil and Arundel, p. 330; the war of Henry the Lion with Philip of Cologne, and his banishment from Germany, vol. ii. p. 13; the intrigues of Philip of Cologne with Philip of Flanders, *ib.* pp. 1, 31, 32; the result of these intrigues being the return of Henry the Lion, ii. 38; the death of Matilda, ii. 65.

[3] Vol. ii. pp. 30, 31.

[4] Vol. ii. p. 39.

[5] Vol. ii. p. 39.

[6] Vol. ii. pp. 44–47.

[7] Vol. ii. pp. 51, 52.

[8] Vol. ii. pp. 56, 57.

[9] Vol. ii. p. 64.

[10] Vol. ii. pp. 88, 84.

[11] Vol. ii. p. 89.

[12] Vol. ii. p. 118.

to the archbishop of Rouen announcing the birth of his son.[1] The interest of the author in these distant lands was flagging when he reached the year 1198 or he would have surely had a word to say on the way in which the coronation of Otho IV. fulfilled the prophecy made to Fulk the good count of Anjou, who had carried the leper for two leagues to the church of S. Martin, and his own reflexion thereupon: "the truth of it the kingdom of "Jerusalem once proved, the kingdom of England still "shows it, and the Roman Empire will in its own times "declare it."[2] Illustrations of foreign history.

Ralph de Diceto, when writing without effort, wrote in a very simple and easy style; from the few passages in which he attempts a higher strain we may gather that he would have failed had he tried to be graphic or impressive. Some of the best passages mentioned above are written in involved and tumid language, the more difficult wherever it is more pretentious. It is therefore unfair to take the purple patches as fair examples of his best manner. I may, however, point out which those purple patches are. The first is that description of Angers which has been more than once noticed, and which, if it were not difficult, would be fairly picturesque.[3] The second is the description of Aquitaine, which follows and which is perhaps intended to be humourous: the receipt for cooking beef and ducks, and the special mention of the sturgeon and the lamprey read somewhat in contrast with the sonorous description of the bridge and the palaces of Angers.[4] The narration of the capture of Saintes by Henry II. in 1174[5] is a better piece of descriptive writing, and some parts of the relation of the rebellion and death of the young king are told with Style of our author. Purple patches.

---

[1] Vol. ii. p. 125.

[2] See vol. ii. pp. 163, 268.

[3] Vol. i. pp. 291, 292.

[4] Vol. i. pp. 294, 295: from the mention of fishing, both here and in the account of Burgundy (vol. i. p. 427), we might suspect that the dean was a fisherman.

[5] Vol. i. p. 380.

More ambitious passages in the Imagines.

considerable feeling.[1] The capture of the great ship of the Saracens by Richard, a theme on which other writers had dilated in inflated terms, is told by Ralph in the great style.[2] There are some touches of the sensational also in the account of archbishop Geoffrey's arrest.[3] It is clear that the good dean had favourite passages, which he copied out and repeated in the *Opuscula*. It is needless to say that, according to the universal rule in such cases, they are the moral reflexions or the highflown verbiage which the reader estimates so much lower than the writer.[4] Notwithstanding this occasional, and it is only an occasional, tendency to grandiloquence, he has some passages that imply a sense of humour, or at the least the idea of a jest. The pun on Gratian and Vivian, the two papal envoys who neutralized one another in the commission of 1169, is perhaps borrowed: "Gratian " found no grace with the king, nor was Vivian vivid " in the memory of the archbishop."[5] A better joke perhaps is the story[6] told of the mission of Richard of Ilchester to Henry in 1174; how the Normans, when they heard it, said, "as the English have sent so many " messengers and now send this man, what will they " have left to send to call the king back, but the Tower " of London." The curious passage occurring in connexion with the election of Hubert Walter in 1193, where the writer compares the Sabbath day's work of the monks of Canterbury with the Sunday's work of the bishops,[7] can scarcely be regarded as serious, but reads rather heavily if it were intended for banter; as does the flourish of trumpets with which he announces the

Sense of humour and attempts at a jest.

---

[1] Vol. ii. pp. 19, 20.

[2] Vol. ii. pp. 93, 94.

[3] Vol. ii. p. 97.

[4] See especially the passage on the family of Henry II. in the Opuscula, vol. ii. pp. 15–18, 268–270: this passage the author seems to have liked so much that he could not bear to alter it. The description of the flourishing family is out of place in 1183, and still more in 1195.

[5] Vol. i. p. 335.

[6] Vol. i. p. 381.

[7] Vol. ii. pp. 108, 109.

flight of the French from Verneuil in 1194.[1] That he could be severe, I have said already, even where the object of the severity was the pope himself. Innocent III. however, had not yet taught men how great a pope might be. For the avarice of the Romans he has a sharp word; the papal envoy Albert traverses England "Latialiter," in right Roman fashion;[2] the funds raised for the succour of Jerusalem are not likely ever to reach those for whose benefit they were raised, unless peradventure the Romans renounce "their natural and "ingrafted cupidity."[3] On the French visitors to England he looks with similar suspicion: it was an exception to the custom of the French that the archbishop of Rheims held back his hands from gifts when he came to London, and accepted only a something which did not amount to the rank of a present, in token of the king's affection:[4] a very paltry offering would have represented all the love that Henry either owed or bore to William of Champagne. Again when king Lewis himself made his pilgrimage, we are told that "as fame, ever prone to "detraction, has aspersed the Romans with the mark of "cupidity, the manifold treasures of the king of England "exhibited and distributed at Canterbury would have "amply satisfied them, even had they been invited "rather by the hopes of gain than by the desire to "pray." The French were wise enough to guard against temptation, and "lest they should seem to have sought "anything else than the martyr, they suffered a mental "martyrdom by holding back their hands from the "king's bounty."[5] Even the Germans are not irreprehensible in this matter. In 1184 Philip of Cologne was magnificently entertained for five days at the king's cost, "but whether he went away the recipient of ample "gifts it is superfluous to inquire."[6] The dean's scent

Severe remarks on Italians, French, and Germans.

[1] Vol. ii. p. 115.
[2] Vol. i. p. 430.
[3] Vol. ii. p. 169.
[4] Vol. i. p. 426.
[5] Vol. i. p. 43.
[6] Vol. ii. p. 31.

The mystery of the number eleven.

for transactions of the kind was sufficiently keen: in mentioning the purchase of the chancery by Geoffrey the provost of Beverley he has a remark which might have been made by the author of the "Dialogus de Scaccario." He had paid for it 1100 marks of silver: "that the sum "of money paid down was comprehended under the unden- "ary number, is a matter, perchance, not altogether devoid "of mystery." [1] What the mystery of the number eleven could be requires an episcopal accountant with some gift of astrology to explain. Can this be a vestige of the Tricolumnis?

Ralph's estimate of Merlin's prophecies.

The estimation in which Ralph held the prophecies of Merlin is a marked feature of his narrative. He copied them out at length on the spare leaves of his manuscripts, and in several places attempts an explanation of particular passages. He is not, indeed, peculiar in this; the author of the Gesta,[2] and even Roger of Hoveden,[3] did the same; and a far greater man, abbot Suger, had done it before them.[4] Our author's explanations, however, seem to be original. In the account of the pacification of 1153, Stephen is said to "clothe "himself in the father" when he adopts Henry as his heir. This is part of Merlin's auguries.[5] The imprisonment of William the Lion at Richmond is regarded as a fulfilment of the words, "There shall be given him a "bridle in the jaws, which shall be fashioned in the "bosom of Armorica";[6] Richmond being a castle of the counts of Brittany. The same passage has to do duty on another occasion; for it is the treachery of Geoffrey of Mayenne, Guy de Val, and Ralph of Fougeres that brings the great king to his fall.[7] Further on the

---

[1] Vol. i. p. 406.

[2] Bened. i. 42.

[3] Hoveden, ii. 47.

[4] Vita Ludovici Grossi, c. 15: a comment on "Aurum ex lilio et "urtica extorquebitur, et argentum "ex ungulis mugientium mana- "bit," in reference to Henry I.

[5] Vol. i. p. 296.

[6] Vol. i. p. 384.

[7] Vol. ii. p. 64.

"eagle of the broken covenant," queen Eleanor to wit, "rejoices in her third nest-building,"[1] Richard, her third, but eldest surviving son. There are no doubt other instances which have escaped me. References to Merlin's prophecies.

On such evidence, which amounts to no more than a proof that Ralph was not above the temptation to solve a riddle, it would be unfair to found a charge of superstition. His occasional mention of omens is scarcely more than a play upon words; it was of felicitous omen that William of Mandeville was married on the feast of S. Felix.[2] Philip of France was betrothed at Tronc, married at Batpaumes; the latter name reminds the dean that "Balak the son of Zippor smote his hands, "beat his palms, together when he said, 'I called thee to "'curse mine enemies, and lo! thou hast blessed them "'these three times.' If we shall say that the ceremony "at Tronc betokens the fruitful stem of a royal race; if "the ceremony at Batpaumes presages the clapping of "hands in joy over the marriage covenant, we shall "perchance astonish our hearers."[3] This again can scarcely be anything but serious trifling. The good wish expressed on the occasion of the marriage of Agnes of France with Alexius Comnenus, that it may be more fortunate than the marriage of Constantine VI. with the daughter of Charles the Great,[4] is another illustration of this habit of thought. The coincidence of the day on which Matthew of Boulogne received his death wound with the anniversary of the day on which he had sworn faith to Henry has been already referred to, as has the mystery of the number eleven. Whether an omen was to be found in the hawk that caught a pike in 1191, and which was sent in compliment to John, we may not inquire. Ralph's mention of omens. Coincidences.

To sum up, however, this somewhat desultory review. It seems clear that Ralph de Diceto wrote with a strong

---

[1] Vol. ii. p. 67.
[2] Vol. ii. p. 3.
[3] Vol. ii. p. 5.
[4] Vol. i. p. 431.

Summary of the general characteristics of the Imagines.

feeling of attachment to Henry II. and the Angevin family; with considerable political insight, and acquaintance with both the details and the moving causes of public affairs; in a temperate and business-like style, but with irregularities in chronology, arrangement, and proportion of detail which mark a man who takes up his pen when he is growing old; now and then he gossips, now and then he attempts to be eloquent, but he is at his best in telling a straightforward tale. Such are the general characteristics of the Imagines. Their historical value is inestimable; well illustrated as the reigns of Henry II. and Richard are, without Ralph de Diceto one side of their character would be imperfectly known, and some of the crises of their politics would be almost inexplicable. It is no wonder that from the moment of their composition the Imagines became a work of authority.

Circulation of the works of Ralph de Diceto.

A very few lines will be enough to indicate the extent to which the work before us was circulated in the middle ages and the way in which it was incorporated with the writings of the following historians. The number of copies, five of which are still extant, either entire or in fragments, attests a considerable circulation from the first. The original Pauline manuscript remained among the treasures of the cathedral over which its author presided, for three centuries and a half. It was there when Edward I. searched the libraries of the monasteries for historical arguments in favour of his claims over Scotland. Ralph de Diceto is appealed to by him in 1292,[1] in the same list with William of Malmesbury, Henry of Huntingdon, and Roger of Hoveden; and in the belief that the volume would ever be preserved as a choice treasure, Edward directed the insertion on its blank pages of the official documents touching the

[1] Fœdera, i. 769, in extracts touching the events of the years A.D. 926, 934, 977, 1017, and 1043.

submission of the competitors for the Scottish crown to his sovereign arbitration.[1]

Extracts made from them by later annalists.

No doubt the Winchester volume had a like reputation, and may have furnished the extracts which are embodied in the annals of Waverley and Osney.[2] But it was through the S. Alban's transcript that Ralph was to exercise the widest influence; for from that volume Roger of Wendover, Matthew Paris, and Thomas of Walsingham drew the information contained in the Flores Historiarum and the Hypodigma Neustriæ. John Pike, and the author of the Livere des Reis de Britanie, probably used the Pauline copy. John Pike was the master of the schools of S. Martin-le-Grand and the owner of another manuscript, now in the King's Library, which contained the work of Sigebert of Gembloux and Robert de Monte.[3] He made, as has been mentioned in the preface to our first volume, large selections and abridgments from our author's works, so large, in fact, as to lead Henry Wharton to suspect that in a volume of Pike's collections he had found a separate work of Ralph de Diceto. Boston of Bury,[4] Bale,[5] and Pits, among the bibliographers; Stowe, Archbishop Parker, and Camden, among the Tudor historians, preserved the tradition of his authority; and at last, in the Decem Scriptores, Twysden and Selden gave their excellent edition to the learned world.[6] The book was never lost sight of from the day it was written.

The Index to theso volumes.

The Index to these volumes has been drawn up in this way. As the Abbreviationes are so very much attenuated, it is obvious that to give circumstantial

---

[1] See vol. i. pp. 286, 287.

[2] Ann. Waverley, ed. Luard, pp. 238 sq.; Ann. Osney, pp. 3 sq.

[3] MS. 13 C. xi.: Casley's Catalogue, p. 224.

[4] See Selden's preface, p. xxix.

[5] Bale, as cited above, vol. i. pref. p. xv. Pits, c. 300.

[6] It should be observed, however, with reference to the edition of Twysden, that all the matter of the Abbreviationes down to the year 589 A.D. is omitted.

notices of every place in which each name occurs would be equivalent to reprinting in English the whole of that portion of the work. I have therefore contented myself with furnishing the list of pages in which each name is found. As the Capitula Imaginum are merely the summary of the separate sections of the Imagines, and answer rather to rubrics than to textual matter, I have not given any references to them in the Index. For the Imagines I hope and believe that the references are full, circumstantial, and exhaustive. For the Opuscula, where the same objections to detailed references apply as I have mentioned in reference to the Abbreviationes, only general references are given, and no attempt has been made to incorporate the mere lists of kings and bishops whose names occur nowhere else in the volume.

Cholderton,
August 31, 1876.

APPENDIX TO PREFACE.

I. Collation of MS. C.C.C. 76.

II. Institution of R. de Verney to the Church of Aynho, vacant by the Resignation of Ralph de Diceto.

III. Statute of Residence agreed on by Ralph de Diceto, Dean, and the Canons of S. Paul's in 1192.

IV. Confirmation of Ralph de Diceto's Gift of his House to the Deanery of S. Paul's.

V. Poetical Extracts written on the spare leaves of the Lambeth MS.

VI. Letter of Richard I. to Archbishop Hubert on an Inquest into the Fund of the Ransom.

VII. Letter of Richard I. to Archbishop Hubert on Tournaments.

VIII. Miscellaneous Notes from the Lambeth MS.

I. Collation of MS. C.C.C. lxxvi.

Incipit Libellus ad reverendum patrem Hubertum archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et apostolicæ sedis legatum directus a Radulfo de Diceto, Lundoniensis ecclesiæ decano.

Prologus.

The annals of the archbishops of Canterbury.

Annos ab Incarnatione Domini seriatim expassos per temporum annotationes provida ratione percurrens,[1] annum dei. opusculo præsenti primordium præstare cognoscas. Singularium igitur inauditos eventus, casus insolitos, egregie facta, civiliter dicta, sub numero quaternario breviter comprehensa, cronographiæ sequenti materiam subministrare consideres diligenter, qui voto satisfaciens meo, quotiens tibi plenius innotuerit in opusculo nostrò manifestum errorem deprehensum annorum in calculo, manum apponas.[2] Excessum poterit abo-

[1] *Annos . . . . . percurrens*] Cf. vol. i. p. 18.

[2] *Singularium . . . apponas*] Cf. vol. i. pp. 18, 19.

Annals of the archbishops of Canterbury.

lere correctio festinata, si pura fuerit in reprehensione fraternæ caritatis intentio; pro varietate negotiorum et conditione stili narratiuncula sæpius intercidenda; si brevis aperta probabilis auribus insonuerit, saltem in hoc redimat cultus coloratioris defectum, si vel in aliquo promereatur accessum. Si quid autem hebetis sensus oratio turgidum importaverit vel inflatum, si vel arida vel exsangui verborum junctura dejectior emarcuerit, si translatio dictionum impudens offenderit auditorem, si vocalium hiulca collisio subsannationem extorserit, manum rursus apponas.[1] Voluptati siquidem aurium morigerari debet oratio.[2] Debes etiam meminisse traditum a majoribus et cautum in katalogo virorum illustrium, Clementem papam modo secundum modo tertium modo quartum nominatum a Petro. Sed nos si Lino, Cleto, conservemus honorem, sicut eis concorditer exhibent nostri patres in canone Missæ, profecto possumus vitare ruinam; sed ultra posse nostrum est quantum ad annos Dominicales solvere dissonantiam. Namque scriptum est,

" Primus papatus Petrus est in sede locatus;
" Qui consederunt Linus, Cletusquo fuerunt;
" His Clemens junctus simili fuit ordine functus;
" Disputat hinc mundus sit quartus sive secundus."

Rursus alibi scriptum est, " Tertius ecclesiæ Romanæ præ-
" fuit Clemens episcopus."[3]

Ad hoc a tempore gratiæ studiosius sacræ paginæ recolas expositores, catholicis applaudas historiographis; si placuerint poteris imitari; si duxeris reprobandos vitandi sunt cum modestia; si contraria scripserint præcipitantis est si vel Orosium Eusebio, vel Dionysium Mariano, vel Bedam Tertulliano leviter anteponas.[4]

Opus itaque sequens plurimum a compendio mutuatur, quantum ratio sinit adeo sub moderatione repressum, ut nec prodiga sit in eo copia, nec obscura brevitas, nec concinnitas tædiosa.[5]

Incipiunt annales de Doroberniensibus archiepiscopis.

Hamo Floriacensis, lib. ii°. Res gestæ . . . deputantur. [vol. i. p. 15.]

Agellius, lib. v^to^. cap. xviii., Hystoria . . . componuntur. [vol. i. p. 15.]

---

[1] *Excessum . . . . apponas*] Cf. vol. i. p. 19; vol. ii. pp. 184, 185.

[2] *Voluptati . . . oratio*] See vol. i. p. 19, note 3.

[3] *Debes . . . episcopus*] See vol. i. p. 19; vol. ii. p. 184.

[4] *Ad hoc . . . . anteponas*] See vol. i. p. 18.

[5] *Opus . . . tædiosa*] See vol. i. p. 34.

Annals of the archbishops of Canterbury.

Quibus ergo temporibus, ubi vel quorum ministerio reges Anglorum munus consecrationis et regni diadema susceperint, quantis ecclesia Cantuariensis juxta Romanorum pontificum instituta gaudeat munimentis, quid inter regnum et sacerdotium diebus Anselmi, Thomæ, Cantuariensium archiepiscoporum emerserit quæstionis, diligens lector inveniet in sequentibus. His itaque divinis insistentes officiis, quid beatus Gregorius Anglorum apostolus, dum Mauritius imperator arcem Romani gubernaret imperii, statueret faciendum per Angliam breviter enarremus.

Anno DCI. Augustinus, a beato Gregorio directus ad partes occidentales, ab Athelberto rege Cantiæ receptus est in episcopum. Qui postmodum consilio prædicti regis ivit Arelas, et . . . subjectos habeat. [vol. i. pp. 106, 107.]

BEDA, LIB. II°. CAP. III°. Augustinus ordinavit . . . Rofensi. [ib. p. 107.]

Anno DCV. Gregorius papa migravit ad Dominum.

BEDA, LIB. II°. CAP. III°. Augustinus pro se . . . colloquium. [ib. p. 107.]

BEDA, LIB. II°. CAP. VI°. Mellitus . . . revocavit. [ib. p. 108.]

Post Laurentium . . . podagra. [ib. p. 109.]

Post Mellitum . . . subjiciantur. [ib. p. 109.]

BEDA, LIB. II°. CAP. IX°. Ordinatus . . . archiepiscopo. [ib. p. 109.]

Sicut Cantia . . . honore. [ib. p. 109.]

BEDA, LIBRO II°. CAP. XVI°. Post Justum . . . ordinandi. [ib. p. 110.]

Scripsit Honorius . . . servetur. [ib. p. 110.]

Post Honorium . . . Cedda. [ib. p. 112.]

Theodorus Tharso . . . positas. [ib. p. 113.]

Theodorus archiepiscopus . . . consummavit. [ib. pp. 113, 114.]

Theodorus in Anglia . . . culparum. [ib. p. 114.]

Theodorus Dorobernensis . . . hystoria. [ib. p. 115.]

Ordinati . . . Dorobernensi. [ib. p. 116.]

Pulsus . . . exegit. [ib. p. 116.]

Merciorum provincia . . . Dorchecestre. [ib. pp. 116, 117.]

Theodorus . . . Cantuariorum. [ib. p. 117.]

Post annos . . . ecclesiæ. [ib. p. 117.]

Theodorus . . . Lindisfarnensem. [ib. p. 117.]

Anno DC°XC°. Theodorus archiepiscopus migravit ad Dominum.

BEDA, LIBRO V°. CAP. VIII°. Brichtwaldus . . . Walliarum. [ib. p. 118.]

Annals of the archbishops of Canterbury

Sergius papa . . . obediatis. [ib. p. 118.]
Tatwinus fit . . . insulæ. [ib. pp. 120, 121.]
Dorobernensi . . . successit. [ib. p. 121.]
Nothelmus . . . antistitem. [ib. p. 121.]
Offa rex Merciorum . . . episcopos. [ib. p. 126.]

Circa dies istos, dum Jambertus archiepiscopus vix anhelaret, Alveredus Romam veniens a Leone papa IIII^to^ presbiter ordinatus est; consecratus est etiam ibidem ab eodem papa rex Anglorum primus.[1]

Jamberto successit Adelardus Wintoniensis episcopus, cui Leo papa scripsit in hæc verba; "Tibi . . . alienum." [ib. pp. 128, 129.]

Edwardus rex . . . Kingestune. [ib. p. 140.]
Frithestanus . . . pontifices. [ib. p. 142.]
Formosus . . . confirmamus. [ib. p. 143.]
Athelmus . . . archiepiscopus. [ib. p. 143.]
Edelstanus . . . Kingestune. [ib. p. 144.]
Wlfelmus . . . Doroberniæ. [ib. p. 144.]
Odo . . . obtinuit. [ib. p. 145.]
Eadmundus . . . Kingestune. [ib. p. 146.]
Eadredus . . . Kingestune. [ib. p. 146.]
Odo . . . Cantuariam. [ib. p. 147.]
Edwius . . . Kingestune. [ib. p. 147.]
Dunstanus . . . Cantuariam. [ib. p. 150.]
Odoni . . . defecit. [ib. p. 150.]
Dunstanus . . . archiepiscopatum. [ib. p. 150.]
Eadgarus . . . Editham. [ib. p. 151.]
Rex Edgarus . . . induxit. [ib. p. 153.]
Johannes . . . dinoscitur. [ib. p. 153.]
Edwardus . . . Kingestune. [ib. p. 153.]
Æthelredus . . . Kingestune. [ib. p. 156.]
Dunstano . . . episcopus. [ib. p. 158.]
Athelgaro . . . induxit. [ib. p. 158.]
Siricio . . . consecravit. [ib. p. 158.]
Alfegus . . . Cantuariensis. [ib. p. 161.]
Sacrosancto . . . sepelitur. [ib. pp. 165, 166.]
Livingus . . . susccpit. [ib. p. 166.]
Rex Anglorum . . . repudiatis. [ib. pp. 168, 169.]
Canutus totius . . . comiti. [ib. pp. 169, 170.]
Livingus . . . consecravit. [ib. p. 171.]

---

[1] A curious piece of neglect or confusion, which does not occur in the *Abbreviationes*. It possibly arose from a confusion of Leo III. with Leo IV.; but the statement that Alfred was ordained priest seems wantonly fictitious.

Annals of the archbishops of Canterbury.

Athelnodus . . . dedit. [ib. p. 172.]
Corpus . . . translatum. [ib. p. 172.]
Canutus . . . appellantur. [ib. p. 175.]
Constructam . . . martyris. [ib. p. 175.]
Herluinus . . . associavit. [ib. p. 176.]

Haroldus filius Cnutonis consecratus est ab Ethelnodo Dorobernensi archiepiscopo apud Lundoniam. Qui moriens sepultus est apud Westmustier, et post ejectus e sepulcro sepultus est apud Sanctum Clementem. Haroldo rege sepulto . . . . Clementem. [ib. pp. 185, 186.]

Elsinus . . . Cantuariæ. [ib. p. 186.]
Eadwardus . . . Wintoniæ. [ib. p. 187.]
Eadsius . . . successit. [ib. p. 188.]
Comes Godwinus . . . obtinuit. [ib. pp. 189, 190.]

Haroldus filius Godwini Lundoniæ consecratus est ab Aldredo Eboracensi archiepiscopo.

Wlstanus pontifex . . . factus est. [ib. p. 193.]
Aldredus Eboracensis . . . Lundoniensis. [ib. p. 197.]
Adveniente Quadragesima . . . præcepit. [ib. p. 200.]
Concilium magnum . . . Cicestram. [ib. pp. 201, 202.
Post hæc . . . liberaverant. [ib. pp. 202, 203.]
Lanfrancus . . . consecravit. [ib. p. 203.]
Lanfrancus . . . ædificavit. [ib. pp. 203, 204.]
Generale Concilium . . . Pentecostes. [ib. pp. 205, 206.
Herefordensis comes . . . fugaret. [ib. pp. 208, 209.]
Robertus . . . inferebat. [ib. pp. 209, 210.]
Ecclesia Becci . . . posuit. [ib. p. 210]
Sexto kalendas . . . regem. [ib. p. 213.]
Lanfrancus . . . hodie est. [ib. p. 215.]
Rex Willelmus . . . præsulatum. [ib. pp. 217, 218.]
Acta sunt . . . transirent. [ib. p. 218.]
Convenientibus . . . excusare. [ib. pp. 218, 219.]
Walterus Albanensis . . . deosculatum. [ib. pp. 219, 220.]
Anselmus . . . Dominica. [ib. p. 221.]
Ortum, vitam, . . . benedici præcipias. ib. pp. 223–231.]

Henricus rex Anglorum Anselmum Dorobernensem archiepiscopum exulantem de Gallia revocavit et uxorem duxit . . . Lundoniæ. [ib. p. 233.]

Anselmus . . . Midcltune. [ib. p. 234.]
Magna discordia . . . remanserunt. [ib. p. 234.]
Anselmus . . . restauravit. [ib. p. 234.]
Rex Anglorum . . . redit. [ib. p. 235.]
Normannia . . . reversus est. [ib. p. 236.]
II°. kalendas Augusti . . . privaretur. [ib. p. 236.]
Girardus Eboracensis . . . promiserat. [ib. pp. 236, 237.]

Annals of the archbishops of Canterbury.

Willelmus . . . consecrati sunt. [ib. p. 237.]
Ricardus de Bealmeis . . . præsentibus. [ib. p. 237.]
Anselmus minister . . . concedo. [ib. pp. 237, 238.]
Anselmus Cantuariensis. . . . invitant. [ib. p. 238].
Jubente rege Willelmo secundo, Ricardus Lundoniensis . . . tradidit. [ib. pp. 238, 239.]
Radulfus Rofensis . . . eligitur. [ib. p. 240.]
Radulfus archiepiscopus . . . Octobris. [ib. p. 240.]
Turstanus . . . cariturum. [ib. pp. 240, 241.]
Rex Henricus duxit . . . Windlesoram. [ib. p. 243.]
Radulfo Cantuariensi . . . paralysi. [ib. p. 244.]
Willelmus . . . Septembris. [ib. p. 244.]
Willelmus . . . archidiacono suo. [ib. p. 244.]
Rex Anglorum . . . ejectus est. [ib. p. 245.]
Ricardo Lundoniensi . . . Februarii. [ib. p. 245.]
Willelmus . . . non posse. [ib. p. 245.]
Hugo electus . . . Cicestram. [ib. p. 246.]
Ecclesia . . . rege. [ib. p. 246.]
Stephanus comes . . . Lundoniam. [ib. p. 247.]
Henricus Wintoniensis . . . Romæ habito. [ib. p. 252.]
Theobaldus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus venit ad concilium quod Eugenius papa Remis celebravit, quod quia fecit rege prohibente, bonis suis omnibus spoliatus est; suffraganei sui suspensi sunt omnes. [See vol. i. p. 262.]
Rex Stephanus . . . non apposuit. [ib. pp. 298, 299.]
Clero totius . . . non optinuit. [ib. pp. 306, 307.]
Thomas archiepiscopus postquam induit vestes . . . imperatoris. [ib. pp. 307, 308.]
Thomas ex archidiacono . . . agnovit. [ib. p. 308.]
Clarembaldus . . . partem. [ib. pp. 308, 309.]
Thomas autem . . . sinistram. [ib. p. 310.]
Comes de Clara . . . archiepiscopum. [ib. p. 311.]
Inquisitio . . . ecclesiæ. [ib. p. 311.]
Thomas archiepiscopus . . . consilium. [ib. pp. 311, 312.]
Rex Angliæ . . . potuerunt. [ib. p. 312.]
Ex mandato . . . impetravit. [ib. p. 312.]
Rex Anglorum . . . parentaret. [ib. pp. 313–315.]
Thomas Cantuariensis . . . repertor. [ib. pp. 316, 317.]
Thomas Cantuariensis . . . mandato. [ib. pp. 318, 319.]
Willelmus Papiensis . . . curiam. [ib. p. 329.]
Thomas Cantuariensis . . . vinculis. [ib. p. 332.]
Thomas . . . amputavimus. [ib. p. 333.]
Consilio itaque . . . permittat. [ib. p. 336.]
Duobus articulis . . . præstare. [ib. pp. 336, 337.]
Alexander papa . . . attemptare. [ib. p. 338.]

Annals of the archbishops of Canterbury.

XIIII°. [IIII°. MS.] kalendas Julii . . . archiepiscopo. [ib. p. 338.]

Habitum est . . . Sandicum portum. [ib. pp. 338, 339.]

Thomas Cantuariensis . . . negotia. [ib. pp. 341, 342.]

Die natalis . . . archiepiscopi vi-]ctualia. [ib. p. 342.]

At this point there has been a lacuna in the MS., which has been supplied in a modern hand from the Imagines; continuing from the word *victualia* [vol. i. p. 342] to *licebit* [p. 352] where the original hand resumes; down to "peccatorum suorum." [ib. p. 352.]

Ricardus prior Doverensis, primus de collegio Cantuariensi, Dorobernensium est electus antistes. Qui veniens ad Alexandrum papam intra paucos dies archiepiscopus, primas, apostolicæ sedis legatus, constitutus est; de quo statutum est in hæc verba: "Tibi, Ricarde, tuisque . . . constat. [ib. p. 390.]

MCLXXXIIII. Baldewinus Wigornensis episcopus electus est in archiepiscopum Dorobernensem; cui Lucius papa III^tius^. scripsit in hæc verba: "Tibi, Baldewine, pallium transmittimus "per dilectum notarium nostrum Trausmundum." [Cf. vol. ii. p. 36.]

Baldewinus Cantuariensis . . . divina. [vol. ii. pp. 47, 48.]

Idem archiepiscopus . . . valete. [ib. p. 48.]

Urbanus papa: "Nos Anglicanam ecclesiam paternæ consi-"derationis oculis intuentes, ad salutem ipsius et spirituales "in Christo profectus, communi consilio fratrum nostrorum "decrevimus ordinandum, ut venerabilis frater noster Balde-"winus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, de cujus meritis et "virtute, sapientia pariter et doctrina, ecclesia universa con-"gaudet, ministerio legationis accepto, vices nostras ad honorem "ecclesiæ et totius regni salutem, et pacem per subditam sibi "provinciam exequatur."

Baldewinus Cantuariensis . . . faciatis. [ib. pp. 77, 78.]

Ricardus comes Pictavorum a Baldewino Dorobernensi metropolitano consecratus est in regem apud Westmustier, tertio nonas Septembres, Walterus Rothomagensis, Fulmarus Treverensis, Johannes Dublinensis, archiepiscopi cum episcopis pluribus astiterunt archiepiscopo.

Apud Pipewellam Ricardus Heliensis . . . episcopi. [ib. p. 69.]

Hubertus Saresberiensis episcopus, coepiscoporum omnium concurrentibus votis, in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem electus, a Celestino tertio pallium suscepit, et postmodum plenitudinem potestatis in officio legationis . . . anno quarto. [ib. pp. 125, 126.]

Annals of the archbishops of Canterbury.

Celestinus . . . debitam et honorem [ib. pp. 126, 127]; atque ejus salubria monita et mandata recipiatis humiliter, et servetis, quæ auctoritate legationis qua fungitur secundum Deum duxerit statuenda firmiter observantes. Datum Laterani xv^to^ kalendas Aprilis, pontificatus nostri anno quarto."

The foregoing annals occupy twenty-two folios. On the twenty-third follow the "Verba Merlini;" "Exin coronabitur . . . insidebit. [Galfr. Mon. vii. 3.] Then

"Anno milleno sexageno quoque seno
"Anglorum metæ flammas sensere cometæ."

[vol. i. p. 194 n. 2.] Then "Franci imperatores; Karolus . . . "Fredericus, Henricus V., Henricus VI."

Apri dentibus . . . reservabunt.
Exin de . . . oleo.
Sextus Hyberniæ . . . orietur.
} [Galf. Mon. vii. 3.]

"Pax erit illorum brevis et lis longa suorum,
"Corruet amborum genus et gens ense priorum."

The MS. ends with a list of the archbishops of Canterbury written out in a modern hand.

II. Litteræ Hugonis Lincolniensis episcopi de institutione R. de Virneto in ecclesia de Aynho ad præsentationem monachorum de Walden.

[MS. Harl. 3697, fo. 49.]

Institution of Ralph de Verney.

Omnibus Christi fidelibus ad quos præsens scriptum pervenerit, Hugo Dei gratia Lincolniensis episcopus salutem in Domino. Noverit universitas vestra nos ad resignationem dilecti filii nostri Radulfi de Disceto, et ad præsentationem dilectorum filiorum nostrorum abbatis[1] et conventus de Walendena, rece-

[1] The priory of Walden was converted into an abbey in the reign of Richard I.; but it still remained under the patronage of the Mandevilles. One of the last traces of the action of Ralph de Diceto is his attestation of a document connected with Walden: "A.D. 1199–1205. "Confirmation by William bishop of "London of the grant and restitu- "tion of the right of patronage of "Walden abbey made by king John "to Geoffrey FitzPeter earl of Essex, "heir to William de Mandeville, "who had the patronage of the "priory before it was converted "into an abbey in the time of king "Richard. Witnesses, Ralph dean "of London; A. archdeacon of "London; Richard archdeacon of "Colchester; and William of Ely "the treasurer." Charters of the Duchy of Lancaster, Thirty-fifth Report of the Deputy Keeper of the Records, App. p. 3.

pisse dilectum filium nostrum Radulfum de Vireneto ad ecclesiam de Aynho, et ipsum in eadem canonice instituisse sub annua pensione duorum solidorum abbati et monachis de Walenden solvenda: ad petitionem etiam præfati R. de Vireneto confirmavimus Turberto filio Turberti perpetuam in jam dicta ecclesia vicariam, quam ad præsentationem prædicti R. de Diseeto, de consensu etiam et voluntate Willelmi tunc prioris de Waledene, ex institutione Roberti bonæ memoriæ Lincolniensis episcopi, adeptus est; ita quidem quod ipse T. eandem ecclesiam cum omnibus ad eam pertinentibus perpetuo possidebit, solvendo ipsi R. de Vireneto singulis annis duos aureos, unum scilicet ad Pascha, et unum ad festum sancti Michaelis, salvis episcopalibus consuetudinibus super quibus idem T. respondebit, et Lincolniensis ecclesiæ dignitate. Quod ut ratum et firmum perseveret, præsenti scripto et sigilli nostri patrocinio confirmavimus. Hiis testibus, R. archidiacono Leiricestriæ, magistro Ricardo Trim; magistro Ricardo de Swaleclive, Alexandro de Bedeford, Reumundo, Galfrido de Doping, Lincolniensis ecclesiæ canonicis; Rogero Bacun, Hugone de Rolveston et multis aliis.[1]

The church of Aynho is vacant by the resignation of Ralph de Diceto.

III. Statute of Residence agreed on by Ralph de Diceto, dean, and the canons of S. Paul's in 1192.[2]

Anno Domini MCXCII. Ad rescindendum scandalum quod diu in ecclesia beati Pauli inter canonicos super inequali distributione communæ perduravit, de communi consensu et consilio domini decani Radulfi de Diceto et capituli statutum est; ut singulis annis quatuor terminis inter canonicos in ecclesia residentes et Deo deservientes equa fiat communæ distributio; ita scilicet quod, si quis residentium in quarta parte anni minus quatuor septimanis absens fuerit vel continuis vel ita ut omnes absentiæ simul computatæ non perficiant tempus quatuor septimanarum, tempore distributionis nihil prorsus

Statute of Residence drawn up under Ralph de Diceto.

Term of absence allowed.

[1] In the fourth year of Henry III. Absalom abbot of Walden had to answer a claim made by Isabella, wife of Robert FitzJohn (of Clavering). She said that William de Mandeville presented Robert of Stratford in the time of Henry II., and that he was the last rector; that the manor was given by the Mandevilles to the Claverings, and the rectory with it. The abbot replied that abbot Roger had presented Robert Stratford, and exhibited the letter of S. Hugh given above.

[2] A great part of the substance of this statute is to be found in dean Baldock's Statutes, part iii.

Statute of Residence drawn up under Ralph de Diceto.

diminuetur ei de sua communa. Si vero per amplius temporis spatium in quarta parte anni abfuerit, pro rata temporis communæ suæ sentiet dispendium ; verbi gratia, ut si abfuerit per quatuor septimanas et percepturus esset xiii. solidos de quarta parte anni, detrahentur ei quatuor solidi ; si quinque septimanis quinque solidi, et sic deinceps. Si vero septem ebdomadis de quarta parte anni absens fuerit vel amplius, nihil prorsus de illa quarta parte anni percipiet.

Definition of residence.

Residentes autem quantum ad communæ perceptionem eos intelligimus, qui non minus quam in quarta parte anni vel in domo propria vel conducta vel alia forte, in servitio ecclesiæ, morati fuerint, sic quod de rebus suis disposuerint ut intelligantur ab ecclesia non recessuri nisi evidens ratio vel urgens necessitas advocaverit.

Si quis vero canonicorum ab initio moram facere in ecclesia voluerit, et inter residentes connumerari, et ad Natale forte Domini venerit et usque ad Pascha resederit, vel ad Pascha venerit et usque ad festum Sancti Johannis moram fecerit, vel in aliis similiter terminis, ita ut nec per unam ebdomadam, vel continuam vel per plures absentias computatas, de prima quarta parte residentiæ suæ absens fuerit ; tempore distributionis partem se contingentem de communia sua integre percipiet. Si vero post Natale forte Domini, vel post Pascha, vel post festum Sancti Johannis, vel post festum Sancti Michaelis una septimana, vel post amplius tempus, advenerit, tempore distributionis nihil prorsus de communia primæ quartæ percipiet.[1]

Explanatory note.

Si vero post primam quartam partem anni moram continuaverit, poterit absens esse minus quatuor septimanis nec tamen aliquod subtrahetur ei in distributione communæ. Quod si post quatuor septimanas absens fuerit uno die vel amplius, fiet ei sicut supra scriptum est. Et notandum quod nisi unum annum continuum sic moram fecerit in ecclesia, quod in singulis distributionibus communæ, quæ quater fiunt in anno, certam portionem acceperit, et iterum velit redire et residentiam facere, necesse habebit denuo per primam quartam partem qua venerit moram facere, ita quod non sit absens per unam septimanam sicut supra scriptum est, aut nihil prorsus de communa accipiet. Quicunque autem per annum continuum residentiam fecerit ita quod in singulis distributionibus communæ, quæ quater in anno fiunt, certam portionem acceperit, inter perpetuos sta-

[1] *Si vero . . . percipiet*] Statutes, book i. p. iii. c. 2 (ed. Simpson), p. 33.

tionarios numerabitur. Et si post annum completum vel continuatim recesserit, quantocunque tempore absens fuerit, in redditu suo non habebit necesse facere residentiam secundum legem novellorum, sed poterit prima quarta parte anni qua veniet absens esse minus quatuor septimanis sine dispendio vel quatuor septimanis et deinceps secundum quod supra statutum est.

Statute of Residence drawn up under Ralph de Diceto.

Si quis vero residentium qui non minus anno integro ecclesiæ deservierit, de licentia domini decani et capituli, studiorum gratia peregre degat per annum forte vel biennium vel triennium, singulis annis xl. solidos de communa percipiet.

Absence at a university.

Item si quis residentium qui non minus anno integro in ecclesia moram fecerit, super aliquo redditu suo in causam trahatur et ex necessitate sui juris tuendi gratia abfuerit, quantum ad communæ perceptionem pro præsenti habebitur.[1]

Absence on legal business.

Item si quis in aliquo redditu suo tempore residentiæ fuerit spoliatus et ad recipiendum redditum necesse habeat cum aliquo experiri, quantum ad communæ perceptionem pro præsenti habebitur.

Si vero alias alicui causam moveat, et ita quatuor septimanas vel amplius abfuerit, secundum quod supra scriptum est de absentibus, detrahetur ei pro rata temporis de communa sua.[2]

Day of departure and return.

Item dies recessus et dies reversionis, dummodo aliqua hora in ecclesia beati Pauli fuerit, tempori absentiæ non connumerabitur.[3]

What it is "ecclesiæ bene deservire."

Hæc[4] autem æqualitas distributionis inter eos servabitur qui in ecclesia fuerint residentes, et bene ecclesiæ deservierint. Et, quia quid sit ecclesiæ bene deservire difficile est ad plenum describere, quis intelligitur ecclesiæ deservire, ut ex eo perpendi possit quis bene deserviat, summatim insinuamus. Si quis igitur in ecclesia horis nocturnis et diurnis assiduus sit, ut psallat vel legat vel cantet vel oret, non ut confabulationibus vacet, is intelligitur ecclesiæ deservire. Similiter si quis clericos ecclesiæ deservientes pascat et exhibeat, et si quis verbo prædicationis alios instruat et morum honestate alios ad benefaciendum invitet. Item si quis ita prudens sit ut ad majora negotia ecclesiæ gerenda sit idoneus, et ea, cum necessitas exegerit, suscipere et agere sit paratus, ecclesiæ deservire intelligitur. Si quis igitur horis nocturnis et diurnis, ut decet

---

[1] Statutes, p. 34.

[2] *Si vero . . . sua*] Statutes, p. 34.

[3] *Item . . . . . connumerabitur*] Statutes, p. 34.

[4] *Hæc autem, &c.*] Cf Statutes, pp. 34, 36, 37, where the text is referred to as "declarationes antiquæ."

Statute of Residence drawn up under Ralph de Diceto.

et prædictum est, intersit, et clericos duos ad minus nullum in ecclesia habentes beneficium nec vicarios secum habuerit suos scilicet nec alienos, licet alter eorum minoris sit ætatis, cum tamen sit pubes vel pubertati proximus, plena gaudebit communæ perceptione.

Employment on the business of the church compensates for non-residence.

Item si quis non ita sit assiduus ad horas ecclesiasticas, cujus tamen industria negotiis ecclesiæ gerendis sit necessaria, compensationis ratio admitti potest et debet in communæ distributione; si vero alia quæ scripta sunt in deserviendo ecclesiæ vel omnia vel aliquod vel aliqua in aliquo impleverit, admittenda est ratio ut in totum vel in parte communæ gaudeat perceptione, ut autem qui plene communam habeat, necesse est ut secum duos clericos ad minus habeat ecclesiam frequentantes.

These regulations are not to be harshly interpreted.

Quod[1] autem supra diximus aliquem debere esse assiduum in ecclesia, assiduitatem exigimus moderatam, ad humanum modum, non ut singulis diebus ac noctibus omnibus horis ecclesiasticis compellatur interesse. Ab hac autem assiduitate excusatur quis infirmitate corporis, tali scilicet quæ morbus sonticus appellatur, id est quæ impedimento alicui sit, ne suis vel alienis negotiis sine periculo interesse possit. Si vero super hoc an bene servierit aliqua fuerit dubitatio, ad majoris et sanioris partis capituli decurretur arbitrium, ita ut secundum eorum judicium discutiatur utrum in integrum percepturi sint communam, vel quantum eis debeat detrahi.

Names of the canons who made and confirmed the statute.

Huic autem constitutioni interfuerunt et assensum et auctoritatem præstiterunt dominus Radulfus de Diceto ecclesiæ beati Pauli decanus, Petrus archidiaconus, magister Ricardus de Storteforde, magister scholarum; Walterus filius Walteri præcentor; Robertus de Clifford, sacerdos; Hugo de Raculver, sac.; magister Henricus de Norhamptun, sac.; Henricus filius episcopi; Johannes de Withona, magister Alardus, diaconi; Ricardus juvenis, Osbertus de Camera, Johannes de Sancto Laurentio, Ricardus de Windesor. Absentes quidam de canonicis dum præsens fieret constitutio, postmodum in ecclesiam reversi, quod a confratribus suis super hiis quæ scripta sunt gestum est ratum habuerunt, et communem præstiterunt assensum; hii scilicet, Gilbertus archidiaconus Middelsexiæ; Ricardus archidiaconus Colecestriæ; Henricus thesaurarius; Ricardus Ruffus, Radulfus archidiaconus Herefordiæ; Gilbertus Banaster, Rogerus de Wigornia, magister Edmundus, Radulfus de Ely, Henricus filius Jacobi; Robertus Banaster, archidiaconus Essexiæ; Walterus Mape, Brand, canonici; Rogerus capellanus

[1] *Quod autem, &c.*] Statutes, p. 37.

episcopi; Laurentius nepos Celestini papæ; Robertus Foliot, Ricardus de Humframville. The bishop's confirmation.

Ego Ricardus tertius episcopus Lundoniensis huic statuto consensum et auctoritatem præstiti, et ejusdem constitutionis violatores excommunicationis vinculo innodavi.

IV. Confirmation of Ralph de Diceto's gift of his house to the Deanery of S. Paul's.

Reg. Dec. et Cap. S. Pauli, A. fo. 57.

Ricardus Dei gratia Lundoniensis episcopus universis Christi fidelibus ad quos præsentes litteræ pervenerint salutem in Christo æternam. Ex assertione dilecti filii nostri Radulfi de Diceto decani Londoniensis manifeste cognovimus, ipsum, ad honorem Dei et patroni sui beati Pauli, domos suas quas in atrio jam dictæ ecclesiæ fundavit, cum utensilibus suis et ornamentis munitas, capellam suam etiam cum libris et ornamentis, decanatui ecclesiæ beati Pauli in perpetuum confirmavit, et ad tam laudabilis propositi pium incrementum, terram in qua jam dictæ domus et capella sitæ sunt decanatui in perpetuum assignavit, sicut ex litteris suis patentibus manifeste perpendimus; ita quidem quod singuli decani decem solidos in anniversario ejusdem decani, nomine prædicti tenementi, ad pitantiam per manum camerarii persolvent, et de eis solvendis in capitulo suo in prima institutione cavebunt. Nos itaque, tam id quod a prædecessore nostro venerabili quam ab eodem decano gestum est ratum et gratum habentes, idem præsentis scripti patrocinio et nostri appositione sigilli, communire curavimus. Ad hæc ad omnium notitiam volumus devenire, nos terram illam quæ est juxta domos jam dicti decani versus occidentem, usque ad vicum, in augmentum prædicti masagii quod decanis in perpetuum assignavimus, ipsi decanatui dedisse et contulisse. Ut autem hæc concessio seu donatio debitæ firmitatis robur optineat, eam sigilli nostri appositione confirmavimus. Testibus hiis; magistro Ricardo de Storteforde magistro scholarum; magistro Henrico de Norhamptun; Roberto de Clifford; Hugone de Raculf, magistro Hugone; Ricardo juniore, magistro Petro de Waltham; Radulfo de Chiltone; magistro Osberto de Camera, Gileberto Banastre canonicis; magistro Roberto de Nuiers; magistro Aalardo; Ricardo de Windesore; Willelmo de Hely; Rogero, Alano, Berengario, Johanne de Storteforde, capellanis.

Ralph de Diceto's gift of his houses to the dean of S. Paul's confirmed.

Annual payment to be made on his anniversary.

V. Poetical Extracts written on the spare leaves of the Lambeth MS.

MS. A. f. ult.

Yldebertus Cenomanensis episcopus.

(Opera, ed Beaugendre, col. 1335.)

Poem by Hildebert of Le Mans on Rome.

Dum simulchra Deum, dum numina vana placerent,
Militia, populo, mœnibus, alta fui ;
At simul effigies arasque superstitionis
Deiciens, uni sum famulata Deo,
Cesserunt arces, cecidere palatia divum,
Servivit populus, degeneravit eques.
Vix scio quæ fuerim, vix Romæ Roma recordor;
Vix sinit occasus vel meminisse mei.
Plus placuit[1] jactura mihi successibus istis,
Major sum pauper divite, stante jacens :
Stans domui terras, infernum diruta pulso ;
Corpora stans, animas fracta jacensque rego.[2]
Quod ne Cæsaribus videar debere vel armis,
Et species rerum meque meosque trahat,
Armorum vis illa perit, ruit illa senatus
Gloria, procumbunt templa, theatra jacent.
Rostra vacant, edicta silent, sua præmia desunt
Emeritis, populo jura colonus agris,
Durus eques, judex rigidus, plebs libera quondam
Odit, amat, patitur, classica lucra jugum.
Ista jacent ne forte meus spem ponat in illis
Civis, et evacuet spemque bonumque crucis.
Crux ædes alias, alios promittit honores,
Militibus tribuens regna superna suis,
Sub cruce rex servit, sed liber lege tenetur,
Sed diadema tenens jussa tremit sed amat.
Fundat avarus opes, sed abundat, fenerat inde,
Sed bene custodit, sed super astra locat.[3]

(Opera Hildeberti, ed Beaugendre, 1708, col. 1334.)

Par tibi Roma nichil, cum sis prope tota ruina
Quam magni fueris integra fracta doces.
Longa tuos fastus ætas destruxit, et arces
Cæsaris et superum templa palude jacent.

---

[1] *Plus placuit*] Gratior hæc, ed.
[2] Two lines omitted.
[3] Four lines omitted.

Poem by Hildebert of Le Mans on Rome.

Illo labor, labor ille ruit, quem dirus Araxes
  Et stantem tremuit et cecidisse dolet;
Quem gladii regum, quem provida jura senatus,
  Quem superi rerum constituere caput;
Quem magis optavit cum crimine solus habere
  Cæsar quam socius et pius esse socer;
In quem dum fieret vigilavit cura priorum
  Juvit opus pietas hospitis unda locum;
Expendere duces thesauros, fata favorem,
  Artifices studium, totus et orbis opes.
Urbs cecidit de qua si quicquam dicere dignum
  Moliar hæc potero dicere, Roma fuit.[1]
Non tamen armorum series, nec flamma, nec ensis
  Ad plenum potuit hoc abolere decus.
Cura hominum tantam potuit componere Romam
  Quantam non potuit solvere cura Deum.
Confer opes, ebur et marmor superumque favorem,
  Artificum vigilent in nova facta manus.
Non tamen aut fieri par stanti fabrica muri
  Aut restaurari sola ruina potest.
Hic superum formas superi mirantur et ipsi,
  Et cupiunt fictis vultibus esse pares.
Non hoc ore deos potuit natura creare
  Quo miranda Deum signa creavit homo;
Vultus adest his numinibus potiusque coluntur
  Artificum studio quam Deitate sua.
Urbs felix, si vel dominis urbs illa careret,
  Vel dominis esset turpe carere fide.

Extract from Claudian.

Claudianus. [In Rufinum, I. v. 25.]

Invidiæ quondam stimulis excanduit atrox
Allecto, placidas late cum cerneret urbes.
Protinus infernas ad limina tetra sorores
Concilium deforme vocat; glomerantur in unum
Innumeræ pestes Herebi, quascunque sinistro
Nox genuit fœtu, nutrix discordia belli,
Imperiosa fames, leto vicina senectus,
Impatiensque sui morbus, livorque secundis
Anxius, et scisso mœrens velamine luctus,
Et timor, et cæco præceps audacia vultu,
Et luxus populator opum, quem semper adhærens
Infelix humili gressu comitatur egestas.

---

[1] Proh dolor urbs cecidit cujus dum specto ruinas
  Penso statum solitus dicere Roma fuit.
Ed. Beaugendre.

Extracts from Claudian.

[Claudian. in IV. Honor. Cons. v. 213.]

Si tibi Parthorum solium fortuna dedisset,
Care puer, terrisque procul venerandus Eois
Barbarus Arsacio consurgeret ore thiaras,
Sufficeret sublime genus, luxuque fluentem
Deside nobilitas posset te sola tueri;
Altera Romanæ longe rectoribus aulæ
Conditio; virtute decet non sanguine niti;
Major et utilior fato conjuncta potenti
Vile latens virtus, quid enim submissa tenebris
Proderit obscuro? veluti sine remige pupis,
Vel lira quæ reticet, vel qui non tenditur arcus.

[Claudian. in IV. Honor. Cons. v. 257.]

Tu licet extremos late dominere per Indos,
Te Medus, te mollis Arabs, te Seres adorent;
Si metuis, si prava cupis, si duceris ira,
Servitii patiere jugum, tolerabis iniquas
Interius leges; tunc omnia jure tenebis
Cum poteris rex esse tui; proclivior usus
In pejora datur, suadetque licentia luxum.

[Claudian. in IV. Honor. Cons. v. 265.]

Comprime motus,
Nec tibi quid liceat, sed quid fecisse decebit
Occurrat, mentemque domet respectus honesti;
Hoc te præterea crebro sermone monebo
Ut te totius medio telluris in ore
Vivere cognoscas, cunctis tua gentibus esse
Facta palam, nec posse dari regalibus usquam
Secretum vitiis, nam lux altissima fati
Occultum nil esse sinit, latebrasque per omnes
Inter et abstrusos explorat fama recessus.
Sis pius imprimis, nam cum vincamur in omni
Munere, sola deos æquat clementia nobis.
Nec dubie suspectus agas, neu falsus amicus
Rumorumve avidus: qui talia curat inanes
Horrebit strepitus, nulla non anxius hora.
Non sic excubiæ, non circumstantia pila,
Quam tutatur amor, non extorquebis amari.

[Ib. v. 294.]

Hoc alterna fides, hoc simplex gratia donat.
Tu civem patremque geras, tu consule cunctis,
Non tibi, nec tua te moveant sed publica vota.
In commune jubes si quid censesve tenendum;
Primus jussa subi, tunc observantior æqui
Fit populus, nec ferre negat cum viderit ipsum
Auctorem parere sibi, componitur orbis

Extract from Claudian.

Regis ad exemplum, nec sic inflectere sensus
Humanos edicta valent quam vita regentis;
Mobile mutatur semper cum principe vulgus.

Extracts from Sidonius Apollinaris.

Sidonius [Sidon. Apoll., Carm. II. v. 36.]

Excipit hic natos glacies et matris ab alvo,
Artus infantum molles nix civica durat.
Pectore vix alitur quisquis, sed ab ubere tractus
Plus potat per vulnus equum, sic lacte relicto,
Virtutem gens tota bibit; crevere parumper.
Mox pugnam ludunt jaculis, hos suggerit illis
Nutrix plaga jocos; pueri venatibus apti
Lustra feris vacuant, rapto ditata juventus
Jura colit gladii, consummatamque senectam
Non ferro finire pudet; tali ordine vitæ
Cives martis agunt.

[Sidon. Apoll., Carm. II. v. 98.]

Omittimus omnes,
Jam tu ad plectra venis, tritus cui casside crinis
Ad diadema venit, rutilum cui Cæsaris ostrum
Deposito thorace datur, sceptroque replenda
Mucrone est vacuata manus; cunabula vestra
Imperii fulsere notis et præscia tellus
Aurea converso promisit sæcula fetu.
Te nascente ferunt exorto flumina melle
Dulcatis cunctata vadis, oleique liquores
Isse per attonitas bacca pendente trapetas;
Protulit undantem segetem sine semine campus;
Et sine se natis invidit pampinus uvis.
Hibernæ rubuere rosæ, spretoque rigore
Lilia permixtis insultavere pruinis.

[Sid. Apoll., Carm. V. v. 40.]

Advolat omnis
Terra simul, tu quæque suos provincia fructus
Exponit, fert Indus ebur, Chaldæus amomum,
Assirius gemmas, Ser vellera, thura Sabæus,
Attis mel, Fenix palmas, Lacedæmon olivum,
Archas equos, Epyrus equas, pecuaria Gallus,
Arma Calibs, frumenta Libes, Campanus Iachum,
Aurum Lidus, Arabs guttam, Panchaia mirram,
Pontus castorea, blattam Tyrus, æra Corinthus,
Sardinia argentum, naves Hyspania defert.

[Sidon. Apoll., Carm. VII. v. 187.]

Quis promtior isto
Tensa cathenati summittere colla Molossi,
Et lustris recubare feras, interprete nare

Extract from Sidonius Apollinaris.

Discere, non visas et in aere quærere plantas.

[v. 202.].

Quid voluerum studium dat quas natura rapaces
In vulgus prope congnatum? quis doctior isto
Instituit varias per nubila jungere lites?
Alite vincit aves, celerique per aera plausu
Hoc nulli melius pugnator militat unguis.

Bernardus Silvestris.

[Bernardi Sylvestris, Megacosmus, lib i. MS. Laud, Misc. 515, fo. 191.]

Extract from Bernardus Sylvestris.

Ossibus extruitur elephas, dorsoque camelus
Surgit et in bubulo cornua frontis honor.
Ad cursum cervus succingitur, erigit altis
Poplitibus dammas tibia longa pedum.
Sustitit in pectus leo fortior, ursus in ungues,
Tigris atrox morsu, dente timendus aper.
Velleribus mollescit ovis, capræque maritus
Et capra vestitur asperiore toga.
Cor fervens erexit equum, dejecit asellum
Segnities, animos prægravat auris onus.
Rugiit ad prædam pardusque lupusque sititor
Sanguinis, ille nemus, hic juga montis amans.
Grandior in tauro virtus, sed parvula vulpes
Plenius angusta sub brevitate sapit.
Nascuntur servire boves, animalque timoris
Crescit in auriculas res fugitiva lepus.
Ad montes onager fugiens emancipat usum
Officiumque negat corporis ipse sui.
Morato canis ingenio vel amicior usu
Pertulit humanas extimuisse minas.
Prodit ut ignoti faciat miracula visus
Linx, liquidi fontem luminis intus habens.
Prodit et in risus hominum deformis imago
Simia naturæ degenerantis homo.
Prodit item Castor proprio de corpore velox
Reddere quas sequitur hostis avarus opes.
Cisimus obrepsit et vestitura potentes
Martrix et spolio non leviore bever.

[MS. Laud, 515, fo. 194 vo.]

Diversumque tulit variumque natatile Protheus
Obtinuit regnum squamea turba suum,
Marmorici balena sinus, delphinus aduncus
Qui mage suspecto tempore ludit aquis.

Extracts Bernardus Sylvestris.

Suspecta muræna cibus suspectior ipsa
  Congruus et causas febris echinus habet;
Morius insipidus et amico dorea gustu
  Piscis iter succo nobiliore lupus.
Ostrea sive genus quibus ampla palatia conchæ
  Quæ nova sunt quotiens luna novavit iter.
Leteus piscis, qui cujus harundine pendet
  Oblitum reddet immemoremque sui;
In venerem prurire senes vis improba stimulus,
  Quique sepulta diu surgere membra facit;
Sirenes portenta maris, vel denique multa
  Id genus æquoreos incoluere sinus.
Multa peregrinis excursibus hospita turba
  Descendit fluvios regnaque dulcis aquæ.
Concordes commune natant fluvialibus undis
  Æquorei fetus indigenæque dei.
Sturgio quadratus, mulus teres, hispida perca,
  Gardo brevis, longus barbolus, ampla plais,
Turtur rubens, salmo sapidus, præpinguis alosa,
  Lucius exactor præpositusque gravis,
Has aluit species substantia mollis aquarum
  Æthereos plures tacta calore tulit.

VI. Letter of Richard I. to Archbishop Hubert on an inquest into the fund of the ransom.

Letter of Richard I. to Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, on an inquest to be made as to the money raised for the ransom

Ricardus[1] Dei gratia etc. H. eadem gratia etc. salutem. Quod inquisitionem nostram mandavimus fieri de collecta redemptionis nostræ, non cupiditas ulla nos ad id stimulavit, sed dignum ducebamus scire qui et quantum nobis in tanto necessitatis articulo subvenisset. Et si hii qui eam receperunt optulissent nobis ea quæ acceperant, vel ultra quam reddiderint, ut si ea nobis ad nostrum beneplacitum præsentassent, nihil inde duxissemus ulterius inquirendum. Eo enim usque per Dei gratiam habundamus pecunia quod non est opus nobis materiam quærere malitiose aliquid adquirendi. Verum tamen nos prudentiæ vestræ adquiescendum ducimus et voluntatem nostram super consilio vestro postponimus eandem inquisitionem omittentes ad præsens. Acceptum autem habemus et gratias magnas referimus super hoc quod fecistis de illo qui turbabat civitatem Lundoniarum . . . quia magis putamus imminere nobis guerram a rege Franciæ quam pacem. Man-

[1] Written on the cover of the Lambeth MS.

The king directs a general summons of all holding by knight service, to go to France.

damus vobis quod faciatis omnes illos qui habent capita baroniarum suarum in Normannia transire ad partes cismarinas sine mora. Summoneatis etiam omnes illos qui debent nobis servitium militis in Anglia, præter Willelmum de Braus et Willelmum de Aubenei et barones de marchia Wallarum, quod omnes sint ad nos citra mare in Normannia proxima Dominica ante Pentecosten cum equis et armis, parati ad servitium nostrum; et veniant ita parati quod possint diu morari in servitio nostro; quod scilicet non gravent se multitudine militum, nec aliquis plures adducat quam vii. ad plus. Summoneatis etiam episcopos et abbates qui debent nobis servitium militare quod ita serviant nobis in militibus quod eos inde laudare et gratias agere debeamus. Mandamus vobis præterea quod castella nostra faciatis tradi hiis quos magister Philippus Dunelmensis electus, Walterus capellanus noster, Stephanus de Turnham, Robertus de Tregoz, Hugo de Novilla, Robertus de Veteri Ponte quem ad vos dirigimus vobis nominaverint et dixerint ex parte mea. Et nos etiam custodibus castellorum super hoc litteras nostras direximus. Si quis vero fuerit qui ad litteras nostras et præceptum nostrum ex parte nostra noluerit id facere, cum ad nos sine dilatione mittatis, quia nos idem præcipiemus ei viva voce. Vos autem gratia exempli dandi aliis, tradatis eis castellum de Windlesores in primis, ut alii libentius et facilius eis tradant ea quæ sunt in custodia sua. Verum si barones qui habent castella nostra in custodia maluerint ea vobis tradere, vos recipiatis ea, et postmodum tradatis ea hiis quos prædicti fideles et familiares vobis dixerint. Mittatis etiam nobis quam citius unquam poteritis totam pecuniam et thesaurum quem habetis. Teste me ipso apud Minehi Sancti Cari xv. die Aprilis.

Castles are to be lodged in safe hands.

[A.D. 1196.]

VII. Letter of the King on Tournaments.

Hoc est breve regis missum domino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo de concessione torneiamentorum in Anglia.

The king allows tournaments to be held in five places.

Ricardus Dei gratia rex Anglorum, dux Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ, comes Andegaviæ, venerabili in Christo patri H. Dei gratia Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, totius Angliæ primati, salutem. Sciatis nos concessisse quod torneiamenta sint in Anglia in v. placitis, inter Sarrisberiam et Wilthoniam, inter Warewicum et Kenelingeworth, inter Stanforde et Warineforde, inter Brackele et Mixebury, inter Blie et Tickhill; ita quod pax terræ nostræ non infringetur nec potestas justitiaria minorabitur,

nec de forestis nostris dampnum inferetur. Et comes qui ibi torniare voluerit dabit nobis xx. marcas, et baro x. marcas, et miles qui terram habuerit quatuor marcas, et miles qui terram non habuerit ii. marcas. Nullus autem extraneus ibi torniabit. Unde vobis mandamus quod ad diem torniamenti habeatis ibi duos clericos et duos milites vestros ad capiendum sacramentum de comitibus et baronibus quod nobis de prædicta pecunia ante torniamentum satisfacient, et quod nullum torniare permittent, antequam super hoc satisfecerit. Et inbreviari faciant quantum et a quibus receperint; et x. marcas pro carta ad opus nostrum capiatis. Unde comes Sarrisberiæ et comes de Clara et comes de Warenna plegii sunt. Teste me ipso apud Villam Episcopi, xxii. die Augusti. [A.D. 1194.]

Letter of Richard I. on the subject of tournaments.

Hæc est forma pacis servandæ a torniatoribus.

A tempore quo miles sive comes sive baro sive alius torneator movebit de domo sua versus torneiamentum et versus domum suam, nichil in via capiet in itinere sine licentia nec de cibariis nec de aliquibus vitalibus nec de aliis, set omnia necessaria sua emat per rationabile forum. Nulli etiam in via de aliquo forisfaciat, nec per se nec per suos, nec aliquem vexari permittet injuste pro posse suo vel per se vel per suos, et si aliquem delinquentem inveniet, et illud delictum non possit per se vel per suos emendare, illud emendari faciat. Et si non possit hoc emendare, ostendat baronibus qui juraverunt servare pacem domini regis de torneiatoribus, et judicio illorum emendetur.

Rules for the conduct of tournaments.

Jurandum est ab omnibus comitibus et baronibus Anglis et omnibus qui torniare voluerint quod justitiabiles erunt domino regi, capitali justitiario domini regis, et quod pacem domini regis integram et illæsam servabunt, et itineribus versus torniamenta et in torniamentis pro toto posse suo, et nominatim de foresta domini regis et de mercatis ejus, quod nullus aliquid delinquet, nec aliquis suorum forisfacere permittat; et si quid fiat injuste ostendatur hoc baronibus qui hoc juraverunt, et judicio illorum emendetur quicquid illud forisfactum est. Et si aliquis torneator federa alii debeat, vel serviens aliquis vel quicunque ille sit, ipse legalem treugam ei dabit in torniamento et in eundo et redeundo de torniamento. Et si noluerit treugam dare distringetur ad hoc vel non permittetur torniare.

Oath to be taken by the combatants.

Jurandum est etiam ab omnibus quod non torniabunt antequam domino regi de pecunia sua secundum assisam domini regis inde factam plene satisfecerint; et si invenerint aliquem torneantem qui non satisfecerit, corpus suum arestabunt et bailivo domini regis liberabunt capitali justitiæ transmittendum. P. Gloria est frequens fama cum laude.

VIII. Miscellaneous Notes in the Lambeth MS.

Extract from a letter of Celestine III. to archbishop Hubert, touching the abbot of Thorney.

Cum igitur de agro Domini lolium messem triticeam oppressurum falce sit apostolica resecandum, fraternitati tuæ per apostolica scripta mandamus quatenus si tibi constiterit de præmissis, abbate ipso tam ab administratione quam ab officio abbatiæ amoto, monachis ipsis auctoritate nostra sublato appellationis obstaculo licentiam tribuas in abbatem personam idoneam eligendi; ad hoc autem ne prædicti abbatis excessus remaneat impunitus, volumus et præsentium tibi auctoritate mandamus, quatenus auctoritate nostra ipsum capiatis et tam diu carcerali custodiæ mancipari donec super hoc nostræ receperis beneplacitum voluntatis.[1]

Septem cardinales episcopi primæ sedis hii sunt; episcopus Hostiensis, Portuensis, Albanensis, Sanctæ Rufinæ, Tusculanensis, Prænestinensis. Isti sunt septem cardinales Christi Sancti Salvatoris.

---

[1] See vol. ii. p. 151.

RADULFI DE DICETO, LUNDONIENSIS DECANI, OPERA HISTORICA.

RADULFI DE DICETO, LUNDONIENSIS DECANI, YMAGINES HISTORIARUM.

MCLXXX. Willelmus de Magnivilla comes Essexiæ, plene gratiam regis Anglorum adeptus, in plenitudine magna divitiarum et deliciarum sibi fœdere nuptiali conjunxit Hadewisam comitis Albemarlæ primogenitam. Dos igitur et donatio propter nuptias locis in pluribus, æquis passibus incedentes, hinc et inde [1] sollempniter repromissæ sunt. Albemarlensis itaque comitatus ad tuendos Normanniæ fines ab antiquo statutus et nunc dotalibus instrumentis insertus, ne quid minus a munificentia regali descenderet, cum omnibus pertinentiis suis cismarinis et transmarinis, per internuntios regis est in dotem a rege collatus. Quia vero duorum comitatuum, Essexiæ scilicet et Albemarlæ, geminati fasces in unam eandemque personam comitis Willelmi concurrunt, ut in fide conjugalis thori Willelmus de Magnivilla magna fidei sponsione devinctus semper fidelius perseveret, abhinc, dum ad regis præsentiam accessurus seorsum a cæteris voce præconia requiretur ex nomine, jure comes censendus est Albemarlæ; feliciores eventus in tempora proventuros præsagio felici sufficienter commonitus, quia dies illa sollempnis, dies nuptialis, die plenæ lunæ, die festo beati Felicis illuxit. Acta sunt hæc apud castellum Pleiseiz in Essexia nono decimo kalendas Februarii.

A.D. 1180. Marriage of the earl of Essex and the heiress of Aumâle.

He takes the title of Aumâle.

They were married at Pleshey, in Essex, Jan. 14.

[1] *et inde*] interl., A.; et hinc, B.

A.D. 1180. Conrad of Montferrat imprisons the archbishop of Mentz.

Circa dies istos Conradus, filius marchionis de Monteferario, Christianum archipræsulem Maguntinum et archicancellarium imperatoris in Italia conjecit in vinculis, in rupe Sanctæ Cristinæ.

The Jews in France imprisoned and ransomed, Jan. 18.

Mandato Philippi regis Francorum Judæi, quocunque loco per Franciam domicilium contraxissent, dum sabbatizarent et in nullo regem offenderent, xv^to^ kalendas Februarii sunt artæ mancipati custodiæ; sed tandem, xv. milia marcarum fisco solventes, quasi beneficio restitutionis in integrum respirarunt.

Henry apprehending an attack from Philip, sends ambassadors to Paris, Mar. 5.

Quoniam sub principe novo, sub rege puero, consilia malignantium fortius invalescunt, ne quid regi Francorum Philippo Franci suggererent in injuriam Normannorum, quorum finitimis semper est suspecta potestas et per orbem terrarum gloria prædicabilis, rex Anglorum Henricus occurrendum in tempore maturiore consilio procuravit. Cujus rei curam ad regis instantiam Ricardus Wintoniensis episcopus in se suscipiens, tertio nonas Martii transfretavit, secum habens legationis consortem magistrum Walterum de Constantiis sigillarium regis. Qui venientes Parisius Ludovicum regem pressum senio reppererunt ægritudinis decumbentem in lecto.

They find Lewis VII. sick.

The clergy of Limoges elect a bishop without permission of Henry and Richard.

Clerici Lemovicenses, citra conscientiam et assensum Henrici regis Anglorum et Ricardi ducis Aquitanorum, Sebrandum[1] ecclesiæ Pictavensis decanum in episcopum elegerunt. In ultionem talis excessus eorum bona confiscata sunt, domus subversæ, succisæ vites. Quod dum ad Alexandri papæ noticiam pervenisset, dedit in mandatis archiepiscopo Byturicensi Guarino,[2] quatinus de causa cognosceret, et mediante justicia terminaret. Venientes ad archiepiscopum clerici Lemovicenses eum mortuum invenerunt. Sed, ne laborasse viderentur in vanum, archipresbiter Brivatensis domini papæ litteras

The archbishop of Bourges, empowered to hear the case, dies.

[1] *Sebrandum*] Sebrand de Chabot, bishop of Limoges, 1179–1197 or 1198.

[2] *Guarino*] Guarin de Girardo, archbishop of Bourges, 1174–1180.

adhuc clausas inseruit manui defuncti, dicens, "Quod " non potuit vivus, expleat vel defunctus."[1] Cujus et meritis et intercessione, sicut dicitur, pacem regis et ducis episcopus Lemovicensis emeruit. A.D. 1180. Peace restored by his merits and mediation.

Henricus rex filius regis venit in Angliam kalendis Aprilis, et cum honore maximo receptus a patre, reliquiis præsentibus sacrosanctis, juravit apud Radingam, quod dispositionem paternam in omnibus sequeretur, vel in donatione villarum, vel castellorum, vel beneficiorum quorumlibet, quæ præsenti quadam continebantur in carta. Quo facto, rex pater apud Portesmue, rex filius apud Doveram transfretaverunt. Rex autem pater in urbe Cenomannica Pascha proximum celebravit. The young Henry comes to England, April 1; and both the kings then go to France. The elder keeps Easter at Le Mans.

Philippus rex Francorum, Margaritam[2] filiam Baldewini comitis Hainaucensium, ex Margarita sorore Philippi Flandrensium comitis, duxit uxorem apud Truncum. Nuptiæ celebratæ sunt apud Batpaumes. Quid igitur in expletione matrimonii tam sollempnis memoriæ commendandum audivimus; a locorum nominibus res ibi gestæ frequenter inditos de supernis sortiuntur eventus. Quid itaque Balac filius Sephor dixerit Balaam filio Beor recordare; dixit enim complosis manibus; "Ad maledicendum inimicis meis vocavi te, quibus " e contrario tertio benedixisti." Nos igitur si per Truncum fœcunditatem in sobole, si per manus complosas gaudium maritali sub fœdere præsignari dixerimus, attonitos forsitan auditores reddemus. Henricus Silvanectensis episcopus tam apud Truncum, quam apud Batpaumes celebravit divina. Marriage of Philip with the daughter of the count of Hainault. Numbers, xxiv. 10. Omens from the places of the marriage.

Guido Senonensis[3] archiepiscopus Margaritam Philippo regi[4] conjugatam unxit in reginam apud Sanctum Dionisium, die scilicet Ascensionis. Astiterunt autem ei suffraganei Mauricius Parisiacensis, Manases Aurelianensis. Anointing of the queen of France, May 29.

---

[1] *defunctus*] mortuus, B.

[2] *Margaritam*] generally known as Isabella, daughter of Baldwin V.

[3] *Senonensis*] Senecensis, B.

[4] *regi*] Francorum, ins. C.

A.D. 1180. Lewis deprived of his seal.

Ludovicus rex Francorum, quia jus suum et potestatem in Philippum regem transtulerat, ne quid in regno statueret citra filii conscientiam, sigilli sui potestate privatus est.

Quarrel of Philip and his mother.

Inter regem Philippum et matrem suam Alam ortis adinvicem inimicitiis, castella, quæ nomine donationis propter nuptias fuerant reginæ collata, de regis mandato regis invaserunt ministri, custodibus castellorum violenter ejectis. Sed postmodum rex et mater ad arbitrium regis Anglorum concordiam inierunt, in colloquio quod habitum est inter ipsos reges prope Gisortium vigilia scilicet apostolorum.

Reconciled by Henry II., June 28.

Renewal of the treaty of Ivri between Henry and Philip, June 28.

" Ego Philippus Dei gratia rex Francorum, et ego Henricus
" eadem gratia rex Anglorum, ad omnium volumus tam præ-
" sentium quam futurorum pervenire noticiam, quod fœdus
" et amicitiam fide media et sacramento innovavimus, quam
" dominus meus rex Francorum, et ego Henricus rex Anglo-
" rum firmaveramus inter nos apud Iveri in præsentia Petri
" cardinalis et Ricardi Wintoniensis episcopi; et ut inter nos
" tollatur amodo omnis materia discordiæ, concessimus adin-
" vicem, quod de terris et possessionibus, et de omnibus aliis
" rebus quas habemus modo alter adversus alterum, nichil
" amodo petet, excepto eo de Arvernia, de quo inter nos est
" contentio, et excepto feodo de Castro Radulfi, et exceptis
" minutis feodis et divisis terrarum nostrarum de Berri, si
" homines nostri quid inde interceperint, vel inter se vel ad-
" versus alterum nostrum. Si autem super his quæ superius
" excepta sunt per nosmet ipsos convenire non poterimus, ego
" Philippus rex Francorum elegi tres episcopos et tres barones,
" et ego Henricus elegi tres episcopos et tres barones, qui hoc
" inter nos dicent, et nos eorum dicto bona fide firmiter stabi-
" mus. Hæc autem omnia suprascripta nos observaturos et
" fide et sacramento promisimus. Acta sunt hæc iiii^to kalendas
" Julii inter Gisortium et Triam."[1]

The count of Chalons and the lord of Beaujeu,

Comes Cabillonensis et Hubertus de Bellojoco[2] conspiraverunt adversus abbatem Cluniacensem, et adversus

[1] *Ego Philippus . . . Triam*] An abstract of the treaty given in full in the Chronicle of Benedict, i. 247, 248. MS. B. here inserts in the margin, "Baldewinus Fordensis ab-
" bas, Wigornensis electus, conse-
" cratus est a Ricardo Cantuariensi
" archiepiscopo festo Sancti Lau-
" rentii apud . . ."

[2] *Bellojoco*] Belloloco, Twysden, from MS. D. Humbert III., lord of Beaujolais, 1174-1202: the count of Chalons is William II., 1168-1203.

plures in partibus illis ecclesiarum et cœnobiorum prælatos. Ad quorum tirannidem reprimendam Philippus rex Francorum auxiliis undique congregatis movit exercitum. Cujus ad votum cum omnia successissent, et paci providisset ecclesiarum, reversus est. A.D. 1180. reduced by Philip.

Ludovicus rex Francorum gravi tactus infirmitate Parisius, quicquid in auro vel argento, quicquid in gemmis vel anulis, quicquid in vestibus preciosis vel ornamentis regalibus possidebat, coram se jussit afferri. Sicque juxta consilium episcopi Parisiensis et duorum abbatum[1] Sancti Germani, Sanctæ Genovefæ, pauperibus erogari præcepit. Qui quartodecimo kalendas Octobris diem clausit extremum, sepultus in monasterium Cisterciensis ordinis quod vocatur Barbellum, quod ipse propriis sumptibus ædificaverat. Lewis VII. divides his goods to the poor, and dies, Sept. 13.

Philippus Aymari, natione Turonicus, mandato regis in Angliam veniens, nummismatis innovandi procurationem suscepit. Hyemali siquidem festo beati Martini, moneta veteri reprobata, nummus in forma rotunda commerciis hominum passim est per regnum expositus. Philippus itaque dum fisci commodis totus invigilare deberet, et debita cohercione retundere falsariorum argutias, de culpa lata monetariorum graviter accusatus, si regiam indignationem evasit, indulgentia principis liberatus a pœna, revocatus a rege sine nota minime repatriavit. Philip Aymar appointed to reform the coinage. New coinage, Nov. 11. Philip accused and recalled.

MCLXXXI. Quatuor reges in uno prælio simul legimus corruisse, sed quatuor reges ad unum colloquium pacificos convenisse, pacificos recessisse,[2] perraro repperimus. Philippus rex Francorum, rex Anglorum Henricus, rex Henricus filius regis Anglorum, rex Scottorum Willelmus, ad colloquium pacifici convenerunt, pacifici recesserunt. A.D. 1181 Meeting of four kings.

Rex Francorum Philippus suo commorantium in Philip is advised to

[1] *duorum abbatum*] trium abbatum, Sancti Victoris, B.

[2] *pacificos recessisse*] om. B.

A.D. 1181. imitate the policy of Henry II. in the government of his realm.

palatio crebris inculcationibus frequenter accepit, qualiter rex Anglorum Henricus regnum suum tam late diffusum, a tam barbaris nationibus Scotis videlicet et Walensibus inhabitatum, ex ultima parte pacifice gubernaret; ut igitur in amministratione regni tanti principis informaretur exemplo, de sententia communi domesticorum inclinatior trahebatur, ut prædicti regis consilio se totum supponeret; quod et factum est.

The king returns to England, July 25.

Rex pater Anglorum, cum totam Normanniam filii sui regis dispositioni supponeret, et ad nutum ejusdem filii ministros in ea constitueret, et eundem filium Philippi regis Francorum, si necessitas id exigeret, protectorem relinqueret, omnibus provinciis ad suam jurisdictionem spectantibus pro voluntate sua compositis et bona pace gaudentibus, in Angliam rediit viii° kalendas Augusti, Sanctum Thomam visitans orationum causa.[1]

Philip of Flanders, jealous of the influence of Henry, forms a league against the king of France. He negotiates with the emperor.

Philippus comes Flandrensium, audiens qualiter rex Francorum Philippus, rex Anglorum Henricus confœderati fuissent, quotquot Francorum, quotquot Flandrensium potuit, adversarios suscitavit domino suo ligio; rem eo devenisse prænuncians, ut eorum munitiones vel subverterentur vel pro regis arbitrio deputarentur custodiæ. Fredericum etiam imperatorem Romanum, nunc per nuntios, nunc in propria persona sollicitavit attentius, ut adversus regem Francorum insurgeret, et imperii limites dilataret usque scilicet ad mare Britannicum. Comes itaque Philippus domini sui regis non respiciens ad ætatem, et immemor sacramenti quod sub audientia tot et tantorum Ludovico regi præstiterat de filio suo rege custodiendo, protegendo, legaliter instruendo, quanto potuit exercitu congregato Noviomenses attrivit, fines Silvanectensium depopulatus est, succendit villas, vineas exstirpavit.

Ravages Noyon and Senlis.

[1] *causa*] Here B. inserts the paragraph "Humbaldus . . . iii^{tius}," p. 9, below.

A.D. 1181. The count of Sancerre does homage to Flanders for the castle of S. Brice.

Comes Stephanus,[1] castelli dominus quod Sacrum Cæsaris appellatur, jus naturæ transgrediens, sic ad injuriam regis Francorum nepotis sui tirannidem exercere decrevit, ut ad diminutionem regiæ dignitatis castellum Sancti Bricii, quod allodii jure fuerat ab antiquo possessum, comitis Flandrensis dominationi subiceret, et homagium faciens prædicto comiti de præfato castello, quod prius liberum fuerat inverecundius tanquam in servitutem redigeret.

Pope Lucius III. elected.

Humbaldus Hostiensis episcopus electus in apostolicum vocatus est Lucius papa tertius.

Henry's sons maintain the cause of Philip.

Henricus rex filius regis, dux Aquitanorum Ricardus, Gaufridus dux Britonum, fœcundæ matris gloria memorialis, absentiam patris sui regis Anglorum virtute magna supplere volentes, ut consiliis malignantium, innocentiam Philippi regis Francorum opprimere nequiter intendentium, viribus totis occurrerent, copiosum undique congregarunt exercitum, et viribus junctis ad auxilium prædicti regis unanimiter accurrerunt. Comitem itaque Stephanum, castelli quod dicitur Sacrum Cæsaris dominum execrabilem, edomare prima facie decreverunt. Cujus bona, villæ, castella, possessiones, intra paucos dies cesserunt in direptionem. Juga boum circiter quinque milia data sunt Brebantinis in prædam. Cum itaque prædictus comes viribus esset inferior et regibus nequiret resistere, nepotis sui regis provolutus ad pedes, delicti veniam humiliter impetravit. Inde progredientes duo reges et sui, ducem Burgundiæ, Campaniæ comitissam, utriusque regis sororem, et eorum complices, viribus impares dampnis affecerunt gravissimis. Inde regredientes Flandrensium comitem retrocedere compulerunt. Qui veritus a facie regis Henrici filii regis Anglorum intra castellum de Crespi sese recepit, et nisi consilia familiarium regis Anglorum fraudulenta, sicut dicitur, præpedissent, in castello

They reduce the count of Sancerre to submission.

They attack the duke of Burgundy and the countess of Champagne.

The count of Flanders shuts himself up at Crèpy.

[1] Stephen of Champagne, count of Sancerre, 1152–1191.

A.D. 1181. conclusus pro penuria victualium intra dies paucissimos coactus fuisset ad deditionem.

The archbishop of York dies, Nov. 20.

Rogerus Eboracensis archiepiscopus viam universæ carnis ingressus est duodecimo kalendas Decembris.

A.D. 1182. Geoffrey, bishop elect of Lincoln, resigns his see, Jan. 6, at Marlborough, and is made chancellor.

MCLXXXII. Gaufridus Henrici regis Anglorum filius, ecclesiæ Lincolniensis electus, cum a domino papa fuisset ejus electio confirmata, cum eidem ecclesiæ per vii. annos pacifice præfuisset, et ecclesiæ bona disposuisset pro velle, nec ei quæstio moveretur in aliquo, præsentibus tam rege, tam archiepiscopo quam episcopis pluribus, electioni sponte renunciavit apud Merlebergam in Epiphania Domini. Qui prius a patre suo, fratre suo rege consentiente, fuerat sollempniter institutus Angliæ cancellarius.

The king makes his will at Bishop's Waltham;

Rex Anglorum Henricus, ætatis annum inchoans quadragesimum nonum, dum mentis et corporis incolumitate vigeret, dum regnum suum undique tranquillæ pacis commoditatibus frueretur, apud Waltham episcopi Wintoniensis [1] regni convocavit majores. Itaque præsentibus illis et approbantibus quamdam pecuniæ suæ partem in causas pias erogare decrevit, necessitatibus Jerosolimitanorum inprimis propensius providere procurans. Quadraginta siquidem duo milia marcarum argenti, quingentas marcas auri, distribuit. Quo facto, quinto nonas Martii transfretavit apud Portesmue.

and sails from Portsmouth, Mar. 3.

Meeting of kings at Senlis after April 4.

Rex Francorum Philippus, reges Anglorum tam pater quam filius, Philippus comes Flandrensis, et qui consiliis ejus passim in regno Franciæ a fidelitate domini sui recesserant, post clausum Pascha Silvanectis convenerunt. Henricus Albanensis [2] episcopus domini papæ legatus interfuit; Willelmus quoque Remorum

[1] Henry's will, dated 1182, at Bishop's Waltham, is printed in the Fœdera, i. 47, from a MS. among the Records of the King's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. It is also given in the Chronicle of Gervase, c. 1459.

[2] Henry, cardinal bishop of Albano, 1179–1188.

archiepiscopus et episcopi multi. Quid actum sit ibi docebunt sequentia. A.D. 1182. April.

Letter from the king to the bishop of Winchester, reporting the results of the conference at Senlis.

"Rex Anglorum Ricardo Wintoniensi episcopo salutem. "Philippus comes Flandrensis reddidit regi Francorum "Perefont, et rex idem castrum episcopo Suessionensi,[1] et epi- "scopus Agathæ quæ fuit uxor Hugonis de Oisi, quod eam "hæreditarie contingit tenendum de ipso episcopo, et episco- "pus de rege. Civitas quoque Ambianis concessione regis "Francorum remanet episcopo Ambianensi de ipso rege te- "nenda, et si comes Flandrensis quicquam in ea calumpnia- "bitur, episcopus Ambianensis inde ipsi comiti plenitudi- "nem justitiæ in curia sua vel curia regis exhibebit. Comes "Claremontis[2] et Radulfus de Chuci[3] remanent ex toto in "manu regis Francorum liberi omnino a comite Flandriæ. "Philippus quoque comes Flandrensis clamavit quietum re- "gem Henricum filium meum de omnibus conventionibus quæ "inter eos erant. Concessit etiam ut barones Flandrenses ple- "narie faciant michi servicium meum quod michi debent de "feodo quod de me tenent, et quod feoda illa sine recupera- "tione amittant, nisi servicia mea michi fecerint. Convenit "etiam ibidem inter nos, quod nullus ex suis amittet terram "in Flandria propter servicium meum, si mihi servire in ter- "ram meam venerit. Omnibus igitur ad pacem reductis, "quotquot a fidelitate regis Francorum recesserant, consilio "regis Anglorum et opera, redierunt in ejus ligantiam. "Damna tam hinc quam illinc illata mutua compensatione "deleta sunt."[4]

Events at Constantinople.

Johannes Porphirogenitus imperator Constantinopolitanus apud Antiochiam veneno periit, duos filios relinquens superstites. Manuel filius junior favore Græcorum factus est imperator. Primogenitus disparuit, filium habens Andronicum. Circa dies istos, cum Manuel per annos circiter xl^ta^ regnasset, Constantinopoli moritur, Alexium, quem ex filia Reimundi principis Antiochiæ procreaverat, successorem relinquens. Andronicus prædictus pace simulata Constantinopolim venit, Alexio fidelitatem in ecclesia Sanctæ Sophiæ

Appearance of Andronicus.

---

[1] Nevelon de Cherisy, bishop of Soissons, 1176–1207.

[2] *Claremontis*] Clarimontis, B.

[3] *Chuci*] Cusci, B.

[4] *deleta sunt*] delentur, B.

A.D. 1182. History of Andronicus.

juravit, ejusque capiti regni diadema præsentibus cunctis imposuit, eumque scapulis suis impositum per mediam civitatem equitatorio more portavit. Post aliquantulum temporis Andronicus mutato consilio Prothosalvaston[1] crudeli morte peremit, imperatricem, Alexii scilicet matrem, extinxit, quotquot imperatori Manueli fideles esse cognoverat interfecit, imperium usurpavit, Alexium ut fertur submersit, uxorem ejus Agnetem, Ludovici scilicet Francorum regis filiam, sibi matrimonio copulavit.

He marries Agnes of France.

Archbishop Roger's plate is seized by the king after his death.

Rogerus Eboracensis archiepiscopus,[2] dum adhuc viveret, ab Alexandro papa privilegium impetravit, quod si quis clericus suæ jurisdictioni suppositus agens in extremis testamentum conficeret, sed propriis manibus bona propria non distribueret, iniciendi manus in bona defuncti facultas esset archiepiscopi. Quoniam itaque "quod quisque juris in alterum statuerit, uti debet "eodem jure,"[3] post mortem archiepiscopi quæcunque reperta sunt suis in archivis reposita justo Dei judicio confiscata sunt, quorum summa fuit undecim milia librarum argenti monetæ veteris, et aurei trecenti, una cuppa aurea, vii. argenteæ, ciffi novem argentei, tres cuppæ manzerinæ, tria salsaria argentea, xl^ta^ cocleária argentea, octo scutellæ argenteæ, discus magnus argenteus, pelves argenteæ.

War between Henry of Saxony and Philip of Cologne.

Henricus dux Saxonum, Matildem filiam regis Anglorum primogenitam habens in conjugem, insurrexit in Philippum Coloniensem archiepiscopum,[4] et cum

[1] *Prothosalvaston*] Alexius Comnenus, son of Andronicus Sebastocrator, son of the emperor John; himself protovestiarius and protosebastos; called in Benedict and Hoveden the lover of the empress. See Du Cange, Fam. Byz., p. 182; Bened., i. 250, 251; Hoveden, ii. 201.

[2] "Iste Rogerus episcopus Ebo-"racensis fuit maximus inimicus "Sancti Thomæ, ut patet in epistolis Sancti Thomæ:" A. in a late hand. The archbishop died Nov. 20, 1181. See above, p. 10.

[3] Digest. lib. ii. tit. ii. in princ.

[4] Philip of Heinsberg, 1167–1191.

enormibus damnis affecit. Archiepiscopus copiis undique congregatis viriliter duci restitit, imperatoris auxilium adeptus et gratiam. Res tandem eo processit, ut principum totius imperii calculo sententiali prolato, dux exilium cogeretur subire. Qui veniens in Normanniam ad socerum suum, habens secum ducissam, habens et duos filios Henricum et Ottonem, habens et filiam nubilem,—tertius namque filius Lotharius[1] nomine remanserat in Teutonica,—receptus est honorifice, plusquam per tres annos continuos abundanter exhibitus profusioribus epulis et regali munificentia.

A.D. 1182. Henry the Lion is condemned to exile.

He lives for three years in Normandy.

Galterus Rofensis episcopus obiit.[2]

The bishop of Rochester dies.

Ricardus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus vi°[3] idus Octobris quamplurimis undique viris concurrentibus religiosis in Rofensi capitulo præsidens, pontificis inibi canonice substituendi gerebat in animo sollicitudinem. Prior igitur et conventus ecclesiæ Rofensis, ab archiepiscopo petita licentia, quibuslibet aliis a collegio suo semotis, sese quodam in salutatorio receperunt, consilium habituri communiter; ubi vota votis forsan contraria diem diutius protraxerunt. In electione tandem episcopi forma, quondam a patribus orthodoxis generaliter introducta, sic observata fuit ea die districtius, ut emendicatis aliunde suffragiis uterentur Rofenses. Post longos namque tractatus habitos separatim cum diversis sæpe personis, Gualerammum Bajocensem archidiaconum, allateralem archiepiscopi clericumque domesticum, archiepiscopo, sicut diximus, in capitulo præsidente, sollempniter elegerunt. Archiepiscopus autem, evangelii textum in manibus habens, in spiritualibus curam episcopatus commisit electo, per anulum etiam eundem electum instituit regalium possessorem.

Election of a bishop at Rochester, Oct. 10.

Waleran archdeacon of Bayeux chosen.

---

[1] Lothar, the third son of Henry the Lion and Matilda, died at Angsburg in 1190.

[2] Walter, bishop of Rochester, 1148–1182; d. July 26.

[3] *vi°*] vii°, C., Twysden; an erasure in A.

A.D. 1182. Dependence of Rochester on Canterbury feudal as well as ecclesiastical.

Præsens erat ibi regni justiciarius, in institutione Rofensis episcopi, regi nil vendicans. Nam si consuetudo memoriam hominum susumversum excedens diligentius exquiratur, profecto reperies quod Rofensis episcopus, non ut alii per regnum episcopi vel abbates, in regiis præstationibus regi seu vicecomiti tenetur obnoxius, quinimmo dumtaxat archiepiscopo soli, vel officialibus suis in quibuslibet functionibus publicis pro tempore satisfaciet.

Consecration of the bishop of Rochester, Dec. 19, at Lisieux.

Ricardus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, necessariis ecclesiæ suæ causis urgentibus, transfretavit apud Doveram idus Novembris, et in sabbato sequentis decimi mensis[1] Rofensem electum ordinavit presbiterum, et sequenti die Dominica eundem episcopum apud Lexovium consecravit.[2]

A.D. 1183. Walter of Coutances elected bishop of Lincoln, May 8.

M°C°LXXX°III°. Canonici Lincolnienses, edictis sibi propositis tam a rege quam ab archiepiscopo, die Dominica qua cantatur "Jubilate," convenerunt in capitulo Lincolniæ. Quibus ibi tractatum communem habentibus, de consilio matris suæ longo tempore jam vacantis, Walterus de Constantiis, ejusdem loci canonicus et archidiaconus Oxenefordensis, a canonicis qui præsentes tunc aderant, præsentibus regis et archiepiscopi nunciis, communiter est in episcopum Lincolniensem electus. Sed quoniam rex, archiepiscopus, Walterus, tunc temporis agebant in transmarinis, de communi fratrum decreto quid actum fuerat in capitulo directis nunciis ad eos perlatum est. Electione sollempniter confirmata, de permissione Cantuariensis archiepiscopi Johannes Ebroicensis episcopus prædictum electum presbiterum ordinavit in sabbato Pentecostes, quem

He is ordained priest, June 11.

[1] *decimi mensis*] December. The bishop was ordained on the 18th, and consecrated on the 19th. See Gervase, Chron. c. 1464.

[2] *eundem . . . consecravit*] consecravit eundem episcopum aput Lexovium, B. D.

postmodum Cantuariensis archiepiscopus episcopum consecravit Andegavis in ecclesia Sancti Laudi.[1] A.D. 1183. He is consecrated at Angers.

De morte regis Henrici filii regis Henrici.[2]

Fulco Rufus filius Ingelgerii.

Fulco Bonus filius Fulconis Rufi.

Fulco Nerra filius Mauricii comitis.

QUINQUE FULCONES FUERANT COMITES IN ANDEGAVIA. Pedigree of the house of Anjou.

Fulco Rechin filius Alberici comitis de Gastineis.

Fulco filius Fulconis Rechin affinitate conjunctus est Helyæ comiti Cenomannensium, Sibillam filiam ejus unicam et hæredem ducens uxorem. Ex qua genuit Galfridum Plantegenest, tam patris quam avi materni legitimum successorem. In matrimonio comitis Sibilla defuncta, ne quid ipsi Fulconi deesset ad gloriam, cum nominis sui fama per orbem latius clarescceret, a regni Jerosolimitani principibus unanimiter evocatus, in solio David magni regis sollempniter[3] collocatus est, Milesendem Baldewini secundi regis filiam unicam et hæredem uxorem accipiens; ex qua duos genuit filios, post patrem ordine successorio reges in Jerusalem, Baldewinum et Amalricum. Galfridus magnanimitate Fulk king of Jerusalem.

[1] *Laudi*] Here MS. C. inserts: "Obiit Simon abbas ecclesiæ "Sancti Albani decimus nonus. "Guarinus abbas ecclesiæ Sancti "Albani vicesimus."

[2] The following passage, down to "tumulatur," is printed in the Chroniques d'Anjou, i. 340–346, with the other extracts relating to the family of the counts: the remainder of the history there given, the passage "de senescalcia," is an extract from Robert de Monte, sub A.D. 1169. Whether the passage in the text could have been the original composition of our author, it is not easy to decide: for there could be no reason for him, writing after the death of Henry and Geoffrey, and indeed introducing this matter as prefatory to his account of Henry's death, to speak in the present tense of their surviving and flourishing. But it is not at present in my power to assign the passage to an earlier authority. The language in many places is a mere repetition of that used above in the chronological order of events.

[3] Compare the words above, vol. i. p. 243.

A.D. 1128. History of Geoffrey Plantagenet.

Fulconis et industria roboratus, adeo paternis successibus incitatus est, ut et ipse de semine regio comparem affectaret sibi fœdere nuptiali jungendam. Matildem itaque regis Anglorum Henrici primi filiam unicam et hæredem accepit uxorem. Quæ cum prius Henrico nupsisset imperatori, terque cum ipso pariter in consortium imperatoriæ majestatis Romæ coronata fuisset, licet ex eo prolem aliquam non sustulerit, nichilominus tamen post mortem imperatoris de mariti prærogativa semper enituit, quoad vixit sibi nomen retinens imperatricis. Igitur ex imperatrice Galfridus comes procreavit Henricum secundum. Qui cum ætatis annum ageret decimum quintum cingulo militari donatus est ab avunculo matris suæ David rege Scotorum apud Karluil in festo Pentecostes.[1] Ætatis anno xvii° ducatum adeptus est Normanniæ, quam pater suus viribus Andegavorum accinctus de manibus Stephani regis Anglorum potenter extorserat. Galfridus comes in ætate virili feliciter undequaque triumphans lectum incidit ægritudinis, inque solo materno sibi locum eligens sepulturæ, dum apud castrum Lidii diem clausisset extremum, sepultus est Cenomannis in ecclesia Sancti Juliani.[2] Mortuo Galfrido, filius ejus Henricus, ætatis annum inchoans xix^mum^, Willelmi comitis Pictavensium primogenitam Alienor, alienatam a thoro Ludovici regis Francorum et sub examine Samsonis Remorum archiepiscopi propter cognationem disjunctam, sibi thori participem sociavit, cum ea simul Aquitannici ducatus optinens principatum. Postmodum Henricus secundus, a nativitate sua xx^ti^ ii^obus^ annis fere decursis, post mortem Stephani regis in regem Anglorum consecratus est. Et ut titulos plures ab antecessoribus emanantes sub una clausula sub unius persona complectamur paucissimis, Henricus rex Anglorum, dux Normannorum et Aquitannorum et comes Ande-

Henry II.

His inheritance and acquisitions.

His marriage.

He becomes king.

His titles.

[1] See above, vol. i. p. 291.

[2] See above, vol. i. p. 293.

gavensium, avo materno tam in sobole procreanda quam in sobole numerosa multo felicior, ex legitimo matrimonio sex filios sustulit, et tres filias, fœcunditatem matris Alienor alienis etiam generationibus prædicabilem offerentes. Ex filiis autem duobus in pueritia sublatis de medio, quatuor et superstites et incolumes in spem magnam virium exercendarum succrescunt, et in hostibus prosternendis et mores antecessorum et actus imitari non cessant, et in nationibus diversis per orbem quæ juxta dispositionem paternam suo regimini deputantur, cum moderatione justitiæ virgam directionis assumere strenuis repromittunt operibus. Henricus horum quatuor primogenitus in regem Angliæ consecratus est. Ricardus comes Pictaviensis est assignatus a patre. Galfridus totius Britanniæ nactus est principatum. Johannes de promissione patris et provisione securus diversas Hyberniæ portiones, si desuper ei datum fuerit, in monarchiam reducet. Filiæ vero tres regis, ut diximus, et Alienor, alienationem a nativo solo forsitan eo sustinent æquanimius, quod de semine regio procreatæ nupserint regiæ stirpis viris illustribus. Quorum nomina licet subticeam, populos quibus præsunt præterire non convenit. Hinc etenim Saxones, hinc Hyspanos, hinc Siculos, debita cohercione refrænant. Inter hos itaque populos victu, vestitu, moribus, habitatione tam remotos ab Anglia filias regis Angliæ commorantes barbaries saxea Saxonum, dubius Hyspanorum sub[1] Agarenis conflictus, tyrannis effera Siculorum, poterant in continuum horrorem inducere, nisi generositas aviæ suæ Matildis imperatricis, et in ejus fœmineo corpore virile pectus neptibus suis tolerantiæ semitas, et apertas patientiæ vias imitabiles præmonstrassent. Sed ut sexus infirmior in aliquo firmius relevaret filias Alienor, alienum aerem sub annis tenerrimis imbiberunt,

A.D. 1183. Sons of Henry and Eleanor.

Their three daughters.

[1] *sub*] cum, B.

85

A.D. 1183. Henry's provident care for his children.

ibidem enutritæ salubrius, diversitatem quoque facilius alienarum sunt edoctæ linguarum. Cum igitur ad nutum regis patris sors humana fere responderet in singulis, ne quid consentaneum paci præteriret intactum, suæ studuit posteritati prospicere. De pace namque firmius inter filios statuenda sollicitus, et fraternum discidium generationibus multis naturaliter insitum evitare procurans, regem filium petiit ut de ducatu sinus Armorici, quem Galfridus frater suus cum Constantia filia Conani comitis unica simul et hærede legitima dotis nomine possidebat, homagium ejus reciperet et ligantiam. Hoc etenim vinculo debitæ subjectionis exhibitorio, de liberalitate regum Franciæ, comites Britanniæ ducibus Normannorum ab antiquis temporibus tenentur astricti. Quod pater petiit factum est Andegavis. Postmodum ad hoc potius pater operam dedit operosissimam, ut idem rex filius Ricardo fratri suo ducatum concederet Aquitaniæ, tam ab ipso Ricardo quam a suis hæredibus tractu temporis irrefragabiliter possidendum. Tunc demum rex filius patri suo patenter ostendit se baronibus Aquitanicis contra Ricardum fratrem suum confœderationibus multis astrictum. Inductus ea fuerat occasione quod Ricardus castellum de Clerevals[1] a retroactis temporibus constitutum sub ditione comitum Andegavensium, in injuriam suam munitionibus multis contra suam firmaverat voluntatem. Sed ne patris indignationem incurreret, quod pater petebat se facturum spopondit apud Mirabellum,[2] dummodo Ricardus, homagio sibi præstito, ligantia facta, fidelitatem sibi tactis sacrosanctis reliquiis repromitteret. Ad hanc vocem Ricardus vehementer excanduit, incongruum esse dicens, ut dicitur, cum eodem ex patre, cum eadem ex matre, traxisset originem, si fratrem primogenitum aliqua specie subjectionis superiorem agnosceret, sed sicut ipsi fratri suo regi lege

Geoffrey does homage to his eldest brother.

The young king leagued with the barons of Aquitaine against Richard.

Richard declines to do homage to his brother.

[1] *Clerevals*] Clerevaus, D.

[2] *Mirabellum*] Mirabelis, C.

primogenitorum bona debebantur paterna, sic in bonis maternis æqua lance successionem legitimam vendicabat. Rex pater hoc audiens, iracundiæ calore succensus, adversus Ricardum dura proposuit, et ut ad edomandam Ricardi superbiam rex filius totus insurgeret instanter indixit. Galfridum quoque Britanniæ ducem, ut cum fratre suo rege, domino suo ligio, fideliter staret commonuit. Sic rex filius movit arma non insurgens in patrem, sicut asserebat constanter, sed Pictaviensibus veniens in auxilium, quos Ricardus indebitis vexationibus et violenta dominatione premebat; Pictaviensibus, inquam, qui de jure communi se suo subdendos regimini, nec alicui fratrum suorum eo superstite contendebant. Habitis itaque frequenter inter se colloquiis, cum nulla spes haberetur de pace, copiosum rex filius undique congregavit exercitum, et a facie patris sui declinans, ad quem de jure noverat tuitionem Aquitannicæ regionis spectare dum viveret, dum infra paucos dies cum Ricardo fratre suo prima facie, cum etiam auxiliariis suis quicunque, vel quanticunque, vel quotquot essent, congredi decrevisset, ejus vita velut a texente præcisa spem multorum præcidit sub ipso militantium, et expectantium post mortem patris regnare cum ipso; siquidem in flore suæ juventutis, cum a nativitate sua complesset xxviii. annum additis quatuordecim septimanis et sex diebus, intra Gasconiam, in illo tractu terræ quæ Turoinna dicitur, apud castellum Martel, inter populos satis barbaros, in festo Sancti Barnabæ, communi sorte rex filius est subtractus de medio,[1] sententiam illam judicio prudentium virorum approbandam relinquens, quæ filios dum insurgunt in patres quibus debent quod sunt, quod vivunt, quod bonis expectant locupletari paternis, dignos exhæredatione pronuntiat.

A.D. 1183. The king urges Henry and Geoffrey to attack Richard.

Henry declares himself the ally of the Poictevins.

His death, June 11.

The moral lesson.

[1] Here Twysden has in the margin a rubric, from C., "Moritur rex "Henricus regis Henrici filius anno "ætatis suæ vicesimo octavo." This is not in MS. A. or D. The rubric in B. is "De morte Henrici "filii regis."

A.D. 1183. Reflexions on the history of rebellious sons.

Itaque si varios casus regnorum, si rebelliones illicitas filiorum temerariis ausibus insurgentium in parentes intersertas annalibus diligenter revolveris, profecto repperies filios post patrum inquietationes, vel ordine mortalitatis turbato fati munus implesse; vel si quis eorum forte patri successerit, confidenter asserimus, quod paternam hæreditatem ad quam venire per incendia, per depopulationes, per homicidia maturavit præpropere, suum ad filium non transmisit, digna factis recipiens, ut qui patris sui vitam et nomen conatus est prorsus extinguere, cum filiis et in filiis totus insimul pereat, sui seminis etiam obliterata memoria, dampnetur post mortem.

The body of the young king

Corpus regis, quas habuit in sua consecratione lineis vestibus crismate delibutis diligentius involutum, in libitina reponitur, et impositum humeris commilitonum suorum per vicos, per castella, per civitates, concurrentibus undique populis, deportatur, quousque Cenomannis intraret, et in choro beati Juliani deponeretur.

is buried first at le Mans,

Majores itaque civitatis illius cum acclamatione multitudinis subito proruentes, corpus regis, quoniam avus suus paternus eodem in loco quiescit, ipsum inibi terra cum festinatione defossa sepelierunt. Sed postmodum, reclamante Roberto Rothomagensi decano, quia

and afterwards at Rouen.

dum rex viveret sibi sepulturæ locum elegerat, inde translatum est, et in metropolitana sede Rothomagi prope majus altare versus aquilonem cum honore tanto principi congruo tumulatur.

Consecrations abroad.

Cantuariensis archiepiscopus agens in transmarinis, cum Lincolniensem, Rofensem, Sancti Asavi diversis

The archbishop returns, Aug. 11.

temporibus, et diversis in locis consecrasset episcopos, ecclesiæ suæ consummatis negotiis in Angliam rediit iii° idus Augusti.

Magister Gerardus vocatus Puella,[1] canonicus Sares-

[1] Gerard la Pucelle, bishop of Coventry, 1183–1184. These events are given by Robert de Monte, in much the same order: he even mentions the three sees of the bishops of Coventry.

beriensis, et inter domesticos archiepiscopi nominatissimus, in episcopum Cestrensem eligitur, et, legitimo septimi mensis jejunio presbiteratus gradum adeptus, post paucos dies Coventrensis consecratur episcopus. In ea quidem diocesi plures ab antiquo sedes habitæ sunt episcopales; temporibus Britonum apud Cestriam; temporibus antiquorum Saxonum apud Lichesfeldiam; temporibus Danorum et Normannorum apud Coventreiam. A.D. 1183. Consecration of Gerard bishop of Coventry.

Walterus Lincolniensis episcopus in Angliam veniens, die Dominica qua cantatur "Gaudete in Domino," sua sollempniter collocatur in sede. Inthronization of the bishop at Lincoln, Dec. 11.

MCLXXXIIII. Gerardus Coventrensis episcopus, cum septimanis x^ccm et vii^tem sedisset, in fata concessit. A.D. 1184. Death of the bishop of Coventry.

Ricardus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, Lundoniam veniens, in ecclesia beati Pauli die Conversionis celebravit divina. Qui post paucos dies in lectum incidens ægritudinis, cum sedisset annis novem et xlv. septimanis et v. diebus, diem clausit extremum apud Hallinges, villam Rofensis episcopi, xiii° kalendas Marcii.[1] Death of the archbishop of Canterbury, Feb. 17.

Cum, vacante sede Rotomagensi, tractatus esset habendus de substitutione pontificis, rex, suffraganei, plures religiosæ personæ, convenerunt in unum. Decanus in capitulo cum fratribus residebat. Post longos ergo[2] tractatus habitos tam in capitulo quam ante regem, quibusdam adinvicem dissentientibus quorum esset electio juxta canones, a jure communi recessum est, et in arbitros compromissum; sicque cum omnium pace qualiquali Walterus Lincolniensis episcopus electus est in archiepiscopum. The bishop of Lincoln is chosen archbishop of Rouen.

Rex Anglorum, cum omnes provincias suæ jurisdictioni subpositas pro velle suo disposuisset, et omnes subditi sibi jocunda pace gauderent, cum licentia regis Francorum et gratia transitum habens per Flandriam, venit in Angliam iii° idus Junii. Circa tempus hoc The king returns to England, June 11.

[1] *xiii°. . Marcii*] om. C.; ins. A.B. | [2] *ergo*] vero, B.

A.D. 1154. William of Saxony, born at Winchester.

dux Saxonum cum familia, cum supellectile sua, regnum intravit Anglorum; et infra paucos dies ducissa Wintoniæ filium peperit quem vocavit Willelmum.[1]

Paucis diebus elapsis litteræ directæ sunt in hæc verba;

Letter of pope Lucius III. urging the election of an archbishop of Canterbury, within two months.

"Lucius episcopus servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus fratribus, episcopis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffraganeis, et dilectis filiis priori et conventui ejusdem ecclesiæ, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Quanta in ecclesiis quæ propriis sunt pastoribus destitutæ scandala soleant et gravamina suboriri, dum deest illis cura regiminis quo servetur in eis integritas caritatis, multorum experimenta nos edocent, et vos ipsi, sicut credimus, multis hoc ipsum rerum eventibus didicistis. Ne igitur mater vestra Cantuariensis ecclesia, quæ jam non modico tempore proprio pastore vacavit, dampnum aliquod vel gravamen ex diuturnitate suæ destitutionis incurrat, mandamus vobis et districte præcipimus, quatinus, omni gratia et timore postposito, sine ullius occasionis et appellationis obstaculo, infra duos menses post harum susceptionem, in personam idoneam convenire nullatenus omittatis, quæ vobis possit in archiepiscopum eligi, et secundum statuta sacrorum canonum ordinari."

Council at Reading, Aug. 4, to consider the matter.

Ad summi pontificis commonitionem et vocationem regis suffraganei, monachi Cantuarienses, plures undique concurrentes viri religiosi, convenerunt apud Radingum pridie nonas Augusti, tractaturi de consilio Cantuariensis ecclesiæ. Post longos vero tractatus quos frequenter rex habuit, modo cum episcopis, modo cum monachis, dum ab episcopis monachi recessissent, et a domini papæ mandato recessum est. Rursus eisdem personis, et ob eandem causam et eodem modo, convenientibus apud Windlesoram, eventus priori prorsus consimilis habitus est x° kalendas Novembris. Itidem urgente mandato regis omnes suprascriptæ personæ convenerunt Lundoniis. Sed quid ibi sit actum in Adventus Domini Dominica prima sequentia declarabunt;

Another debate at Windsor, Oct. 23.

A third at London, Dec. 2.

[1] William of Winchester, ancestor of the house of Brunswick.

A.D. 1181.

"Patri suo et domino sanctissimo summo Dei gratia pontifici Lucio, omnes Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffraganei episcopi salutem, quæ nunc est, et quam speramus a Domino. Verum est, domine, quod mandastis, quod nobis in memoriam paterna pietate induxistis, dampno sæpe cedit ecclesiarum cum eis suum caput abesse contigerit, verum citius alleviatur cum horum ad quos hoc spectat officium prudentia et providentia in melius reformatur. Unde nobis apostolica jussione mandatum est, ut convenientes in unum nos et ipsius ecclesiæ monachi ecclesiæ Cantuariensi provideremus, nec ullam ei quæ jamdiu pastore caruit jacturam incurrere permitteremus. Factum est ut imperastis, et nos jam tertio convenimus, ut omni postposito timore et amore super hoc quod mandastis ageremus. Inspirante siquidem gratia Dei, nobis omnibus id venit in mentem, ut dominum Baldewinum Wigornensem episcopum, ipso virtutum quas enumerare longum est splendore irradiatum, nobis singuli nominaremus, et singuli singulis nominando gauderemus. Cum igitur in hunc unum vota nostra concurrissent, et hæc omnibus fama percrebuisset, favor tantus exortus est, ut singularum ecclesiarum quæ in provincia Cantuariensi nominandæ sunt personæ, cum magna cleri et populi multitudine, ea die Lundoniis aderant, ut tantæ communicarent exultationi et operi tam desiderabili consentirent. Nos vero in hoc proposito fixi permanentes, tribus ipsa die vicibus monachis Cantuariensibus, qui in ipso erant monasterii ambitu consistentes, mandavimus, ut ipsi venirent ad nos et se nobis jungerent, nec mandati vestri executionem in aliquo turbare præsumerent. Cumque res ista dilationem non admitteret, tum propter vestræ jussionis urgentiam, tum propter publicam regni necessitatem, non contradicentibus monachis, sed personam Baldewini Wigorniensis episcopi plurimum commendantibus, invocato Spiritu Sancto, eundem Baldewinum communi omnium voto in archiepiscopum elegimus, et ei nos tota mente devovimus; unde preces humiles sullimitati vestræ porrigimus, ut facto huic quo nichil nobilius, nichil in regno Angliæ a multo jam tempore Deo placentius actum est, benignum si placet præbeatis assensum, et nos vobis omni gratiarum actione obnoxios de cætero jugiter habeatis."

Letter of the bishops to the pope.

They have chosen Baldwin bishop of Worcester to be archbishop.

They desire the pope's assent.

Gilebertus Lundoniensis episcopus electionem factam recitavit in publico.

The election announced.

Rex in instantia temporis incedens fere tanquam duplomate venit Cantuariam, et primo visitans beatum

The king goes to Canterbury.

A.D. 1181. He urges the monks to go to London.

Thomam, postmodum intravit capitulum Sanctæ Trinitatis, ad hoc animos monachorum inclinans ut redirent Lundoniam. Itaque die Dominica qua cantatur "Gaudete in Domino," Cantuariensis electus, præsente rege, præsentibus monachis Cantuariensibus dixit, se nunquam intraturum Cantuariensem ecclesiam, nisi cum pace monachorum et totius ecclesiæ Cantuariensis. Sicque rex et electus a capitulo Westmonasterii pariter recesserunt.

Baldwin promises not to accept the see against the will of the monks.

The monks declare the election by the bishops null, but themselves choose Baldwin.

Alanus prior Sanctæ Trinitatis, et monachi Cantuarienses in Westmonasterii capitulo residentes, dixerunt, "Nos electionem ab episcopis factam nullam "reputamus, sed ego prior Alanus ad cujus hoc "spectat officium, et fratres nostri præsentes de com-"muni totius ecclesiæ Cantuariensis assensu Balde-"winum Wigornensem episcopum in archiepiscopum "Cantuariensem eligimus." Incepit itaque prior alta voce "Te Deum laudamus." Soli monachi laudes Domino reddiderunt, et apprehensum electum suum ante majus altare duxerunt, complentes sollempnia quæ fieri solent in electionibus.

Letter of the prior and convent to the pope, announcing the election.

"Sanctissimo patri et domino Lucio Dei gratia summo "pontifici Alanus prior et conventus ecclesiæ Cantuariensis "salutem, atque devotissimæ subjectionis et obedientiæ famu-"latum. Cum ecclesia nostra suo esset viduata pastore, placuit "Deo et eminentiæ vestræ, et benignissimo principi nostro, "ut talis eligeretur antistes, qui oneri et honori tanto vide-"retur idoneus, atque archiepiscopale officium prudenter et "sufficienter impleret. Inspirante igitur et cooperante Spiritu "Sancto, vota nostra et omnium concurrerunt in patrem "nostrum reverentissimum dominum Baldewinum Wigornen-"sem episcopum, virum litteratum, providum in ecclesiasticis, "in temporalibus circumspectum, in episcopali amministra-"tione, in longa religione et sanctis moribus approbatum. "Vestræ igitur paternitati humiliter supplicamus, quatinus, "juxta desiderium nostrum et totius ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, "ipsius electionem confirmare velitis, ut in amministratione "ad quam Domino disponente vocatus est, de manu miseri-"cordiæ vestræ suscipiat plenitudinem potestatis. Vitam "vestram conservet Dominus per tempora longa."

RECURRAMUS AD ALIA QUÆ CIRCA DIES ISTOS NOBIS ALIÆ REGIONES ANNALIBUS INSERENDA MANIFESTIUS OBTULERUNT, ET A PARTIBUS ORIENTIS SUMAMUS EXORDIUM. A.D. 1184.

Letter of Saladin to the pope.

"Rex Salahadinus omnium regum Orientalium potentissimus
" domino papæ.

"Præsentata fuit nobis cartula de sanctitate vestra, quoniam
" nos scimus et credimus quod sitis in majori officio de hoc
" mundo, et scimus quod Deus vobis tantam gratiam dederit
" ut sedeatis in tanta magnitudine. Scimus autem quod omnes
" Christiani vobis obediunt, et vos pertimescunt. Hæc car-
" tula nobis data et præsentata fuit per manum Oliveri Vitalis
" vestri legati, et propter vestrum honorem et timorem eum
" honoravimus, et quicquid facere potuimus diligenter feci-
" mus, et ante nos in secreta camera venire fecimus, et
" quicquid sibi placuit dicere ex vestra parte diligenter audi-
" vimus; et vestra cartula per omnia placuit nobis, et eam
" accepimus bono animo et alacri vultu, et cognovimus mag-
" num amorem quem apud nos habetis. Et certos nos fecit de
" magna amicitia quæ inter nos est, et quicquid vestra cartula
" et prædictus legatus locutus fuit de pace habere cum omni-
" bus Christianis et ut omnes captivos dimitteremus, per
" omnia placuit nobis et gavisi sumus; et Christiani qui sub
" jugo nostro sunt dimittant omnes nostros captivos, et nos
" omnes captivos Christianos quos habemus vestra benignitate
" dimitteremus. Notum sit vestræ magnitudini quod Christiani
" qui a nobis detenti sunt, sunt gentiles et nobiles viri; ac
" milites nostri, qui a Christianis detenti sunt, sunt rustici et
" minimi atque vilissimi homines: et si placet vobis, nos
" appreciabimus captivos nostros quos habemus, et Christiani
" apprecient suos, et quæ pars minus habuerit restituetur ei
" ab altera. Deus scit quod quando vestras cartulas et legatos
" a vestra magnitudine transmissos vidimus, per omnia gavisi
" sumus et gratias referimus Deo. Cætera secretiora præfato
" Olivero commisimus, in quem multum confidimus, et valde
" super his bonam fidem eum habere cognovimus. Unde pro
" certo habeatis quod quicquid cum vobis ipse tractaverit, de
" mandato nostro et bona voluntate procedit."

He has received with joy the papal envoy and the proposal for an exchange of prisoners.

He proposes that the prisoners on both sides be valued.

Letter of Safadin to the pope.

"Domino papæ Sisidin[1] rex.

"Lucio Dei gratia universali Christianorum papæ, excellen-

[1] *Sisidin*] Malek-el-Adel-Seifeddin-Abu Bekr, the brother of Saladin, commonly known to the western historians as Safadin. He was at this time acting for his brother in Egypt; Bohadin, c. 25, p. 55.

A.D. 1184. "tiori domino totius Christianitatis, cujus ditioni omnis
"Christianitas est subdita, tanquam meliori amico quem
"habet in tota Christianitate, a rege justitiæ Sisidin, domino
"totius multitudinis Sarracenorum, hæc carta dirigitur. In
"nomine Domini piissimi et misericordissimi, recepimus lit-
"teras vestras tanquam melioris amici quem in tota Christia-
Professions of friendship. "nitate habemus, cui super omnibus obeditur, per manus
"nuncii vestri Jani Danduli, quem nobis jussimus præsentari,
"et cum honoravimus, et diligenter litteras vestras inspexi-
"mus, et verba quæ ex parte vestra nobis legatus vester
"retulit attentius intelleximus; ex cujus dictis accepimus
He has heard the pope's proposals. "vestræ voluntatis existere modis omnibus observare, quæ
"cum beatæ memoriæ prædecessore vestro Alexandro firmiter
"stabilivimus super negotio inter Christianos et Sarracenos
"ad redemptionem omnium captivorum quos in nostra servari
"fecimus captivitate. In litteris vestris vidimus contineri,
"quod omnis vobis Christianitas obediret, et nemo audeat
"vestris contraire præceptis, et quod a vobis ordinaretur
"ratum et inviolabile servaretur; cognoscentes voluntatem
"vestram, quod præsens negotium circa dominum et fratrem
"meum debeam promovere, regem victoriosissimum, servato-
He has promoted the pope's desire with Saladin. "rem suæ promissionis, et auctorem justitiæ Salahadin, domi-
"num legis et omnium Sarracenorum, suscitatorem legis
"Sarracenorum, cujus dies Deus augeat et potentiam magni-
"ficet; et ut compositionem juxta petitionem vestram studeam
"perficere et executioni mandare. Cum pervenit ad nos le-
"gatus vester cum litteris vestris, erat frater noster rex
"victoriosissimus in partibus Tyri, ubi successit ei contra
Successes of Saladin. "hostes suos secundum votum suum, cui Deus tantam his
"temporibus victoriam contulit, quod omnem terram a Da-
"masco usque Niniven subjugavit; cui omnes vicinitate loci
"propinqui, et Sarracenorum universæ potestates obediunt;
"cujus expeditioni volente Deo adhæserunt infinitæ nationum
"multitudines ut serviant ei; qui tanta manu hostes perse-
"quitur quanta nullus prædecessorum suorum inimicos suos
"valuit impugnare; nobis vestram aperuit voluntatem, et
"preces vestras nobis optulit, quibus incontinenti curavimus
"obtemperare, et quicquid petitioni vestræ expediat vestro
"intuitu circa fratrem nostrum studuimus obtinere, et trans-
"missa vobis in fratre nostro responsione accepimus rege vic-
Saladin's proposition. "torum, cujus potentiam Deus exaltet: quod si Christiani
"qui habitant in Jerosolima cum rege suo, et in omni parte
"Tyri, vestris obedierint præceptis cum universa Christiani-
"tate, et ordinationem inter nos factam servaverint secundum
"voluntatem vestram pro facienda pace, et pro dimittendis

" captivis qui servantur in carceribus nostris compediti, et A.D. 1184.
" nos observare promittimus ea omnia quæ ad istam faciendam He will observe the
" pacem a nobis postulatis. Sed si præfati Christiani de agreement if the Christians will.
" partibus Tyri et Jerusalem vestris præceptis non obedierint,
" nos immunes erimus a culpa, et quod pacem non serva-
" verimus, nobis deinceps non poterit imputari; et Deus
" inspector omnium reddet unicuique nostrum secundum opus
" suum, et secundum quod veritatem nititur et justiciam
" observare. Suspiret[1] vobis et nobis Deus præoperante gratia
" Sua illud operari, quod ad salutem omnium Christianorum
" et Sarracenorum prospiciat. Utinam. Amen. Scripta fuit
" hæc carta pridie kalendas Aprilis anno Machometi D°. lxx°
" octavo.[2] Gratias agimus Deo soli, et Machometo prophetæ
" magno."

Ad atroces injurias et crebras incursiones, quibus Sarraceni regnum opprimere Jerosolimitanum contendunt, animosius retundendas, de communi decreto Christianorum inibi commorantium, patriarcha, magister militiæ Templi, prior Hospitalis, ad auxilium perquirendum in partibus occidentis transfretarunt. The patriarch and the masters of the Temple and Hospital are sent into the West.

" Reverendo in Christo patri et domino E.[3] Dei gratia Letter from Baldwin IV. to the envoys, with news of Palestine.
" Sanctæ Resurrectionis ecclesiæ patriarchæ, magistro quoque
" Templi A.[4] et magistro sanctæ domus Hospitalis Jerusalem
" R.[5] dilectis suis, Baldewinus[6] per eandem rex Jerosolimitanus,
" salutem et continuis successibus abundare. Litteras in qui-
" bus universos vos sanos et hilares Brundusium applicuisse
" cognovimus, gaudenter recepimus. Cujus rei cognitio spiri-
" tum meum lætantem reddidit et jocundum. Salahadinus Saladin's attack on Kerak.
" circiter nonum aut decimum diem intrante Julio terram
" Crati[7] intravit, et per tres ebdomadas fines ejus vastavit

---

[1] *Suspiret*] Inspiret, Twysden, from D.

[2] The year 578 of the Hegira begins May 7, 1182. The date of this letter, if rightly stated, must be March 31, 1183.

[3] *E.*] Heraclius, patriarch of Jerusalem.

[4] *A.*] Arnald de Turri Rubea, master of the Temple, 1179–1184.

[5] *R.*] Roger de Moulins, the great master of the Hospitallers, 1177–1187.

[6] Baldwin IV.

[7] *Crati*] Kerak, the stronghold of Reginald of Châtillon, ex-prince of Antioch. According to Bohadin, who gives an account of this invasion by Saladin (c. 28), Saladin besieged Kerak in July; retired before the Franks, and took Nablous and Jenin, returning to Damascus on Saturday the seventh day of the latter Sjumada, which would answer to September 15, 1184.

A.D. 1184. Siege of Kerak, July 31.

" et deprædavit, et cibaria collegit et congregavit. Vigilia " Sancti Petri ad vincula civitatem Crati intravit, castrum " obsedit, et per quatuor septimanas tenuit obsessionem, " quatuordecimque petrarias erexit. Cognito adventu nostro " Salahadinus petrarias suas, et vias quas extruxerat, ipse

Saladin ravages Nablous, Sebaste, and other towns, and retires.

" combussit, iterque arripiens, Neapolim venit, et villam vas- " tavit atque cremavit quæ igne potuit consumere. Hujus " adventum comperientes viri et mulieres villæ illius fugerunt " ad castrum et salvati sunt. Exinde progrediens, perrexit ad " civitatem quæ vocatur Sebasten. Fugitque populus ad " villam non ut resisterent, sed quia fuga alias non immine- " bat. Hanc confusionem videns, episcopus ejusdem civitatis, " acceptis induciis, Salahadino obviam exiit, villamque suam " et ecclesiam lxxx. captivis redemit. Inde recedens, venit " Arabiam,[1] eamque destruxit, viris ac mulieribus captivatis. " Postea venit ad Magnum Gerinum,[2] fugitque omnis populus " ad castrum, et ipse perfodi fecit et dirui, paucisque capti- " vatis, mulieres et parvuli in ore gladii mortui sunt, sed et " villa igne consumpta est. A qua recedens, venit per Parvum " Gerinum,[3] quæ villa Templi erat, eaque omnino vastata " recessit per quoddam castrum Hospitalis quod Belverium[4] " dicitur, quibusdam qui foris exierant captis, et quibusdam " interfectis, recessit ad propria."

The count of Flanders proposes to marry the daughter of the king of Portugal.

Philippus comes Flandrensis Adelfonsum regem Portugalensium per internuncios sæpius sollicitavit, ut Beatricem filiam suam, quam hylarior fama concupiscibilem forma filiabus regum australium præferebat, sibi matrimonio copulandam transmitteret. Rex, habito tractatu cum suis, cum aliqua remoratione comitis petitionibus satisfecit. Naves itaque directas a Flandria gazis Hyspanicis, scilicet auro, vestibus deauratis, preciosis lapidibus, sericis pannis, et abundantiis omnium omnis generis victualium maturius oneravit.

She is brought to Rochelle.

Sicque filia regis, felici navigatione transvecta, sine magna difficultate Rocheliæ portum intravit, nuncios

[1] *Arabiam*] This place being apparently between Sebaste and Jenin, must be identified with Arrabeh.

[2] *Magnum Gerinum*] Jenin, or En-gannim: the capture is mentioned by Bohadin, c. 28.

[3] *Parvum Gerinum*] Zerin, or Jezreel, on the edge of the plain of Esdraelon; a town belonging to the Templars.

[4] *Belverium*] Kaukab-el-Hawa, the stronghold of the Hospitallers.

regis Anglorum eo loco reperiens, qui statim in omnibus itineri necessariis sufficientiam omnem impendere procurarunt, quæ de situ terrarum et transitu maturiore stimulo muliebri compulsa cognovit, ab exitu navium intermedium viæ quousque Flandrensium fines attingeret, totum fere regis Angliæ jurisdictioni suppositum. Regis igitur filiæ comes nimio succensus amore, venientibus Hyspanis in equitatu magno, dignum duxit festinanter occurrere. Beatricem vero superius totiens memoratam comes in facie commilitonum suorum, et in præsentia multitudinis quæ convenerat, sibi fœdere nuptiali conjunxit. A.D. 1184. She is conducted by order of the king of England to Flanders, and married.

Circa nativitatem beati Johannis, rex Gamius [1] adduxit regem Macemut,[2] regem regum Sarracenorum, cum xxxvii^em^ regibus; et primo obsederunt Sanctum Hyreneum, et tribus diebus et tribus noctibus pugnaverunt, tandem dejectis muris irruperunt. Qui autem muros interius defendebant, se intra turrem receperunt ut ibi protegerentur. Nocte vero sequenti, venit episcopus Portugalensis cum filio regis, et occiderunt xv. milia Sarracenorum et regem Gamium; et posuerunt corpora occisorum ubi murus erat dejectus, ut per ea loco muri defenderentur. In crastino autem, scilicet in die Sanctorum Johannis et Pauli, archiepiscopus Sancti Jacobi xx. milia hominum duxit, et in aurora diei occidit de Sarracenis xxx^ta^ milia. Postea in die Sanctæ Margaretæ Sarraceni occiderunt x. milia mulierum et puerorum ad Alcubaz; et illi qui fuerunt in oppido de [3] Alcubaz occiderunt tres reges cum omni exercitu suo. Postea Macemut vigilia Sancti Jacobi audivit quod rex Galiciæ venerat, ut solus cum solo dimicaret, et cum præparasset se ad præliandum, dum equum suum vellet ascendere, ter de eo lapsus est, et ita mortuus est. About Midsummer Santarem is besieged by the Moors. Slaughter of the Saracens, June 26. Slaughter at Alcobaça, July 20. Death of the Sultan, July 24.

[1] *Gamius*] Gami, alcaid or king of Merida.

[2] *Macemut*] This is the Emir el Mumenim Abu-Yakoub-Youssouf, who reigned from 1163 to 1184, and died of his wounds received in the invasion of Portugal.

[3] *de*] om. B.

A.D. 1181. Spoils won by the Portuguese.

Mortuo autem illo omnis exercitus relicta omni pecunia in fugam conversus est. Rex vero Portugalensis ex his qui in bello capti erant, scilicet de Sarracenis, dedit servos qui ministrarent cementariis, ferentes lapides et cementum ad reparandas ecclesias, et de pecunia fecit

Siege of Lisbon.

thecam Sancti Vincentii auream. Postea venerunt infinitæ galeæ ad Ulixibonam, et duxerunt unam navem quæ dicitur Dromund. In illa fuit talis machina, quod per ipsam Sarraceni debebant armati ire et redire

Destruction of a great dromound.

ultra muros civitatis Ulixibonæ. Sed Deo dante quidam in aqua se dromundo subposuit, eamque perforavit, et perforatam submersit, et usque ad muros machinam traxit, et eam ibi suspendit. Mane facto Sarraceni se ita esse delusos videntes fugerunt, et quotquot Christianos extra muros invenerunt abduxerunt et captivaverunt.

Nov. 4. Meeting of the pope and emperor at Verona.

Quarto die intrantis Novembris, consedentibus Veronæ in ecclesia majori papa et imperatore, cardinalibus et plerisque ecclesiæ rectoribus, Ravennas [1] in serie sermonis sui casum et perditionem terræ Jerosolimitanæ omnibus exposuit, et ad succurrendum in peccatorum remissionibus cujuslibet generis homines evocare curavit.

Letter of Lucius III. to Henry.

" Lucius papa tertius illustri Anglorum regi.

" Ea quæ credimus ad salutem tuam et exaltationem regiæ " celsitudinis pertinere, tanto libentius tuæ sublimitati sugge- " rimus, quanto tui nominis gloriam cum incremento salutis " et pacis sincerioribus semper affectibus exoptamus. Hinc " est quod tuæ celsitudinis pietatem præsentibus duximus " litteris ammonendam, ut amorem Dei ante oculos cordis tui " salubri consideratione proponens, et amorem piæ recorda-

He urges him to provide for his daughter-in-law,

" tionis Ludovici regis Francorum ad mentem revocans et " reducens, bonum quoque tranquillitatis et pacis quæ inter " te et karissimum in Christo filium nostrum illustrem Fran- " corum regem communiter desideratur attendens, circa statum " in Christo karissimæ nostræ Margaretæ reginæ, relictæ

[1] *Ravennas*] The word archiepiscopus is probably omitted by accident. Gerard II., archbishop of Ravenna, 1182–1190, who was present at the council at Verona; see Rubeus, Hist. Ravenn., p. 355.

" videlicet bonæ memoriæ Henrici filii tui, piam habeas pro- A.D. 1181.
" videntiam et cautelam, ut in dote sua et donatione propter Margaret, the widow of the young Henry.
" nuptias ita cum ea componas, quod ei et hiis qui pro ea
" sunt, murmurandi vel conquerendi materiam non relinquas,
" nec tu ipse propter hoc apud Patrem orphanorum et Judicem
" viduarum districtioris judicii sententiam pertimescas. Quia
" igitur ad instantiam quorumdam amicorum suorum super
" certa pecuniæ quantitate ei satisfacere decrevisti, rogamus
" excellentiam tuam, et exhortamus in Domino, atque in pec-
" catorum tuorum remissionem injungimus, quatinus ei ad
" interventionem nostram pro pacis caritatisque custodia sum-
" mam congruam, secundum quod Petrus Bermundi nobis ex
" parte tua significavit, decenter adaugeas, et eam sibi in
" certis assignare redditibus non omittas, ita quod ipsa solatii
" hujus consolatione recepta possit in pace consistere, et tu
" pro impensæ benignitatis effectu indeficiens præmium ab
" omnipotenti Domino debeas expectare."

Philippus Coloniensis archiepiscopus, habens sola- Visit of the archbishop of Cologne and the count of Flanders at Canterbury and London.
cium in itinere Philippum comitem Flandriæ, venit in Angliam, beato Thomæ vota soluturus orationum. Archiepiscopo rex occurrens et comiti, petiit ab eis ut transitum facerent usque Lundoniam. In eorum adventu, quod ante non vidimus, civitas coronata fuit, gaudium, honor et tripudium per omnes civitatis plateas. Archiepiscopus sollenni processione receptus est in ecclesia doctoris gentium Pauli. Susceptus est etiam apud Westmonasterium ipsa die sollenni processione sumptibus regiis, expensis effusioribus, lautioribus cibis omnem ultra sufficientiam abundantibus, per quinque dies infra regis palatium hospitatus. Sed an recesserit donatus multis muneribus est superfluum quærere.

Circa dies istos Fredericus imperator Romanus, Council at Mentz.
concilium habens prope Maguntinam urbem, regni Theutonici diadema capiti filii sui primogeniti fecit imponi.[1]

---

[1] Robert de Monte refers to the same event under this year; " Fre-
" dericus imperator Romanorum
" fecit ordinari unum filiorum suo-
" rum, non primogenitum sed se-
" cundum, in regem Germaniæ." Yet Henry VI. had been crowned king in 1169. He was knighted at Mentz, at Whitsuntide 1184.

A.D. 1184. The order of Santiago confirmed.

Ordo militum[1] in Hyspania consistentium, et habentium in proposito pro viribus suis Sarracenos atterere, quem signum ensis rubei distinguit a cæteris militantibus, confirmatur a domino papa.

Jocelin of Salisbury dies, Nov. 18.

Jocelinus Saresbericnsis[2] episcopus obiit xiiii° kalendas Decembris.

The archbishop of Cologne attacks the count of Hainault.

Philippus Coloniensis archiepiscopus, Angliam exiens, auxilium repromisit, ut comes Flandriæ Baldewinum comitem Hainaucensium, sororium ipsius comitis, socerum Philippi regis Francorum, contereret et humiliaret. Itaque statim totus de pontifice translatus in militem, Henricum Lovaniæ ducem,[3] alios plures spectabiles genere, viribus affluentes, in exercitu copiosos, qui per homagium ecclesiæ Coloniensi tenentur astricti, sub articulo temporis congregavit, et militaribus armis accinctus prædicti comitis terram irrupit, villas succendit, homines captivavit, ecclesiis non pepercit, immo dampnis affecit gravissimis. Willelmus de Magnivilla comes Essexiæ, veniens in auxilium comiti Flandriæ domino suo, multos Hainaucensium traxit in exterminium.

William of Mandeville joins against Hainault.

Ernaldus magister militiæ Templi[4] Veronæ moritur.

A.D. 1185. Mission of the patriarch Heraclius.

MCLXXXV. Eraclius patriarcha Sanctæ Resurrectionis, et Rogerus[5] magister sanctæ domus Hospitalis Jerusalem, tendentes in occidentem, et per Ytaliam transitum facientes et Galliam, nec a domino papa, nec ab imperatore Romano, nec a rege Francorum aliqua plene consolatoria receperunt. Navigantes in Angliam venerunt ad regem apud Radingum. Et cum itineris tam longinqui, tam a sæculis inauditi causas exposuissent, et civitatis sanctæ prophetarum oraculis illustratæ desolationem enarrassent per ordinem, regem et omnem

[1] The order of S. James or of the Sword, Santiago.

[2] Jocelin of Bohun, bishop of Salisbury, 1142–1184.

[3] Henry, count of Louvain, 1172, succeeded his father as duke of Brabant in 1190.

[4] Arnald de Turre Rubea.

[5] Roger de Moulins.

illam multitudinem quæ convenerat ad suspiria provocarunt et lacrimas. Deferebant quidem in manibus memorialia nativitatis Jesu Christi, passionis, resurrectionis, scilicet claves turris David, vexillum sanctæ crucis, claves Sancti Sepulcri. Quibus omnibus rex maximam venerationem exhibuit. A.D. 1185. The ambassadors present the keys of the Sepulchre.

Ab eo die quo primum fuit sua collocatus in sede Walterus Lincolniensis episcopus apud Lincolniam, ad illum usque diem quo Rotomagi sollenni processione receptus est in archiepiscopum, annus effluxit, et xi. septimanæ diesque quinque.[1] Arrival of Walter of Coutances at Rouen.

Ad vocationem regis, Cantuariensis electus et Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffraganei, Dunelmensis episcopus, abbates conventualium locorum prælati, comites et barones, Lundoniæ convenerunt apud Fontem Clericorum xv° kalendas Aprilis. Rex itaque, patriarcha, magistro sanctæ domus Hospitalis Jerusalem audientibus, omnes suos fideles qui convenerant adjurationibus multis astrinxit, ut quod animæ suæ saluti crederent expedire proferrent in medium. Ad hoc enim suum cor inclinatum dicebat, ut quod acciperet ex eorum consilio modis omnibus observaret. Datum est igitur sub deliberatione quid esset consultius, vel quod rex in propria sua persona Jerosolimitanis succurreret, vel Anglorum regno, cujus gubernationem in facie matris ecclesiæ dudum susceperat, adhuc præesse nulla ratione desisteret. Ad illa siquidem tria quæ rex quilibet consecrandus promittit aliqui recurrebant. Promittit namque se præcepturum et opem pro viribus impensurum, ut ecclesia Dei populusque Christianus veram pacem in omni tempore servet. Promittit etiam quod rapacitates et omnes iniquitates omnibus gradibus interdicet. Promittit adhuc quod in omnibus judiciis æquitatem et misericordiam præcipiet. Satius ergo

Council at Clerkenwell, Mar. 18.

The king asks advice, as to a crusade.

The coronation oath brought to mind.

[1] Walter of Coutances was inthroned at Lincoln, Dec. 11, 1183; see above, p. 21. He was received at Rouen, therefore, early in March 1185.

A.D. 1185. He is advised to stay at home.

visum est universis, et animæ regis multo salubrius, quod regnum suum debita cum moderatione gubernet, et a barbarorum irruptionibus et a gentibus exteris tueatur, quam saluti consulat Orientalium in propria sua persona. De filiis suis aliquid certum statuere, cum essent absentes, incongruum videbatur. Rex igitur, patriarcha, Dunelmensis episcopus, magister Hospitalis, et multitudo cum eis, apud Doveram mari transito, diem Paschæ Rotomagi celebraverunt.

He goes to Normandy and keeps Easter, Apr. 21, at Rouen.

Conference at Vaudreuil.

Rex Francorum audito regis Anglorum adventu cum festinatione venit apud Vallem Ruil; reges ubi se mutuo verbis pacificis salutaverunt, et in colloquiis familiaribus institerunt per triduum.

John knighted, Mar. 31. He goes to Ireland.

Johannes filius regis, a patre militaribus armis accinctus apud Windlesores pridie kalendas Aprilis, in Hyberniam transfretavit.

Murder of Hugh de Lacy.

In Hybernia Hugo de Laceio, dominus provinciæ quæ Media vocatur, interfectus est a Malua Miadaich infimæ manus homine viii^{vo} kalendas Augusti.

Account of Ireland.

[1] Hybernia post Britanniam omnium insularum est optima, quæ, quamvis Britanniæ divitiis cedat, latitudine, salubritate, serenitate præstat. Quæ sicut versus Aquilonem brevior est, ita versus meridiem trans illius fines protenditur. Hæc autem proprie patria Scotorum est. Nam sicut legitur, Ægyptiis in mari rubro submersis, illi qui superfuerunt expulerunt a se quendam nobilem Sciticum qui degebat apud eos ne dominium super eos invaderet. H. Hunt., pp. 696, 697

Colonization from Spain.

Expulsus ille cum familia sua pervenerunt ad aras Philistinorum, et per lacum salinarum et montana Syriæ; transierunt per Mauritaniam, ad columpnas Herculis navigaverunt per Tirrenum mare, et pervenerunt ad Hyspaniam, et ibi per annos habitaverunt multos, et progenies eorum est multiplicata nimis. Inde venerunt Hyberniam post annos mille duobus additis a transitu filiorum Israel per mare rubrum: et inde pars eórum egressa tertiam in Britannia Britonibus et Pictis gentem addiderunt. Pars eorum quæ remansit in Hybernia Navarri vocantur, et adhuc eadem utuntur lingua.

---

[1] The following extract from Henry of Huntingdon has already been given in the prefatory matter above, vol. i. p. 10.

In Hyspania fluvius est Hyberus, a quo dicitur Hybernia, dicuntur et Hybernienses.

A.D. 1185. William king of Scots receives the earldom of Huntingdon.

[1] Cum Symon comes filius Symonis comitis de Norhamtonia sine liberis decessisset, rex reddidit comitatum Huntendoniæ, cum omnibus pertinentiis suis, Willelmo regi Scottorum, qui fuit filius Henrici comitis filii regis David, qui fuit filius Malcolmi, filii Dunecani, filii Bethoc, filiæ Malcolmi, filii Kinath, filii Malcolmi, filii Duvenald, filii Constantini, filii Kinath, filii Elpini, filii Echach, filii Ethafind, filii Echdach, filii Duvenald Bric, filii Ecchach Buide, filii Edaim, filii Cobram, filii Dovengart, filii Fergus Mor, filii Erch, filii Ecchac Munremor, filii Engusafith, filii Fethelmech Aslingich, filii Enegussa Buthini, filii Fethelmeth Romaich, filii Sencormach, filii Cruithlinthe, filii Findachai, filii Akirkirre, filii Ecchach Andoth, filii Fiachrach Catinail, filii Ecddach Riede, filii Conere [2] Mogalama, filii Lugthag Etholach, filii Corbre Crumgring, filii Daredromor, filii Corbre Findmor, filii Coneremor, filii Eders Keol, filii Ewein, filii Ellela, filii Jair, filii Dethath, filii Sin, filii Rosin, filii Ther, filii Rether, filii Rowein, filii Arindil, filii Mane, filii Forgso, filii Feredach, filii Ellela Earin, filii Fiachac Fimmora, filii Enegussa Turbinig, filii Firkethorocht, filii Firrocht, filii An Roth, filii Firalmai, filii Lamcurc, filii Liethan, filii Ecchach Aldethan, filii Elela Cassieclai, filii Conletha, filii Iretro, filii Melge, filii Cobthai Cailbrech, filii Hugunc Mor, filii Ecchach Rothai, filii Duach Lotherai, filii Ficchachch Bolgai, filii Sinon Bricht, filii Eon Duf, filii Etheon, filii Glachs, filii Noethath Fail, filii Elchatha Olchaim, filii Sirne, filii Dein, filii Demail, filii Rothotha, filii Ogmain, filii Enegus Olmucatha, filii Fiachach Labraim, filii Smirnai, filii Sinrecha, filii Embatha, filii Thiernai, filii Faleg, filii Etheor, filii Jair Olfatha, filii Ermon, filii Micel Espaine, filii Bile, filii Neande, filii Brige, filii Bregain, filii Bratha, filii Deatha, filii Erchatha, filii Aldoith, filii Node, filii Nonael, filii Eber Scot, filii Geithel Glas, filii Neoil, filii Fenias Farseth, filii Owan, filii Glonin, filii Lamin, filii Etheor, filii Achnoman, filii Thoc, filii Boib, filii Rein, filii Mair, filii Etheth, filii Abiur, filii Artheth, filii Haoith, filii Aora, filii Jara, filii Israu, filii Esrau, filii Richaith Scot, filii Gomer, filii Jafeth, filii Noe.

His pedigree.

---

[1] Simon of Senlis, earl of Huntingdon, died in 1184. The pedigree of the king of Scots probably appears here in its earliest extant form. It is omitted in MS. D., and occurs in the Ripley MS. among the other prefatory and intercalated matter, folio 18, and in the kindred MSS. Faustina, A. 8 and Tiberius A. 9.

[2] *Conere*] filii, ins. B., erased in A.

A.D. 1185. Derivation of Scotia.

A regione quadam quæ dicitur Scitia, dicitur Scita, Sciticus, Scoticus, Scotus, Scotia. Similiter a regione quadam quæ dicitur Getia, dicitur Geta, Geticus, Goticus, Gotus, Ostrogotus, Witsigotus.[1]

Letter of Lucius III. to archbishop Baldwin.

" Lucius papa tertius Baldewino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo.
" Quanto de persona tua laudabilis conversationis odor et
" probatæ honestatis opinio jamdudum ad nostram notitiam
" plenius emanarunt, tanto nos et fratres nostri majori gaudio
" exultamus in Domino, et omnipotenti Deo gratiarum exsol-
" vimus actiones, quod Cantuariensem ecclesiam solita mise-
" ratione respiciens te ad regimen ipsius vocavit, ut qui in
" pluribus probatus fueras et fidelis inventus, invitante Do-
" mino, ad altiora conscendens, odoramentis virtutum tuarum
" plures reficias ad salutem, et commendanda opera tua eo
" preciosius enitescant, quo excellentiorem locum optinueris
" dignitatis. Credimus enim factum esse a Domino, et est
" acceptabile in oculis nostris, quod cunctorum vota in elec-
" tionem tuam divinitus inspirata consenserunt, et te apice
" dignitatis, ad quam tanquam Aaron a Deo[2] es vocatus, uno
He confirms his election and sends the pall. " ore et consonis vocibus dignissimum protestantur. Inde
" siquidem fuit quod nuntios excellentiæ regiæ, et tam suffra-
" ganeorum quam capituli ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, viros utique
" providos et discretos alacri mente et debita benignitate sus-
" cepimus, et electionem tuam quam, ex literis quas gestarunt
" et relatione propria canonicam esse cognovimus ac Deo et
" hominibus approbatam, habita deliberatione cum fratribus
" nostris sub congrua celeritate, et gratia curavimus confir-
" mare. Pallium præterea[3] plenitudinem pontificalis officii
" fraternitati tuæ concessimus, et ipsum per dilectum filium
" Transmundum, notarium et familiarem nostrum et sub alis
" nostris ab antiquo nutritum, duximus transmittendum."

Baldwin inthroned, May 19: he celebrates at S. Augustines, May 26.

Cantuariensis archiepiscopus sua sollenniter est collocatus in sede die festo Sancti Dunstani. Rursus sollenni processione receptus archiepiscopus apud Sanctum Augustinum, ibi celebravit divina, cui ministravit abbas ejusdem loci Rogerus, mitratus incedens ad processionem, vij° kalendas Junii.

Familiaritas a diebus multis emortua revixit inter ecclesias Cantuariæ; nam cum dies Rogationum instarent, in jejuniis, in obsecrationibus, in missarum sol-

---

[1] *A regione . . . . Witsigotus*] See above, vol. i. p. 10.

[2] *Deo*] Domino, B.

[3] *præterea*] propterea, B.

lenniis sese mutuo visitarunt earundem conventus, vicissitudine processionum exhibita. A.D. 1185. Peace at Canterbury.

Herebertus Anglicus natione, natus in Middelsexia, transitum faciens in Siciliam, assensu regis Willelmi creatus est in Calabria Consensanus archiepiscopus.[1] Cum autem illic terræ motus fieret magnus, prædictus archiepiscopus cum clero, cum familia, cum magna parte civium obrutus est, castella pleraque subversa, milia populorum contrita. Quædam civitas Adriatico mari contigua de nocte populo quiescente corruit in profundum. Item in Anglia circa partes aquilonares factus est terræ motus; in locis aliquibus ædificia corruerunt. Herbert, an English bishop in Calabria, is swallowed up by an earthquake.

Sol passus est eclipsim post horam nonam kalendas Maii. Eclipse of the sun, May 1.

Willelmus rex Siculus, gener regis Anglorum, copiosum congregavit exercitum, ut Andronicum qui tam nefariis, tam atrocibus, tam execrandis abhominationibus perpetratis, imperium usurpavit Constantinopolitanum contereret, exercitum inquam ad hoc astrictum sacramento corporaliter præstito, quod continuum aget in castris triennium, prærogatis anni primi stipendiis. Sex itaque viros illustres inter principes regni sui divitiis, viribus, magnanimitate, præstantes ad hoc opus præfecit, ut omnem armatum militem, equestrem scilicet et caligatum, ad quem inveniendum cum belli necessitas ingruit, tam ipsi quam alii regionis totius capitanei de jure tenentur obnoxii, congregarent. Sicque regis secum stipendiarios assumentes, numerus quorum excrevit ad lxxxv. milia peditum, et equitum milia xxx^ta condixerunt, ut Bulgariam totam virtute magna contunderent, obsidione vallarent Constantinopolim, portas irrumperent, in ore gladii vindicarent Andronici fraudes fraudulentissimas. Igitur coacta classe non modica, navibus infinitis quæ vulgariter vel galeæ, vel The king of Sicily raises an army against Andronicus. The numbers of the army. His fleet.

[1] Herbert was archbishop of Compsa, about 1169–1180; the archbishop of Cosenza who perished in the earthquake of 1184 was Ruffus. See Ughelli, Italia Sacra, vi. 811, 812, ix. 194.

A.D. 1185. They take Durazzo.

sagittariæ, vel onerariæ, cum certis nominibus distinguuntur, undique congregatis, se pelago commiserunt, et prospero sub eventu navigationis applicuerunt Duratium. Cujus ilico cives animo consternatos et tanta pugnatorum multitudine circumseptos, quod nullis ante temporibus efficere potuit quisquam regum Siciliæ, coegerunt ad deditionem.

Gilbert Glanville elected bishop of Rochester; consecrated Sept. 29.

Gilebertus[1] Lexoviensis archidiaconus electus est in Rofensem episcopum apud Otteford [septimo decimo kalendas Augusti,] gradum autem presbyteratus ascendit xi^mo kalendas Octobris apud Lamcheam. Cantuariæ consecratus est a Baldewino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo iii^tio kalendas Octobris.

Fall of Andronicus.

Circa dies istos proditor Andronicus imperator[2] interfectus est.

Isaac Angelus succeeds.

Cursac Angeli,[3] ex sorore Manuelis imperatoris progenitus, creatus est imperator.

Visit of Philip to Henry, Nov. 9.

Rex Francorum regem Anglorum infirmitate tactum visitavit v^to idus Novembris apud Belveir, faciens ibi moram per triduum.

Return of the duke of Saxony.

Circa dies istos dux Saxonicus Henricus, imperatoris impetrata licentia, rediit in Saxoniam, suo tantum contentus patrimonio, misericordiam imperatoris expectans.

Conference at Aumâle, Nov. 7.

Rex Francorum, rex Anglorum, Remensis,[4] Coloniensis archiepiscopi, comes Flandrensis, et infiniti cum eis venerunt apud Albemarlam vii^mo idus Novembris, ubi reformata pax est inter regem Francorum et comitem Flandrensem. Sed ininime complementum accepit quousque suum imperator Romanus adhiberet assensum.

Death of Lucius III., Nov. 25.

Lucius papa vii^o kalendas Decembris Veronæ sepultus est.

Humbertus Mediolanensis archiepiscopus ipsa die

---

[1] Gilbert Glanville, bishop of Rochester, 1185–1214. The bracketed words, for which a blank is left in A., B. and C., are supplied by Twysden from some other MS.

[2] *imperator*] Constantinopolitanus, ins. B.

[3] Isaac Angelus, emperor 1185–1195.

[4] *Remensis*] archiepiscopus, ins. B.

cardinalium assensu communi papa creatus est, vocatus Urbanus, kalendis Decembris coronatus est in ecclesia Sancti Petri montis in supercilio collocata. A.D. 1185. Urban III., Dec. 1.

Henricus rex Theutonicus, ducens secum Philippum Flandrensium comitem, venit ad patrem suum cum multis in Ytaliam, natalitios dies ibidem celebraturus. Henry of Germany goes to Italy.

Johannes filius regis Anglorum, vocatus Hyberniæ dominus, in Angliam rediit xvi° kalendas Januarii. John returns from Ireland, Dec. 17.

MCLXXXVI. Inter Henricum regem Teutonicum et Constantiam filiam Rogeri Siculi regis, amitam vero Willelmi regi Siculi generi regis Anglorum, matrimonium celebratum est. A.D. 1186. Marriage of the king of the Germans.

Sexto kalendas Februarii Viennensis archiepiscopus Fredericum imperatorem Romanum Mediolani coronavit. Eodem in die Aquileiensis patriarcha coronavit Henricum regem Teutonicum, et ab ea die vocatus est Cæsar. Quidam episcopus Teutonicus coronavit Constantiam amitam Willelmi regis Siculi generi regis Anglorum. Hæc acta sunt in monasterio Sancti Ambrosii. Coronation of the emperor at Milan, Jan. 27; and of his son.

Letter of Urban III. to Baldwin, announcing his promotion.

" [1]Urbanus papa Baldewino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo et " omnibus per Cantuariensem provinciam constitutis.

" Defuncto piæ recordationis papa Lucio, tractatus habitus " est a fratribus de successoris electione. Cum itaque plures " in ecclesia Dei viri venerabiles et prudentes, in quos eorum " vota consultius ut credimus et diguius potuissent concur- " rere, ad insufficientiam nostram oculos intenderunt, et " factum est sicut Domino placuit, ut nos quibus ad tantæ " dignitatis fastigium nec vires nec merita suffragantur, in " patrem sibi eligerent et pastorem. Nos vero, ne ex dilatione " negocii, vel pertinacia reluctandi, aliquod in ecclesia pericu- " lum proveniret, consensimus licet inviti injuncti oneris subire " laborem."

Letter of Urban III. to the bishops.

" Urbanus papa fratribus suis episcopis et omnibus per " Cantuariensem provinciam constitutis.

" Nos Anglicanam ecclesiam paternæ considerationis oculis " intuentes, ad salutem ipsius et spiritales[2] in Christo profec-

[1] The letter from which this is extracted is given in full in Benedict, i. 340, and Hoveden, ii. 305, 306, with the date, Verona, January 12.

[2] *spiritales*] spirituales; B.

A.D. 1186. He gives the legation to Baldwin.

" tus, communi consilio fratrum nostrorum decrevimus ordi-
" nandum, ut venerabilis frater noster Baldewinus Cantuariensis
" archiepiscopus, de cujus meritis et virtute, sapientia pariter
" et doctrina, ecclesia universa congaudet, ministerio legationis
" accepto, vices nostras ad honorem ecclesiæ, et totius regni
" salutem et pacem per subditam sibi provinciam exequatur."

The duke of Burgundy fails to prevail on the emperor to assist him.

Dux Burgundiæ Widonem castellanum de Vergeio diebus multis obsidione vallavit. Wido confugiens ad regem Francorum castrum et castellaniam totam ejus potestati subjecit. Dux vero, tale factum trahere volens ad injuriam imperatoris Romani, nulla ratione potuit impetrare quod imperator sui fines transgrederetur imperii. Sic rex Francorum castrum pacifice possidet memoratum.

Meeting of princes at Gisors, Mar. 10.

Rex Francorum, rex Anglorum, comes Flandrensis, comitissa Campaniæ, Margarita regina Henrici regis filii regis Anglorum relicta, convenerunt prope Gisorcium vito idus Martii. Redacta sunt ad pacem et concordiam quæ vertebantur inter regem Francorum et comitem Flandriæ de toto tenemento Radulfi quondam comitis Viromandorum. Quinetiam quæstio quæ mota fuerat inter regem Anglorum et prædictam reginam, tam super dote sua quam super donatione propter nuptias, amicabili compositione finem accepit.

The moon eclipsed. Apr. 16; the sun, Apr. 21.

Luna passa est eclipsim xvio kalendas Maii noctis hora prima.

Sol passus est eclipsim xio kalendas Maii hora diei prima.

Henry appoints officers in Aquitaine;

Rex Anglorum tractus Aquitanici munitiones natura locorum vel hominum artificio tutiores in sua potestate recipiens, eas pro velle suo custodiæ deputavit. Et licet hoc Ricardum comitem Pictaviensium graviter forsan offenderet, cum tamen in nullo reclamantem invenit pater suus. Itaque cum Andegavia, Turonia, Cenomannia, Britannia, Normannia, jocundæ pacis tranquillitate gauderent, rex redit in Angliam, navigationis cursum consummans feliciter apud Hamonis portum vto kalendas Maii. Regina cum rege transfretavit eadem in navi. Sub enavigatione rex Win-

and returns to England, Apr. 27.

toniensem episcopum visitavit apud Merewelle, sub ipsa nocte quiescens Wintoniæ. A.D. 1186. He visits Winchester.

Cantuariensis archiepiscopus dum tenderet ad videndum regem, ei rex festinanter occurrit, omnem patri debitam exhibens venerationem, et antecessorum consuetudinem hoc in humilitatis exemplo transcendens. Meeting of the king and the archbishop.

Archiepiscopus, sollempni processione receptus, Wintoniensem ecclesiam suæ legationis illustravit primordio kalendis Maii, duplicis Apostolorum festivitatis auspicio subjectos invitans ad dilectionem Dei simul et proximi. The archbishop visits Winchester, May 1.

Willelmus de Ver, spectabilis genere, die festo Sancti Laurentii consecratus est Herefordensis episcopus apud Lamhe, Willelmus etiam prior[1] ipsa die consecratus est episcopus Sancti Asavi. William de Vere, elect of Hereford, consecrated Aug. 10.

Gaufridus dux Britanniæ, filius regis Anglorum, cum a nativitate sua complesset annum xxviii^{vum}, xiiii^{o} kalendas Septembris diem clausit extremum: sepultus autem est Parisius in ecclesia beatæ Virginis intra chorum canonicorum, scilicet in sede majori. Reliquit autem idem Gaufridus, ex uxore sua Constantia, filia Conani ducis Britanniæ, duas filias. Geoffrey of Brittany dies, Aug. 18.

Margarita, soror Philippi regis Francorum, relicta bonæ memoriæ regis Anglorum Henrici filii Henrici regis Anglorum, in comitatu magno recessit Parisius viii^{vo} kalendas Septembris. Quam Bela[2] Hungariæ, Dalmatiæ, Croatiæ, Rammæque rex susceperturus est in uxorem. Queen Margaret leaves Paris, Aug. 24, to marry the king of Hungary.

Ad vocationem regis et archiepiscopi, Ricardus decanus Lincolniæ suique capituli pars præcipua convenerunt apud Egenesham viii^{o} kalendas Junii. Post tractatus autem super consilio Lincolniensis ecclesiæ diutius habitos, tandem Hugo genere Burgundio, natione Gratianopolitanus, prior ordinis Cartusiensis in Anglia, Meeting of the chapter of Lincoln at Eynsham, May 24.

[1] *prior*] William, prior of S. Augustine's, Bristol, was consecrated bishop of Llandaff on the same day with the bishop of Hereford.

[2] Bela III., king of Hungary, 1174–1196. By Ramma is understood a part of Servia on the river Rama, which runs into the Naro.

A.D. 1186. Election of Hugh prior of Witham Charter-house: he is consecrated Sept. 21.

pluribus episcoporum præsentibus, Lincolniensium est electus antistes. Nuntiis itaque directis in Burgundiam cœnobio Cartusiensi, prior et conventus ejusdem loci gratum electioni factæ præbuerunt assensum. Sic Hugo[1] prædictus votis plurium concurrentibus, die festo Sancti Mathæi, Lincolniensis est consecratus episcopus apud Westmonasterium in capella Sanctæ Katerinæ.

Consecration of the bishop of Worcester.

Willelmus de Norhalla,[2] Gloucestriæ archidiaconus, in Wigornensem electus episcopum, ipsa die munus consecrationis accepit ab archiepiscopo Baldewino. Radulfus siquidem prior Wigornensis postulationem illam sollempnem, quæ fieri solet in consecrationibus episcoporum, et quam ipse Radulfus in negotio simili jam quater interposuerat, viriliter adimplevit. In facie namque Teobaldi, Thomæ, Ricardi, Cantuariensium archiepiscoporum, juxta temporis excursum, ordine successorio quatuor[3] præsentarat episcopos. Nunc autem ut a pentateuco Moysi mutuatus aliquid videretur, quinto loco præsentavit Willelmum.

Ralph prior of Worcester presented five successive bishops.

Urban III. allows the archbishop to revoke the grants of his predecessor;

[4] "Urbanus papa Baldewino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo.

"Præsentium tibi auctoritate mandamus quatinus ea quæ
" de jure ecclesiæ tuæ per prædecessorem tuum inveneris in-
" juste subtracta legitime revoces, et in ipsius ecclesiæ utili-
" tatem convertas. Nos enim quod in hac parte a te factum

---

[1] Hugh of Avalon, bishop of Lincoln, 1186–1200.

[2] William of Northall, bishop of Worcester, 1186–1190.

[3] *quatuor*] Johannem, Aluredum, Rogerum, Baldewinum, inserted in another hand in the margin of A. and B., and in the text of C.

[4] This letter, which has an important bearing on the great controversy between the archbishop and the monks of Christ Church, does not occur in the collection of Reginald, published under the title of Epistolæ Cantuarienses. The first part of it contains, however, matter found in two letters of that series, No. 1 and No. 2, pp. 4, 5; the second clause, touching the building of the church, is contained in a letter of October 1, No. 6 in the Epistolæ, p. 7; and the latter part, "quarta . . . . ordinare," is found in another letter in the Canterbury Cartulary, MS. Lambeth, 1212, fo. 240; Epp. Cantuar., p. 543: so that probably the text is an eclectic arrangement made by our author.

" fuerit ratum habebimus, et faciemus auctore Domino inviolabiliter observari. Item tibi mandamus ut liceat tibi ecclesiam in honore beatorum martyrum Stephani et Thomæ, sicut gloriosus martyr Thomas disposuerat in honore beati Stephani construere, tam in honorem Sancti Thomæ quam Sancti Stephani, et de ydoneis ordinare personis, quibus beneficia quæ ad sustentationem eorum constitueris, debeas canonice assignare. Item fraternitati tuæ mandamus ut, quarta parte oblationum, quæ ad reliquias beati martyris Thomæ offeruntur, monachorum usibus concessa, quarta fabricis ecclesiæ deputata, quarta pauperibus erogata, aliam quartam liceat tibi in alia opera bona pro tuæ voluntatis arbitrio ordinare. Datum Veronæ kalendis Octobris." A.D. 1186. to build a church in honour of S. Thomas; and to divide the offerings at the shrine.

Johannes cantor Exoniensis[1] creatus est Exoniensis episcopus a Baldewino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo iii° nonas Octobris. John bishop of Exeter consecrated, Oct. 5.

Gualterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus ad procurandam pacem provinciæ suæ, ne limites iniquorum insidiis et irruptionibus turbarentur, die festo Sancti Dionisii locutus est cum rege Francorum, a quo vix cum aliqua spe pacis recedens, et per Flandriam transitum habens, applicuit apud Doveram xv^to^ kalendas Novembris. Meeting of the archbishop of Rouen with king Philip. He returns to England, Oct. 18.

Rannulfus Anglorum justiciarius, Gilebertus Rofensis episcopus, Bernardus de Sancto Walerico, Rogerus regis elemosinarius,[2] fungentes officio legationis invenerunt Noviomi regem Francorum, a quo minus forsitan reverenter recepti quam tantorum principum majestatem deceret, scilicet et illius a quo mittebantur et illius ad quem dirigebantur, nil in responsis aliud receperunt quam verba paci parum respondentia. Tandem rex Francorum a latere suo duos milites mediæ manus homines, Gatium de Pissiaco, Gerardum de Furnival, cum prædictis nuntiis direxit in Angliam. Quibus rex Anglorum occurrens, ne mala pro malis retribueret, eos cum omni veneratione suscepit. Summa petitionis Francorum hæc fuit ut, si Ricardus comes Pictavensis ab Embassy to Philip at Noyon. Bad reception. Henry receives Philip's envoys kindly. Proposals of Philip.

[1] John the Chantor, bishop of Exeter, 1186–1191.

[2] Roger the Templar, the king's almoner; see Bened. Pet., i. 169.

A.D. 1186. infestatione comitis Sancti Egidii temperaret, ab infestationibus essent immunes Normanni.

Quarrel of Ralph de Vaux.

Radulfus filius Hugonis de Vallibus, habitationem habens cum patre suo prope Gisortium, intra limites regis Francorum, Willelmum de Magnavilla comitem

He is killed Nov. 28.

illustrem Albemarlæ verbis dehonestavit amaris. In ultionem contumeliæ postmodum Henricus de Ver interfecit Radulfum iiii° kalendas Decembris. Quod

Murder of Garnier by the French.

in injuriam regis Francorum esse factum aliqui reputantes, Garnerium quendam, Anglorum regi familiarissimum et intra muros Gisortii domicilium a diebus multis habentem, paratis insidiis crudeliter trucidaverunt, ut sic paria delicta compensatione mutua delerentur.

Letter of the German prelates to the pope.

"Urbano summo pontifici Theutonici regni tam archiepiscopi "quam episcopi, cum debita devotione et subjectione reverentiam.[1]

"Cum divinæ dispensationis gratia apostolicæ sedis antistitem et totius sanctæ catholicæ ecclesiæ pastorem et patrem "dignissimum de altitudinis suæ consilio vos providerit, "universi et singuli quorum par affectus et eadem vota di-

Professions of good will.

"noscuntur, paternæ sanctitati vestræ cum filiali reverentia "tanto devotius assurgimus, quanto amantissimam personam "vestram sincera in Domino caritate diligimus, et jura "ecclesiarum de prudentiæ vestræ perfectione manuteneri, et "tranquilliori pace foveri indubitanter speramus. Inde utique "est quod habita hinc inde consideratione tam devotionis, "quam sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ et vestræ paternitati tenemur, "quam fidelitatis et singularis dilectionis, qua domino nostro "imperatori et imperio per sacramentum astringimur, super "discordia quæ inter ecclesiam et imperium morbosis cœpit "radicibus pullulare, in intimis animæ visceribus conturbamur, "non immerito dolentes duorum acies gladiorum in adversum "collidi, quorum mutuis ut deceret auxiliis ecclesiarum paci, "justiciis imperii, totius orbis commoditati accuratius fuerat "providendum.

"Serenissimus imperator Fredericus, celebrata novissime "sollempni curia, nobis cæterisque principibus imperii, tam

[1] This letter is printed, as the work of Wichmann archbishop of Magdeburg, in J. P. de Ludewig's Reliquiæ Manuscriptorum, vol. ii. pp. 445–449.

" clericis quam laicis, et nobilibus ac magnatibus, proposuit
" et graviter conquestus est, quod in ipsa dilectionis fiducia
" quam erga personam ejus et imperium vos habere confidebat,
" quamque erga personam vestram et sanctam Romanam
" ecclesiam firmissime conceperat, cum illustrem filium suum
" Romanorum regem, quem tanquam unicum diligit filium,
" quasi in signum consummatæ jam pacis, quibuslibet exposi-
" tum periculis, pro defensione et libertate Romanæ ecclesiæ
" quanta potuit velocitate transmisit, inimicitias et gravamina
" adversus eum, quod de vestra tamen paternitate minime credi-
" disset, studiosius exercueritis, si in facto Cremonensium, quos
" tanquam bannitos et publicos hostes imperii vestram decuit
" reverentiam evitare, contra honorem imperii familiariter
" collegeritis, dehortando civitates universas Italiæ ab auxilio
" ferendo et expeditione promovenda; episcopis quoque tam
" litteris quam nunciis sub pœna officii sui et beneficii pa-
" riterque anathematis interminatione districtius inhibendo, ne
" vel adjutorium ei facerent aut quovis modo secum comparere
" præsumerent.

A.D. 1186. The emperor has complained that the pope has excited an opposition to his son Henry among the Italian cities.

" Quas profecto litteras quidam ex nobis viderunt et per-
" legerunt, super facto tanto vehementius admirati, quanto
" timendum non fuerat sub dilectionis specie hujusmodi ini-
" micitias palliare. Maxime autem de facto Treverensis[1] eccle-
" siæ subjunxit, de quo nec poterat credi, nec opinione concipi,
" ut eo quem accepit fine unquam foret concludendum. Nam
" si secundum ordinationem vestram idem factum inconvulsum
" permanere deberet, videtur imperium dismembrationem et
" maximam sui juris imminutionem incurrisse; præsertim cum
" nulli antecessorum suorum ad aliquo antecessorum ves-
" trorum factum fuisse antiquitatis reportet memoria, quod
" episcoporum quispiam in regno Theutonico consecrationem
" priusquam regalia per sceptrum imperiale receperit; quod
" quidem rationi non derogans in hæc usque tempora usus
" approbatus celebri[2] firmitate conservavit. Sed hanc[3] im-
" perii justiciam infringendam per vos aut aliquatenus per-

They are grieved at the pope's action in relation to the archbishopric of Treves.

---

[1] *Treverensis*] On the death of Arnold, archbishop of Treves, in 1183, a disputed election took place; Rudolf, the provost of the church of S. Peter, being chosen by one party, and Fulmar, the archdeacon, by the other, which was supported by the duke of Limburg. Fulmar applied to the pope, Rudolf to the emperor, and a long dispute ensued. Urban III. consecrated Fulmar, but he failed to get possession of the see; and taking refuge with Henry II., lived at Tours, or in England, dying at Northampton in 1189.

[2] *celebri*] sceleri, A.; celebritate, Ludewig.

[3] *hanc*] nec, Ludewig; Twysden inserts " non."

A.D. 1186. " mutandam dominus imperator credidit, cum attestatione
" venerabilium virorum [1] quos ejusdem viri sponsores ad eum
" remisistis, manifestum est dominum Fulmarum nunquam
" vos consecraturum in verbo Domini firmiter promiseritis.

Complaints of the pope's conduct in reference to Milan.

" Cæterum in archiepiscopatu Mediolanensi injurias multo ex
" tempore per vos imperio factas in publico proposuit. Ea
" namque sedes quanto in Ytalia major et excellentior perhi-
" betur, tanto virum prudentem et utilem in ea requirit et
" magis necessarium habet. Sed, ut asserit, antistitem ecclesiæ
" usum regalium imperio a pluribus annis denegastis. Ad-
" jecit insuper, quantis exactionum oneribus universæ de
" imperio per vestros ecclesiæ subjaceant, videlicet ut tam
" ecclesiæ quam cœnobia, quibus vel panis cotidianus non
" sufficit, in erogatione pecuniæ, in pastu familiarum, in
" stabulatione equorum, ratione ecclesiæ super omnem possi-
" bilitatem suam deservire compellantur.

" Hæc siquidem et plura hiis serenissimus dominus noster
" imperator, in facie sollempnis curiæ suæ, nobis cæterisque
" principibus suis proposuit, ostendens evidenter quod tales
" injurias ad gravamen personæ suæ et inminutionem honoris
" imperii nec possit nec debeat sustinere; unde et nos, qui
" de conservando et manutenendo jure et honore imperii ipsi
" et illustri filio suo Romanorum [2] regi Augusto per sacramen-
" tum tenemur, nichilominus quoque reverendæ matri nostræ
" sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ dilectionis et obedientiæ debito

Prayer of the bishops that he will adopt wiser counsels.

" astringimur, et paternam sanctitatem vestram in intimi
" cordis sinceritate complectimur, excellentiam vestram ob-
" nixe rogantes, totius humilitatis et filialis devotionis studio
" deprecamur, quatinus ad laudem Dei et pacem ac uni-
" tatem ecclesiæ Dei et imperii, quæ nunc toti mundo de-
" sideranda venit et exoptanda, ea quæ ad gravamen imperii
" facta dinoscuntur, quoniam ea a vobis sustineri aut sub
" silentio præteriri fidei vestræ sinceritati nullatenus conve-
" niret, saniori ut expedit consilio permutari faciatis. Vera-
" citer siquidem a domino imperatore intelleximus, et pro
" ipso testamur, quod paratus est et semper fuit ad facien-
" dam justiciam et recipiendam, et super hiis quæ adversus
" imperium ecclesia proposuit, justitiæ amicabili composi-
" tioni aut arbitratui bonorum virorum assensum indubi-
" tanter præbere. Propter quod venerabiles viros litteratura

---

[1] *virorum*] Monasteriensis et Astensis episcoporum et fidelis viri S. Mandatarii, add. Ludewig.

[2] *Romanorum*] Ro., A. B. C. Twysden printed the name in full, Rogero. But it stands for Romanorum, as it is given by J. P. de Ludewig, the person meant being undoubtedly Henry VI.

"præditos, prudentia et discretione conspicuos[1] sanctitati A.D. 1186.
"vestræ duximus transmittendos, paternam benignitatem They send envoys.
"vestram propensius exorantes, quatinus apostolicæ man-
"suetudinis caritate et ea quæ[2] ex parte nostra proposuerint
"clementer audire dignemini, ac verbis eorum fidem indubi-
"tatam adhibere."

Guido comes Joppensis, Pictaviensis genere, Sibillam regis Amalrici filiam unicam et hæredem habens uxorem, consecratus est rex Jerosolimorum in Augusto mense. Coronation of Guy of Lusignan.

MCLXXXVII. Intra Natalitios dies Octavianus[3] cardinalis, Hugo[4] Cestrensis electus, habituri legationem in Hyberniam sicut dicebant, cum in aliquibus locis per Angliam sollempni processione recepti fuissent signa ferentes papalia, nec in aliquem aliquid statuissent, ab Anglia recesserunt apud Doveram transfretantes. A.D. 1187. The legates sent to Ireland, leave England.

Henricus rex Anglorum, regno suo gaudente pacis jocundæ commoditatibus, xiii° kalendas Martii transfretavit apud Doveram, transitum habens per Flandriam. Qui die tertia surgens a castello quodam quod vocatur Hesding venit in Normanniam apud Driencurt. Henry goes to Normandy, Feb. 17, across Flanders.

Gilebertus Foliot[5] Lundoniensis episcopus die festo Sancti Vitalis martyris, sollempni processione receptus Lundoniæ, vixit in episcopatu xxiii. annis mensibus x. diebus xvii. Diem autem clausit extremum xii° kalendas Martii, litera G. Death of Gilbert Foliot, Feb. 18.

Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus et apostolicæ sedis legatus, die Dominica qua cantatur "Lætare "Jerusalem," sollempni processione receptus est in ec- The archbishop visits S. Paul's, Mar. 8.

---

[1] Woltwinum præpositum Magdeburgensem, Andream scholasticum Spirensem et magistrum Ludolfum Magdeburgensem; add. Ludewig.

[2] *quæ*] om. A. B. C.

[3] *Octavianus*] So altered in A. from Octovianus, the more common form. Octavian was cardinal deacon of the title of SS. Sergius and Bacchus, and became bishop of Ostia in 1188.

[4] *Hugo*] Hugh of Nunant, bishop elect of Chester; consecrated in 1188.

[5] *Foliot*] Folioth, D. From this point MS. A. loses the formal and beautiful penmanship which it has from the beginning shared with MS. B., and takes more and more the character of a first or rough copy.

A.D. 1187. He celebrates there at Easter, Mar. 29.

clesia beati Pauli Lundoniæ. Feria quoque quinta post Ramos Palmarum crisma consecravit in eadem ecclesia. Die vero Paschæ celebravit ibidem divina.

Idem archiepiscopus custodibus episcopatus Lundoniensis scripsit in hæc verba;

The archbishop directs the guardians of the see of London not to interfere with the spirituals.

"Pervenit ad audientiam nostram quod cum Gilebertus "bonæ memoriæ Lundoniensis episcopus, occasione controversiæ inter Philippum clericum de Hormede[1] et Adam de "Samforde motæ, ecclesiam de Hormede in manum suam "recepisset sequestratam, ipso episcopo defuncto, ratione custodiæ circa episcopatum Lundoniensem in temporalibus "vobis commissæ, quasi de spiritualibus curam receperitis, "clavem prædictæ ecclesiæ vobis tradi exegistis, et capellanum ejusdem ecclesiæ, quia clavem vobis tradere noluit, "suspendistis. Viri siquidem estis prudentes et discreti, et "utinam fines commissæ vobis custodiæ non excedatis. Scitis "enim quod in ipsa custodia de spiritualibus rebus dispensandis nullam habetis auctoritatem. Inhibemus igitur, vobis "firmiter injungentes ne de cætero ratione custodiæ vestræ "aliquid de spiritualibus rebus vobis usurpare præsumatis, et "dilectum filium nostrum G.[2] archidiaconum Middelsexiæ, in "cujus archidiaconatu consistere dicitur eadem ecclesia, ipsius "ecclesiæ quam præfatus episcopus habuit custodiam habere "permittatis. Valete."

Birth of Arthur of Brittany, Mar. 29.

Constantia Britanniæ comitissa, quam maritus suus filius regis Anglorum Galfridus vita decedens reliquerat gravidam, die sancto Paschæ[3] peperit filium, quem Britones vocaverunt Arturum.

Letter of Urban III. to Baldwin.

[4] "Urbanus papa tertius Baldewino Cantuariensi archiepi- "scopo.

"Dilecti filii nostri prior et quidam fratres ejus, monachi "ecclesiæ tibi commissæ, ad nostram præsentiam venientes, "de ecclesia quam ædificare cœpisti, tantum sibi et eidem "ecclesiæ proposuerunt dispendium proventurum, quod nisi "fuerit ab ejus constructione cessatum, præscripta ecclesia

---

[1] *Hormede*] Great Hormead in Hertfordshire, a parish in the archdeaconry of Middlesex; the property of Jordan de Samford founder of Blackmore Priory. See Newcourt, Repertorium, i. 834.

[2] *G.*] Gilbert.

[3] *Paschæ*] scilicet iiii° kalendas Aprilis, interl. A. C., add. B.

[4] This is an abridgment of the letter, dated Verona, May 9, which is given in full among the Epistolæ Cantuarienses, No. XL. p. 34.

" suæ honestatis et status miserabile suscipiet detrimentum. A.D. 1187.
" Sane cum per Dei gratiam litteratus sis et in religione diu- He orders him to discontinue the building of his new church.
" tius conversatus, ignorare non debes, sicut nec te credimus
" ignorare, quomodo propter scandalum a bonis est interdum
" operibus abstinendum. Nos autem sollicite providere volen-
" tes, ne inter te et fratres tuos remaneat materia jurgiorum,
" cum non possint convenienter obsequiis divinis intendere,
" qui sunt contentionibus dediti, de consilio et deliberatione
" fratrum nostrorum monemus fraternitatem tuam, man-
" damus et districte præcipimus, quatinus donec causa cog-
" nita statuamus quid de ipsa ecclesia fieri debeat, occa-
" sione, contradictione et appellatione postposita, ab illius
" novæ ecclesiæ constructione et canonicorum institutione
" desistas, et etiam ab exactione fraternitatis quam ob favorem
" ipsius diceris statuisse, litteris aliis non obstantibus a sede
" apostolica impetratis. Si quid autem contra nostram pro-
" hibitionem fuerit attemptatum, apostolica auctoritate irri-
" tamus."

In pago Bituricensi prope Castellum Radulfi, quod a doloribus traxit agnomen, dum reges Francorum et Anglorum copiosum undique congregassent exercitum, et aciebus ordinatis ad pugnam accingerentur hinc inde, die Martis scilicet vigilia Sancti Johannis, ne Martis tam subito dubios experirentur eventus, ad annos usque duos fere belli negotium induciatum est, damnis hinc inde datis mutua compensatione deletis. June 23. A truce for two years concluded near Châteauroux.

Margarita regina Francorum Philippo regi peperit filium quem Ludovicum vocavit. Birth of Lewis of France.

Templares omnibus Christi fidelibus scripserunt in hæc verba;

[1] " Quot et quantis calamitatibus ira Dei, peccatis nostris Letter of the Templars, announcing the invasion of Palestine by the Turks.
" exigentibus, nos in præsenti flagellari permiserit, nec litteris,
" nec flebili voce, proh dolor! explicare valemus. Turci enim
" inmensam suarum gentium multitudinem congregantes,
" Christianorum nostrorum fines acriter invadere cœperunt;
" contra quos nostrarum gentium phalanges coadunantes in-
" fra octavas Petri et Pauli, v^to^ scilicet et iiii^to^ nonas Julii,[2]

[1] This is part of the letter of Terricus the preceptor of the Templars, which is given in full in Benedict, ii. 13, and Hoveden, ii. 324, 325. The concluding paragraph, " Civitatem . . cooperuere," appears in the margin of MS. A., in the text of B. and C.

[2] *Julii*] Junii, B.

A.D. 1187. Captivity of the king, and capture of the cross.

" in eos congredi, et versus Tyberiadem, quam violenter
" castro solo relicto ceperant, iter arripere præsumpsimus.
" Cumque in scopulis pessimis nos impulissent, nos ita
" acriter expugnaverunt, quod cruce sancta capta et rege
" nostro magistroque nostro captis et omni multitudine nostra
" fere interfecta, et fratrum nostrorum, ut in veritate credi-
" mus, eodem die ducentis et triginta decollatis, exceptis illis
" lx^ta qui prima die Maii interempti fuerunt, vix dominus
The survivors. " comes Tripolis,[1] et dominus Reginaldus Sydonis,[2] dominus
" siquidem Balianus,[3] et nos de illo miserabili campo evadere
" potuimus. Deinde Christianorum nostrorum sanguine de-
" baccati versus civitatem Acon cum omni multitudine sua
Saladin has taken all but three cities; " venire non distulerunt. Quam violenter capientes totam fere
" terram invaserunt, Jerusalem, Aschalon, Tyro nobis et Chris-
" tianitati adhuc solis relictis. Istas etiam civitates omnibus
" earum fere civibus in prælio interfectis, nisi divinum et
" nobilium virorum præsto sit auxilium, nullo modo retinere
but Tyre holds out. " poterimus. Civitatem etiam Tyrensem inpræsentiarum acri-
" ter obsidentes, violenter die noctuque expugnare non cessant.
" Tanta est eorum copia quod totam terræ faciem a Tyro
" usque Jerusalem, et usque Gaza, velut formicæ existentes
" cooperuere."

Richard takes the cross. Ricardus[4] filius regis Anglorum comes Pictaviæ, primus inter proceres regni Francorum, crucis signum suscepit de manu Bartholomei Turonensis archiepiscopi, non expectato patris sui consilio nec voluntate.

Gregory VIII. pope, Oct. 25. Albertus[5] genere Beneventanus, ecclesiæ Romanæ cancellarius, Urbano iii^tio defuncto, papa creatus viii^vo kalendas Novembris, vocatus etiam Gregorius viii^vus, scripsit in hæc verba;

Letter of Gregory VIII., [6] " Nos de consueta sedis apostolicæ misericordia duximus
" statuendum, ut litteræ prædecessoris nostri domini Urbani
" papæ a tribus mensibus ante ipsius obitum destinatæ pro
" justicia facienda et litigiis dirimendis, quæ tamen manifeste
" alicujus præjudicium non continent aut calumpniam æqui-
" tatis, eundem habeant tempore nostræ amministrationis

[1] Raymond of Tripoli.

[2] Reginald, lord of Sidon.

[3] Balian, lord of Ibelin.

[4] This paragraph appears in MS. B. after the word Januarii, line 9, p. 51.

[5] Albert, the chancellor of the Holy See, who had been legate to Henry III. in Normandy in 1172.

[6] This is part of the letter given in full in Hoveden, ii. 333, dated Oct. 27; and in the Epistolæ Cantuarienses, p. 111, with the date Oct. 29.

" effectum, quem habere si adhuc ille viveret debuissent. A.D. 1187.
" Cessante igitur exceptione de mandatoris morte, perficite confirming the orders
" quod ille mandavit agendum, et nemo ad nos pro excusa- issued by his predecessor
" tione hujusmodi a concepta per illum de sua justicia obti- three months
" nenda fiducia cogatur vacuus laborare. Datum Ferrariæ." before his death.

Hic cum sedisset duobus mensibus diem clausit extremum. Substitutus est ei Paulus Prænestinus episcopus, genere Romanus, vocatus Clemens tercius, xiii° kalendas Januarii. Death of Gregory VIII. Clement III. succeeds.

MCLXXXVIII. Rex Francorum et rex Anglorum inter Gisortium et Tryam colloquium habituri xii° kalendas Februarii convenerunt. Post longos itaque tractatus rex Anglorum primo crucem suscepit de manibus archiepiscoporum, Tyrensis[1] scilicet et Rothomagensis. Postmodum rex Francorum crucem suscepit de manibus archiepiscoporum Tyrensis et Remensis, et postmodum Philippus comes Flandriæ et infiniti cum eis. Convenit etiam inter eos ut omnes de terra regis Francorum cruces rubeas susciperent; de terra regis Anglorum albas; de terra vero comitis Flandriæ virides. A.D. 1188. The kings meet, Jan. 22, between Gisors and Trie; and take the cross.

Rex Anglorum post susceptionem crucis familiarem clericum suum Ricardum Barre, Luxoviensem archidiaconum, direxit imperatoribus tam Romano quam Constantinopolitano. Direxit etiam eundem Ricardum Belæ regi Hungarorum, scribens in hæc verba; Richard Barre sent to the emperors.

" Venerabili et excellentissimo principi Frederico Dei gratia Letter of Henry to Frederick,
" Romanorum imperatori, semper Augusto, Henricus eadem
" gratia rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ et Aquitaniæ, et comes
" Andegaviæ, in Eo regnare per Quem reges regnant.

" Quoniam imperatoriam majestatem super his congratulari announcing his intention to go on crusade,
" confidimus, quæ ad honorem Dei et exaltationem ecclesiæ
" Suæ disponuntur, excellentiæ vestræ notum facimus nos et
" karissimum nobis in Christo amicum Philippum regem
" Francorum, et multos proceres utriusque regni cum magna
" armatorum multitudine crucem ad servitium Dei assump-
" sisse; hoc præcipue intendentes ut, Deo duce, Terra Sancta
" nostræ[2] humilitatis amminiculo ab his oppressionibus re-
" levetur, quibus hodie ad opprobrium Christiani nominis

[1] *Tyrensis*] See Benedict, ii. 29, note 1.

[2] *nostræ*] vestræ, A.

A.D. 1188. He asks for a safe passage through the empire, and a market.

" dinoscitur miserabiliter prægravari. Et quoniam in propo-
" sito habemus per terras imperii vestri transire, rogamus
" vos tanquam Christianissimum principem, quatinus securum
" transitum nobis et his qui nobiscum votum simile obtule-
" runt in terris vestræ potestati subjectis præbeatis, et mer-
" catum victualium locis competentibus in occursum nostrum
" convenire faciatis, ad honorem Dei et vestrum, et totius im-
" perii securitatem. Quid autem super hoc vestræ placuerit
" majestati, per fidelem et familiarem clericum nostrum
" Ricardum Barre Luxoviensem archidiaconum,[1] quem ob hanc
" causam ad vestram destinavimus præsentiam, vestra nobis
" significare[2] velit dignatio."

Answer of Frederick.

" Fredericus Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, semper Au-
" gustus, karissimo fratri Henrico illustri regi Angliæ salutem
" et dilectionem.

He promises a safe passage.

" Noveris laudabile propositum tuum, quod te suscepisse
" suggeris ad servitium Dei faciendum, nobis plurimum com-
" placere; unde ad illud servitium perficiendum tibi consilium
" et auxilium in Christi nomine promittimus, forumque vic-
" tualium tibi et illis qui tecum ad Dei honorem militabunt,
" prompta voluntate et prono desiderio, Deo cooperante, secun-
" dum petitionem tuam providebimus, maxime autem in socie-
" tate karissimi amici nostri Philippi regis Francorum, et ea
" durante gratia qua vos[3] invicem intelligimus associatos."

Letter of Henry to Isaac Angelus,

" Glorioso et potentissimo principi Chursac[4] Angeli, Dei
" gratia Romanorum imperatori, semper Augusto, a Deo co-
" ronato, Henricus eadem gratia rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ
" et Aquitanniæ, et comes Andegaviæ, gaudium et gloriam
" cum salute sempiterna.

announcing the crusade,

" Quoniam imperii vestri potentiam amplissimam ad defen-
" sionem fidei catholicæ et ad honorem Christiani nominis
" credimus et confidimus specialiter et laudabiliter invigilare,
" non inmerito gloriæ vestræ ea significanda duximus, quæ ad
" sacrosanctæ ecclesiæ honorem et exaltationem divina provi-
" dentia, in regno nostro, et in regno karissimi nobis Philippi
" illustris regis Francorum voluit operari. Imperatoriæ itaque
" notificamus majestati nos et prænominatum illustrem regem
" Francorum proceresque utriusque regni cum innumera bel-

---

[1] *Luxoviensem archidiaconum*] Richard Barre, archdeacon of Lisieux.

[2] *significare*] si gratare, A. B. C.

[3] *vos*] nos, A. B. C.

[4] Here MS. A. has a marginal note, in which Isaac Angelus is confounded with Isaac Comnenus; " Iste Saracenus tenuit Ciprum et " vocavit se imperatorem, ut infra, " MCXCI. ' Rex Anglorum in magna " ' gloria.' " See below p. 91.

" latorum multitudine signaculum crucis suscepisse et propo- A.D. 1188.
" situm firmasse, ut omnipotenti Deo serviamus ad confusio- and asking
" nem inimicorum Sanctæ Crucis in Sancta Terra Jerusalem, for a safe passage and
" ut nostræ humilitatis interventu terra illa eliminata paga- market.
" norum spurcitia pristinum decorem et debitum splendorem
" Deo annuente recipiat. Quod quoniam in omni nostro pro-
" posito et maxime in famulatu Dei omnipotentis excellentiæ
" vestræ consilio præmuniri volumus et juvari, attentius exora-
" mus quatinus oculos majestatis vestræ ad nos et ad principes,
" et ad alios qui Deo duce nobiscum militabunt reducatis,
" nobisque sublimitas vestra securum et quietum transitum et
" victualium copiosum mercatum in terris et provinciis nobi-
" lissimo imperio subjacentibus liberaliter et benigne provideat,
" ad honorem Dei omnipotentis et gloriam vestri nominis et
" ad imperii securitatem, quam de pacifico ingressu nostro et
" de transitu innocuo præstare parati sumus, prout Ricardus
" Barre Luxoviensis archidiaconus, clericus noster fidelis et fa-
" miliaris, eminentiæ vestræ ex parte nostra plenius exponet."

" Chursac Angeli, Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, semper Answer of
" Augustus, a Deo coronatus, Henrico eadem gratia regi Isaac
" Angliæ, duci Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ, et comiti Ande- Angelus,
" gaviæ, salutem et benivolentiam.

" Rogavit nobilitas tua ut nostri imperii consilium et auxi-
" lium haberet in servitio Dei omnipotentis contra Sarracenos,
" et ut securum haberes transitum cum exercitu tuo et suffi-
" cientem mercatum victualium, per loca imperii transiturus.
" Ad quod respondemus:—Propositum tuum bene placitum
" est Deo et imperio nostro, quoniam laudabile est, et quod
" omnes Christiani laudare debent et adjuvare. Ideoque pru- promising a
" dentiæ tuæ et probitati agratulantes, tibi et his qui in co- safe passage
" mitatu tuo venturi sunt securum transitum et copiosum and market.
" concedimus mercatum, secundum formam litteris tuis inser-
" tam, unde ad præsentiam tuam mittimus Constantinum et
" Nicholaum, ministros sacrii palacii, ut tecum tractent de
" securitate et forma pacis servandæ imperio, et, si eam præ-
" stiteris securitatis formam quam ipsi portant, centies milies
" bene veneris sicut alter dominus et socius imperii; et tu
" cum toto comitatu tuo fideliter consilio imperii instructus
" eris qualiter insidias Turcorum debeas declinare, et qua
" cautela eos possis invadere et expugnare."

" Venerabili et karissimo fratri Belæ, Dei gratia Hungariæ, Letter of
" Dalmatiæ, Croatiæ, Ramæque regi, Henricus eadem gratia Henry to
" rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ, et comes Ande- the king of
" gaviæ, salutem et sinceram dilectionem. Hungary.

" Quoniam jam pridem intelleximus regiam vestram nobi-
" litatem Deo et sanctæ ecclesiæ plurimum esse devotam,

A.D. 1188. announcing the crusade,

" excellentiæ vestræ significare volumus, nos et karissimum
" amicum nostrum Philippum regem Francorum multosque
" proceres utriusque regni nobiscum ad honorem Dei et ad
" Ipsius servitium signaculum sanctæ crucis suscepisse, ad hoc
" maxime aspirantes ut civitas sancta, quæ quondam domina
" gentium hodie sedet in tristitia, nostræ humilitatis obsequio,
" Deo tamen operante et cooperante, ad pristinum statum et
and asking for a safe passage. " ad debitam regni dignitatem revertatur. Et quoniam in
" tanto proposito vestro consilio et auxilio et providentiæ inniti
" volumus et desideramus, rogamus attentius quatinus secu-
" rum transitum per regnum vestrum et terras ei cohærentes
" nobis et fidelibus nostris preparare benigne et liberaliter
" velitis, necnon et forum victualium nobis sufficiens locis
" oportunis, ad honorem Dei et vestrum et regni vestri secu-
" ritatem, nobis liberalitas vestra faciat provideri. Beneplaci-
" tum sane vestrum de hac petitione et de aliis quæ Ricardus
" Barre Luxoviensis archidiaconus clericus noster familiaris et
" fidelis ex parte nostra vobis proponet, per eundem nobis si
" placet significetis."

Answer of king Bela,

" Venerabili amico suo et fratri karissimo Henrico, Dei gra-
" tia illustri regi Angliæ, duci Normanniæ et Aquitanniæ, et
" comiti Andegaviæ, Bela eadem gratia Hungariæ, Dalmatiæ,
" Croatiæ, Ramæque rex, diu et feliciter regnare.

" Certissimum habeatis quod regiæ magnificentiæ propositum
" collaudamus et approbamus, quoniam discretionis vestræ et
" probitatis diligentia et sollicitudinis interventu, sicut credi-
" mus et confidimus, ecclesia Dei et Terra Sancta desolata
" solatium percipiet, et laudabile subsidium, ad honorem Dei
promising provisions. " et gloriæ vestræ perpetuum incrementum. Nos itaque gaudio
" magno gaudentes, quod de proximo speramus et expectamus
" oportunitatem vobis serviendi et vos honorandi, regiæ vestræ
" magnificentiæ vires et opes regni nostri exponimus, ves-
" tramque petitionem obviis manibus et hilari mente exci-
" pientes, mercatum victualium et copiam prout regionis
" ubertas per Dei misericordiam proventura poterit sustinere,
" benigne et devote concedimus et promittimus."

Geoffrey of Lusignan assassinates a friend of Richard.

Circa dies istos Gaufridus de Liziniaco[1] quendam familiarissimum Ricardi comitis Pictavorum structis insidiis interfecit. In ultionem tanti delicti comes provocatur ad arma, sed, susceptæ crucis non inmemor, hominibus Gaufridi crucis signaculo volentibus insigniri

[1] Geoffrey of Lusignan, brother of Guy king of Jerusalem; see Bened. ii. 34.

pepercit, in ore gladii trucidavit non paucos, in deditionem plura castella suscepit. Gaufridus regis Anglorum fultus auxilio simul et pecunia, sicut dicitur, comiti restitit, sed parum profecit. Hac de causa comes animum suum alienavit a patre. Comes transitum faciens in Vasconiam, comitis Sancti Egidii lacessitus injuriis, intra breve temporis spatium copiis Brebantinorum vallatus prope Tolosam castella subjugavit xvii. Rex autem Francorum, ferens indigne quod comes Pictavorum Ricardus regnum suum hostiliter impugnaverat, eo non diffidato nec certiorato, castellum Radulfi de Doloribus in Biturica situm xvi° kalendas Julii intravit latenter; ad faciendam sibi fidelitatem omnes inhabitantes coegit. Quod ignominiosum principi tanto videtur fuisse, præsertim cum rex Anglorum, post susceptionem crucis transfretaturus in Angliam, regi Francorum totius terræ suæ custodiam reliquisset, et ipse bona fide suscepisset custodiendam. Subinde rex Francorum castellanos quosdam, Anglorum regi subjectos, in suam partem tam minis quam promissis attraxit. Quod audiens rex Anglorum, circa festum Sancti Jacobi transfretavit. Infinitum congregavit exercitum Anglorum, Marchionum, Walensium, et Armoricanorum. Sed omnes hos intra Normanniam in tentoriis habitantes, et intra[1] Franciam irruptiones facere plurimum affectantes, multis diebus compescuit. Tandem habitum est inter reges colloquium inter Gisortium et Triam xvii° kalendas Septembris, quod per triduum protractum est. Cum autem ab invicem reges recessissent discordes, rex Francorum arborem quandam, Gisortio vicinantem, sed intra[1] fines Franciæ radicatam, præcepit incidi. Rex autem Anglorum in crastino recedens Gisortio, transitum etiam habens per Vernonem, Franciam intravit hostiliter, et usque Meduntam omnia demolitus est.[2]

A.D. 1188. Richard goes to war in Gascony,

and attacks the count of Toulouse.

Philip takes Châteauroux, June 16.

Henry goes to France in July.

Interview of the kings, Aug. 16.

Henry advances to Mantes.

[1] *intra*] infra, B. | [2] *Circa . . . demolitus est*] om. D.

A.D. 1188. The cities of Palestine surrendered for the release of the king.

Post subactam Jerusalem, in exaltatione Sanctæ Crucis, pro liberatione Guidonis regis Jerusalem et pro liberatione Theodorici [1] magistri militiæ Templi, Eraclius patriarcha Jerosolimitanus et Barisianus Neopolitanus, et Reginaldus dominus Sydoniorum Saladino reddiderunt Jerusalem, Aschalonam, et castellum quod dicitur Daron,[2] et Gazam, et Galatididem, et Blancham Guardam, et Turrim militum, et castellum Arnoldi, et Petram Platam, et Neapolim, et Gibilinum, et Joppen. Convenit etiam quod unusquisque homo qui posset solvere Saladino v. bizantia, et fœmina quæ posset solvere duo bizantia et dimidium, et puer qui posset solvere unum bizantium et dimidium, eruerentur a manibus Saracenorum, et conductum haberent ad transeundum usque Tyrum. Postmodum xx^ti milia hominum ducti sunt in captivitatem apud Damascum. Et statim frater regis liberatus est, et post Pascha sequens liberatus est rex et magister militiæ Templi.

Death of the count of Tripoli.

Buamundus [3] comes Tripolitanus, xv. diebus elapsis postquam capta fuit Jerusalem, proditione reus, amens factus est et expiravit.

Prope dies istos litteræ Saladino directæ sunt in hæc verba ;

Letter of Frederick to Saladin.

" Fredericus Dei gratia Romanorum imperator et semper
" Augustus, et hostium imperii magnificus triumphator, Sa-
" ladino præsidi Sarracenorum, quondam illustri exemplo
" Pharaonis fugere Ysraelem.[4]

" Devotionis tuæ litteras multis retro temporibus ad nos
" destinatas super arduis negotiis, tibi quidem si fides verbis

---

[1] *Theodorici*] The ex-master of the Temple Terric, the writer of the letter given above, p. 49, was at liberty already. The person whose liberation was obtained by the surrender of the castles was Gerard of Ridesford. Itiner. R. Ric., p. 30.

[2] These strongholds are thus identified ; Daron is Daroum ; Galatididis is Galatia or Kuratiyeh ; Blanche Garde is Tel-es-safih ; Turris Militum, or Turun aux Chevaliers, is Latroon ; Castellum Arnaldi is Beit-nûba ; and Petra Plata is possibly Montreal.

[3] *Buamundus*] Properly Raymond.

[4] On this famous letter see Itinerarium Regis Ricardi, p. 35, sq.

" subfuisset profuturis, prout majestatis nostræ decuit magni- A.D. 1188.
" ficentiam suscepimus, et epistolarum alloquiis magnitudini Letter of defiance
" tuæ consulere dignum duximus. Nunc vero quia Terram from Frede-
" Sanctam prophanasti, cui æterni Regis imperamus imperio, rick to Saladin.
" in præside Judææ, Samariæ, Palestinorum, in tanti sceleris
" præsumptuosam et plectibilem audaciam debita animadver-
" sione decernere, imperialis officii sollicitudo nos admonet.
" Quamobrem nisi occupatam terram et omnia restituas, ad-
" juncta satisfactione sacris constitutionibus pro tam nefariis
" excessibus taxata, ne minime legittimum videamur quærere
" bellum, a capite kalendarum Novembris, evoluto anni spacio,
" terminum præstituimus, ad experiendam belli fortunam in
" campo Thaneos in virtute mirifice crucis et in nomine veri
" Joseph. Vix enim credere possumus hoc te latere quod ex
" scriptis veterum et in hystoriis antiquis nostri temporis
" factum redolet. Nunquid scire dissimulas ambas Æthiopias,
" Mauritaniam, Persiam, Syriam, Parthiam, ubi Parthi Crassi
" nostri dictatoris fata sunt præmaturata, Judæam, Samariam,
" Maritimam, Arabiam, Caldeam, ipsam quoque Egyptum, ubi,
" proh dolor! civis Romanus Antonius, vir insignis, virtute
" præditus, citra nitorem temperantiæ, et secus quam deceret
" militem a tanto culmine rerum emissum, minus sobriis
" Cleopatræ inserviebat amoribus? Nunquid etiam scire dis-
" simulas Armeniam et innumerabiles alias terras nostræ ditioni
" subjectas? Norunt hæc reges qui cruore gladii Romani sunt
" crebrius inebriati. Et tu quidem in ipsa rerum experientia
" Deo auctore intelliges quid nostræ victrices aquilæ, quid
" cohortes diversarum nationum, quid furor Theutonicus etiam
" in pace arma capescens, quid caput indomitum Reni, quid
" juventus quæ fugam nunquam novit, quid procerus Bavarus,
" quid Suevus astutus, quid Franconia circumspecta, quid in
" gladio ludens Saxonia, quid Turingia, quid Westfalia, quid
" agilis Brebantia, quid nescia pacis Letaringia, quid inquieta
" Burgundia, quid Alpini salices, quid Spisania in amento
" prævolans, quid Boemia ultro mori gaudens, quid Bolenia
" suis feris ferior, quid Austria, quid Stricia, quid Bugrensa,
" quid partes Illiricæ, quid Leonardia, quid Tuscia, quid An-
" caricana Marcea, quid Venetus proretha, quid Spinanus
" nauclerus, denique qualiter dextera nostra, quam senio ar-
" guis effetam, gladio vibrare didicerit, dies illa plena lætitiæ
" et jocunditatis et reverentiæ, triumpho Christi præfixa, te
" docebit."

In octavis Sancti Martini colloquium habitum est Conference of the kings, Nov. 18.
prope Bonmulins inter reges Francorum et Anglorum, quod procuraverat Ricardus comes Pictavorum. Cum

A.D. 1188. Nov. 18. Philip proposes a cessation of hostilities.

ventum est ad colloquium proposuit rex Francorum quod ea quæ post crucem susceptam ceperat Anglorum regi restitueret, et post, omnia manerent in eo statu quo fuerunt ante crucem susceptam. Rex Anglorum respondit, melius esse firmam pacem inire tam cleri quam baronum consilio, quam litem protrahere forte dampnosam.

Richard declines to restore his conquests;

Quod audiens comes Pictavorum penitus contradixit; sibi quidem videbatur incongruum quod hac servata conditione Cadurcum redderet, et totum comitatum, et alia multa de dominio suo, quæ mille marcis vel amplius valebant per annum, pro feudo de Castro Radulfi et de castello de Hissoudin et Crazai, quæ sua non erant dominia, sed erant de se tenenda.

and demands his betrothed wife, and the homage due to him as his father's heir.

Transivit ad aliud comes Pictavorum, petens a patre suo quatinus sororem regis Francorum sibi daret in uxorem, et terram suam sibi velut hæredi suo faceret juramento firmari.

Henry refuses, and Richard does homage to Philip.

Quod et peti fecit per regem Francorum. Rex Anglorum respondit se nullatenus hoc facturum in tali statu, quoniam hoc potius videretur facere coactus quam spontaneus. Post hæc comes Pictavorum, videntibus cunctis, hominagium fecit regi Francorum de toto tenemento patris sui quod pertinet ad regnum Franciæ, salvo tenemento patris, quamdiu viveret, et salva fide quam patri debebat. Sicque finitum est colloquium, treugis prorogatis ad festum usque Sancti Hylarii.

Death of the bishop of Winchester, Dec. 22.

Ricardus Wintoniensis episcopus, cum sedisset annis xiiii^{cim} et xi. septimanis, xi^{o} kalendas Januarii diem clausit extremum. Sepultus est autem Wintoniæ.

A.D. 1189. News from the East.

M^{o}C^{o}LXXX°IX°. [1] "Exercitus Saladini confectus est ante Antiochiam. Princeps Antiochiæ currit singulis diebus ante Halap. Margaritus cepit Jafam, et omnes Turcos interfecit

[1] The following details are the report of the envoys sent by Philip II. to Isaac Angelus; it is given in abstract by Hoveden, ii. 355, 356; and, in nearly the same form as in the text, in the Chronicle of Benedict, vol. ii. pp. 51, 52: with the preface; "Interim nuncii Philippi regis Franciæ, qui missi fuerant ad imperatorem Constantinopolitanum qui vocabatur Ysakius, in hac forma scripserunt regi Franciæ; 'Scias quod exercitus, &c.'" The text is slightly abridged.

" qui erant in ea, scilicet quinque milia, et viii. admiratos A.D. 1189.
" cepit.[1] Cepit etiam Gibelet et omnes occidit. Dominus Feuds among the
" Mullæ major Saladino infestat Saladinum; dominus etiam Saracens.
" Merendim. Cilif dominus de Baldac major omnibus Turcis
" infestat Saladinum pro posse suo. Sciatis etiam quod Sol-
" danus Iconii maritavit filiam suam filio Saladini, et Saladi-
" nus filiam suam filio Soldani, et bene notum est qualiter
" Kutepez filius Saladini interfecit uxorem suam filiam Sol-
" dani. Est autem certa et indubitabilis, sicut dicunt omnes, Prophecy of
" prophetia Danielis Constantinopolitani, quod eo anno quo Daniel of Constanti-
" Annuntiatio Domini in die Paschæ continget Franci restau- nople.
" rabunt Terram Promissionis, et stabulabunt equos suos in
" palmacia de Baldac, et figent tentoria sua ultra arborem
" siccam, et lolium separabitur a tritico. Certissime quoque
" noveritis quod vadum inventum est in brachio Sancti
" Georgii.

" Verum est nec celandum est quod Soldanus exosum habet Other
" imperatorem Constantinopolitanum, quia non solvit ex una rumours from the
" parte quadringentas libras auri quas solebat ei solvere sin- East.
" gulis annis postquam fuit imperator, et ex alia parte tre-
" centas. Notate, fratres, verbum illud quod imperator Con-
" stantinopolitanus quandoque nobis dixit, quod oculus non
" fallitur. Aliud vobis dicimus per gratiam Dei, quod tot
" Turci capti sunt apud Sur, quod Turci duo vendebantur
" pro uno bizantio. Saladinus dixit quandoque in tentorio suo
" Eustacio[2] Patricii et Baliani,[3] qui habebat uxorem regis
" Jerusalem, quod comes Tripolis tradidit ei totam Terram
" Promissionis. Et sciatis quod apud imperatorem plus hono- Intercourse
" ris exhibetur nuntiis Saladini in palatio quam omnibus aliis between Saladin and
" in summa dignitate locatis. Saladinus etiam tradidit omnes the emperor at Constan-
" ecclesias Terræ Promissionis nuntiis imperatoris Constanti- tinople.
" nopolitani, ut in eis serviatur secundum consuetudinem Græ-

---

[1] The persons mentioned here are Bohemund III. prince of Antioch, and Margaritus the admiral of king William of Sicily. Gibeleth is Byblus. The lord of Mulla is Azzeddin Masoud, sultan of Mosul; and the lord of Meremdin, Noureddin, sultan of Mesopotamia; the "Cilif" is the Calif Nasr Zedinillah of Bagdad; and Kutepez is Kothbeddin, son of Kilidg Arslan II. sultan of Iconium. But see Hoveden, iii. 114, note 4.

[2] *Eustacio*] Exthacio, Bened. Eustacio must be a misreading, for "Eustacio Patricii et Baliani" gives no sense whatever. Whether *Exthacio* be right is another question: probably some word meaning messenger is intended.

[3] Balian of Ibelin married the widow of Amalric king of Jerusalem.

A.D. 1189. Saladin's idol.

" cam. Nec est fides in aliquo Græco etiamsi manu juraverit. " Noveritis quod Saladinus assensu imperatoris Constantino- " politani misit Constantinopolim ydolum suum, ut ibi pub- " lice adoraretur, sed per gratiam Dei captum est in mari a " Januensibus, et cum ipsa navi ductum est Tyrum. Nunc " autem de novo publica fama est quod exercitus Saladini " confectus est ante Antiochiam.

Tradition of the Golden Gate.

" Verbum autem illud quod senex Græcus de Astralix dixit " domino Waltero Templario, unde cæteri Græci offensi fue- " runt, nunc implebitur, sicut dicunt, quod Latini imperabunt " et dominabuntur in civitate Constantinopoli, quia scriptum " est in porta aurea quæ non fuit aperta ducentis annis retro, " 'Quando veniet rex flavus occidentalis ego per me ipsam " 'aperiar.' Sciatis quod Assen[1] vir ille probissimus in veste " imperiali toxicatus est. Imperator promisit Saladino centum " galeas, et Saladinus ei dedit totam Terram Promissionis si " imperator impedierit viam Francorum. Verissime vobis dici- " mus quod, si aliquis accipit crucem Constantinopoli, statim

Prophecies of the astrologers.

" capitur, et in carcerem mittitur. Hæc est autem prophetia " et astronomia Turcorum, quod infra hoc triennium una pars " Turcorum gladio peribit, altera fugiet ultra arborem siccam, " tertia vero baptizabitur. Scimus autem quod Saladinus nul- " lum Turcorum invenit qui audeat ædificare in Terra Pro- " missionis, vel familiam suam inducere, propter timorem

Reports from Antioch,

" venientium Francorum. Die Dominica qua[2] recessit de " Constantinopoli venerunt certi nuncii, quod exercitus Sala- " dini confectus est ante Antiochiam, et capti sunt frater " Saladini et filius ejus. Ipsa autem die qua recessi præcepit " imperator eliminari omnes Latinos ab omni imperio suo.

and Armenia.

" Et sciatis quod per gratiam Dei de terra Iconii sunt boni " Erminii quinque milia, et xxv. admirati, parati ire cum " Francis ad defensionem Christianitatis, et liberationem terræ " in qua natus et mortuus est Dominus Jesus Christus."

Letter of Conrad to archbishop Baldwin.

" Cantuariensi archiepiscopo Cunradus[3] filius marchionis de " Monte Ferrario salutem.

" Turbantur elementa et catholicæ fidei derogatur, cum " Jerosolimitana sedes apostolicæ sedi subtrahitur. Nam sicut " ex quatuor mundi machina creditur elementis constare, sic " a quatuor sedibus apostolica fulgente orthodoxorum fides " ferebatur gubernari. Sed cecidit Alexandrina, et flos ejus " penitus desiccatur. Periit Jerosolimitana, et Christianorum

---

[1] *Assen*] Asan king of Bulgaria.

[2] *qua*] lator præsentium, ins. Bened.

[3] Conrad of Montferrat, lord of Tyre: son of William marquess of Montferrat.

" inhertia a Sarracenis vilissime pertractatur, quia loca sacra A.D. 1189.
" facta sunt prophana. Fœdant namque Dominicum sepul- The enormities of the Turks in Palestine.
" chrum, destruunt Calvariæ locum, nativitatem contempnunt,
" et Virginis Mariæ sepulchrum de valle Josaphat eradicarunt.
" Antiochena quidem sedes in extremis laborare dinoscitur.
" Constantinopolitana quippe Romanæ sedi nullam exhibet
" reverentiam: maximam quippe capitis diminutionem sedes
" patitur apostolica, cum civitates et libertates amittit, et suo
" jure privatur. Amisit quippe ramos, quomodo fructus por-
" tabit? Hæc autem omnia Christianorum desidia noscuntur
" evenisse. Sed eminentia mala Christianorum cordium debent
" penetrare archana.

" Lugenda et lamentanda est Jerusalem civitas sancta, quæ Desolation of Jerusalem.
" suis est expoliata cultoribus. Habitatores ejus peccatis exi-
" gentibus sub tributo Saladini redacti, censu capitis soluto,
" longe a regno sunt ejecti. Muri Jerusalem viduati sunt de
" heremitis habitatoribus suis. Deus quasi malorum nostro-
" rum pullulatione secessit, et Mahumet successit, et ubi
" Christus per constitutas dici et noctis horas deprecabatur,
" nunc Mahumet excelsa voce laudatur. Quæ autem et quanta He has saved Tyre and incurred the enmity of the king and knights Templars.
" pro Christianorum salute in Tyro sustinuerim, satis clemen-
" tiæ vestræ credo propalatum. Et quia Tyrum conservavi et
" conservo, Guidoni de Lisigniaco quondam regi, et magistro
" Templi, et cismarinis magnatibus molestum est et inpor-
" tabile, et meo invident et derogant nomini, et per se et suos
" juvamina omnia subtrahere, et quod gravius est, elemosinam
" regis Angliæ Templi magister subtraxit. Unde Deo et vobis
" conqueri cum lacrimis non desisto. De Hospitalariis vero
" Deo et vobis gratias uberes expono, qui bene incipientes in
" eadem perseverant, et ultra elemosinam regis Angliæ de pro-
" priis plusquam octo milia brabantinorum[1] in obsequio Tyri
" expendidere. Vestræ igitur non desisto supplicare paterni- He asks Baldwin to urge the kings to come.
" tati quatenus calamitatum Jerusalem misereri dignemini, ut
" reges confortetis, populos commoveatis, ut patrimonium Jesu
" Christi vendicetur, expulsi et exhæreditati in integrum resti-
" tuantur, captivorum vincula solvantur, et terra sacratissima
" Salvatoris pedibus calcata, vestra potentia vestroque pio elo-
" quio de paganorum potestate liberetur. Præsentium quidem
" latores, magistrum Bandanum nomine providum cancellarium
" meum et secretarium ac fidelem, et Johannem probum mili-
" tem et michi familiarem, ad vos transmitto, quos speciales
" meos legatos cognoscatis, quibus in hiis quæ pro me vobis

[1] The word in the MSS, is "brab." As there was a coin called Brabantinus it is possible that the text is the right reading; but it seems strange that Conrad should not have reckoned in bezants.

A.D. 1189. " dixerint tanquam præsens loquerer credere non dubitetis.
" Exoro etiam, ut auxilia et consilia vestra pietatis intuitu, et
Dated Sept. 20 (1188). " mei contemplatione, eis tribuere dignemini. Data Tyro, xii°
" kalendas Octobris."

Letter of the archbishop to the chapter of S. Paul's, received March 20, Xiii° kalendas Aprilis, capitulo Lundoniæ litteræ directæ sunt in hæc verba:

" Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus dilectis filiis Ra-
" dulfo decano et capitulo Lundoniæ salutem et benedictionem.
" Variis occupationibus detenti, et præcipue ut pax inter
" reges Anglorum et Francorum reformetur, et pro subven-
" tione crucis Christi, quæ ab Ejus inimicis detinetur, in par-
" tibus cismarinis moram facimus. Nolentes autem ut hac
" occasione ecclesiis in provincia nostra pastoribus destitutis
ordering them to send a committee to Normandy to choose a bishop on March 26. " minus provideatur, mandamus vobis, et districte præcipimus
" quatenus viii. de concanonicis vestris sanioris et melioris
" consilii ad nos mittatis, ut sint coram nobis in Normannia
" in Dominica qua cantatur 'Isti sunt dies,' cum litteris rati-
" habitionis capituli vestri, ad eligendum vobis per Dei gratiam
" pastorem idoneum. Valete."

Similar orders from the king. " Henricus rex Angliæ Radulfo decano et capitulo Lundoniæ
" salutem. Mando vobis quod ad mandatum venerabilis patris
" nostri Baldewini Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et cari et fidelis
" mei Rannulfi de Glanvilla faciatis viii. canonicos ecclesiæ
" vestræ, quos ad hoc magis idoneos esse videritis, ad me ve-
" nire ubi fuero die Dominica qua cantatur 'Isti sunt dies,'
" cum litteris capituli vestri de ratihabitione super hoc quod
" ipsi fecerint de episcopo eligendo ad ecclesiam vestram."

The dean goes to Normandy. Harum auctoritate litterarum transfretavit decanus, et cum eo pars capituli magna. Qui venientes in Normanniam moram fecerunt per septimanas fere xiiii^cim.[1]

Conferences of the kings at la Ferté Bernard. Post Pascha sequens inter reges Francorum et Anglorum et comitem Pictavorum bis habitum est colloquium prope Feritatem Bernardi. Sed ad ultimum post longos tractatus inimici recesserunt abinvicem.[2]

Philip conquers Maine. Rex Francorum et comes, copiis undique congregatis, intra paucos dies Feritatem prædictam, Montem Fortem, Baalum, Bellum Montem, factis irruptionibus oc-

---

[1] *Qui . . xiiii^cim*] This is an addition in A. after the rest of the text was written; see below, pp. 69, 70.

[2] *abinvicem*] MS. D. omits all that follows down to " Circa dies " istos," p. 64, line 18.

cupaverunt. A municipalibus circumquaque comiti fit deditio castellorum. Gaufridus de Meduana, Gwido de Valle, Radulfus dominus Fulgeriarum, transfugerunt ad comitem. A.D. 1189. Traitorous lords.

Rex Anglorum intra Cenomannim resedit, non archiepiscoporum, non episcoporum, non baronum, non familiarium consiliis adquiescens. Quod ut intellexerunt rex Francorum et comes, arma moverunt, tamen in proposito non habentes urbem obsidione vallare. Quod forte reputans rex Anglorum, mente consternatus, licet proceres plurimos, armatorum multitudinem tam equitum quam peditum, animos etiam universorum ad resistendum paratos haberet, Cenomannim refertam omni genere victualium dereliquit. In crastino Sancti Barnabæ vehemens ignis a parte regis Anglorum injectus intra modicum temporis suburbana consumpsit. Rex Francorum et comes Ricardus muris appropinquantes portas invenerunt apertas, et intra majorem ecclesiam sollempni processione recepti sunt; inhabitantibus tam clero quam populo repromiserunt omnem et servaverunt indempnitatem. Intra domos regias quæ repererant comederunt et biberunt, sed non dico quod inebriati sint. Turris constructa prope portam quæ respicit ad aquilonem, circa decimum diem mandato regis Anglorum regi Francorum est reddita. Tandem pax inter tantos principes consilio magnorum reformata fuit in hunc modum: "Anglorum regi restituentur omnia, tam " Castrum Radulfi quam alia post crucem susceptam " ablata, scilicet intra Bituricam provinciam; regi Fran- " corum numerabuntur xx. milia marcarum, expensa- " rum nomine quas fecerat circa castellum Radulfi." [1]

He proceeds to threaten Henry at Le Mans.

Henry leaves Le Mans.

Fire at Le Mans, June 12.

Philip and Richard enter.

The tower near the north gate surrendered ten days later.

Peace arranged.

[1] *Radulfi*] "Unde prædicti reges et comes in manu Remensis archiepi- " scopi fidem dederunt quod in media Quadragesima convenient apud Vice- " liacum, votum peregrinationis quod inierunt prosecuturi, nisi communis " consilii mutatio vel corporis infirmitas, virorum opinionis bonæ testi- " monio probata, fuerit impedimento. Aeleis soror regis Francorum vel " archiepiscopo Cantuariensi vel Rothomagensi vel comiti Willelmo de

A.D. 1189. June 28. Facta sunt autem hæc in vigilia apostolorum Petri et Pauli, scilicet inter Turonim et Azai. Postmodum

Henry does homage to Philip. rex Anglorum hominagium fecit regi Francorum. Quiequid etiam in Arvernia vel ipse vel antecessores sui possederant, quietum clamavit regi Francorum.

How the prophecy of Merlin was fulfilled. Ecce rex Anglorum Henricus, qui tot populos viriliter edomuerat, qui victoriam semper reportaverat ab inimicis, proh dolor! juxta prophetiam Merlini,[1] maxillis suis dari frænum cognoscere potuit, dum quod prædecessores sui tenuerant hæreditabiliter in Arvernia dominio subjecit alterius, dum transfugas suos Galfridum de Meduana, Guidonem de Valle, Radulfum de Filigeriis, intra sinum habitantes Armoricum, qui sinus transitum facientibus a Britannia versus Franciam se pacificum et comeabilem offerebat, vitatis finibus Normannorum, in ligantiam et potestatem filii sui Ricardi, vellet nollet, transire concessit.

The emperor starts for Palestine. Circa[2] dies istos, die festo Sancti Georgii, Fredericus imperator Romanus, loca passionis Dominicæ visitaturus, peregrinationis iter arripuit apud Reinesburgum, transitum per Hungariam et Bulgariam, sicut proposuerat, habiturus.

Death of Henry at Chinon, July 6. Rex Anglorum Henricus, cum regnasset annis xxx^{ta}iiii^{or}, additis xx^{ti} septimanis et octo, diebus etiam quinque, gravi tactus incommodo, lecto decubuit, et in octavis Apostolorum diem clausit extremum apud Chinonem. Sepultus autem est apud Fontem Ebraldi.

" Magnivilla custodienda tradetur; quæ post reditum a peregrinatione
" juxta consilium regis Francorum tradetur nuptui collocanda. Rex
" Francorum pro magnis expensis quas fecit apud Castrum Radulfi de
" Doloribus, hostilitatis tempore, xx. milia marcarum recipiet ab archivis
" regis Anglorum. Comes Ricardus recipiet securitates de baronibus
" salva fide patris ejus. Omnes noviter ad comitem conversi remanebunt
" in comitis fidelitate quousque pater suus iter peregrinationis arripuerit.
" Ad præscriptæ summæ pacis observationem fide tenentur reges et
" comites et barones utriusque partis;" B. MS. C. agrees with the text.

[1] See Geoff. Mon., lib. vii. c. 3. | [2] Here MS. D. resumes.

Turonensis, Treverensis archiepiscopi celebraverunt divina.[1] Ricardus comes interfuit.[2] A.D. 1189. His funeral.

Tumulum regis superscriptio brevis exornat;

" Sufficit hic tumulus cui non suffecerat orbis, Inscription on his tomb.
" Res brevis est ampla cui fuit ampla brevis."

" Rex Henricus[3] eram, mihi plurima regna subegi, Verses on him.
" Multiplicique modo, duxque comesque fui:
" Cui satis ad votum non essent omnia terræ
" Climata, terra modo sufficit octo pedum.
" Qui legis hæc pensa discrimina mortis, et in me
" Humanæ speculum conditionis habe.
" Quod potes instanter operare bonum, quia mundus
" Transit, et incautos mors inopina rapit."

Matildis ducissa Saxoniæ tertio idus obiit.[4] The duchess of Saxony dies.

Circa dies istos a partibus aquilonis naves plurimæ sulcantes mare Britannicum fœdus inierunt cum Anglis quos apud Dertesmu reppererunt. Itaque communi consilio xv° kalendas Junii se pelago commiserunt, cum essent naves xxxvii. oneriferæ multum, et hominum multorum capaces. Postque varios rerum eventus iii° kalendas Julii venerunt Ulixibonam. Rex autem Portugalensis intelligens quod naves essent refertæ tam hominibus quam armis ad pugnandum ydoneis, et omni genere victualium munitissimæ, supplicavit ut ei venirent in auxilium, ad subjugandam civitatem quandam nomine Silviam, quam Silvius Eneas construxerat, et de nomine suo vocaverat Silviam, conferens eis in adjutorium xxxvii. galeas et alias naves quæ sagittariæ nuncupantur quamplurimas, et pactum iniit cum eis tam ipse quam tres episcopi sui præstito sacramento,

The crusading fleet sails from Dartmouth, May 18.

They are employed by the king of Portugal to attack Silvia.

---

[1] *divina*] obsequium sepulturæ, B.

[2] *interfuit*] exequiis paternis interfuit, B.

[3] *Rex Henricus, &c.*] These lines are inserted in the margin of A. in a hand smaller than the text, but of the same age and character. They are omitted in MSS. B. and D.

[4] *Matildis . . . obiit*] Matildis ducissa Saxoniæ filia regis tertio idus Julii diem clausit extremum, B.

A.D. 1189. They besiege Silvia, July 17.

quod quicquid vel auri vel argenti vel victualium civitate subacta possent adquirere, suos in usus redigerent, et solam urbem regis potestati subigerent. Ab Ulixibona recedentes xvi° kalendas Augusti Silviæ portum intraverunt; impulsis ad terram navibus, fixisque tentoriis, urbem obsidione vallarunt munitam turribus, sicut dicitur, circiter quadraginta; numerus erat Christianorum ad pugnam præparatorum tria milia quingenti. Tertia die sequenti muris appropinquantes insultum fecerunt acerrimum, suburbium irruperunt, fontem etiam duplici muro circumdatum, habentem barbacanam novem turribus circumseptam, a quo fonte cives sustentabantur ne siti perirent, obstruxerunt terra, fimo, lapidibus. Gentiles, aquæ penuria laborantes, animo consternati sunt. Princeps civitatis, vocatus Alcad, regem adiit Portugalensem, qui cum exercitu supervenerat sed Christianis nullum præstabat auxilium, regique

Surrender, Sept. 6.

tam sui quam civitatis fecit deditionem, ignorantibus Christianis. Subacta fuit civitas viii° idus Septembris plusquam sexaginta milibus virorum ad pugnam aptorum referta. Qui gladio corruentes orcho transmissi sunt, tredecim milibus utriusque sexus inventis superstitibus, qui de suo secum nec[1] quid minimum asportantes, sed ejusdem generis pannis in signum servitutis induti versus Sibiliam transmigrandi plenam receperunt securitatem. Sic virtute Dei Patris omnipotentis sine dampno Christianorum triumphatum est

The mosque turned into a church, Sept. 8.

de paganis. Civitate tandem sordibus et ydolatriis emundata, die Nativitatis beatæ[2] Mariæ Portugalensis episcopus Macomeriam in honore beatæ Virginis dedicavit, præficiens ibidem episcopum qui de partibus Flandriæ causa peregrinationis advenerat.[3]

Richard, having settled Aquitaine,

Ricardus comes Pictavorum dispositis omnibus quæ tam ad pacem quam securitatem Aquitaniæ vel Andegaviæ vel Thuroniæ seu Cenomanniæ spectare potius

[1] *nec*] nc, B.
[2] *beatæ*] om. B.
[3] *Circa . . . advenerat*] om. D.

videbantur, a morte patris septimanis tribus emensis, intravit Normanniam, et apud Sagium Cantuariensem, Rothomagensem, invenit archiepiscopos. Sed, quia post crucem susceptam arma moverat contra patrem, a prædictis archiepiscopis beneficium absolutionis promeruit. Inde Rothomagum veniens, ab archiepiscopo Rothomagensi tam ensem quam vexillum de ducatu Normanniæ, proceribus multis præsentibus, in ecclesia Beatæ Virginis ante majus altare suscepit, et inde tendens in Angliam apud Wintoniam in Assumptione Beatæ Virginis sollempni processione receptus est.

A.D. 1189. goes to Normandy, and at Rouen is invested with the duchy.

He is received at Winchester, Aug. 15.

Alienor regina, quæ per annos plurimos artæ fuerat deputata custodiæ, statuendi quæ vellet in regno potestatem accepit a filio. Datum siquidem est in mandatis regni principibus, et quasi sub edicto generali statutum, ut ad reginæ nutum omnia disponerentur. Itaque diebus istis propheticum illud venit in lucem quod ambiguitate verbi latuerat; "Aquila rupti fœderis "tertia nidificatione gaudebit."[1] Aquila siquidem appellata quoniam duas alas expandit super duo regna, tam Francorum quam Anglorum. Sed a Francis propter consanguinitatem disjuncta fuit per divortium, ab Anglis vero per custodiam carceralem a thoro viri segregata fuit; custodiam dico sedecim annis continuatam. Sic "Aquila rupti fœderis" utrobique. Quod autem additum est, "tertia nidificatione gaudebit," sic potes intelligere. Primogenitus filius Alienor reginæ Willelmus ætate puerili decessit; Henricus filius reginæ secundus sublimatus in regem, hostiliter congressurus cum patre, naturæ debitum solvit. Ricardus filius tertius tertia nidificatione notatus maternum nomen in singulis intendebat extollere. Qui quoniam patri

Queen Eleanor acts as regent.

Explanation of Merlin's prophecy.

[1] See the prophecy of Merlin in Geoffrey of Monmouth, lib. vii. c. 3. The explanation of the prophecy, "Aquila siquidem . . . intelligere" is inserted in the margin of A., and was evidently intended to form part of the text, in which it is placed in B. and C.

A.D. 1189. Richard's obedience to his mother.

restitit, et Francorum Normannis semper adversantium partes fovere non minimum videbatur, nominis sui famam apud bonos et graves viros denigratam attendit. Sed ut tantos excessus redimeret, matri suæ quem poterat honorem exhibere curavit, ut in obsequio materno quod in patrem commiserat deauratum omnibus appareret.

The bishop of Ely dies, Aug. 21.

Galfridus Heliensis episcopus, cum sedisset annis xiiii. additis septimanis xlv., diebus etiam tribus, xii° kalendas Septembris Wintoniæ rebus humanis exemptus est. Qui quoniam intestatus decessit, ejus bona confiscata sunt universa. Pecuniam numeratam habebat repositam tria milia marcarum argenti, ducentis marcis prædicto numero superadditis. Suppellectilis suæ numerus tam in auro quam in argento, tam in equis quam in vestibus preciosis, tam in blado quam in instauramentis, in immensum excrevit.

His property confiscated.

Henry's horses distributed.

Equos Henrici regis, quos in stabulis abbatiarum Alienor regina deputatos audivit, erogatione pia distribuit.

Forest law.

Vicecomitum, forestariorum, rapacitates gravi pœnarum cohibuit interminatione.

Meeting of bishops for the coronation, Sept. 3.

Ad vocationem archiepiscopi Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffraganei Lundoniæ convenerunt iii^tio nonas Septembris, ad coronationem novi regis. Convenerunt etiam abbates et conventualium ecclesiarum priores. Mater comitis Alienor regina de vocatione comitum, baronum, vicecomitum, fuit sollicita. De numero vel nominibus episcoporum duximus supersedere. Cantuariensis, Rotomagensis, Treverensis, Dublinensis, archiepiscopi de diversis partibus convenerunt. Comes itaque Pictavorum Ricardus hæreditario jure promovendus in regem, post tam cleri quam populi sollempnem et debitam electionem, involutus est triplici sacramento, scilicet quod opem impendet pro viribus, ut ecclesia Dei populusque Christianus veram pacem optineat, quod interdicet omnibus rapacitatem, quod in judiciis æquitatem præ-

Oath taken by the king.

cipiet et misericordiam. Cantuariensis archiepiscopus celebravit divina. Quia vero tunc temporis Lundoniensis vacabat ecclesia, Radulfus de Diceto Lundoniensis ecclesiæ decanus tam in oleo sancto quam in crismate ministravit archiepiscopo. Sollempnibus expletis in plenitudine magna divitiarum et deliciarum et profusioribus cibis, pax Judæorum, quam ab antiquis temporibus semper obtinuerant, ab alienigenis interrumpitur. Occisi sunt aliqui Judæorum, plurimi spoliati, domus eorum pro maxima parte flammis exustæ, synagogæ datæ dedecori. Quod quia de nocte factum est, nec ad scientiam regis potuit pervenire, qui vel essent tanti facinoris incentores vel coadjutores, ultio dilationem accepit.

A.D. 1189. The dean of St. Paul's officiates in the place of the bishop of London.

Attack of the foreigners on the Jews.

Ricardus rex Anglorum, ut promotionis suæ primordium Domino consecraret, primum et præcipuum judicavit Cisterciensibus, singulis annis ad capitulum generale de diversis terrarum spatiis convenientibus, centum marcas annuas assignare. Quod vero statuit imaginis suæ signaculo communivit.

Richard's benefaction to the Cistercians.

Habitus est generalis conventus juxta dispositionem regis et archiepiscopi xvii° kalendas Octobris apud Pipewelle, ut de consilio vacantium per Angliam ecclesiarum haberetur tractatus. Ricardus igitur Heliensis, canonicus Lundoniensis ecclesiæ, Lincolniensis decanus, archidiaconus Heliensis, domini regis thesaurarius, ad Lundoniensem ecclesiam; Godefridus de Luci, Sancti Martini Lundoniæ decanus, ad Wintoniensem; Hubertus Walteri, decanus Eboracensis, ad Saresbiriensem; Willelmus de Longo Campo, domini regis cancellarius, ad Heliensem electi sunt episcopi.[1]

Great council at Pipewell, Sept. 15.

The vacant bishopries filled up.

Decanus et canonici Lundonienses, ut eligerent episcopum, ad mandatum regis patris transfretaverunt.

Journey of the author.

[1] Richard Fitz Neal, bishop of London, 1189–1198; Godfrey de Lucy, bishop of Winchester, 1189–1204; Hubert Walter, bishop of Salisbury, 1189–1193; William Longchamp, bishop of Ely, 1189–1197.

A.D. 1189. Payment of expenses. Qui redeuntes in Angliam expensarum nomine lx^ta^ marcas receperunt a fisco.

Death of the archbishop of Treves. Treverensis archiepiscopus, in Anglia moriens, apud Sanctum Andream sepultus est Norhamtoniæ.

" Domino papæ Theobaldus præfectus et Petrus Leonis[1]
" salutem.

Letter from the Crusaders. " Rex Jerusalem, Templarii, Hospitalarii, archiepiscopus
" Pisanorum, et plures Pisani iiii^to^ die in fine Augusti, con-
" tra voluntatem domini marchionis et archiepiscopi Raven-
" nensis ecclesiæ aliorumque Christianorum, Acram in obsidi-
Opening of the siege of Acre, Aug. 29. " one devenerunt. Qui advenientes ita forti manu civitatem
" circumsederunt quod nullus Saracenorum ingredi poterat
" vel exire. Exinde tertia die post, Saladinus advenions in
Arrival of Saladin. " manu vehementi et brachio extento, in fratrem regis et
" Hospitalarios insultum faciens, illorum acies ita coangustavit,
" ut intrantibus civitatem et exeuntibus viam patefaceret.
" Christiani vero nostri nimio pavore perterriti parumper
" cesserunt, et in cacumine montis vicini se receperunt. Sala-
" dinus vero cum centum milibus militum eos infra montem,
" quo exire non poterant, circumclusit; rex vero Jerosolimi-
" tanus, videns se ab hostibus undique circumventum, Tyrum
" ad dominum marchionem et archiepiscopum et alios milites,
" quibus factum ejus displicuerat, legatos transmisit, depre-
" cans ut ad facti sui imperitiam respectum non haberent,
" sed quia angustiæ ei erant undique incontinenti subvenirent.
Conrad comes to the siege, and Saladin retires. " Marchio vero depressioni Christianitatis compatiens, cum
" archiepiscopo cum mille militibus et cum xx^ti^ milibus pe-
" ditum in auxilio Christianorum vii^o^ die in fine Septembris
" per aquam devenerunt. Saladinus vero, in adventu eorum
" pavescens, per unum miliare in pede cujusdam montis se
Battle on Oct. 4. " retro recepit. Quarta vero die mensis Octobris intrantis,
" bellum contra Sarracenos inivimus. Rex cum Hospitalariis
" et Francigenis aciem unam constituerunt. In secunda acie
" fuit dominus marchio, et archiepiscopus Ravennensis, et nos
" cum eis. In tercia fuerunt Antegranus,[2] et Pisani, et Theu-
" tonici. In quarta fuerunt Templarii, Catelauni et quidam
" Theutonici. Et in tentoriis remanserunt frater regis et
" Jacobus de Avennis. Nos insimul collecti constituimus no-
" biscum quatuor milia militum habentes centum milia pedi-
" tum. Saladinus autem habebat contra nos centum milia

[1] It is impossible to identify the two crusaders thus briefly indicated.

[2] *Antegranus*] Properly "Lande-
" gravius," the landgrave Lewis III. of Thuringia.

" militum. Nos autem signo sanctæ crucis armati, circa A.D. 1189.
" horam diei tertiam bellum inchoavimus, et, Deo partem Victory of the
" nostram fovente, usque ad tentoria sua illos fugantes in ore Crusaders.
" gladii secuti sumus, et vii. acies Saracenorum turpiter con-
" fringendo deturbavimus: filium Saladini nomine Baldewi-
" num[1] mortificavimus, Tacaldinum[2] fratrem Saladini ad
" mortem vulneravimus, et illum jam mortuum pro certo
" reputamus. Quinquies centum de militibus Saladini inter-
" fecimus præter prædicta. Dum ita contra Saladinum pug- Sally of the besieged.
" naremus quinque milia militum a civitate exierunt, et in
" nos insultum ex inproviso fecerunt. Saladinus vero videns
" suos coadjutores ita nos pene aggredientes, vires suas in
" nos acuit. Nos vero ex utroque latere angustiati Saladinum The Crusaders retreat to their camp.
" sustinendo, alios viriliter debellando, vellent nollent, nos
" in tentoriis recepimus. Magister tamen Templariorum[3] et
" plures de nostris eodem die sunt interfecti."

" Philippus Dei gratia Francorum rex amico et fideli suo Letter of Philip to Richard,
" ac fratri Ricardo regi Anglorum salutem et dilectionis
" sinceritatem.

" Noverit vestra dilectio quod ad subventionem terræ Jero-
" solimitanæ nostrum hanelat et fervet propositum, Deoque
" nostrum in Jerosolimitanis partibus exhibere servitium votis
" affectamus plenissimis. Sane dudum de verbis vestris, et asking to be certified that he will keep his engagements,
" ad præsens de vestrorum relatione nuntiorum intelleximus,
" quod propositum et voluntatem habeatis eundi Jerusalem.
" Voluntatem igitur vestram et propositum super hoc nuntiis
" nostris præsentium latoribus vice nostri assecurari faciatis,
" nosque per litteras vestras patentes super hoc certificetis.
" Idem vero nuntii nostri super hoc vobis securitatem præ-
" stabunt, vobisque nostras tradent litteras patentes. Actum
" ab incarnatione Domini M° c° lxxx°ix^no anno, mense Octobri.

Wintoniensis, Saresbiriensis electi, consecrati sunt apud Westmonasterium in capella Sanctæ Katerinæ xi° kalendas Novembris. Consecration of bishops, Oct. 22.

---

[1] *Baldewinum*] The Christian writers seem to have been readily misled into believing that these battles were more fatal to the heroes of the opposite party than they really were. Two sons of Saladin, Afdal and Daher, were in the battle; but neither of them was killed. According to Benedict and Hoveden, it was the eldest son of Saladin, Mirasalim, who was killed; see Bened. ii. 94; Hoved. iii. 21.

[2] *Tacaldinum*] Takieddin, lord of Hama, Saladin's nephew, seems to be meant.

[3] Gerard of Ridesford.

A.D. 1189. John of Anagni lands, Nov. 20, and is forbidden to go to Canterbury.

Johannes Anagniensis, tituli Sancti Marci presbiter cardinalis, apostolicæ sedis legatus, applicuit apud Doveram xii° kalendas Decembris. Interdictum est ei die sequenti per reginam Alienor ne procederet, quoniam citra conscientiam regis regnum suum intraverat. Substitit igitur ibi non absque tædio per xiii^cim^ dies sumptibus archiepiscopi. Pax interim reformata fuit inter archiepiscopum et monachos suos præsente rege, præsentibus episcopis, abbatibus, clero, baronibus et populo multo, iii^tio^ kalendas Decembris. Convenit enim quod in capella de Hakentune [1] non ministrabitur per canonicos, sed per unum solummodo sacerdotem; non habebit capella baptisterium vel cimiterium. Prior etiam, quem archiepiscopus citra conscientiam conventus instituerat, institutioni suæ cessit. Quod legatus audiens gravissimum habuit, quoniam ob pacem reformandam venerat; sed tamen permissu regis Cantuariam veniens sollempni processione receptus est, bis ibi pernoctans.

The king makes peace between the archbishop and the monks.

The legate is allowed to visit Canterbury.

Rex Scotiæ Willelmus veniens Cantuariam, duces habens itineris Eboracensem electum, Lincolniensem episcopum, hominagium regi fecit, gratiam in oculis regis invenit, numeraturus decem milia marcarum ad hoc, ut omnia tenementa sua, ligantias etiam hominum suorum, quas de condicto nostro regi facere repromiserant, in sua potestate reciperet.

The king of Scots does homage and purchases his freedom.

Johannes comes Moritolii frater regis, coram rege, coram legato, coram episcopis, gravem querelam deposuit, quod archiepiscopus post appellationem factam ad sedem apostolicam totam terram suam sub interdicto concluserat, quoniam filiam Willelmi comitis Gloucestriæ duxerat in uxorem. Quod audiens legatus

The legate suspends the archbishop's sentence against John's marriage.

[1] *Hakentune*] Hackington near Canterbury, the site of the collegiate church founded by the archbishop, which caused the great controversy described in the Epistolæ Cantuarienses and in the Chronicle of Gervase.

appellationem suam confirmavit, et terram suam relaxavit ab interdicto.[1] A.D. 1189.

Si promissionibus pecuniarum infra spatium iiii^{or} mensium novo regi factis, et cautione fidejussoria roboratis, in anno saltem sequenti, sequens numeratio responderet, Ricardus rex Anglorum universas prædecessorum suorum supergrederetur divitias. Qui cum de regni dispositione pauca cum paucis tractasset apud Doveram xix° kalendas Januarii transfretavit, navem exiens ipsa die prope Gravelinges. Treasures accumulated by Richard. He sails from Dover, Dec. 14.

Willelmus de Magnivilla, comes tam Essexiæ quam Albemarlæ, viam universæ carnis ingressus est xviii° kalendas Decembris. William de Mandeville dies, Nov. 14.

Circa dies istos Willelmus rex Siculus, gener regis Anglorum, absque legitima sobole moriens, Tancredum genere sibi propinquum habuit successorem regni. Death of the king of Sicily.

A tempore crucis susceptæ decimatio generalis rerum mobilium, facta per Angliam ad subventionem terræ Jerosolimitanæ, tam clerum quam populum exactione violenta perterruit, sub elemosinæ titulo vitium rapacitatis includens. The Saladin tithe.

" Philippus[2] Dei gratia Francorum rex, et Ricardus eadem " gratia rex Angliæ, dux Normanniæ et Aquitaniæ, et comes " Andegaviæ, omnibus fidelibus ad quos litteræ istæ perve- " nerint, in Domino salutem. Letter of Philip and Richard announcing their engagements preparatory to the crusade.

" Noverit universitas vestra quod inter nos firmiter convenit, " et de consilio prælatorum ecclesiæ et principum terrarum " nostrarum disposuimus, ut iter Jerosolimitanum, ducente " Domino, simul perficiamus, et uterque nostrum alteri bonam " fidem et bonum amorem se servaturum promisit: ego " Philippus rex Francorum, Ricardo regi Anglorum, tanquam " amico et fideli meo: et ego Ricardus rex Anglorum, Philippo " regi Francorum, tanquam domino meo et amico. Statuimus " itaque, ut omnes cruce signati in terris sub nostra potestate

---

[1] The marriage of John with the heiress of Gloucester was celebrated at Marlborough on the 29th of August, in opposition to the archbishop's protest: Bened. ii. 78.

[2] This treaty is printed, apparently from the present work, in the Fœdera, vol. i. p. 50.

A.D. 1189. Dec. 30. Treaty arrangements of Philip and Richard.

" constitutis, infra octavas Paschæ vel nos præcedant, vel in " termino illo nobiscum eant, nisi de voluntate et conscientia " nostra remanserint. Si vero aliqui aliter remanere præ- " sumpserint, et personæ excommunicationi, et terræ eorundem " subicientur interdicto auctoritate prælatorum terrarum utri- " usque nostrorum. Volumus etiam, statuimus et præcipimus, " ut qui terris nostris præerunt, si opus fuerit, mutua sibi " subventione succurrant. Eorum autem bona qui iter Jero- " solimitanum vel nobiscum, vel ante nos arripuerint, ita " illæsa et intacta permaneant tanquam nostra propria. Et " si quis eis injuriam irrogaverit, justiciarii et bailivi nostri " faciant emendari, quantum de jure poterint secundum con- " suetudinem terrarum nostrarum. Si vero aliquis in aliqua " terrarum nostrarum guerram movere præsumpserit in absen- " tia nostra nobis, vel alicui de terris nostris, et ad justitiam " se non offert, primo excommunicetur, et post excommunica- " tionem nisi infra xl^ta^ dies forisfactum suum emendaverit, " decernimus ut ipse et hæredes ejus inperpetuum exhære- " dentur. Feudi autem illius qui per forisfactum suum " exhæredatus fuerit transeant in proprietatem et dominium " propinquioris domini a quo feodi movebunt. Præterea qui- " cumque in aliqua terrarum alterutrius nostrum forisfecerit, " et forisfactum emendare noluerit, in terra alterius non " receptetur. Et si ibi inventus fuerit, justitiariis terræ illius " in qua deliquit reddatur. Ad hæc autem quæ supradiximus " observanda, justiciarios et bailivos nostros sibi invicem vo- " lumus et præcipimus teneri et obligari usque ad reditum " nostrum, sub tenore juramenti et fidelitatis quam nobis " præstiterunt. Acta sunt hæc xxx° die Decembris apud No- " nancurt."

The day of starting postponed.

Hæc quidem constitutio generalis inter duos reges habita, quoniam inita fuit die sabbati, sicut asserunt homines, non obtinuit firmitatem, sed in aliud usque tempus die festo Sancti Johannis Baptistæ sequenti, scilicet die Dominica, peregrinationis initium Domino consecravit.

Letter of Alexander III.

[1] " Alexander papa III^tius^ Ricardo Elyensi archidiacono. Audito " laudabili multorum testimonio, quod scientia litterarum et

[1] This letter, which must have been issued before 1181, enabled Richard Fitz Neal, the son of bishop Nigel of Ely, to hold ecclesiastical preferment; and must have come into the hands of the dean of St. Paul's on Richard's consecration to the see of London.

" honestis moribus sis adornatus, tibi de consueta clementia " et benignitate sedis apostolicæ indulgemus, ut si aliqua " ecclesia, annuente Deo, te ad beneficium vel dignitatem " quamlibet vocaverit, non obstante quia non es de legitimo " matrimonio natus, libere valeas ad beneficium vel dignitatem assumi." A.D. 1189. allowing Richard Fitz Neal to hold clerical preferment.

MCXC. Ricardus Lundoniensis, Willelmus Elyensis, electi pridie kalendas Januarii consecrati sunt apud Lamchedam. Lundoniensis episcopus ipsa die sua sollempniter est collocatus in sede sub præsentia xii. episcoporum. The bishops of London and Ely consecrated, Dec. 31,

Willelmus Elyensis episcopus in Epiphania Domini, concurrentibus episcopis multis ad diem festum, intronizationem suam in apparatu magno sollempnem effecit. Tunc demum ad notitiam suam et episcoporum pervenit, violatum fuisse sepulcrum Galfridi prædecessoris sui, quoniam anulus pontificalis, quem sepulturæ traditus habebat in digito, fuerat latenter subtractus. In pulpitum igitur ascendentes episcopi violatores tam facientes quam consentientes sub anathemate concluserunt. A.D. 1190. Inthronization of the bishop of Ely. His predecessor's ring stolen.

Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus peregre profecturus, de communi consilio suffraganeorum suorum vices suas episcopo Lundoniensi Ricardo commisit. Rofensis episcopus, ab antiquo vicarius archiepiscopi, tam in territorio Cantiæ quam in ecclesiis maneriorum archiepiscopi euram pastoralem suscepit. The bishop of London made deputy of the archbishop.

Multi per Angliam, tendere Jerosolimam properantes, prius in Judæos insurgere decreverunt quam invaderent Sarracenos. Igitur viii° idus Februarii, Judæi quotquot inventi sunt in domibus propriis apud Norwicum trucidati sunt; aliqui refugium habuerunt in castellum. Nonis Martii, tempore scilicet nundinarum apud Stamford, occisi sunt multi. Septimo decimo kalendas Aprilis apud Eboracum, sicut dicitur, fere quingenti nece traditi sunt, mutuis sese vulneribus appetentes. Malebant enim a propria gente percuti, quam manibus incircumcisorum perire. Xv^to^ kalendas Aprilis, scilicet in Ramis Palmarum, sicut dicitur, quinquaginta Rising against the Jews: at Norwich, Feb. 6; at Stamford, Mar. 7; at York, Mar. 16. Massacre at St. Edmunds Mar. 18.

A.D. 1190. septem jugulati sunt apud Sanctum Eadmundum. Ubicunque reperti sunt Judæi manibus peregrinantium percussi sunt, nisi qui municipalium eruebantur auxilio.

Wickedness of the persecution. Necem Judæorum tam funestam, tam exitialem, viris prudentibus placuisse credendum non est, cum Davitic cum illud auribus nostris frequenter occurrat, "Ne "occidas eos." Ps. lix. 11.

Vide quotiens Jerusalem vel tributum solvit, vel eversa fuit.[1]

The several humiliations of Jerusalem: by Pharaoh Necho; Joat rex Juda regnavit tribus mensibus in Jerusalem, et solvit Pharaoni Nechao regi Egypti centum talenta argenti, et unum talentum auri.

by Nebuchadnezzar; Jeconias tribus annis solvit tributum Nabugodenosor primo, ab eodem tandem interfectus est, et extra murum projectus.

by Nebuzaradan; Naburzadan princeps exercitus[2] regis Babylonis Nabugodenosor vastavit Jerusalem, succendit domum Domini, domum regis, et totam Jerusalem in circuitu.

by Antiochus; Antiochus illustris ascendit Jerosolimam, et intravit in sanctificationem cum superbia, et accepit omnia vasa concupiscibilia, et sublatis omnibus abiit in terram suam.

by Pompey; Magnus Pompeius Jerosolimam obsedit, quam vix tertio mense cepit, xiii^{im} milibus Judæorum occisis, cæteros in fidem accepit, muros civitatis evertit, cujus circuitus iiii. milia passuum dicitur fuisse.

by Titus. Jerusalem est capta temporibus Vespasiani, vel Titi, die mensis octavo Septembris.

Conversion. Jerusalem ad fidem conversa fuit Christi, temporibus Constantini primi qui fuit Helenæ filius.

Conquest by the Saracens; Post tempus imperatoris Heraclii propheta magnus fuit apud Saracenos Machometus, cujus tempore subjugata fuit Jerusalem.

---

[1] This enumeration appears as a separate article in the MS. Tiberius A. 9, fo. 25.

[2] *exercitus*] Altered in A. to "cocorum Nabugodonosor."

Anno milleno centeno quo minus uno
Jerusalem Franci capiunt virtute potenti. A.D. 1190. by the Crusaders;

Saladinus Jerusalem subjugavit. by Saladin.

Margarita[1] regina Francorum Parisius laborans in partu diem clausit extremum, et in ecclesia majore Beatæ Virginis inter reginas Francorum prima sepulturam accepit. Ipsa die duo reges tam Francorum quam Anglorum habentes colloquium, suæ peregrinationis initia distulerunt ad festum usque beati Johannis Baptistæ. Quod fatalium conjectores eventuum Deo plurimum displicuisse dixerunt, reginæ mortem in argumentum trahentes. Death of the queen of France. The departure of the kings postponed.

Episcopi temporis hujus se negotiis sæcularibus inmiscentes, et comitatus affectantes seu vicecomitatus vel castellanias, Rogerum quondam bonæ memoriæ Saresbiriensem episcopum revocent ad memoriam. Qui plurimum sollicitatus a rege Henrico non se prius permisit institui regni justitiarium quam auctoritas summi pontificis, assensus et beneplacitum Anselmi, Radulfi, Willelmi, Cantuariensium archiepiscoporum, ad subeundum hoc onus eum impellerent.[2] Secular employments of prelates. Example of bishop Roger.

" Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus Ricardo Lundo- Letter of the archbishop to the bishop of London, on the conduct of the bishop of Lichfield.
" niensi episcopo.

" Cum essemus apud Rothomagum venerabilem fratrem
" nostrum Hugonem[3] Coventrensem episcopum, qui contra
" dignitatem ordinis episcopalis officium sibi vicecomitatus
" usurpaverat, et propter alias quasdam causas rationabiles
" suspendimus; postmodum relaxationis beneficium promeruit,
" et litteris patentibus ad dominum regem directis nobis fir-
" miter promisit, quod vicecomitatus quorum curam susceperat,
" in manum domini regis infra xv. dies post Pascha resignabit,
" nec se de cætero hujusmodi officiis inmiscebit, quæ episco-
" palem dignitatem dehonestant. Sed et super aliis articulis

---

[1] *Margarita*] Isabella of Hainault, the first wife of Philip Augustus, died Mar. 15, 1190.

[2] See above, vol. i. p. 435.

[3] Hugh of Nunant, bishop of Coventry, acted as sheriff of Warwickshire and Leicestershire in the second year of Richard I., and likewise, acting through two deputies, in the 4th and 5th years. See the 31st Report of the Deputy Keeper of the Records, App. p. 350.

A.D. 1190. He is directed to fix a day for the bishop's trial.

" litteras patentes, quas vobis mittimus, nobis exhibuit, et " appellationi renuntiavit. Vos itaque secundum discretionem " vobis a Deo datam ascitis venerabili fratre nostro Gileberto " Rofensi episcopo, et clericis nostris, et aliis quos ad hoc " evocandos decreveritis, diem certum et locum congruum " prædicto episcopo super præfatis articulis constituatis, et " quod justum fuerit, et ecclesiæ nostræ et nostræ dignitati " congruere videritis, statuere non omittatis. Valete. Et " quod præfatus episcopus scripto promisit ipsum exequi faci- " atis."

" Ricardo Lundoniensi episcopo,' Hugo Coventrensis epi- " scopus.

Letter of the bishop of Lichfield to the bishop of London, promising obedience.

" Noverit discretio vestra quod venerabili patri nostro Bal- " dewino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo firmiter promisimus, quod " super querela monachorum de Coventria et capellæ Sancti " Michaelis de Coventria, et super universis querelis quas " adversus nos proposuit, judicio vestro omni appellatione " et contradictione postpositis parebimus, assignatis nobis loco " et tempore convenientibus, et advocatis illis auctoritate ves- " tra quos ad earum querelarum decisionem videritis esse " necessarios. Ne autem ab hac promissione nostra resilire " valeamus, eam sigilli nostri testimonio roboramus."

Geoffrey is elected archbishop of York.

Gaufridus, Henrici regis secundi filius, in archiepiscopum Eboracensem electus est Eboraci. Factam electionem Hamo præcentor ejusdem ecclesiæ recitavit in publico, quia tunc temporis absens erat decanus[1] causa reipublicæ. Post dies aliquot prædictus electus venit ad fratrem suum regem Ricardum apud Pipewelle. Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus ordinationem et consecrationem electi prædicti clamabat ad jus ecclesiæ Dorobernensis spectare. Johannes episcopus Candidæ Casæ,[2] suffraganeus Eboracensis ecclesiæ, prædictum electum in presbiterum ordinavit; Fulmarus Treverorum archiepiscopus astitit ordinationi.

Baldwin claims the right to consecrate him.

He is ordained priest.

Letter of Clement III.

" Clemens episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus fra- " tribus suffraganeis Eboracensis ecclesiæ, et dilectis filiis " universis, abbatibus, prioribus, et populo, et clero per " Eboracensem provinciam constitutis, salutem et apostolicam

---

[1] Hubert Walter, now bishop of Salisbury, was dean of York at the time of the election of Geoffrey.

[2] John bishop of Whithern, consecrated in 1189.

" benedictionem. Per litteras karissimi in Christo filii nostri A.D. 1190.
" Ricardi illustris Anglorum regis, et venerabilis fratris nostri He confirms the election
" Hugonis Dunelmensis episcopi, et dilectorum filiorum Ebora- of archbishop Geoffrey.
" censis capituli, et multorum religiosorum conventuum ipsius
" diocesis, intellecto, quod idem capitulum Eboracensis eccle-
" siæ dilectum filium Gaufridum fratrem prædicti regis, voto
" unanimi et pari consensu in patrem et archiepiscopum ele-
" gerunt, et quod dilectus filius noster Johannes, tituli Sancti
" Marcii[1] presbiter cardinalis, apostolicæ sedis legatus, sicut
" ex ipsius litteris plenius intelleximus, electionem ipsam auc-
" toritate legationis qua in Anglia fungebatur confirmaverit;
" considerantes etiam quod Eboracensis ecclesia, quæ pastoris
" consilio diutius destituta in multis ex defectu prælati dis-
" pendium passa fuerit, per ejus sollicitudinem et potentiam
" ad statum poterit reparari meliorem, electionem ipsam sicut
" concorditer facta est, et ab eodem legato nostro confirmata,
" præsertim cum piæ memoriæ Alexander papa prædecessor
" noster circa personam ejus dispensaverit, ratam habemus,
" et de fratrum nostrorum consilio auctoritate sedis apostolicæ
" confirmamus. Monemus igitur universitatem vestram, et
" per apostolica scripta mandamus, quatinus ipsi ceu prælato
" vestro reverentiam et honorem quem prædecessoribus suis
" exhibuistis, sine refragatione impendere studeatis, ut prop-
" terea valeatis apud Deum et homines merito commendabiles
" apparere. Datum Laterani, nonis Martii, pontificatus nostri Dated March 7.
" anno iii^tio."

Exercitus Christianorum ante Aconem hoc modo situs est; Arrangement of the camps of the Crusaders before Acre.

Ante montem Musardi supra mare sunt Geneuenses. Post illos sunt Hospitalarii. Post quos est marchio Montis Ferrarii. Post illum comes Campaniæ Henricus. Deinde Guido Duinpere. Post illum comes Brenensis. Post quem comes de Baro. Deinde comes Chalunsis.[2] Postea comes Robertus de Drous,[3] et episcopus Baluacensis. Postea episcopus Besenceuæ. Juxta quem versus planum est comes Theobaldus, et comes de Claromonte, et Hugo de Gurnai, et Otho de Tresoni,[4] et Florentius de Hangi, et Walkelinus de Ferrariis. Deinde Florentini. Post quos episcopus Saresbiriensis et Anglici. Deinde dapifer Flandriæ, cum Johanne de

[1] *Marcii*] Martini, B. John of Anagni was cardinal of S. Mark.
[2] *Chalunsis*] Ealunsis, B.
[3] *Drous*] Brous, B.
[4] *Tresoni*] Treson, B.

A.D. 1190. Arrangement of the camp before Acre.

Neele, et Odone de Hame, et aliis Flandrensibus. Postea episcopus Cambraiensis, et dominus Ysoldone, et vicecomes Turoniæ. Deinde rex de Jerusalem cum Galfrido et Aimaro fratribus ejus, et Hugo de Tabari et fratribus ejus Radulfo et Otone et Willelmo. Deinde Templarii, et Jaco de Avennes. Post illum Landegrave et comes de Galres, cum Alemannis, et Dacis, et Theutonicis, et Frisonicis. Inter quos ad Magumeriam posuit tentoria dux Suaviæ. Post super Turonem patriarcha et episcopus Acharonis, et episcopus Bethleem, et vicecomes de Castello Eraud, et Reginaldus de Sagitta, et Amfridus de Turona.[1] Sub Turona, excambiatores. Postea super portum archiepiscopus Pisanus cum Pisanis. Extremo Lumbardi.

Vow of the chaplain William.

| [2] Circa dies istos cum primum obsessa fuisset Acon, Gwilellmus quidam Anglicus natione, capellanus Radulfi de Diceto decani Lundoniensis, dum tenderet Jerosolimam, astrinxit se voto, quod si prospero cursu portum intraret Acon, Sancto Thomæ martyri sumptibus suis

---

[1] The persons mentioned in this paragraph are Conrad of Montferrat; Henry count of Champagne, afterwards king of Jerusalem; Guy II., lord of Dampierre; Erard count of Brienne; the counts of Bar and Châlons; the archbishop of Besançon, Thierri of Montfaucon; count Theobald of Blois; Ralph count of Clermont in Beauvoisis, Hugh de Gournai, Otho de Trasignies, Florence of Hangest, Walkelin of Ferrers. The bishop of Salisbury is Hubert Walter; the steward of Flanders Hellinus de Waurin; John de Neele was the castellan of Bruges. The bishop of Cambray was Roger de Waurin; the lord of Yssoudun was Ralph, and the viscount of Turenne, Raymond II. The brothers of the king of Jerusalem were Geoffrey of Lusignan afterwards count of Joppa, and Amalric, afterwards king of Cyprus and Jerusalem. Hugh of Tiberias and his brothers were stepsons of the count Raymond of Tripoli; James of Avesnes was the famous lord of Avesnes in Hainault, the hero of the army; the landgrave, Lewis III. of Thuringia; the count of Guelders Otto III. The duke of Swabia was Frederick son of the emperor; the viscount of Châtel Herault was William of Rochefoucauld; Reginald de Sagitta was the lord of Sidon (Saeta); and Amfrid of Turon, Henfrid of Toron, the first husband of Isabella, the heiress of the kingdom, afterwards married to Conrad of Montferrat, Henry of Champagne, and Amalric of Lusignan.

[2] This paragraph is omitted in MSS. B. and D., and inserted in the margin of A. and in C.

juxta facultatum possibilitatem capellam construeret, et procuraret ibidem ad honorem martyris cimiterium consecrari. Quod et factum est. Multis igitur ad capellæ servitium undique concurrentibus, judicio Christianitatis ipse Willelmus prioris nomen accepit. Qui dum se militem Christi toto servaret in corpore, præcipue pauperum curam habebat, et sepeliendis corporibus, tam fataliter decumbentibus quam interfectis gladio, diligentiam omnem et operam strenuissime satagebat impendere, magni Tobiæ se successorem proximum humanis aspectibus repræsentans. Est et aliud ibi cimiterium quod vocatur Hospitalis Alemannorum. Est et tertium poliandrum antiquius cæteris quod Sancti Nicholai dicitur, in quo, priusquam obsidio solveretur, hominum milia centum additis xxiiii^{or} milibus per unius circulum anni tumulata sunt.

A.D. 1190. William, a chaplain of Ralph de Diceto, founds a cemetery at Acre.

The Hospital of the Germans.

The old cemetery of S. Nicolas.

Alienor regina, filii sui Ricardi regis iter prosecutura, maris pericula declinavit, transitum habens per montem Jani, per Ytaliæ plana, per illos celebres orbis concursus, ad dominum papam Romæ.

Queen Eleanor goes to Rome.

In Acone sunt isti principes: Caracos, quem Corboram fecit militem ad obsidionem Antiochiæ; ille nutrivit Salaadinum. Post eum Gemaladin, Gurgi, Suchar, Suncordoedar, Belhagessemin, Fecardincerus, Cerantegadin.[1]

The Saracen lords in Acre.

Isti sunt principes exercitus Saladini. Saladinus et quatuor fratres ejus: Safedin, Felkedin, Sefelselem, Melcalade. Et tres filii Saladini, Miralis, Melcalez, Melcalezis,

Saladin's generals.

---

[1] Some of these persons may be identified. Caracos is the emir Bohaeddin Karakoush, but he could scarcely have been knighted by Kerbogha at Antioch ninety years before. Gemaladin Gurchi may be Alamoddin Curchi, Bohadin, p. 170; Suchar, Sunkar-elwasjaki, ib. 176; Suncordeodar is Seifeddin-Sunkar-Dawadr; Bohadin, p. 170. Belhagessemin is Abul Haidscha Assamin, Abulf. (Recueil des Historiens des Croisades, i. 61). Fecardincerus is Fachreddin Scheharchis, ib. p. 75.

A.D. 1190. The names of Saladin's generals.

et duo nepotes ejus. Tecahedin, Benesemedin, Coulin, Claisar, Bederin, Mustop, Hazadinnersel.[1]

Tecahedin in sua potestate habet Joramenses, Rotasienses, Birenses.

Benesemedin sub se habet Persas, Turcos, Hemsienses.

Saladinus sub se habet Halapitos, Damacenos.

Miralis sub se habet Alexandriam, Damiet, et totam terram ultra Eufraten usque mare Rubrum, et ultra versus Barbariam.

Metalez sub se habet Babiloniam et Keire.

Quatuor fratres Saladini sub se habent Abesiam, et Leemen, et Mauros, et Nubiam.

Caisar est admiratus Aschaloniæ.

Bedredin est admiratus Nazareth, et Neopolis, et Ramille.

Mustop, Lice, et Maruth.[2]

Hazadinnersel, Montis Regalis et Gracci.

Chorisin, cujusdam partis Armeniæ.

Salaadinus dominus est omnium.

Confession of Anser of Montreal, as to the treachery of certain crusaders.

Anserius de Monte Regali ad mortem suam detexit traditionem quam fecerunt idem Anseri, et episcopus Balvacensis, et comes Robertus frater ejus, et Guido

---

[1] Of these we may identify Safedin with the well-known Malek-el-Adel Seiffeddin Abu Bekr, Saladin's successor in Egypt and Damascus; possibly Melcalade represents the same hero under his other name. Sefelselem is Saifol-islam, lord of Arabia Felix; Abulf., ib. p. 45.

Of the three sons of Saladin, Miralis and Melcalez may in some degree represent Malek-ed-daher Gaiatheddin-Ghazi, and Malek-el-afdal Noureddin-Ali: certainly Melcalezis would be Malek el Aziz Othman.

Tecahedin is the famous emir of Hama, Takioddin Omar.

Benesemedin, (Ibn Husamoddin?).

Coulin, see Hoveden, iii. 128.

Claisar, Caisar, emir of Ascalon, Bohadin, p. 199.

Bederin is Bedreddin, emir of Damascus; Bohadin, p. 123, or the emir Bedreddin Duldurn, ib. 148.

Mustop or Mestoch, is Seifeddin Ali Mesjtoub; Bohadin, p. 104.

Hazadinnersel, probably Hessedin Jordich.

Chorisin may be Chusterin, one of the leaders of the Curds; ib. 149.

[2] *Maruth*] Baruth, B.

Dumpere, et Landegrave, et comes de Gelres; unde ipsi ceperunt a Salaadino triginta duo milia bizantiorum et centum marcas auri. Et præterea habuit Landegrave iiii^{or} camelos, et duos leopardos, et iiii^{or} accipitres; et aliis donis distulerunt prædicti principes insultum, et permiserunt castella nostra cremari. A.D. 1190.

"Clemens papa Willelmo Eliensi episcopo salutem.[1] June 5.
"Juxta commendabile desiderium et salubrem postulationem Clement III. makes the bishop of Ely legate.
" karissimi in Domino filii nostri Ri-
" cardi illustris regis Anglorum, frater- GLORIOR ELATUS.
" nitati tuæ legationis officium in tota
" Anglia, Wallia, tam per Cantuariensem quam per Ebora-
" censem archiepiscopatus, et in illis partibus Hiberniæ, in
" quibus nobilis vir Johannes comes Moritoniensis frater ip-
" sius regis jurisdictionem habet et dominium, auctoritate
" duximus apostolica committendum. Datum Laterani, nonis
" Junii, pontificatus nostri anno iii°."

"Ricardus rex Anglorum omnibus fidelibus suis salutem. Richard makes him his lieutenant in England, June 6.
"Mandamus vobis, et præcipimus quod, sicut de nobis
" confiditis, et sicut vos ipsos et omnia vestra diligitis, sitis
" omnino intendentes dilecto et fideli cancellario nostro Eliensi
" episcopo super omnibus quæ ad nos
" spectant, et pro ipso faciatis sicut GLORIOR ELATUS.
" pro nobismet ipsis faceretis, de omni-
" bus hiis quæ vobis ex parte nostra dixerit. Teste meipso
" apud Baionam, vi^{to} die Junii."

Duo reges tam[2] Francorum quam Anglorum circa Nativitatem beati Johannis Jerosolimam profecturi convenerunt apud Viceliacum. The kings meet at Vezelai.

In festivitate beati Petri quæ dicitur ad vincula, Willelmus Eliensis episcopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, convocavit multos apud Glowecestriam. Council at Gloucester, Aug. 1.

Rex Francorum versus Januensem civitatem iter arripuit; rex Anglorum versus Massiliam. The kings start.

Fredericus imperator Romanus annum agens in imperio quadragesimum, dum Jerosolimam tenderet per The emperor crosses Bulgaria and Asia Minor.

[1] The following letters are inserted in the congratulatory epistle of Ralph de Diceto to bishop Longchamp, prefixed to his miscellaneous collection of royal and episcopal lists, which are printed later on in the present volume.

[2] *tam*] om. D.

A.D. 1190. Bulgariam, et ab Yconio transitum faceret versus Antiochiam, in fluvio quodam qui vocatur Sapheth, exercitu suo toto salubriter transeunte, solus equo suo decidens submersus est viii° kalendas Augusti.

He is drowned, July 25.

Richard embarks at Marseilles, Aug. 9: keeps away from Rome, and goes through Apulia.

Ricardus rex Anglorum navem ascendit apud Massiliam vigilia Sancti Laurentii. Qui dum æquora sulcaret, in portu Romano nuntios domini papæ, scilicet Hostiensem episcopum, et alios plures occurrentes sibi recepit. Sed ad postulationem domini papæ Romam renuit visitare, prope Capuam intrans Apuliam.

Voyage of Baldwin and the English crusaders.

Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Hubertus Saresbiriensis episcopus, et Rannulfus de Glanvilla quondam Anglici regni justiciarius, itinere recto tendentes versus Jerosolimam, a sinistra reliquerunt Siciliam, et post pericula multa tandem apud Tirum applicuerunt circa festum Sancti Michaelis.

The engines of the crusaders at Acre burnt, May 5.

Ignis ille qui dicitur Græcus ignis, a Saracenis intra civitatem Acon obsessis, tres machinas, quas Christiani sumptibus magnis construxerant ad subvertendam urbem, in articulo temporis funditus concremavit, et omnia redegit in cinerem iii^tio nonas Maii.

Rash attack of the crusaders on Saladin, July 25.

Die festo Sancti Jacobi Christiani quidam mediæ manus homines, sicut dicitur ad decem milia, victualium penuria laborantes, ut famis detrimentum effugerent, non habentes principem neque rectorem, insultum fecerunt in Salaadinum et suos, et nisi Radulfus Colecestrensis [1] archidiaconus, vir tam inermi militia quam armata probatus, cum forti manu suorum Christianis auxilium præstitisset, omnes in ore gladii corruissent.

Prowess of the archdeacon of Colchester.

Philip lands at Messina, Sept. 16.

Philippus rex Francorum applicuit apud Messanam xvi^to kalendas Octobris, et hospitatus est in palatio regis Tancredi.

Richard lands, Sept. 23.

Ricardus rex Anglorum ix^no kalendas Octobris ibidem applicuit, et, habito cum rege Francorum colloquio, rex Francorum navem ascendit, et quoniam ventus

[1] Ralph de Hauterive, archdeacon of Colchester.

erat contrarius ipsa die rediit. Interim nuntii Ricardi regis quos ad Tancredum regem direxerat redierunt iiii° kalendas Octobris, ducentes secum Johannam quondam Siciliæ reginam; et pridie kalendas Octobris transiit fluvium qui dicitur Far, et in Kalabria cepit locum munitissimum qui dicitur La Baniare, et posuit in eo sororem suam; et postea rediit Messanam, et in crastino cepit castellum inter Kalabriam et Messanam quod dicitur monasterium Griffonum. Griffones insultum facientes in Hugonem Brunum ab Anglorum rege repulsi sunt, qui clausis januis civitatis ad propugnacula murorum stantes homines et equos regis Anglorum occiderunt, et quosdam illorum vulneraverunt; rex Ricardus portas civitatis confregit, et maximam illius civitatis partem cepit, et homines suos infra civitatem hospitari fecit iiii^to^ nonas Octobris. Et tertio nonas dederunt obsides ei majores civitatis de pace servanda.

A.D. 1190. Tancred sends queen Johanna to Richard, Sept. 28.

Resistance of the Griffons.

Richard seizes Messina, Oct. 4.

Habitum est regionale concilium apud Westmonasterium, præsidente Willelmo Eliensi episcopo et apostolicæ sedis legato, idibus Octobris. Ricardus Lundoniensis episcopus iii^tius^ juxta pristinam regni consuetudinem ad dexteram legati sedem optinuit: Godefridus Wintoniensis episcopus ad sinistram.[1]

Council at Westminster, Oct. 13.

GLORIOR ELATUS.

Rex Tancredus dedit regi Ricardo pro quieta clamantia rerum omnium quas petebat, unciarum auri xx^ti^ milia. Dedit etiam Tancredus unciarum auri totidem milia regi Ricardo pro bono pacis et quieta clamantia divisæ quam Willelmus rex fecerat patri suo Henrico regi, et pro matrimonio quod erat contrahendum inter Arturum Britanniæ ducem et filiam Tancredi. Rex

Richard receives large sums from Tancred, on account of king William's bequest to Henry II., and for the marriage of Arthur.

---

[1] MS. B. has in the margin,—

"Maximus in minimum summus
"convertor in imum,
"Maximus e minimo, summus-
"que revertor ab ymo."

and in that of the second,—

"Glorior hoc uno quod nunquam
"vidimus unum
"Nec potuisse magis nec nocuisse
"minus."

A.D. 1190. Ricardus prædictum Arturum hæredem suum instituit, si sine prole decesserit. Firmavit etiam quoddam castellum prope Messanam quod vocavit Mategriffum. Margaritus et Jordanus del Pin, prædictæ civitatis custodes, abierunt furtive ducentes secum familiam suam totam. Præterea rex Ricardus quietum clamavit wrech in omnibus terris suis. Rex Francorum quietum clamavit regem Anglorum de sorore sua ducenda, numeratis sibi decem milibus librarum. Clamavit etiam clamationem quietam inperpetuum quam habebat de Gisorz, et de toto Welkesin.

He builds Mategriffon.

The marriage of Richard with Philip's sister broken off.

Sibilla regina Jerusalem mortua, soror ejus unica, quæ nupserat Hainfrido de Turun, a viro suo per divortium est disjuncta; quam marchio de Monte Ferarrio duxit uxorem. Juratores in causa divortii fuerunt Balisant matris reginæ defunctæ maritus, Paganus de Kaiphas, Reginaldus Sidonis civitatis quondam dominus; desponsata fuit prædicta soror reginæ ab episcopo Belvacensi. Judices in causa divortii fuerunt Aconensis episcopus, et alius quidam episcopus de terra Jerosolimitana. Die vero nuptiarum marchionis pincerna Silvanectensis, nepos scilicet comitis de Claro Monte, cum decem et vii. aliis militibus, et xv. servientibus equitibus a Saracenis interceptus est.

Divorce of the heiress of Jerusalem; she is married to Conrad of Montferrat.

Capture of crusaders on the wedding day.

Alienor regina cum per iiii^{or} dies moram fecisset cum filio suo, recessit versus Angliam, relinquens Berengariam filiam regis Navaræ, quam ducturus erat uxorem. Quarto idus Aprilis ascendit rex Ricardus navim cum exercitu suo cum cl. navibus et vi., et buceis xxiiii^{or} et galeis xxxix., et duxit secum Johannam sororem et prædictam Berengariam.

Eleanor leaves Berengaria with Richard.

He sets sail from Messina, April 10.

Articles passed by the clergy of Normandy.

" [1]Omnibus Christi fidelibus clerus totius Normanniæ " salutem.

[1] *Omnibus, &c.*] The articles given in the following document are published by Bessin, in the Concilia Rotomagensis Provinciæ, p. 100, from a Cartulary of the Chapter of Rouen.

" Ad universitatis vestræ notitiam volumus pervenire, con- A.D. 1190.
" tentionem motam inter matrem nostram Rothomagensem
" ecclesiam, procurante eam in absentia reverendi patris nostri
" Walteri archiepiscopi Johanne de Constantiis Rothomagensi
" decano, et Willelmum filium Radulfi senescallum Norman-
" niæ, super quibusdam capitulis de quibus ecclesia Dei con-
" querebatur, sub præsentia nostra et baronum domini regis,
" assistentibus quoque quampluribus Normanniæ ministris
" hoc tandem fine conquievisse.

" Inprimis, determinatum est de clericis, quod nulla occa- On arrest and trial of clerks.
" sione a sæcularibus potestatibus capientur, nisi pro homicidio,
" furto, et incendio, vel hujusmodi enormi flagitio quod ad
" placitum gladii pertineat, et tunc, cum requisiti fuerint ab
" ecclesiasticis judicibus, quieti reddentur in ecclesiastica curia
" judicandi.

" Item, generaliter omnes de fidei læsione, vel juramenti Breaches of faith to be tried in the spiritual courts.
" transgressione, quæstiones in ecclesiastico foro tractabuntur.
" Super treugæ vero violatione antiqua consuetudo et cartarum
" Henrici et Ricardi illustrium regum Angliæ tenor obser-
" vabitur.

" Item, quæstiones de dote vel donatione propter nuptias Questions of dower and jointure.
" quando mobilia vel se moventia petentur, ad ecclesiam re-
" ferentur. Quæstio vero super eisdem de inmobilibus domi-
" nis nostris regi et archiepiscopo determinanda reservatur.

" Item, in conventualibus ecclesiis, abbates, vel priores, aut Election of abbots, &c.
" abbatissæ cum assensu diocesani episcopi eligentur.

" Item, nulla fiet recognitio in foro sæculari super possessione Examination of the rights of ecclesiastics to estates, to be tried in the church courts.
" quam viri religiosi vel quæcumque ecclesiasticæ personæ xx.
" annis vel amplius possederint. Similiter nulla fiet recognitio
" si carta vel alio modo eleemosinatam esse possessionem
" probare poterint; sed ad ecclesiasticos judices remittentur.

" Item, distributio eorum quæ in testamento relinquuntur Testamentary suits.
" auctoritate ecclesiæ fiet, nec decima pars ut olim subtrahe-
" tur. De bonis vero clericorum, etsi dicantur fuisse usurarii, Goods of clerks.
" vel quocunque genere mortis præventi, nichil pertinet ad
" sæcularem potestatem, sed episcopali auctoritate in pias
" causas distribuentur.

" Item, quicquid laici in vita sua donaverint, vel quocumque Gifts not to be revoked.
" titulo a se alienaverint, etsi usurarii fuisse dicantur, post
" mortem non revocabitur. Quæ vero post mortem non alienata Goods of usurers.
" inveniantur, sed recognitum fuerit ipsos tempore mortis
" fuisse usurarios, confiscabuntur.

" Item, si mortuus habuerit aliquod vadium unde sortem Mortgages.
" suam perceperit, portio ipsius libera ad eum qui invadiavit,

A.D. 1190. " vel ad hæredes ipsius revertetur. Idem fiet de portionibus " uxoris et filiorum ejus post mortem ipsorum.

Intestacy. " Si quis vero subitanea morte vel quolibet alio fortuito " casu præoccupatus fuerit, ut de rebus suis disponere non " possit, distributio bonorum ejus ecclesiastica auctoritate " fiet."

Hubert bishop of Salisbury acts as executor to archbishop Baldwin.

Baldewinus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus quicquid in usus necessarios terræ Jerosolimitanæ dum ageret in extremis legaverat erogandum, post obitum suum Hubertus Saresbiriensis episcopus, quem testamenti sui coram familiaribus et domesticis ordinaverat executorem, fideliter erogatione pia distribuit, et de castrorum excubiis summe sollicitus militibus XX., servientibus L., sicut decreverat archiepiscopus, juxta consuetudinem regionis per dies plurimos statutis temporibus debita persolvit stipendia, pauperum semper agens curam, erga destitutos auxilio reflectens oculos misericordiæ; per omnia boni præsulis implens officium.[1]

A.D. 1191. MCXCI. " Venerabili domino et patri in Christo karissimo

Letter of Hubert to the bishop of London. " Ricardo Dei gratia episcopo Londoniensi, Hubertus eadem " gratia Saresbiriensis episcopus salutem, et tam devotæ quam " debitæ dilectionis constantiam.

Continuance of the siege of Acre. " Noverit dilectio vestra quod villa Achon post insultus plu- " rimos adhuc nobis fortiter restitit, nec a nobis adhuc expug- " nari potuit, quia gentibus, muris et machinis satis erat " munita. Et Salaadinus ex alia parte circa nos undique " exercitum suum quasi in obsidione tenebat. Verum de " exercitu ejus, sicut certissime accepimus, plures recesserant " corporis invalitudine, laboribus et expensis, supra modum gra- " vati, nec prece, nec precio, vel etiam minis diutius poterant " retineri. In exercitu illo vir alicujus probitatis eo tempore, " sicut dicebatur, inveniri poterat, quem Salaadinus in villam " Achonis transponeret, ut alios vel membris mutilatos, vel cor- " pore debilitatos extraheret. Et de nostris versa vice diversi " in diversa loca se retraxerant, ut sibi contra multimodam " expeditionis incommoditatem consulerent, et sic tam subtrac- " tione virorum quam amissione ibidem mortuorum, exercitus " ibidem Christianitatis multum erat diminutus. Verump-

---

[1] *Baldewinus . . . officium*] inserted in the margin of A.; om. B. | D. Archbishop Baldwin died November 19, 1190.

" tamen Christiani de consolatione Christi confidentes, labores A.D. 1191.
" et molestias obsidionis prædictæ usque in adventum regum Help must come before
" nostrorum sperant se posse sustinere. Hoc dicimus, si circa Easter, or it will be in vain.
" Pascha venerint: si enim diutius venire distulerint, et ad
" sumptus pecunia deficiet, et spes terrenæ consolationis eva-
" nescet. Hæc de statu obsidionis Achonis."

[1]Clemente papa tertio rebus humanis exempto,[2] Jacinctus inter diaconos ecclesiæ Romanæ primus, ne scisma subitum in ecclesia Dei consurgeret, se fieri papam vix tandem consensit; quem Octovianus Ostiensis episcopus die Paschæ consecravit episcopum, qui vocatus est Celestinus papa tertius. Celestino III. elected and consecrated, Apr. 14.

Celestinus feria secunda Paschali Henricum regem Teutonicum et Longobardorum consecravit imperatorem Romanum. He crowns Henry VI., Apr. 15.

Paschali feria iiii^ta^ Romani civitatem Tusculanam funditus diruerunt. Tusculum destroyed, Apr. 17.

Robertus Lincolniensis canonicus, filius unicus et hæres Willelmi[3] seneschalli Normanniæ, mandato Clementis papæ Cantuariæ consecratus est episcopus Wigorniensis iii° nonas Maii a Willelmo sedis apostolicæ legato, vi. episcopis Dorobernensis ecclesiæ suffraganeis astantibus prædicto legato. Consecration of Robert bishop of Worcester May 5.

" Celestinus papa iii.[4] Letter of Celestine III. ordering
" Modis omnibus inhibemus ne in capella de Haketunne,

---

[1] The order of the following paragraphs is altered in Twysden's edition, probably to suit his view of harmonising the several MSS. They stand in the following order: (1.) The second letter of Richard, "Ricardus . . faciatis;" (2.) "Wal-" terus archiepiscopus . . . verba," with the first letter, "Ricardus " Messanam;" (3.) The notice of the embarkation of Philip; and (4.) The paragraphs about Celestine III., and the letter of the pope, "Celes-" tinus . . . . . absolvi." MS. C. follows the text. MSS. B. and D. furnish a fuller transcript of the second letter of Richard, but otherwise adopt the order followed by Twysden.

[2] Clement III. died March 28, 1191.

[3] William Fitz Ralph, steward of Normandy. Robert, his son, the bishop of Worcester, occupied that see only until 1193.

[4] The following is part of the papal letter, No. 358 among the Epistolæ Cantuarienses, dated Rome, May 28, 1191; Epp. Cant. p. 337.

A.D. 1191. the demolition of the church at Hackington. The sentence of pope Clement III. is to be enforced.

" quam apostolica condempnavit auctoritas, de cætero celebrentur divina: sed potius capella ibidem, ut dicitur, erecta funditus destruatur. Et sicut a patribus nostris decretum esse dinoscitur, canonicorum institutionem revocantes in irritum, eos denuntietis et teneatis suspensos qui in loco ipso post prohibitionem apostolicam divina scienter præsumpserunt officia celebrare, donec ad sedem apostolicam veniant absolvendi. Illos quoque qui sententiam piæ recordationis papæ Clementis incurrisse noscuntur, cautius faciatis ab omnibus evitari[1] donec, ecclesiæ satisfactione competenti exhibita, per nos mereantur absolvi."

The archbishop of Rouen arrives.

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus a Sicilia rediens, venit in Angliam v^to^ kalendas Julii[2] apud Soreham, litteras deferens in hæc verba;

Letter of Richard to the justices,

" Ricardus rex Anglorum Willelmo cancellario suo, Gaufrido filio Petri, Willelmo Marescallo, et Hugoni Bardulfi, et Willelmo Briwerre apparibus.[3]

appointing the archbishop of Rouen as a coadjutor; Feb. 23.

" Sciatis quod quia nos diligimus venerabilem patrem nostrum Walterum Rothomagensem archiepiscopum, et de eo ad plenum confidimus, cum de peregrinatione sua, de consilio et assensu summi pontificis, propter consilium et defensionem regni nostri ad vos transmittimus, quoniam constat apud nos, ipsum esse ad hoc ydoneum, et quia eum virum esse cognovimus prudentem et discretum, et nobis semper fidelem: unde vobis mandamus et firmiter præcipimus, quatinus in procurandis negotiis nostris ejus consilio[4] operemini; volentes et præcipientes quod quamdiu ipse erit in Anglia, et nos in peregrinatione Dei erimus, ipse pariter in omnibus cum consilio vestro, et vos cum suo. Vobis etiam mandamus quod ea quæ sibi vobis de archiepiscopatu Cantuariæ exponenda commisimus faciatis, sicut ipse vobis ex parte nostra proponet. Teste meipso xxiii^tio^ die Februarii apud Messanam."

---

[1] *cautius . . . . evitari*] inserted in the margin of A.

[2] *Julii*] Maii, B., and so corrected in the margin of A. MS. C. has *Julii*. Gervase, c. 1571, places the arrival of the archbishop about Midsummer.

[3] Geoffrey Fitz Peter, William Marshall, Hugh Bardulf, and William Briwere were the justices left by Richard as joint commissioners of regency with the bishop of Ely the chancellor.

[4] *ejus consilio*] et in custodiendo et defendendo regno nostro, communicato cum eo in omnibus negotiis consilio, B.

A.D. 1191. Letter from Richard to the justices directing them to overrule the action of the chancellor if necessary.

"Ricardus rex Anglorum, Willelmo Marescallo, Gaufrido "filio Petri, et Hugoni Bardulfi, et Willelmo Briwerre appari- "bus.[1]

"Si forte cancellarius noster negotia regni nostri, juxta "consilium vestrum et aliorum prædictorum quibus curam "regni nostri commisimus, fideliter non tractaverit, præcipi- "mus ut secundum dispositionem vestram de omnibus agendis "regni nostri, tam de castellis quam de escaetis, absque omni "occasione faciatis."

Philip sails sails from Messina, March 29.

Rex Francorum navem ascendit apud Messanam iiii^to kalendas Aprilis.[2]

Richard embarks, Apr. 10, and sails to Cyprus.

Rex Anglorum Ricardus in magna gloria naves ascendit iiii^to idus Aprilis apud Messanam, et circa xx^mum diem Rodos insulam subintravit, et in civitate v. diebus mansit, et postmodum, v. diebus transcursis, apud Cyprum applicuit loco qui vocatur Limezun. Cursac autem dominus terræ, qui se vocabat impe-

[1] Instead of the second letter, MSS. B. and D. give the following, placing it before the account of the mission of the archbishop.

"Ricardus rex Anglorum Willelmo Marescallo caro et fideli suo et aliis "baronibus in eadem forma salutem. Mittimus ad te venerabilem patrem "nostrum Walterum Rothomagensem archiepiscopum, virum prudentem "et discretum, de cujus fidelitate et prudentia firmiter confidimus, ut "ipsius consilio adquiescas et cancellarii nostri, et Hugo Bardulfi et "Galfridus filius Petri et Willelmus Briwerre, quibus negotia regni nostri "commisimus tractanda, et absque prædicti archiepiscopi consilio nihil fa- "cere præsumas. Et si forte cancellarius noster negotia regni nostri juxta "consilium prædicti archiepiscopi et tuum et aliorum prædictorum quibus "curam regni nostri commisimus non tractaverit, præcipimus ut, secundum "prædicti archiepiscopi dispositionem, tu et prænominati socii tui de "omnibus agendis regni nostri tam de castellis quam de escaetis absque "omni occasione faciatis. Nos enim ei cor nostrum aperuimus et secreta "nostra ei commisimus. Teste me ipso apud Messanam, ix. die Feb- "ruarii." The letter is given in the same form by Giraldus Cambrensis in his life of archbishop Geoffrey, lib. ii. c. 6, but with the date Febr. 20, and with some textual variations. That Ralph de Diceto in thus abridging the letter intended to garble it, I now think improbable; see, however, the note in Hoveden, iii. 96.

[2] Twysden has this paragraph thus, from MS. B., "Tertio kalendas "Aprilis rex Francorum navem as- "cendit apud Messanam cum tribus "tantummodo navibus. Pacificati "prius fuerant rex Anglorum et "ipse." The words "cum tribus ". . ipse" are inserted in the margin of A.

A.D. 1191. Attack of the emperor of Cyprus.

ratorem, tam armata quam forti manu regi portum prohibiturus occurrit, et quam plurimos hominum suorum afflictos afflixit, spoliavit naufragos, et in carcerem fame perituros reclusit. Hinc igitur in tantæ vindictam injuriæ rex Anglorum ira succensus iniit cum hoste jam dicto congressum, festinam adeptus

Conquest of Cyprus.

victoriam. Ipsum victum et vinctum tenuit, et filiam suam unicam, totamque insulam Cypri cum universis munitionibus suæ subdidit ditioni. Cursae cum rege pactum iniit, ne ferreis detineretur in vinculis. Quod

The emperor confined at Merkeb.

et factum est. Sed rex pactum observans eum compedibus artari fecit argenteis, et in castello prope Tripolim quod vocatur Margeth retrudi præcepit. Filiam autem ejus secum retinuit cum duabus reginis in thalamo regis honorifice custoditam.

Geography of Cyprus.

Situs Cypri talis est. Primo venitur ad Baffam, quæ caput est regionis versus meridiem. Secundo venitur ad Limezun. Tertio venitur ad Famaugust dictam, quasi civitatem Augusti. Postea caput Sancti Andreæ versus septemtrionem extenditur, et e regione respicit Armeniam. Postea venitur ad Cheri, quo naves ascendunt Jerosolimam visitaturi.

Philip reaches Acre.

Rex Francorum iter suum dirigens versus Jerusalem in Paschalibus die Sabbati, scilicet xii^mo kalendas Aprilis, applicuit apud Acon. Quid vero totus exercitus Christianorum per vii. septimanas in assiliendo civitatem profecerit, tota Christianitas quæ præsens erat novit et recolit.

Letter of the chancellor to the archbishop of Rouen, forbidding him to go to Canterbury, or to take part in the election of an archbishop without leave.

"Waltero Rothomagensi archiepiscopo Willelmus Eliensis
" episcopus. Convenimus vos apud Lundoniam qua occasione
" Cantuariam adire velletis, et id a vobis in responsis accepisse
" meminimus, quod quoniam monachos Cantuarienses au-
" dieratis vobis offensos, ut scilicet de causis offensionis si
" qua esset inquireretis, et de prioris depositione certitudinem
" haberetis. Verum datum est nobis intelligi vos alia consi-
" deratione Cantuariam festinare, videlicet ut cum monachis
" illis de archiepiscopo eligendo tractetis. Et valde nec mirum
" admirati sumus quod quasi captata absentia nostra velitis

" id facere, cum sine nobis fieri nec possit, nec debeat, qui et A.D. 1191.
" toti regno vice regia præsidemus, et jure cancellariæ nostræ
" archiepiscopatum illum in manu nostra cum omnibus eccle-
" siæ pertinentiis habemus. Cum igitur super tam magno et
" arduo negotio a quo summopere totius regni pendet dispo-
" sitio, sine domini regis, aut nostra nunc temporis præsentia
" tractari non debeat; discretioni et honori vestro consulimus
" et mandamus, ex parte domini regis districtius inhibentes
" ne propter hanc aut propter aliam quamcunque causam
" Cantuariensem ecclesiam adeatis, donec vobiscum loqui pos-
" simus. Non enim cum patientia vel rancoris dissimulatione
" hæc proferemus."[1]

Richard sails from Cyprus.

Ricardus rex Anglorum, habens in comitatu suo xiii^cim magnas naves quas buccas vocant, triplici velorum expassione dum æquora sulcarent notabiles, habens centum alias naves onerarias, habens etiam L. galeas triremes,[2] se vento commisit apud Cyprum, et inter navigandum navem quandam quam Saphadinus Salaadini frater, Babiloniæ dominus, sumptibus magnis extruxerat, ut Saracenis apud Acon obsidione vallatis succursum præstaret, casu fortuito velificantem inspexit, refertam omni genere victualium, armis bellicis ad quoslibet subeundos congressus instructam, ignis Græci, serpentium ignitorum plena vasa plurima continentem, sicut dicebatur, hominum mille quingentorum suffragio roboratam. Instructis igitur in articulo temporis omnibus ad prælium navale necessariis, galearum concursu circa navem undique fit insultus acerrimus, quæ venti destituta suffragio stabat immobilis. Quidam itaque remigantium illius aviculæ quæ mergus dicitur tractus exemplo, natans subtus aquas accessit ad navem, et eam terebro perforavit. Audierat forsitan qualiter Eleazarus tempore Machabæorum se supposuit elefanti

He meets a great ship of the Saracens.

It is bored by a diver.

---

[1] This letter is given in full by Giraldus Cambrensis in his life of Geoffrey, lib. ii. c. 6, with the date "apud Releiam, xxv. Augusti." For *proferemus* Giraldus has *perferremus*.

[2] *triremes*] "Triremes et quad-
" riremes naves sunt habentes or-
" dinem ternum vel quaternum:—
" Papias," ins. A. in marg.

A.D. 1191. Example of Eleazar.

circa quem belli pondus undique confluebat, et cum percutiens in ventrem occidit. Oppressus est et ipse sed Judæorum gerens negotium; remigans autem, Christum habens in corde, rediens ad galeam incolumis sua

The ship is sunk, and the crew drowned, June 6.

resedit in sede. Modico tractu temporis aqua subintrans omnia tabulata transcendit, et hominibus, qui prius in propugnaculis confidebant, evadendi spem omnem prorsus abscidit. Quorum M. CCC^tos Ricardus rex Anglorum in mari submergi præcepit, reservando CC^tos. Acta sunt hæc VIII^vo idus Junii. Rex iter suum prospero cursu dirigens ad portum quo tendebat appropinquavit. Lituorum itaque stridor, ductilium clangor tubarum, horribilis cornicinum strepitus littora repleverunt. Personabat terra, quod et Christianorum animos animavit ad pugnam, et Saracenis obsessis gravissimum terrorem incussit, magnum principem advenisse declarans. Rex portum intravit Acon VI^to idus Junii.

Richard arrives at Acre, June 8.

The Saracens begin to treat for surrender.

Cum autem duo reges circa civitatem Acon machinas[1] erexissent, et petrarias suas muro proximas collocassent, et magnitudine lapidum muros penitus attrivissent, in stuporem sunt versi Sarraceni, nullam habentes fiduciam resistendi. Qui, communicato cum suis consilio, cœperunt tractare de pace, talibus initis pactionibus quod Salaadinus sanctam crucem certa die restitueret, et Christianos captivos mille quingentos quos habebat

Acre is surrendered, July 12: prisoners beheaded.

in vinculis liberos abire permitteret. Sic civitas cum armis et impedimentis Saracenorum, salvis tantum corporibus ipsorum, regibus duobus est reddita IIII^to idus Julii. Veniente die statuto nichil horum quæ promiserat Salaadinus implevit. In ultionem igitur excessus tanti circa duo milia secenti Saraceni capitis animadversione multati sunt; paucis de nobilioribus

---

[1] *machinas*] The following matter as far as Salaadinus (p. 95, line 23, below), is written on a small quarto page inserted in A.; and suggests the idea of a rough or first copy.

retentis, pro dispositione regum pondere vinculorum artatis. A.D. 1191.

Subjugata civitate, rex Francorum ad propria redire proposuit quasi toto negotio consummato. Quod audiens rex Anglorum, quicquid in argento vel auro, quicquid in victualium congregatione, quicquid in armis, vel equis, vel navibus congregaverat, se pro parte dimidia regi Francorum tanquam domino suo communicaturum optulit, et sub quavis securitate firmiter repromisit. Sed quoniam ipse reditum suum inmutabiliter ordinaverat in animo suo, suis reclamantibus, toto Christianorum exercitu graviter consternato, cum paucis suorum repatriaturus navem ascendit. [1] Postquam rex Francorum recessit, ilico ruinis et scissuris murorum civitatis Acon reparatis, ipsa civitate fossatis et muro plenius communita, rex ad promovendum Christianitatis negotium, et prosequendi voti sui propositum, versus Jopen iter arripuit, et cum eo dux Burgundiæ cum Francigenis sibi subditis, comes Henricus cum suis, et alii multi comites et barones, et populus innumerus. Cum autem inter Acon et Jopen plurimum esset spatium et tractus viarum prolixior apud Cæsaream tandem cum multo sudore graviquc jactura suorum rex imperterritus venit; et ipse Salaadinus in eodem itinere multos de suis amisit.

Philip proposes to return home.

Richard tries to bribe him to stay.

He embarks.

Richard repairs Acre, and marches towards Joppa.

He reaches Cæsarea.

Cum itaque populus Dei respiraret ibidem aliquantulum, apud Jopen iter propositum audacter prosecutus est. Et cum illius anterior custodia præcederet apud Assur, Salaadinus cum vehementi Saracenorum incursu super ultimam aciem impetum faciens, divinæ miserationis gratia favente solum a iiii^or^ turmis Christianorum a fronte sibi viriliter occurrentibus compulsus est in fugam, ipsumque fugientem per unam leucam vel circa præcedentes turmæ Christianorum plene prosecutæ sunt, tantamque stragem de nobilioribus Saracenis quos Salaadinus habuerat, vigilia Nativitatis beatæ Virginis, prope scilicet Assur, quantam Salaadinus annis xl. transactis antea non sustinuit una die. Nos vero de nostris illa die gratia Dei nullum amisimus nisi virum optimum, et

He is attacked by Saladin at Arsouf.

Battle of Arsouf, Sept. 7.

[1] The following is an abstract of Richard's letter to the abbot of Clairvaux giving an account of the battle of Arsouf. See Hoveden, iii. 130–132.

A.D. 1191. March to Joppa.

suis meritis universo carissimum exercitui Jacobum de Avennes, qui per plures annos in exercitu Christiano quasi columpna totius exercitus in omni sinceritate promptus extitit et devotus. Deinde Domino ducente rex Anglorum Jopen pervenit, eandemque villam fossatis et muro firmavit, habens in proposito Christianitatis negotium ubique pro posse suo viriliter promovere.

The chancellor orders the arrest of archbishop Geoffrey.

"Willelmus Dei gratia Eliensis episcopus vicecomiti Sussexiæ.[1]

"Præcipimus tibi quod si Eboracensis electus applicuerit ad "aliquem portum in bailiva tua, aut aliquis nuntiorum ejus, "eum retineri facias donec mandatum nostrum inde receperis. "Et similiter præcipimus quod litteras domini papæ aut ali- "cujus magni viri qui illuc venerint retineri facias."

Geoffrey consecrated at Tours, Aug. 18.

Bartholomeus Turonorum archiepiscopus mandato summi pontificis Galfridum Eboracensem electum consecravit episcopum, Turonis in ecclesia beati Mauritii xv^to^ kalendas Septembris, sex suffraganeis suis assistentibus. Henricus Bajocensis episcopus interfuit consecrationi. Abbas Majoris Monasterii Sancti Martini, pallium deferens a domino papa transmissum, prædictum electum solitis involvit conditionibus; scilicet quod legatos Romanæ ecclesiæ cum veneratione suscipiet, quod deferet appellationibus, quod visitabit Romanam ecclesiam singulis tribus annis, vel per se, vel per proprium nuntium. Dum archiepiscopus in Angliam tenderet, in portu quodam applicuit qui

The oath taken by him.

Quilibet miles publica stipendia recipiens quondam jurabat ista; signa secuturum, ducibus pariturum, injussum non pugnaturum, mortem non evitaturum pro salute reipublicæ.[2]

He comes to England.

[1] This is an extract from the letter given by Giraldus in the life of Geoffrey, lib. ii. c. 1, dated "Preston, xxx. die Julii." The whole of the following account of archbishop Geoffrey's imprisonment and the political crisis which it caused should be carefully compared with the work of Giraldus (Opera, ed. Brewer, vol. iv.). Both writers were apparently in close communication with the actors in the drama; Ralph de Diceto certainly, and Giraldus probably, was on the spot. There are close resemblances in the language of the two writers, but it is not easy to determine that one used the work of the other, or if so, which was the copyist.

[2] This is inserted in the margin of A.; om. B. D.

Dovera nuncupatur xviii° kalendas Octobris. Quem sub enavigatione sua, clericos etiam suos, soror Eliensis episcopi quæ castellum custodiebat mandato, sicut dicitur et creditur, Eliensis episcopi per sex dies cum armatorum multitudine fecit in prioratu Sancti Martini nequiter obsideri, coartavit etiam in tantum, ut vix ei medio tempore victualia possent emendicata conferri. Malitia perfidorum in deterius proruente, milites Eliensis episcopi quos habebat familiarissimos, Albericus de Marines[1] et Alexander Puintel, cum armatorum multitudine venerunt ad prædictam ecclesiam loricati, gladios habentes in manibus evaginatos, et irruentes in ecclesiam, irruentes in archiepiscopum, firmiter injunxerunt ut de regno sine mora, sine dilatione, navigaturus in Flandriam cum suis exiret. Quod facere recusans, stolam gerens in collo, bajulans crucem in manibus, ab altaris cornu, per pedes, per crura, per brachia, colliso capite super pavimentum violenter extrahitur per viam lutosam, per immunda loca, cum clericis suis et viris religiosis qui de partibus multis ad ipsum videndum confluxerant, perductus est in castellum xiiii° kalendas Octobris, ubi per viii. dies est retrusus in carcerem. Quod audiens Lundoniensis episcopus, utens fere duplomate, cum festinatione qua potuit venit ad cancellarium; a quo post multas supplicationes vix tandem optinuit, episcopatu suo toto sub cautione fidejussoria quasi loco pignoris obligato, liberationem archiepiscopi. Carcerem egrediens archiepiscopus vi^to^ kalendas Octobris, eadem via qua tractus fuerat rediit cum prædictis insignibus, scilicet cum stola, cum cruce, per viam lutosam, per immunda loca,[2] quousque Sancti Martini rediret ad monasterium, et Deo Sanctoque Martino gratias agens a populis undique confluentibus cum

A.D. 1191. He lands at Dover, Sept. 14:

is besieged in the church of S. Martin:

and arrested, Sept. 18.

He is liberated, Sept. 26, and returns to S. Martin's.

[1] *Albericus de Marines*] Apparently Aubrey de Marney, of Layer-Marney, in Essex. Alexander Puintel is probably a kinsman of William Puinetel who had charge of the Tower in the 2nd of Richard I. See Madox, Hist. Exch., pp. 266, 505.

[2] *per . . . loca*] om. B.

A.D. 1191. He arrives in London, Oct. 2.

exultatione magna susceptus est. Lundoniam veniens, archiepiscopus sollempni processione receptus est in ecclesia doctoris gentium vi^to^ nonas Octobris, cui dominus Ricardus Lundoniensis episcopus, tam sibi quam suis, omnem quam potuit humanitatem exhibuit in expensis effusioribus.

John summons the bishop of London to the bridge of the Loddon, for Oct. 5.

"Ricardo Lundoniensi episcopo, Johannes comes Moritonii "salutem.[1]

"Sicut diligitis honorem Dei, et ecclesiæ, et domini regis, "et regni, et meum, sitis ad pontem de Lodene die sabbati "proxima post festum Sancti Michaelis inter Radinges et "Windesoram, quia Deo volente ibidem vobis obvius ero, "tractaturi de quibusdam magnis et arduis negotiis domini "regis et regni."

Sabbati dies ad colloquendum præfixus infortunium aliquod exinde proventurum intelligere dedit quampluribus; diebus siquidem sabbatorum præstita sacramenta, sicut arbitrantur nonnulli, raro robur optinent firmitatis.

The chancellor at Windsor avoids the meeting.

Itaque cancellarius habens in custodia Windesoræ castellum, silvarum opaca, viarum angustias, equitum et peditum in armis confidentium, et ad comitem undique confluentium multitudinem, Henrici quoque de Ver, cujus exhæredationi, sicut dicebatur, ipse præstiterat occasionem, latentes insidias, prædictum etiam pontem a castello nimis remotum plurimum causabatur, et sic in diem usque Lunæ pertractum est colloquium. Media die Dominica tam archiepiscopi, Rothomagensis scilicet et Eboracensis, quam episcopi quotquot apud Radingum convenerant ut interessent colloquio, candelis accensis ascenderunt in pulpitum, et omnes qui consilium, vel auxilium, vel mandatum dederunt, ut archiepiscopus Eboracensis extraheretur ab ecclesia, tractaretur indigne, retruderetur in carcerem, terribiliter anathematizaverunt, et a consortio sanctæ matris ecclesiæ sequestraverunt, et nominatim Albericum de Marines, et Alexandrum Puintel. Die Lunæ comes

The meeting postponed to Monday, Oct. 7.

The bishops excommunicate the persons who had arrested the archbishop, Oct. 6.

[1] Giraldus does not give this writ of summons.

ad omnem sinistram suspicionem tollendam, in loco tutissimo prope Windesoram, sicut peticrat cancellarius, ad colloquium venire proposuit, cancellario repromittens omnimodam securitatem per manum episcopi Lundoniensis. Et quoniam apud Estanes hospitari decreverat ipsa die, familia sua mane surgens, et irruentium formam assumens, gressu concito properabat impetum observans in omnibus. Quod audiens cancellarius contritus est a facie comitis, quem cum ira magna sua sequi vestigia reputabat, et trepidanti consimilis elongavit, non dico fugiens, quousque cum armis et impedimentis et familia sua Lundoniæ turrim intraret in pedeplanis turris equos suos stabulans, et in ipsis domibus ad convescendum antiquitus deputatis, ad imminentem sicut credebat obsidionem se præparans. Comes, audiens quod fecerat cancellarius, venit et ipse, Lundoniis ipsa die receptus ad hospitandum in domibus Ricardi filii Reigneri.[1] Rogerus de Planes[2] in tota terra Johannis comitis justiciarius graviter vulneratus a quodam Radulfo de Bello Campo, quem cancellarius cingulo militari donaverat, kalendis Novembris diem clausit extremum. Sequenti die Martis ut inimicitiæ quas comes et cancellarius incurrerant, suo[3] marte discurrerent, comes Johannes, tam archiepiscopi quam episcopi, tam comites quam barones, convenerunt in capitulo Sancti Pauli Lundoniæ, pulsata campana quæ populum solet ad conveniendum urgere. Post longos ergo tractatus adinvicem habitos Johannes comes primus fidelitatem regis Ricardi juravit. Deinceps archiepiscopi duo, postmodum omnes episcopi: solus episcopus Lundoniensis addidit juramento, "Salvo or- " dine suo et justitia ecclesiastica." Juraverunt etiam comites et barones quotquot convenerant. Omnes prædicti magnates juraverunt communam Lundoniæ.

A.D. 1191. Oct. 7. John comes to the place of meeting near Staines.

The chancellor flies to London.

John follows and lodges with Richard Fitz Reiner.

Roger de Planes mortally wounded.

Oct. 8. Meeting of bishops and barons at S. Paul's.

Oaths taken to Richard;

the communa of London confirmed.

[1] Richard, son of Reiner, was sheriff of London from the 33rd of Henry II. to the 1st year of Richard.

[2] Roger de Plasnes, lord of Easthorpe and Birch, in Essex.

[3] *suo*] suæ, A. B.

A.D. 1191. Oct. 9. William Postard elected abbot of Westminster.

Die Mercurii Willelmus Postard prior Westmonasteriensis,[1] concurrentibus omnium votis, electus est in abbatem ante regis justiciarios, episcopo Lundoniensi præsente. Quem episcopus duxit ante majus altare Sancti Petri. Decantato "Te Deum laudamus," episcopus consuetam orationem super prostratum electum subjunxit, et in sedibus deputatis abbati sollempniter intronizavit, et campanarum cordas manibus electi contradidit. Deinde transitum faciens episcopus in capitulum, electum ducens, electionem factam episcopali confirmavit auctoritate, præsente toto conventu, concurrentibus populis, per regulam Sancti Benedicti, per Evangelii textum, electo curam animarum commisit.

Conference near the Tower, Oct. 10.

Die Jovis habitum est colloquium ab orientali parte Turris Lundoniensis. Præsens fuit comes, cancellarius, archiepiscopi prædicti, pontifices, comites et barones. Assensu communi diffinitum est, ut omnia castella quæ pro libitu suo cancellarius custodiæ familiarium suorum commiserat redderentur, et inprimis Turris Lundoniensis. Quod se facturum cancellarius jurisjurandi præstita religione promisit. Castella vero tria, quæ de manu regis Ricardi receperat cancellarius, scilicet castellum de Dovera, castellum de Cantebrige, castellum de Hereford in Wallia, per manum cancellarii custodirentur, datis obsidibus a castellanis quos ibi constituerat cancellarius de fidelitate regis servanda. Die Veneris cancellarius turrim egrediens, cum universa supellectile sua transitum fecit apud Bermundeseiam. Henricus et Osbertus cancellarii fratres et Mathæus camberarius dati sunt in obsidatum quousque redderentur castella. Juraverat enim cancellarius quod ante castellorum redditionem regnum non egrederetur. Die sabbati cancellarius transitum faciens apud Doveram, duces habuit in itinere Gilebertum Roffensem episcopum et Henricum de Cornhella Cantiæ vicecomitem.

The chancellor resigns all his castles but three.

Oct. 11. He goes to Bermondsey.

Oct. 12. He goes to Dover.

The abbot of West-

Ricardus[2] Lundoniensis episcopus juxta petitionem

[1] William Postard was abbot of Westminster, 1191–1201.

[2] *Ricardus*] Die Dominica, B. C.

NOV 13 1958

conventus Westmonasteriensis benedixit abbatem ante majus altare Sancti Pauli. Lundoniensis episcopus et abbas benedictus ipsa die sollempni processione recepti sunt apud Westmonasterium, et hora prandendi pariter in refectorio consederunt. Die Jovis sequente cancellarius reputans oculos cæcare nautarum, qui se ventorum habere notitiam gloriantur plerumque, sumpsit habitum muliebrem, sed gressum[1] in corpore vel incessum alterare non potuit quin vir potius appareret quam mulier. Itaque deprehensus a nautis facie detecta cognoscitur, rapitur, trahitur, et vix a manibus mulierearum abstractus[2] custodiæ deputatur, quousque communi decreto justiciariorum regni qui Lundoniis residebant, libertatem acciperet abeundi quo vellet. Præmonitus tamen et summonitus ut quod in præfato colloquio prope Turrim prius juraverat prius effectui manciparet, cancellarius iiij^to^ kalendas Novembris navem ascendens et in Normanniam iter dirigens, apud portum ulteriorem applicuit.

A.D. 1191. minster blessed.

The chancellor tries to escape in disguise, Oct. 17.

He embarks, Oct. 29, and lands at Treport.

Arvandus[3] in natura diligendi non habuit perseverantiam, et fidelium consilia despiciens fortunæ per omnia ludibrium fuit. Denique non cum cecidisse sed tam diu stetisse plus miror,[4] se multociens adversa perpessum gloriabatur, et ruituram ejus temeritatem miserebantur amici. Præfecturam primam quam habuit in provincia gubernavit cum magna popularitate, consequentem cum magna populatione; denique pressus æris alieni sub onere, sibi successuros optimates æmulabatur, colloquia cunctorum ridebat, consilia rimabatur, officia contempnebat. Tandem odii publici mole vallatus, et prius cinctus custodia quam potestate discinctus, captus destinatusque pervenit Romam. Ilico tumens quod prospero cursu Tusciæ litus enavigasset, elementa sibi famulata jactabat.

Instructive history of Arvandus.

---

[1] *gressum*] gestum, B.; corr. A.

[2] *rapitur . . . abstractus*] deligenti, B.

[3] The story of Arvandus, which struck Ralph de Diceto as such a close parallel to that of bishop Longchamp, is told by Sidonius Apollinaris, in the seventh epistle of his first book. Our author may have regarded himself as standing to Longchamp in the relation in which Sidonius stood to Arvandus; and the fact of his adducing the parallel is very creditable both to his heart and to his learning.

[4] *miror*] moror, A.

A.D. 1191. History of Arvandus. Interea legati provinciæ maxima rerum verborumque scientia prædíti, prævium Arvandum accusaturi nomine publico, publicis decretalibus insecuntur, quem incautum et consiliis sodalium repudiatis, sibi soli temere fidentem responso præcipiti contendebant involvere. Quibus agnitis Arvandus prorupit in convitia subita, dicens, "Abite degeneres, Arvando satis con-
"scientia sua sufficit, vix illud admittere dignabor ut in actione
"repetundarum advocati michi præstentur." Pauci medii dies, Arvandus concitato gradu mediis prope judicum sinibus ingeritur, epistolam quandam quæ proponebatur ad ejus confusionem se dictasse professus est. Acclamatur ab accusatoribus, conclamatur a judicibus, reum se majestatis læsæ teneri confitentem. Confestim Arvandus privilegiis geminæ præfecturæ quam per quinquennium repetitis fascibus rexerat exauctoratus, publico carceri deputatus est. Cum duceretur addictus miser non miserabilis erat.

A limit of severity in punishment,

"Si[1] vindicari in aliquos severius contra nostram consuetu-
"dinem pro causæ intuitu jusserimus, nolumus
"statim eos aut subire pœnam aut excipere THEODOSIUS.
"sententiam, sed per dies xxx^ta^ super statu
"eorum sors et fortuna suspensa sit. Reos sane accipiat vin-
"ciatque custodia et excubiis sollertibus vigilanter observet."

A hawk catches a pike. Quidam juvenis de domo domini Lundoniensis episcopi, spiritum habens in avibus cœli ludere, nisum suum docuit cercellas affectare propensius. Itaque juxta sonitum illius instrumenti quod a riparitoribus vocatur "tabur" subito cercella quædam alarum remigio perniciter evolavit. Nisus autem illusus lupum quendam natantem in locis sub undis crispantibus intercepit, invasit et cepit, et super aridam per spatium sicut visum est xl. pedum se cum nova præda recepit.

The bishop of London sends them to John. Episcopus insoliti casus novitate permotus nisum et lupum futuris sæculis memorialem comiti Johanni transmisit xi^mo^ kalendas Novembris. Ipsa die tractatum est de consilio Cantuariensis ecclesiæ sicut rex Ricardus

Election at Canterbury. mandaverat. Convenerunt episcopi, convenerunt et monachi. Post longos tractatus negotium tandem dilationem accepit.

---

[1] *Si . . . . observet*] This is an extract from the Code, Lib. ix. tit. xlvii. l. xx.:—the rule was enacted at the request of S. Ambrose; see Sozomen, lib. vii. c. 24. See also the Theodosian Code, lib. ix. tit. 40, l. 13.

"Celestino papæ suffraganei Cantuariensis ecclesiæ debitam "subjectionem. A.D. 1191. Letter of the bishops to the pope.

"Cum ad nostram pervenisset notitiam Baldewinum, patrem "nostrum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, apud Acon viam "universæ carnis ingressum, verentes ne monachi Sanctæ "Trinitatis in archiepiscopo substituendo sibi quippiam ven- "dicare præsumerent, de communi consilio venerabilem fra- "trem nostrum Ricardum Lundoniensem episcopum, ad quem "electi nominatio de jure dinoscitur pertinere, præmisimus "apud Cantuariam. Junctus est ei comes in itinere quidam "regis justiciarius. Igitur in ecclesia Cantuariensi, præsen- "tibus monachis et audientibus, Romanæ sedis audientiam "appellavit, inhibens ex parte summi pontificis ne quid in "electione facienda præsumerent attemptare citra conscien- "tiam episcoporum et etiam citra regis assensum. Postmodum "autem, ut nobis archipræsulem eligeremus, ad vocationem "domini Lundoniensis, qui decanatum optinet inter suffra- "ganeos, convenimus Lundoniis, convenerunt et monachi; "dilationem accepit electio quibusdam dissensionibus ad in- "vicem emergentibus. Dominus itaque Lundoniensis, totius "Anglicanæ vicem gerens ecclesiæ, rursus Romanæ sedis "audientiam appellavit, Reginaldo episcopo Bathoniensi cum "reliquis episcopis contra monachos appellante. Paucis die- "bus elapsis constituimus accedere Cantuariam, ut sub præ- "sentia tam cleri quam populi, tam episcoporum quam mona- "chorum, archiepiscopum eligeremus, diem ad hoc faciendum "constituentes iiii^um nonas Decembris. Interim autem comes "Moritonii domini regis frater, et dominus Rothomagensis, "Bathoniensis, Rofensis, Herefordensis, Menevensis, Coven- "trensis, episcopi, cum pluribus regni magnatibus pro qui- "busdam magnis regni negotiis transitum fecerunt usque "Cantuariam. Cumque super negotiis ipsis in palatio Can- "tuariensis archiepiscopi residentes tractarent, ingressi sunt "coram eis Gaufridus dictus prior et quidam monachorum, "et manus inicientes in Bathoniensem, et eum electum suum "nominantes de medio residentium sustulerunt. Quos memo- "rati præsules et regni proceres e vestigio subsecuti, denuo "vestram appellaverunt præsentiam v^to kalendas Decembris."

The bishop of London went down to Canterbury and protested the rights of the bishops in the election of an archbishop, appealing to the pope.

All parties met at London, but the election was postponed. The day of election fixed, Dec. 2.

Before the day the monks elected the bishop of Bath, and the bishops appealed, Nov. 27.

MCXCII. Reginaldus Bathoniensis episcopus[1] sedit annis xvi. et xx. sex septimanis et duobus diebus,

Death of the elect.

[1] A broken pastoral staff is drawn in the margin of A. and B. Reginald Fitz Jocelin, son of Jocelin Bohun, bishop of Salisbury, was consecrated in June 23, 1174, and died early in the morning of Dec. 26, 1191; Epistt. Cantuar., p. 355.

A.D. 1191. Death and burial of Reginald bishop of Bath.

Qui nominatus a monachis Cantuariensibus Cantuariensis electus, transcursis a die nominationis xxix. diebus, die Natalis anno bissextili, feria quarta diem clausit extremum apud Dogemerefeld in territorio Winthoniensi. Sepultus est autem in ecclesia sua Bathoniæ, prope majus altare, die festo Sancti Thomæ martyris.

Philip arrives at Paris, Dec 27.

Rex Francorum a finibus rediens Jerosolimitanis, vito kalendas Januarii Parisius sollempni processione receptus est. Sed utrum honestam, utrum causariam, utrum ignominiosam fuerit missionem consecutus a castris, qui pro certo novit edisserat.

A.D. 1192. Murder of Conrad of Montferrat, April 28.

Conradus marchio de Monte Ferario iiiito kalendas Maii confossus est ab Arsacidis apud Tyrum.

Henry of Champagne marries his widow, May 5.

Henricus Campaniæ comes, nepos Ricardi regis Anglorum, filiam Amaurici regis, quam marchio sibi copulaverat qualiquali modo, duxit uxorem iijtio nonas Maii. Totam quoque terram, sicut unquam aliquis regum Jerosolimitanorum possederat melius, quam Christiani recuperaverant, in potestatem recepit.

Capture of a great caravan.

Caterva Saracenorum dum a Babilonia tenderet Jerusalem, omni genere victualium habundans et armis, intercipitur a Christianis. Quod quisque Francorum diripuerat suos cessit in usus. Quod Templares, quod Hospitalarii, quod exteræ gentes invaserant, cessit ad arbitrium regis Anglorum.

Richard besieges Darum, May 14, and takes it.

Pridie idus Maii rex Anglorum veniens ante Darum, quod rex Amauricus in dampnum et injuriam Babiloniorum firmaverat, quod et postmodum Salaadinus in potestatem suam redegerat, castellum obsedit, et infra quartum diem hominum plusquam quinque milia capto castello captivavit.

Joppa taken by the Saracens, July 31.

Pridie kalendas Augusti captum est opidum Jopen a Saracenis.

Richard recovers it, Aug. 1.

Kalendis Augusti rex Anglorum impiger ut Christianis succurreret, in arma proruens, cum tribus galeis decem secum habens milites, ante Jopen applicuit, et Saracenos expugnans Jopen sua sub potestate redegit.

Saraceni, resumptis viribus cum audissent regem venisse cum paucis, ut eum vivum caperent irruerunt. Quibus rex resistens viriliter, in ore gladii multos percussit eorum. A.D. 1192. His prowess at Joppa.

Quarto idus Augusti, scilicet vigilia Sancti Laurentii, datæ sunt induciæ. Tota maritima, scilicet Tyrus, civitas Acon, casellum Hymberti, Cayphas, Cæsarea Philippi, Jopen et casellum Medianum, cesserunt in partem Christianorum. Civitas Ascalon, de qua scriptum est, "Ascalon, Ascalon, tibi in ore gladius, et "erit usque ad consummationem sæculi," de communi tam Christianorum quam Saracenorum assensu diruitur. Montana cesserunt in potestatem Saracenorum. Christianis est data potestas intrandi Jerusalem, dummodo venirent inermes. Sed Tyrensis archiepiscopus sub interdicto conclusit omnes qui sub conductu Saracenorum visitarent Jerusalem, et ibidem vota persolverent orationum. Aug. 9. Truce concluded with Saladin.

Jerem. xlvii. 6, 7.

Hinc inde datis induciis a sequente Pascha per tres annos, per tres menses, per tres ebdomadas, per tres dies, per tres horas, nemini venit in dubium non esse dictum otiose, "Funiculus triplex difficile rumpitur." Et ut quod Saraceni fecerunt robur in posterum firmitatis optinere non dubites, in signum pacis emiserunt sagittam; intelligi dantes, in die non esse timendum a sagitta volante. The truce is to last for three years.

Eccl. iv. 12.

Dum rex Ricardus peregrinaretur in Syria, dum vacaret in Anglia sedes Cantuariensis, Savaricus [1] Norhamtoniensis archidiaconus et thesaurarius Saresbiriensis, a Bathoniensibus monachis, Wellensibus clericis reclamantibus, electus est in episcopum. Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus justiciarius regni præbuit regis assensum. Savaricus Romam veniens mandato summi pontificis ordinatus est presbiter in patriarchio Savaric, elected bishop of Bath, goes to Rome.

[1] Savaric, son of Geldewin, bishop of Bath and Wells, 1192–1205. The name of the bishop of Albano, who consecrated him, was Albinus.

A.D. 1192. Consecration of Savaric.

Lateranensi; manum consecrationis apposuit Albanus Albanensis episcopus xiii^tio kalendas Octobris.

Embarkation of the king and queens.

Die festo Sancti Michaelis duæ reginæ, scilicet tam Angliæ quam Siciliæ, navem ascenderunt apud Acon. Rex vero navem ascendit die festo Sancti Dionisii.

Richard's journey.

Circa Sancti Martini festum applicuit in Romania, scilicet in loco qui dicitur Cuurefy, qui jurisdictioni subicitur imperatoris Constantinopolitani. Postmodum relictis magnis navibus duas galeas ascendit et applicuit in Sclavonia. Cum autem transisset Venetiam et Aquileiam, terram ducis Austriæ subintravit. A quo

He is taken at Vienna, Dec. 20.

captus est in civitate quæ Wena dicitur xiii^tio kalendas Januarii.

Hardships endured by Richard from dirty neighbours.

Regem Anglorum dux Austriæ comprehendit apud Wenam. Qui licet pedes regis in compedibus non humiliaverit, importunitate tamen custodum plus ad malam mansionem perduxit, quam si duris artasset in vinculis. Homines siquidem regionis illius barbariem maxime redolentes, horrent verbis, habitu squalent, inmundiciis feculescunt, ut intelligas eorum cohabitationem ferinam pocius quam humanam.

A.D. 1193. John aims at the crown,

MCXCIII. Johannes Moritonii comes cum audisset fratrem suum regem tentum in vinculis illectus est spe magna regnandi. Multos itaque per totum regnum alliciens, plurima promittebat, munitionibus suis celeriter obfirmandis intendebat sollicitus; mare transiens

and attempts to exclude Arthur.

fœdus iniit cum rege Francorum, ut Arturum ducem Britanniæ, nepotem suum, ab ea spe quam Britones super ejus promotionem conceperant prorsus excluderet.

Saladin dies, Feb. 28.

Pridie kalendas Marcii Salaadinus diem clausit extremum.

Richard given up to the emperor, Mar. 23.

Feria iij^tia post Ramos Palmarum dux Austriæ regem Angliæ tradidit imperatori Romano sub pactione pecuniæ persolvendæ.

A ransom demanded.

Postmodum ut imperator ad immoderatam pecuniæ quantitatem nomine redemptionis solvendam regem Anglorum terroribus et exemplis impelleret, cum re-

trudi præcepit in castello quod dicitur Trevelles, quod situm est in confinio Alemanniæ et Lothoringiæ; ubi inter alios montes quidam mons naturali arduitate præminet universis. In cujus cacumine prædictum castellum situm est, ad hoc ibi specialiter in loco munitissimo constitutum, ut illuc deportarentur et perpetuo traderentur carceri quicunque fuissent contra imperium de perduellione notati.[1]

A.D. 1193. Richard imprisoned at Trifels.

Hoc igitur non fortuito sed ultione divina provisum est et salubriter ordinatum, ut Ricardus rex ad pœnitentiam et satisfactionem congruam revocaretur, super excessu quo patrem suum carnalem Henricum regem decumbentem in lecto, tam auxilio quam consilio regis Francorum, apud urbem Cenomannicam obsidione vallavit, et licet eum ferro non mactaverit corporaliter, eum tamen crebris et sævis assultibus compulit inde recedere.

A punishment for his disobedience to his father.

Ricardus Dei gratia rex Anglorum dum teneretur in vinculis, et de consilio vacantis ecclesiæ Cantuariensis sanctam in animo gereret sollicitudinem, scripsit in hæc verba;—

Richard writes to the suffragans of Canterbury, on the election of an archbishop.

"Ricardus Dei gratia rex Anglorum karis et fidelibus suis
" Ricardo eadem gratia Lundoniensi episcopo, Cantuariensis
" ecclesiæ decano, et universis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffra-
" ganeis, salutem.

"Vestræ volumus libenter fraternitati consulere et Cantua-
" riensem ecclesiam, quæ vestrum omnium mater et caput

---

[1] *In castello . . . notati*] This is written in MS. A. over an erasure. MS. B. reads as follows, and here no doubt gives the original text, which the compiler may have effaced when he knew better:—"in loco qui Tri-
" vallis dicitur; a quo carcere nullus ante dies istos exivit, qui vinctus
" ibidem intravit; de quo dicit Aristoteles libro quinto, 'Bonum est
" 'mactare patrem in Trivallis.' De quo loco rursus metrice scriptum est,

"Sunt loca sunt gentes quibus est mactare parentes
"Vel mos vel pietas cum sera supervenit ætas."

The reference to Aristotle is to the passage about the Triballi, Topics, II. xi. 5, 6. The sequence of thought seems sufficient to prove that this is the earlier reading; the words "igitur" and "mactaverit" in the following sentence would also show it; and it is proved by the fact that MS. C. here has the reading of B.

A.D. 1193. " est, de persona idonea, Deo, nobis et vobis et toti regno " nostro accepta, quæ ad pacem et tranquillitatem sanctæ " ecclesiæ, et regni nostri aspiret, in quantum ad nos perti- " net ordinare."

The bishops assemble for the election, May 30.

Commonitoriis igitur hujuscemodi lectis in medium, ad vocationem domini Lundoniensis plures convenerunt episcopi; quidam suæ causam absentiæ satis probabilem, vel per litteras, vel per nuntios allegarunt. Convenerunt ad vocationem ejus plures locorum conventualium principales personæ. Dies Dominica præfinita fuit electioni, scilicet tertio kalendas Junii.

The queen and justiciar attend and contrive a compromise.

Mater itaque domini regis, Alienor regina, Walterus quoque Rothomagensis archiepiscopus capitalis Angliæ justiciarius, et alii regni magnates, ad regni pacem integre conservandam omnem studuerunt impendere sollicitudinem, quodam palliatæ pacis umbraculo suum velare propositum intendentes, ut sub quadam qualiquali concordia partium studia diversissima jungerentur, quorum semper fuerant corda disjuncta. De justiciariorum dispositione Gaufridus prior Cantuariensis et monachi, qui cum eo Lundoniam venerant, Cantuariam adierunt, ubi Thomas gloriosus prothomartyr Cantuariensium sanguine proprio tinctam sibi purpuram conquisivit. Et ut in terris grande sibi nomen facerent, die sabbati prædictam præcedentis Dominicam prævenerunt episcopos, Hubertum quondam decanum Eboracensem,[1] quem aliquo spiritu revelante prænoverant ab episcopis eligendum, suum nominantes electum.

On the 29th the monks elect Hubert Walter, anticipating the bishops.

The election confirmed.

Viri quidam, mediæ manus homines, in capitulo Cantuariæ præsidentes tanquam justiciarii, nominationi factæ præbuerunt assensum. Monachi prævenerunt

[1] Hubert Walter, bishop of Salisbury. Why our author, who clearly intends to be very sarcastic on the monks, omits the title of Hubert, and denominates him by the office which he had long ceased to hold, does not appear; unless he means to insinuate that the monks wished to avoid electing him under the same name under which the bishops were going to choose him.

episcopos, sabbatizantes non sabbato mentis sed tempo-
Levit. xxiii. 32. ris. De quo dicit Moyses filiis Israel, "Erit vobis ho- " die sabbatum requietionis, et affligetis animas vestras." De quodam alio longe dissimili sabbato loquitur alibi propheta dicens, "Dabit Dominus Deus sabbatum pro sabbato," scilicet pro pace temporali pacem æternam. Monachi cum exultatione magna recedentes a capitulo, magnam intraverunt ecclesiam, laudes debitas sicut sibi videbatur Domino decantantes, "Te Deum" scilicet " laudamus." Ab eorum mentibus excidisse non debuit, quod cum aliquis in abbatem electus est sua collocandus in sede, mediocri voce psalmus excurritur quinquagesimus, commissorum pristinam perpetrationem revocans ad memoriam, non alicujus gloriæ temporalis titillationem importans. Monachi prævenerunt episco-
Ps. xxi. 3. pos, sed non in benedictionibus dulcedinis; nec enim in tanto monachorum collegio repertus est aliquis, qui, post suorum expletionem votorum, populis ad propria reversuris in fine sollempnem de jure posset dare benedictionem. Hubertus a monachis Cantuariensibus prænominatus in sabbato renuntiet diabolo per pœnitentiam, ne sub ejus jugo retineatur. Die Dominica, die constituta, die sanctificata, Hubertus Saresbiriensis episcopus ad episcopis electus est in archiepiscopum. Electionem factam Lundoniensis episcopus in publico recitavit apud Westmonasterium, in sede regia, loco celebri, loco faciendis electionibus archiepiscoporum a multis temporibus consecrato. Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus capitalis Angliæ justiciarius dedit assensum, et auctoritate regia factam confirmavit electionem. Igitur Lundoniensis episcopus, juxta suorum dignitatem prædecessorum, et Deo laudes persolvendas exsolvit, et benedictionem omnibus qui convenerant gratanter exhibuit. Saresbiriensis episcopus electus ab episcopis in archiepiscopum, in præsenti judicium justum cunctis exhibeat, futurum judicium timeat semper, et misericordiam consequetur, ubi vix justus salvabitur, voce jocunditatis in fine glorifi-

A.D. 1193. The sabbath day's work of the monks contrasted with the Sunday's work of the bishops.

On the 30th of May the bishops at Westminster also elect Hubert, and the justiciar confirms the election.

Advice to the new archbishop.

A.D. 1193. catus, "Intra," scilicet, "in gaudium Domini tui," transeat in vitam æternam, ubi videbitur Deus deorum in Syon, ubi cum sanctis Deum laudet, videat et adoret. S. Matt. xxv. 21. Ps. lxxxiv. 7.

Great meeting of German princes, July 5, at Worms.

Totius Alemanniæ generalis conventus, magnates solummodo comprehendens, habitus est apud Warmaciam tertio idus Julii. Tractatum est ibi de redemptione regis Anglorum. Tandem sub audientia plurimorum propalatum est pretium appretiati, quem appreciavit Henricus imperator Romanus ab Austriæ duce Limpoldo, scilicet quinquaginta milia marcarum argenti. S. Matt. xxvii. 9.

Ransom demanded.

Sed ut imperator egregius fœnerator legittimarum usurarum summam, quæ per annum æquiparantur sorti per unum diem in duplum excederet, centum milia marcarum sibi suo tempore solvendarum extorsit a rege.

A hundred thousand pounds.

Summa redemptionis regis Anglorum est argenti centum milia librarum, ad pondus Coloniæ monetæ publice probatæ. Quæ pecunia certis temporibus et distinctis quinquaginta datis obsidibus persolvetur.

Great zeal shown in raising money for the king's ransom.

Cum de redemptione regis agendum sit, quam devotionem ei sui fideles exhibuerint proferamus in medium, incipientes a domo Dei. Majores quidem ecclesiæ thesauros ab antiquis congestos temporibus, ecclesiæ parochiales argenteos calices præmiserunt; archiepiscopos, episcopos, abbates, priores conventualium ecclesiarum, comites, barones, quartam partem annuorum reddituum; monachos Cistercienses, canonicos ordinis albi, totam lanam unius anni; clericos viventes de decimis, decimam partem de redditibus provenientem, statutum est assensu communi persolvere.

Astonishment of the Germans at the king's visitors.

Cessit Alemannis in admirationem non minimam quod tam crebri fiebant concursus episcoporum, abbatum, comitum et baronum, aliorum etiam mediæ manus hominum, quos de tam diversis, de tam remotis nationibus unius hominis jurisdictioni subjectis desiderium trahebat videndi regem, de reditu cujus in toto regno suo fere desperabatur a singulis. Et cum diversi diversa reportarent rescripta, scripsit in hæc verba;

"Ricardus rex Anglorum, Waltero Rothomagensi archiepi- A.D. 1193.
" scopo. Richard's letter to the archbishop of Rouen, saying how his writs are to be obeyed.

"Quotienscunque nuntios in Angliam ad vos destinamus, et
" illis litteras de fide eis adhibenda super hiis quæ vobis ex
" parte nostra proponent committimus, hac intentione hoc faci-
" mus, ut super hiis quæ ad commodum et honorem nostrum
" cedunt eis fides adhibeatur, super his autem quæ ad honorem
" aut utilitatem nostram non contingunt, eis fides nullatenus
" adhibeatur."

Hugo Cestrensis episcopus, vocatus a rege, sicut dicebat, cum magnis exenniis, quæ summo studio præparaverat, antequam Alemanniæ periculis se committeret, interceptus est in itinere. Nam prope Cantuariam de nocte quiescens comprehensus est, bonis omnibus spoliatus est. The bishop of Chester is robbed near Canterbury.

Mathæus de Clera municeps principalis castelli de Dovera præstitit auctoritatem prædonibus; sed excommunicatus nominatim tam ab archiepiscopo, quam ab episcopis omnibus, accensis candelis, an suum excessum congrua satisfactione relevaverit, ignoratur.[1] Excommunication of Matthew de Clere as abettor.

Philippus rex Francorum uxorem duxit sororem regis Danemarchiæ. Sed quia divortium inter ipsos sollempniter celebratum est ex insperato, plus hoc in ore populorum versatur, quam quod apud urbem Ambianensium in Assumptione Beatæ Virginis nuptiæ regales præcesserant. Marriage and divorce of Philip of France.

A rege disjuncta regina maluit Suessionis inter sanctimoniales degere quam lares paternos in Danemarchia visitare. The queen lives at Soissons.

Nunciis quos archiepiscopus ad dominum papam pro pallio suo petendo direxerat redeuntibus, affuit inter eos quidam, Episcopellus nomine, deferens pallium. The pall sent to Hubert.

Habitus est itaque generalis conventus episcoporum Cantuariæ, nonis Novembris, ad sollempnem archiepiscopi susceptionem et intronizationem. He is inthroned, Nov. 5.

Convenerunt et aliæ conventualium ecclesiarum personæ principales. Ordinatis igitur quæ fiunt in applausibus hujusce-

---

[1] *Hugo . . . ignoratur*] om. D.

A.D. 1193. Inthronization of archbishop Hubert.

modi,[1] dextravit archiepiscopum Lundoniensis episcopus, sinistravit Winthoniensis, et sic in sede sua sollempniter collocatus est, et receptus in osculum. Ordinata processione rursus itum est obviam Episcopello pallium deferenti. Qui veniens ante majus altare, triplici sacramento quod ab antiquis temporibus introductum est, adauctis quibusdam novis verborum formulis involvit archiepiscopum, quas opusculo præsenti superfluum duximus interserere.[2]

The archbishop of Rouen as justiciar.

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus dum per annos duos et anni tertii quartam partem administrasset regni negotia, specialis Angliæ justiciarius, non ambulavit in magnis, a munere manus excutiens, clamores æqua lance dijudicans. Qui[3] vocante rege transitum fecit in Alemanniam. Transitum etiam fecit et mater regis Alienor regina, sub ipso transitu suo Coloniæ celebrantes Epiphaniam. Ps. cxxxi. 2.

He goes to Germany.

A.D. 1194. Letter of the archbishop of Rouen to Ralph de Dicto.

MCXCIIII. "Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo
" Lundoniensi decano.

" Noverit dilectio vestra, quod postquam ad dominum nos-
" trum karissimum illustrem regem Anglorum accessimus
" nemini scripsimus in Anglia, nec aliqua usque ad crastinum
" Sancti Blasii audivimus quæ essent digna relatu et vobis
" scribere deberemus. Eo vero die misericors Dominus popu-
" lum Suum apud Maguntiam in liberatione domini regis
On the 4th of February the king's release was negotiated.
" visitavit. Nobis enim domino regi eadem die usque ad
" horam nonam assistentibus, Maguntinus et Coloniensis[4]
" archiepiscopi inter dominum imperatorem et dominum
" regem et ducem Austriæ, pro liberatione regia verba pro-
" ferentibus, post multas anxietates et labores, idem archi-
" episcopi qui studio maximo ad liberationem regiam operam

[1] MS. A. has this note in the margin, in original rubric, "Supra, " MCLXXVI°. cum tali signo ☽C." The reference is apparently to the use of the word *dextrare*, for the mark is found attached to the passage in the letter of Alexander III., above, vol. I. p. 421, line 17.

[2] *interserere*] Here MS. B. adds: " Moram fecit Episcopellus cum " archiepiscopo per aliquod tempus, " multos multis onerans verbis, nec " multis ad ultimum honoratus ex- " enniis." Om. C.

[3] *specialis . . . Qui*] om. B.

[4] Adolf of Altona, archbishop of Cologne, and Conrad of Wittelsbach, archbishop of Mentz.

" adhibuerant, coram domina regina, et nobis, et Bathoniensi, " et Elyensi, et Sanctonensi[1] episcopis, et multis aliis magna- " tibus, ad dominum regem accesserunt, ei breve verbum et " jocundum proferentes. Erat siquidem quod dominus impe- " rator ei significavit, quod eum in custodia sua diu tenuerat, " sed cum liberum dimittebat et absolutum ut sui ipsius de " cætero haberet potestatem,

" Liber et explicitus ad sua vota suus."

A.D. 1194. Liberation of Richard.

Circa dies istos Henricus, Henrici ducis Saxonici primogenitus, nepos Ricardi regis Anglorum, filiam unicam et hæredem Conradi palatini comitis duxit uxorem.[2]

Marriage of the king's nephew.

Pactiones initæ sunt plures inter imperatorem et regem, ad persolvendam non spectantes pecuniam, sed ad statum regis intervertendum: inter quas quicquid insertum est ab initio vitiosum, quicquid contra leges, contra canones, contra bonos mores indubitanter conceptum, licet ex parte regis et suorum fidelium ad hoc observandum fuerit jusjurandum adauctum, emissa licet patentia scripta, licet in mundum universitatis recepta, licet a partibus absoluta, quia tamen contra jus elicita, robur firmitatis optinere non debent in posterum, nec ullo tractu temporis convalescere.

Negotiations between the king and the emperor derogatory to the state of the former.

Wrongful and null.

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, et Willelmus cancellarius regis,[3] et alii quidam dati sunt in obsidatum pro decem milibus marcharum, quæ rex tenebatur ad præsens persolvere, quousque persolverentur. Et hoc se fideliter observaturos, nec egressuros ab Alemannia citra conscientiam imperatoris, præstita jurisjurandi religione, sollempniter confirmaverunt.

The archbishop of Rouen and the chancellor remain in Germany as hostages.

Tancredus rex Siciliæ, Rogerus etiam filius ejus sublimatus in regem, intra paucos dies rebus humanis

Death of Tancred.

---

[1] Savaric bishop of Bath, William Longchamp of Ely, and Henry bishop of Saintes.

[2] Henry, titular duke of Saxony, married Agnes the daughter of Conrad of Hohenstaufen, count palatine, whom he succeeded in his office in the year 1196.

[3] *Willelmus . . . . regis*] Baldewinus Wach, D.

A.D. 1194. His son William succeeds. Richard's visit to Cologne.

exempti sunt. Willelmus vero filius Tancredi, puer adhuc, regni diadema suscepit.[1]

Rex Anglorum, ad instantem Adulfi Coloniensis archiepiscopi petitionem, Coloniam veniens, in ipsius palatio cum honore summo receptus est, in sumptibus magnis, in epulis profusioribus ibidem moraturus per triduum. Die vero tertia procuravit archiepiscopus, ut rex in ecclesia beati Petri missam audiret. Archiepiscopus itaque, deposita majestate sua, præcentoris assumens officium, et stans in choro cum cantoribus cæteris, illam sollempnem missam sollempniter inchoavit:—"Nunc scio vere quia misit Dominus angelum "Suum, et eripuit me de manu Herodis."[2]

Compliment by the archbishop.

Acts xii. 11.

Richard lands at Sandwich, Mar. 20; and is received at London, Mar. 23.

Rex prospero[3] cursu tendens in Angliam applicuit apud Sandwicum die Dominica, scilicet xiii^to^ kalendas Aprilis. Feria iiii^ta^ coronata civitate, cum exultatione magna tam cleri quam populi, sollempni processione receptus est in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Lundoniæ. Tendens inde versus Notingeham, postquam venit, infra triduum, obsessos omnes rejectis armis misericordiam expetentes in deditionem recepit. Pascha celebravit apud Norhamtonam. In octavis Paschæ regni diadema suscepit de manibus Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi Wintoniæ; Willelmus rex Scotiæ præsens fuit. Die festo Sanctorum Nerei et Achillei,[4] navem ascendit apud Portesmues. In Normannia quiescens, apud Bruis, mane surgens, obvium habuit fratrem suum Johannem, qui procidens ad pedes ejus misericordiam petiit et invenit. Tendens versus Vernolium, regem Francorum audivit castellum obsidione vallasse, nec in petrariis erigendis, nec in magnis lapidibus comportandis, nec in machinis subvehendis, nec in murorum subfossionibus

He takes Nottingham; is crowned at Winchester, and on the 12th of May embarks for Normandy.

He relieves Verneuil.

---

[1] See Richard of S. German, ed. Pertz, p. 14.

[2] See the story given by Hoveden, vol. iii. p. 235.

[3] *prospero*] proprio, D.

[4] *Sanctorum Nerei et Achillei*] Altered to Sancti Pancratii, in D.: the 12th of May is dedicated to the three saints conjointly.

excavandis, nec in obsessorum corporibus affligendis per dies octo cessasse. Tunc temporis instabat dies ille magnus, celebris ille dies, majestati dies altissimæ dedicatus, dies optabilis toti mundo, dies inquam Pentecostes, populo Christiano per orbem terrarum venerandus ubique. Quo tempore Franci quondam cathedralium visitationibus ecclesiarum obnoxii loca sancta contendebant adire. Sacerdotes ordinis secundi, cum ymnis et laudibus, cum vexillis et crucibus suas præcedebant plebeculas; choreæ virginum, juvenum evagationes, civium et plebeiorum oculos demulcebant: sed quia

A.D. 1194 Flight of the French from Verneuil on Whitsuneve; May 29.

Claudian, de quarto consulatu Honorii, v. 302.

Mobile mutatur semper cum principe vulgus,

nunc villarum depopulationibus, nunc deprædationibus armentorum, nunc incendiis, nunc cædibus, nunc homicidiis invigilare curabant. Et ne laborantes die sancto Pentecostes reportasse victoriam futuris temporibus memorialem, et suis annalibus inserendam computarentur, audierunt sub ipso noctis crepusculo quod rex Anglorum accinctus esset ad pugnam, et in crastinum superventurus. Quo rumore perterriti potius elegerunt fugere, quam pugnare; cum suo dampno semper, cum suo semper obprobrio, recedentes a castris.

Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, marcarum decem milibus persolutis, ab Alemannia rediens, Ascensionis Dominicæ die sollempni, sollempni processione receptus est in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Lundoniæ, sermonem habens ad populum. Expletis Missarum sollempniis, in domo domini Lundoniensis cum lautarum affluentiis epularum receptus est honorifice. Secunda feria Pentecostes navem ascendit, transiturus in Normanniam iii^tio^ kalendas Junii.[1]

The archbishop of Rouen comes to London, May 19;

and goes to Normandy, May 30.

Canonici Saresberienses, decanum[2] non habentes ad præsens, a rege prius impetrata licentia, fratrem suum

[1] *Junii*] Julii, D.

[2] *decanum*] episcopum, D.

A.D. 1194. Herbert archdeacon of Canterbury chosen bishop of Salisbury.

et concanonicum Herebertum Cantuariensem[1] archidiaconum, assensu communi sollempniter in episcopum elegerunt. Electionem factam in publico recitavit Walterus præcentor: electioni factæ præbuit rex assensum, quam et Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus auctoritate propria confirmavit apud Saresberiam iii^tio kalendas Maii. Sabbato Pentecostes prædictus electus presbiter ordinatus est. Sequenti Dominica consecratus est episcopus ab Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Westmonasterium, in capella Sanctæ Katerinæ, nonis Junii. Pridie idus Junii sollempni processione receptus est apud Saresberiam, et sua sollempniter collocatus in sede per archiepiscopum.

Consecrated June 5; inthroned June 12.

Philip I besieges Fontaines near Rouen.

Rex Francorum sub qualiquali festinatione recedens Vernolio, ne nil videretur egisse, municipiolum quoddam situm prope Rothomagum, quod ex fonticulis ebullientibus appellatum est Fontes, obsidione vallavit. Obsessi sunt intus milites quatuor, servientes xx^ti, nichil minus arbitrantes, quam tantum principem ad tam exilem locum cum exercitu toto divertere. Recolere poterant, si litteras nossent, illud a Lucano poeta metrice scriptum:

"Dignum te Cæsaris ira
" Nullus honor faciet."

Luc. Phars. iii. 136.

Destroys the castle and retires.

Præmissis igitur assultibus ardentissimis, rex quarto die portas irrupit, evertit castellulum, cuncta diripuit. Inde reveritus vires Rothomagensium, ne forte Vernolensium animis accenderentur et factis, intra fines suos cum aliqua saltem victoriola sese recepit.

The Angevins destroy Montmirail.

Circa dies istos Andegavenses castellum Gwillelmi Gohet,[2] fundatum prope Feritatem Bernardi, quod vo-

---

[1] Herbert, surnamed le Poor, son of Richard of Ilchester, bishop of Winchester. He was bishop of Salisbury, 1194–1217.

[2] William of Perche Gouet, Goeth, or le petit Perche.

catur Mons Mirabilis, obsederunt, ceperunt, et funditus diruerunt. A.D. 1194.

Postquam rex Francorum recessit Vernolio, rex Anglorum veniens Thuronis a castelli novi burgensibus, ubi requiescit beatus Martinus, duo milia marcarum exeniorum nomine suscepit, nulla coactione præmissa. Tendens inde versus Bellum Locum, qui situs est intra fines Thuroniæ, castellum de Luches, quod rex Francorum obsidatus nomine receperat in potestatem a bailivis regis Anglorum dum teneretur in vinculis, ne conventionem quam cum eo fecerant transgrederentur, et quindecim militibus, et quater viginti servientibus cum alimoniæ sufficientia custodiendum commiserat, rex Anglorum obsedit, et intra paucos dies viriliter expugnavit. Richard receives 2000 marks at Tours. He takes Loches.

Circa dies istos filius regis Navaræ[1] veniens in auxilium Anglorum regi, copiosum congregavit exercitum, et centum quinquaginta balistarios habens, terram Gaufridi de Rancuna, terram comitis Engolismensis, penitus devastavit. The son of the king of Navarre ravages Angoumois.

Rex Francorum, fines intrans Turoniæ, prope Vindocinum fixit tentoria. Quo cum regem Anglorum cognosceret supervenisse, summo mane tentoriis avulsis cum festinatione Fractam Vallem repetiit. Rex autem Anglorum eum subsecutus est, et quadrigas ipsius, comitum, et baronum, et magnatum sub eo militantium, impedimenta tota sub captione conclusit. Aurum et argentum in scriniis et in aliis locis repositum, tentoria quoque, balistas et innumeras res, æstimatio quarum in immensum excrescit, sine dampno suo cepit et secum reduxit. Philip enters Touraine, but retires before Richard, and loses his baggage.

---

[1] Sancho the Strong, son of Sancho VI., succeeded his father in 1194.

A.D. 1194. Thirty-seven days after the flight from Verneuil Philip enters Châteaudun.

A festo Pentecostes quo rex Francorum Philippus a Vernolio nocte recedens fuga sibi consuluit, elapsi sunt dies xxxvii. ad illum usque diem quo quiescens prope Vindocinum, exterritus summo mane, cum gravi jactura suorum castellum Duni tremefactus irrupit.

GALFRIDUS.

Gallia fugisti bis et hoc sub rege Philippo,
Nec sunt sub modio facta pudenda duo.
Vernolium sumit testem fuga prima, secunda
Windocinum ; noctem prima, secunda diem.
Nocte fugam primam rapuisti, mane secundam ;
Prima metus vitio, vique secunda fuit.[1]

The emperor writes to Richard about Otho.

" Henricus Romanus imperator Ricardo regi Anglorum.
" Dilectionem tuam scire volumus quod fideles tui Walterus
" Rothomagensis archiepiscopus, et Bathoniensis episcopus, et
" Robertus de Turneham multa supplicatione nobis institerunt,
" quatinus Ottonem nepotem tuum nobiscum equitare permit-
" teremus. Sed quoniam pater ejus dux Saxonum nobis sus-
" pectus est, cujus malitiam veremur, petitiones eorum admit-
" tere noluimus. Sed tui ducti favore hæc eis indulsimus,
" quod idem Otto de die tres servientes habiturus est, qui ei
" serviant et assistant."

Isaac Angelus blinded and imprisoned.

Circa dies istos Allexius quidam,[2] naturalis filius, sicut dicebatur, Manuelis quondam imperatoris Constantinopolitani, Græcus genere, Græcorum innumerabili multitudine congregata, transiit in Bulgariam, et hostiliter aggressus Constantinopolim, Cursac imperatorem captum, excæcatum, ementulatum carcere dampnavit perpetuo, sedem occupans imperialem.[3]

Richard goes to Poictou.

[4] Rex Anglorum potitus victoria transivit in Pictaviam, et intra paucos dies Taileburg, et totam terram Gau-

---

[1] This poem, to be ascribed no doubt to Geoffrey de Vinsauf, is given in the margin of MSS. A. and B. in a hand coeval with the text.

[2] Alexius Angelus Comnenus, who succeeded in 1195, was brother of Isaac Angelus, whom he supplanted.

[3] *Circa . . imperialem*] Inserted in the margin in B. ; om. D.

[4] " Ricardus rex Anglorum eum a
" nativitate sua complesset annum
" vicesimum secundum a patre suo
" matre consentiente creatus est dux
" Aquitanorum. Galfridus itaque
" de Rancuna multis eum lacessivit

fridi de Rancuna, totam quoque terram comitis Engolismensium sua sub potestate recepit, ut a castello Vernolii quousque veniatur ad crucem Karoli nullus ei rebellis existat. A.D. 1194. And overruns Angoumois.

" Celestinus papa Veronensi episcopo.[1] The pope orders the duke of Austria to release the English hostages.

" Volumus et per apostolica scripta mandamus atque præ-
" cipimus, quatinus a duce Austriæ juramentum recipias, cum
" alia cautione quam expedire noveris, quod mandatis nostris
" quæ sibi per te, vel litteras, aut nuntium, vel nuntios nos-
" tros fecerimus, per omnia sine fraude parebit. Quo recepto,
" in ejus virtute sibi præcipias, ut obsides regis Anglorum
" universos absolvat, conditiones omnes quas exegit ab ipso
" relaxet, et ablata sibi per eum et suos, et quæ de ipsius
" regis iniqua redemptione percepit, sibi per universa resti-
" tuens, eosdem obsides faciat cum securitate ad propria re-
" meare, et ut amodo talia non attemptet. Nichilominus
" etiam de injuria et dampnis congrue satisfaciat irrogatis.
" His demum rite completis et peractis, ei et suis absolutionis
" munus impendas, et interdictum cui erat ipsius terra sub-
" jecta relaxes. Illud etiam eidem duci et suis nichilominus
" præstita sibi absolutione sub debito prædicti juramenti præ-
" cipias, quod quam citius poterunt ad partes Jerosolimitanas
" accedant, et tanto tempore moram in servitio Christi faciant,
" quanto præfatus rex in captione dinoscitur extitisse. Quod
" si non observaverint, ipsum et suos in eandem excommu-
" nicationis sententiam appellatione remota reducas. Data Dated June 6, 1194.
" Romæ, apud Sanctum Petrum, viii^ro idus Junii, pontificatus
" nostri anno quarto."

Rex[2] Anglorum edicto generali convocavit magnates omnes suæ jurisdictioni subpositos Cenomannis, ubi fidem Anglorum in adversitate sua semper sibi gratiosam, integram et probabilem plurimum commendavit. Richard assembles his lords at Le Mans.

" injuriis. Sed Ricardus collectis
" viribus Tailleburg obsidione valla-
" vit, et faciem universam murorum
" intra dies complanavit paucissi-
" mos. Annus ab Incarnatione
" Domini MCLXXIX^us tunc temporis
" effluebat," ins. B., probably to fill up the lacuna caused by the omission of the last paragraph, which may have been struck out-when the writer discovered that he had made a mistake about the parentage of Alexius.

[1] Adelard, bishop of Verona, 1188–1211, cardinal priest of the title of S. Marcellus, 1185. This letter is printed in the Fœdera, i. p. 64, from Twysden's text.

[2] *Rex*] Ricardus rex, D.

A.D. 1194. Truce between Richard and Philip.

Treugæ datæ sunt inter reges Francorum et Anglorum; sed commeatui negotiatorum interdictum est hinc et inde. Revixit his diebus regis Pharaonis memoria, qui populis undique confluentibus et Egyptum intrare desiderantibus venale frumentum exposuit, ne manus avara supprimeret quod commerciis hominum, cum tempus exigit, est communicandum.

The archbishop of Lyons, John aux Belles Mains, resigns.

Johannes,[1] thesaurarius Eboracensis, electus in episcopum Pictavensem, ab Alexandro papa iiitio consecratus est episcopus in abbatia Dolensi, quæ fundamentum habet in diocesi Bituricensi, die scilicet festo Sanctæ Teclæ virginis. Sedit autem Pictavensis episcopus annis viginti, tresdecim septimanis et uno die. Translatus ad Lugdunensem ecclesiam, ibi sedit archiepiscopus per decem annos et viginti novem septimanis. Cui successit in archiepiscopatu Reginaldus filius Gigonis comitis Forensis. Johannes autem archiepiscopus in Angliam veniens Sancto Thomæ martyri vota persolvit orationum apud Cantuariam in nativitate Beatæ Mariæ.

He visits Canterbury, Sept. 8.

Richard uses tournaments for the benefit of the exchequer.

Circa dies istos statuit rex Anglorum, certis quibusdam interpositis conditionibus ad commodum fisci pertinentibus, ut milites passim per Angliam in locis congruis undique concurrentes, vires suas flexis in gyrum frænis experiantur; ea consideratione fortassis inductus, ut si bellum adversus Agarenos, vel adversus finitimos movere decreverit, si vel gentes exteræ regnum hostiliter præsumpserint infestare, vegetatiores, agitatiores, exercitatiores reddantur ad prælium. Dum itaque dispositio militaris certa die certo loco tirocinio deditos evocat ad giramen, Anglos militaribus armis instructos, in gladiis exerendis, in ictibus cumulandis, in verberibus aggravandis, in vulneribus infligendis,

[1] John of Poictiers, consecrated Sept. 23, 1162, at Dol; translated to Lyons in 1181; he resigned in 1193, and was succeeded by Reginald of Forez, who ruled from 1193 to 1226.

noveris exercitatos. Sed eosdem levium vibratio lancearum non tam agiles reddit ad dimicandum, quam luxus epularum effusior sumptuosos divulgat, et in luminaribus procurandis et accendendis prædicat officiosos. Juventus igitur, cupida laudis sed non pecuniæ, subjugatos armis nequaquam atterit carcerali custodia, vel ad redemptionem immoderatam exquisitis tormentis impellit, sed captos jure belli sola fidei sponsione devinctos abire permittit, redituros cum fuerint requisiti.[1] A.D. 1194. Reflexions on the custom of tournaments.

A rege Francorum Philippo directi sunt nuncii iiii^{or} ad Anglorum regem Ricardum, verbis utentes pacificis, de regnorum commoditatibus tractaturi cum rege, ne populos utriusque regis potestati subjectos, quorum hauriendo tam argentum quam aurum loculos vacuaverant, bellicis cladibus, et sanguinis effusione prorsus attererent. Domino siquidem suo beneplacitum esse constanter asseverabant, ut ambigua fata totius controversiæ quæ vertitur inter ipsos sub certamine singulari fortium quinque virorum hinc et inde dirimerentur, populis utriusque regni confidentibus[2] et expectantibus eventum rei, judicium declararet gladiatorium quid super jure regis utriusque Regis Æterni sederet in animo. Consultatio simul et conditio placuit Anglorum regi quamplurimum, dummodo rex Francorum quintus inter suos, rex Anglorum itidem inter suos quintus, paritate servata corporum et armorum æqua lance confligerent. Philip proposes that the disputes between him and Richard should be settled by a combat of five on each side.

Circa dies istos piscis quidam, vocatus vulgo crassus piscis, vi ventorum et inpulsu maris appulsus est apud Eadulfesnase,[3] villam scilicet canonicorum Sancti Pauli Lundoniæ. Cumque quæstio moveretur, utrum ad regem an ad canonicos piscis spectare deberet, inspectis a capitali justiciario regni Lundoniensis ecclesiæ privilegiis, sententiatum est piscem non ad regem A whale cast ashore at the Naze.

---

[1] *Circa . . . requisiti*] om. D.

[2] *confidentibus*] considentibus, C.

[3] *Eadulfesnase*] Cadulnesuase, Twysden. The Naze, on the coast of Essex.

A.D. 1194. sed tam ad decanum quam ad capitulum spectare debere.[1]

Agreement between the archbishop and citizens of Rouen.

" Ricardus rex Angliæ omnibus fidelibus suis salutem.
" Noverit universitas vestra compositionem factam inter
" dominum Walterum Rothomagensem archiepiscopum et ca-
" nonicos ejusdem ecclesiæ, et cives Rothomagenses, in hunc
" modum, quod murus et scoppæ atrii ecclesiæ infra proxi-
" mum Natalis Domini diem per eosdem cives reficiantur, per
" visum senescalli Normanniæ et bailivorum nostrorum in eo
" statu in quo erant quando diruti fuerunt. Hæc acta sunt
" apud Argentomum vigilia Sancti Martyni."

Richard restores the estates of the clergy of Tours, Nov. 11.

Ricardus rex Angliæ decano et canonicis Thuroniæ, et cæteris clericis omnibus, tam religiosis scilicet quam aliis, universos redditus eorum quos confiscaverat in manu domini legati benigne reddidit. Hæc acta sunt apud Alenconam die festo Sancti Martini.

Letter of the archbishop of Rouen to the author.

" Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo de Diceto
" decano Lundoniæ salutem.
" Impetrata per dominum legatum et nos restitutione red-
" dituum ecclesiasticarum personarum de terra domini regis
" Francorum quam rex Anglorum confiscaverat, dominus lega-
" tus et nos ad regem Francorum duximus laborandum, ut pre-
" cibus et exhortationibus nostris nobis redditus nostros et cæte-
" ris ecclesiasticis personis de terra domini regis Anglorum suos
" redditus quos ceperat restitueret. Hæc acta sunt Senonis."

The king of France is reconciled with the archbishop.

" Philippus rex Francorum bailivis suis salutem.
" Sciatis quod dilectum nostrum Walterum venerabilem
" Rothomagensem archiepiscopum in gratiam et amorem nos-
" trum recepimus. Inde est quod vobis mandamus et præ-
" cipimus, quatinus visis præsentibus litteris deliberetis in
" vestra potestate universas res dicti archiepiscopi et cano-
" nicorum Rothomagensium, et monachorum, et monalium,
" presbiterorum, et clericorum Normannorum, et in pace de
" cætero habere permittatis. Et si aliquis amodo eis aut
" rebus suis molestiam sive dampnum intulerit, quamtocius
" faciatis emendari. Præcipiatis etiam militibus quos idem
" archiepiscopus vobis nominabit, ut erga eundem archiepi-
" scopum faciant sicuti solent et debent."

Letters of restitution.

In eadem forma scripsit omnibus bailivis suis et baronibus in quorum potestate redditus nostri et ecclesiasticarum personarum Normanniæ erant.[2]

[1] *Circa . . . debere*] om. C. | [2] *Walterus . . . erant*] om. C.

Rogerus de genere Normannorum primus in Sicilia regio diademate sublimatus suo sculptum in sigillo monosticum illud jactabat, A.D. 1194. Descent of the kingdom of Sicily to Henry VI. and Constantia.

"Apulus et Calaber, Siculus michi servit et Affer."

Qui cum ageret in extremis, reliquit filium et filiam Willelmum et Constantiam; annus millenus centesimus quinquagesimus quartus tunc temporis effluebat. Henricus rex Theutonicus eandem Constantiam duxit uxorem, anno tam millesimo tam centesimo quam octogesimo sexto fluente. Henricus postmodum imperator creatus secum ducens imperatricem Constantiam, deficientibus aliis hæredibus, omnium ad regnum Siciliæ pertinentium hæredem legittimam, duplicem congregavit exercitum, hinc equestrem et pedestrem per viarum angustias laboriosissime gradientem, illinc remigantium multitudinem copiosissimam in armis bellicis plurimum confidentem. Sicque Januensium et Pisanorum tam auxilio quam consilio roboratus, Bonefacium[1] marchionem de Monte Ferrato totius navigii sui quod excreverat in immensum signiferum ordinavit. Bonefacius itaque dum æquora sulcaret intrepidus et Salernitanos[2] pro viribus paratos resistere cognovisset, irruit super eos, et non modica strage peracta victoriam reportavit, urbem succendit, prædavit, ecclesiis non pepercit, ecclesiam Sancti Mathæi violenter intravit, asportavit thesaurum, sine delectu cives in ore gladii trucidavit, quosdam truncavit capite, quosdam suspendit patibulo, mulieres omnes indifferenter prostituit. Civitate vastata, transiit in Siciliam; civitates omnes in deditionem accepit. Willelmus Tancredi regis filius, in ætate puerili sublimatus in regem, cum matre sua præsidium adiit, sicut fertur, tutissimum, castrum scilicet Sancti Johannis. Imperator Henricus iter dirigens ad urbem Pannormitanam, in sede metropolitana sollempni pro-

Boniface of Montferrat burns Salerno.

The young king of Sicily flies.

[1] Boniface marquess of Montferrat, 1192–1207.

[2] *Salernitanos*] Salertitanos, A.

A.D. 1194. Coronation of Henry.

cessione receptus x° kalendas Decembris[1] regium diadema suscepit.

The duke of Austria thrown from his horse, Dec. 26.

MCXCV. Die festo Sancti Stephani prothomartyris, dum apud Gratiam dux Austriæ Limpoldus[2] dies Natalicios celebraret, et juxta consuetudinem regionis sui corporis agilitatem inter suos ostenderet commilitones de plano militaribus armis accinctus, flexis in girum frænis, equo cecidit, et pedis attritione subita sauciatus ad necem, urgentissima tandem necessitate compulsus, consilio medicorum pede truncatus est, ut qui regis Anglorum Ricardi Jerosolima redeuntis, et crucis adhuc mortificationem in suo corpore gestantis, et animum habentis ad Terram Sanctam redire, pedes constrinxerat, nec licentiam abeundi quo vellet habere permitteret, in ultionem tanti facinoris pede proprio mulctaretur juxta sententiam Petri Ravennatis,[3] qui de filio prodigo scribens inter cætera dixit, "Luxuriæ, ventri, gulæ "famis tortor apponitur, ut ultrix ibi pœna sæviat "ubi pœnalis reatus exarserat."[4]

His foot amputated.

A judgment upon him.

[1] *Decembris*] Novembris, Twysden. According to Böhmer, Regesta, p. 151, the day of the coronation is uncertain, the historians giving different dates; but it must have been later than November 1; in which case the text has probably the true reading.

[2] *Limpoldus*] Leopold V., 1177–1194.

[3] Peter of Ravenna, commonly known as Peter Chrysologus, archbishop of Ravenna, 433–449. The words here quoted occur in his first sermon, "de duobus filiis;" Opera, ed. Mita, Venice, 1742, p. 2.

[4] *exarserat*] Here MS. C. inserts the following paragraph; "Hoc anno "Guarinus abbas, cum præfuisset ecclesiæ beati Albani annis undecim et "octo mensibus octoque diebus, obiit plenus dierum iii^tio kalendas Maii: "sepultusque est a Gilleberto Rofensi episcopo die apostolorum Philippi "et Jacobi. Cui successit Johannes abbas xx^mus j^mus, ejusdem monasterii "monachus, in capitulo Sancti Albani, nullo contradicente, electus in præ-"sentia Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, apostolicæ sedis legati et "totius Angliæ justitiarii, necnon in præsentia multorum tam procerum "quam abbatum et clericorum, ipso justitiario assensum regis Ricardi "præbente, xiii° kalendas Augusti. Quem electum Ricardus Lundonien-"sis episcopus sollempniter et pontificaliter benedixit in ecclesia beati "Albani ad majus altare in præsentia totius conventus, et pontificalibus "ornamentis indutum in sua sede sollempniter collocavit iii^tio kalendas "Augusti."

A.D. 1195. Jan. 20. The emperor announces to the archbishop of Rouen the conquest of Sicily and the birth of his son, Dec. 26, 1194.

"Henricus Dei gratia Romanorum imperator et semper
" Augustus, et rex Siciliæ, dilecto amico suo Waltero, Rotho-
" magensi archiepiscopo, salutem et dilectionem.
" Scientes honestatem tuam de nostræ magnificentiæ felici-
" bus successibus plurimum gratulari, significamus discretioni
" tuæ quod nos per Dei gratiam totum regnum Siciliæ et
" Apuliæ in pace possidemus. Cum autem quosdam magnates
" regni, qui nobis satis contrarii primo exstiterunt, gratiam
" nostram recuperassent, ipsi postmodum nefandam proditio-
" nem contra personam nostram machinati sunt. Sed quia
" nichil opertum quod non revelctur, gratia Dei proditio illa
" fuit detecta, et quorundam proditorum proditione manifes-
" tata, unde omnes eos pariter jussimus captivari, et in vin-
" culis detineri. Ad cujus nostræ prosperitatis augmentum
" divina operante clementia, dilecta consors nostra Constantia,
" illustris Romanorum imperatrix Augusta, in die beati Ste-
" phani prothomartyris peperit nobis filium.[1] Tu itaque nostræ
" jocunditati congaudendo de tuo et terræ statu nos certifices.
" Datum apud Sanctum Marcum xiii° kalendas Februarii."

Archbishop Hubert is made legate.

Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus plenitudinem potestatis in officio legationis inauditam a sæculis communi favore cardinalium universorum assecutus est, sicut docent sequentia;

Mar. 18.

" Celestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabili fratri
" Huberto, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, apostolicæ sedis legato,
" salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.[2]

Letter of the pope conferring the legation.

" Sinceritas devotionis et fidei consuetæ, quam Anglicana
" semper ecclesia circa sacrosanctam Romanam ecclesiam con-
" secravit, in tua, sicut bene confidimus, prudentia et virtute
" refloruit, et placiti fervoris accepit acceptabile incrementum.
" Talis enim ad Romanam ecclesiam tuæ fraternitatis ema-
" navit opinio, quæ et tuæ honestatis odore nos recreet, et
" constantiæ quam habes vigore confortet, ita ut confidentiam
" quam de tua probitate concepimus in nostro jam apertius
" opere declaremus. Supplicante itaque karissimo in Christo
" filio nostro Ricardo illustri rege Anglorum et universis
" suffraganeis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, ut Anglicana ecclesia
" legatum apostolicæ sedis pro suis et regni profectibus opti-
" neret, tum pro devotione quam ad Cantuariensem ecclesiam
" pro meritis illius gloriosi martyris habèremus, tum etiam

[1] *filium*] Afterwards Frederick II.
[2] The following letter is given by Hoveden, iii. 290, 291; and in the Epistolæ Cantuarienses, p. 368.

A.D. 1195. Mar. 18.

" tuæ probitatis et honestatis intuitu, eorum precibus assensum præstitimus et favorem. Maxime quia multum credimus ecclesiæ et regni utilitatibus expedire, si talem in ministerio supradicto regio illa recipiat, qualem prædicti regis et episcoporum instantia de conversionis merito et fidei devotione commendat. Ideoque ad honorem Dei, et ecclesiæ Cantuariensis salutem et pacem, per totum regnum Angliæ, non obstante exceptione vel privilegio venerabili fratri nostro Eboracensi archiepiscopo, vel alii facto, officium tibi legationis concedimus, per apostolica tibi scripta mandantes quatinus illam cum fraternæ obedientiæ humilitate suscipias, et secundum datam tibi cœlitus facultatem, ad emendandum ea quæ necesse est emendari, et statuenda ea quæ fuerint statuenda, debitæ diligentiæ manum auctoritate ipsius legationis apponas; ita nimirum in omnibus reverentiam matris tuæ Romanæ ecclesiæ prompta devotione custodiens, ut pro defectu ministerii quod tibi læta committit tuis etiam facias operibus lætiorem. Datum Laterani, xv^to^ kalendas Aprilis, pontificatus nostri anno quarto."

Letter of the pope to the clergy of York announcing the legation of Hubert.

" Celestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus fratribus Eboracensi archiepiscopo, et universis episcopis, et dilectis filiis, abbatibus, prioribus, et aliis ecclesiarum prælatis per regnum Angliæ constitutis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.[1]

" Divinæ sapientiæ inscrutabilis altitudo, quæ sacrosanctam Romanam ecclesiam in hujus mundi latitudine stabilivit, ita regimen et gubernationem ipsius immutabili provisione disposuit, ut ad eam salubriter gubernandam plurimos assumeret in partem sollicitudinis, quamvis pro unitatis ecclesiasticæ firmamento unus acciperet plenitudinem potestatis. Voluit enim ut secundum quod eam alloquitur in propheta, pro patribus ejus filii nascerentur qui super omnem terram Ps. xlv. 17. principes constituti virtutum meritis, et verbo doctrinæ rudes ad fidem, provectos ad justitiam erudiret. Unde sacrosancta ecclesia Romana, cui super cæteras concidit ecclesiæ magisterium, pium ad alias habens materna provisione respectum, providit ab initio et laudabili hactenus consuetudine custodivit, ut de diversis mundi partibus ad earum ministerium adimplendum viros prudentes ascisceret, quorum auctoritas et doctrina sub Romani pontificis mode-

[1] The following letter is given by Hoveden, iii. 292, 293, with an additional clause, and dated as the preceding: also in Epp. Cantuar., p. 369.

" ramine constituta, quod ipse non poterat, procul distantibus A.D. 1195.
" ecclesiis ministraret. Unde nos qui, licet insufficientibus
" meritis, in sublimi sumus ejusdem specula constituti, patrum
" nostrorum vestigiis inhærentes, ita intendimus cum Dei
" adjutorio injunctum nobis ministerium circa proximas eccle-
" sias agere, ut his a quibus etiam positione distamus opor-
" tuna debeat providentia non deesse. Spiritualiter autem ad
" præsens Anglicanam ecclesiam paternæ considerationis acie
" intuentes, ad salutem ipsius et spirituales in Christo pro-
" fectus, communi consilio fratrum nostrorum decrevimus, ut
" venerabilis frater noster Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepi-
" scopus, de cujus meritis et virtute, sapientia pariter et doc-
" trina, ecclesia universalis congaudet, ministerio legationis
" accepto vices nostras ad honorem ecclesiæ, totius regni
" salutem et pacem, per totum regnum Angliæ, non obstante
" exemptione vel privilegio tibi, aut ecclesiæ tuæ, frater archi-
" episcope, vel alii facto, libere exequatur. Præsentium itaque
" auctoritate universitati vestræ per apostolica scripta præci-
" pientes mandamus, quatinus eidem tanquam apostolicæ sedis
" legato reverentiam impendatis debitam et honorem."

" Willelmus Eliensis episcopus, Radulfo decano Lundoniæ. The bishop of Ely transmits to our author the letter from the chief of the Assassins declaring Richard guiltless of the murder of Conrad of Montferrat.
" Mittimus ad vos litteras quas Vetus de Monte misit duci
" Austriæ de morte marchisii in hæc verba;

" Limpoldo duci Austriæ Vetus de Monte salutem.[1]

" Cum plurimi reges et principes ultra mare Ricardum
" regem Angliæ et dominum, de morte marchisii inculpant,
" juro per Deum qui in æternum regnat, et per legem quam
" tenemus, quod in ejus mortem nullam culpam habuit. Est
" siquidem causa mortis marchisii talis: unus ex fratribus
" nostris in unam navim de Salteleia[2] ad partes nostras ve-
" niebat, et tempus illum forte apud Tyrum impulsit, et
" marchisius fecit illum capere et occidere, et magnam ejus
" pecuniam rapuit. Nos vero marchisio nostros nuntios man-
" davimus. Mandavimus quod pecuniam fratris nostri nobis
" redderet, et de morte fratris nostri nobiscum se concordaret,
" et noluit, necnon et nuntios nostros sprevit, et mortem
" fratris nostri super Reinaldum dominum Sydonis posuit; et
" nos tantum fecimus per amicos nostros, ut in veritate scivi-
" mus quod ipse fecit illum occidere, et pecuniam rapere. Et

[1] The letter of the sheikh of the Assassins declaring Richard innocent of the murder of Conrad of Montferrat, is given also by William of Newburgh, lib. v. c. 26; by Matthew Paris, by Trivet, and in the last chapter of the Itinerarium Regis Ricardi, p. 384.

[2] *Salteleia*] Satalia.

A.D. 1195. True account of the murder of Conrad.

" iterum alium nuntium nostrum nomine Edrisum ad eum
" misimus, quem in mari mergere voluit; sed amici nostri
" illum a Tyro festinanter recedere fecerunt, qui ad nos cito
" pervenit et ista nobis nuntiavit. Nos quoque ex hora illa
" marchisium occidere desideravimus, tuncque duos fratres ad
" Tyrum misimus, qui eum aperte et fere coram omni populo
" Tyri occiderunt. Hæc autem fuit causa mortis marchisii;
" et bene dicimus vobis in veritate, quod dominus Ricardus
" rex Angliæ in hac morte marchisii nullam culpam habuit;
" et qui propter hoc domino regi Angliæ malum fecerunt,
" injuste et sine causa fecerunt. Sciatis pro certo quod nos
" nullum hominem hujus mundi pro mercede aliqua, vel pro
" pecunia occidimus, nisi nobis malum prius fecerit. Et
" sciatis quod litteras istas fecimus in domo nostra ad castel-
" lum nostrum Messiac in dimidio Septembris coram fratribus
" nostris, et sigillo nostro eas sigillavimus anno ab Alexandro
" M^mo et D.I.V^to.

"Nos vero harum transcriptum litterarum vobis de cujus
" dilectione plenum habemus experimentum duximus destinan-
" dum, ut de illo agatis in cronicis vestris."

"Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ, Ricardo eadem gratia
" Lundoniensi episcopo, salutem.

Letter of the king to the bishop of London.

"Licet a plerisque magnatibus et familiaribus nostris sua-
" deretur, ne curam et administrationem regni nostri ei penes
" quem summa spiritualis gladii et potestas in regno nostro
" consistebat crederemus, venerabili tamen patri nostro Hu-
" berto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, plerisque in contrarium
" adnitentibus, regni nostri et custodiam fiducialiter duximus
" committendam, ecclesiarum prælatos in ea veneratione
" habentes, ut nichil de eis meriti jura nostra fidei eorum
" secure ac fidenter credamus, sperantes quod cum indulgen-
" tius forte quam prædecessores nostri, et benignius viros
" ecclesiasticos habuerimus, aliquid in juris nostri præjudi-
" cium debeant attemptare vel sustinere præsumi. Sane, sicut
" ex quorundam relatione didicimus, prior et monachi Dunol-
" menses[1] clandestinam electionem nobis inconsultis et irre-
" quisitis facere præsumpserunt. Quod si ita est, in regiam
" majestatem nostram non modicum est offensum: unde sin-
" ceritati vestræ decrevimus esse mandandum, quod sollicita
" provisione curetis, ne id juris et dignitatis quod nostri pro-
" genitores in electione episcoporum Angliæ habuerunt, et

He has heard that the monks of Durham have made a secret election.

[1] The see of Durham was vacant by the death of Hugh de Puiset, March 3, 1195.

" nos habere debemus, in aliquo minuatur, ne humanitatis et A.D. 1195.
" benignitatis nostræ ecclesiasticis personis indulgentius ex-
" hibitæ pœnam in honoris nostri dispendio sentiamus. Non
" enim aliqua ratione sustineremus quod a præfatis monachis
" vel ab aliis quicquam cum detrimento honoris nostri in
" electione episcopi fieret, et si forte factum esset quin in
" irritum revocaretur incontinenti."

[1] "Celestinus papa Senonensi[2] archiepiscopo salutem. Letter of the pope to the archbishop of Sens.
"Cum in regno Galliæ catholici semper æquitatis cultores
" divina fuerint principes institutione promoti, a sacrosancta
" Romana ecclesia, cujus fidem et unitatem servarunt, quadam
" sunt prærogativa privilegium benedictionis et gratiæ conse-
" cuti. Quorum quidem exaltationem et gloriam nos, etiam
" adhuc in minori officio constituti, et libenter promovimus et
" libentius consuluimus promovendam. Nunc autem in apo-
" stolatus culmine provocati, karissimum in Christo filium
" nostrum Philippum illustrem regem Franciæ, recolendæ
" memoriæ prædecessorum suorum tam bonitate quam pru-
" dentia successorem, paternæ sumus caritatis brachiis am-
" plexati, dignis eum titulis honorare, et quantum cum Deo
" possumus exaltare, propensius cupientes. Cæterum cum He is distressed at hearing of Philip's repudiation of his newly married wife.
" fama hilaris et jocunda de matrimonio, inter karissimos filios
" nostros in Christo prædictum illustrem Franciæ regem et
" I.[3] reginam illustrem sororem karissimi in Christo filii nostri
" K. regis Danorum illustris sollempniter et rite contracto,
" prius ad notitiam sedis apostolicæ pervenisset, et postmodum
" de ipso matrimonio ad pravam suggestionem quorundam
" tale quid ordine turbato non sine honestatis ecclesiasticæ
" læsione fuisse præsumptum audivimus, de quo, et propter
" injuriam Deo et propter infamiam consulentibus et con-
" sentientibus irrogatam, non modicum contristamur. Et
" quidem si magnitudo regia considerasset attentius, attendis-
" sent et secum nichilominus qui hujus præsumptionis coopera-

[1] The following letter should be dated, according to Jaffé, Regesta Pontificum, p. 901, on May 13, not on March 13, 1195: in fact if the true date were March 13, the letter would fall in 1196, which is impossible. It contains the same matter and in nearly the same words as the letter to the archbishop of Rheims, given "ex MS. Cod. Elnonensi," by Martene and Durand, Amplissima Collectio, i. 1004; but this is undated. MS. D. omits the following letters, proceeding with that to the archbishop of Rouen, below, p. 137.

[2] Michael de Corbeil, archbishop, 1194–1199.

[3] Ingoberga daughter of Waldemar I., king of Denmark, and sister to Canute VI., married to Philip II. in 1193.

A.D. 1195. Proofs of the sanctity of marriage.

" tores fuerunt, quantum sit matrimonii sacramentum, non
" fuisset ut credimus hoc modo processum. Constat enim
" cuique divinam paginam revolventi, quod ipse Dominus ma-
" trimonium instituit, et in paradiso ante peccatum ad officium
" propter sobolem propagandam, dicens, 'Crescite et multipli- Gen. i. 28.
" 'camini et replete terram;' et extra paradisum ad remedium
" post peccatum propter fornicationem vitandam. Unde ipse
" primus homo Spiritu Sancto afflatus inquit, 'Propter hoc Gen. ii 24.
" 'relinquet homo patrem et matrem et adhærebit uxori, et
" 'erunt duo in carne una.' Quanta sit etiam matrimonii
" dignitas et quam circumspecta debeat ad tractandum de eo
" procedere gravitas, Dominus innuit, Qui cum interrogatus
" fuisset si licitum esset uxorem dimittere, et quæsitum esset
" ab eo super hæreditate duorum fratrum communiter divi-
" denda, in uno tacens et in altero sic respondens, 'Quicunque S. Matt. xix.
" 'dimiserit uxorem suam, præter causam fornicationis, mœcha- 9.
" 'tur,' per hoc nimirum ostendit quod ecclesia in cognitione
" matrimoniorum, quasi cæteris difficiliori, cum majori quam
" in aliis procedere debeat gravitate. Et cum Ipse alibi dicat,
" 'Quod Deus conjunxit homo non separet,' adverti potest S. Matt. ix.
" quam graviter ille delinquat, et quantum sit ei ab ira 6.
" ventura timendum, per quem tanti sacramenti Christi et
" ecclesiæ religio perturbatur. Præterea non est a temeritatis
" vitio alienum, quod in tam arduo et difficili negotio non
" fuit censura sedis apostolicæ requisita, per quam vel ipsum
" canonice finiretur, vel committeretur aliquibus qui idem
" servato juris ordine secundum statuta canonica terminarent.
" Hic revera contra sanctorum patrum veneranda concilia
" processum est manifeste, qui majores et difficiliores quæs-
" tiones ab universis ad sedem apostolicam censuerunt debere
" perferri, quod usque in hodiernum diem non solum a
" Gallicana ecclesia præterquam in præsenti articulo, verum-
" etiam a longe remotioribus devotissime observatur. Ut
" autem inde aliquantulum ordiamur. Nonne hoc negotium
" de præcipuis et magis arduis unum esse dinoscitur? utpote
" quod tam inter eximias regales personas, et a progenitorum
" regali prosapia descendentes, super causa tam difficili vertitur,
" ut secundum statuta patrum deberet auditorio Romanæ
" ecclesiæ reservari. Si hoc et alia privilegia hujus sedis
" beati Petri, cui nos licet inmeriti præsidemus, quique remo-
" tissimi etiam barbari custodiunt illibata, quanto diligentius
" ea servare tenentur constituti propius et Latini, et qui de
" beneficiis prædictæ sedis copiosius et frequentius susten-
" tantur? Non utique mediocriter errat qui privilegio beati
" Petri obviare non timet, et canonicis sanctionibus contraire.

Difficult questions on the subject ought to be submitted to the apostolic see.

" Verum prælati ecclesiæ, qui huic rei favorem aut consilium A.D. 1195.
" præbuerunt, etsi non ob aliud saltem metu pœnæ debuerunt Warnings from
" ab hujusmodi abstinere, et illud specialiter sollicita mente history.
" revolvere quod in sacris canonibus de Theugaldo Treverensi
" et Guntaro Coloniensi archiepiscopis[1] legitur, qui deposi-
" tionis sententia meruere percelli, pro eo quod in matrimo-
" niali causa Lotharii regis et Tebergæ uxoris ipsius normam
" æquitatis nequiter temerantes sanctiones canonicas exces-
" serunt. Quod vero hic fuerit æque vel magis excessum, ex
" ipsa rei evidentia demonstratur. Nam cum regina per In the pre-
" verba præsentis temporis expresso utrinque consensu, hinc sent case the queen was un-
" inde primo præstitis juramentis, sacerdotali benedictione defended.
" sicut est consuetudinis accedente, postquam fuit in reginam
" inuncta et honorifice coronata, præfato regi matrimonialiter
" copulata et etiam cognita, sicut fertur, nichil debuit contra
" ipsam indefensam et ignorantem quid penitus ageretur,
" utpote linguæ Francorum ignaram, tam inordinabiliter a
" quolibet attemptari. Nos vero qui ipsum regem catholicum The pope
" et ecclesiæ Romanæ valde devotum ab inclitæ memoriæ has sent a
" progenitoribus suis specialiter in visceribus caritatis habe- legate and letters to
" mus, volentes animæ suæ saluti et integritati famæ magis Philip;
" consulere quam ei male suadentium satisfacere voluntati,
" per dilectum filium Centium[2] subdiaconum notarium nos-
" trum, apostolicæ sedis legatum, ad hoc specialiter missum, et
" litteras nostras, rogavimus excellentiam ejus, monuimus et
" attentius fuimus exhortati, ac ei in remissionem injunximus
" peccatorum, ut illud evangelii attenta consideratione revol-
S. Luke, ix. 25. " vens quo dicitur 'nichil prodest homini si mundum universum
" 'lucretur, animæ vero suæ detrimentum patiatur,' dum tem-
" pus haberet de animæ suæ salute esset sollicitus, et præ-
" dictam uxorem suam quam a se consilio iniquo amoverat,
" quam quia generositatis egregiæ ac multæ decus honestatis
" adornat, maritali affectione tractaret; nec illis aures contra but he has not received
Phil. ii. 21. " hoc accommodare curaret, qui quæ sua sunt, non quæ Jesu them as he
" Christi quærentes, ad imitationem hominis inimici qui in ought.
S. Matt. xiii. 25. " agro bene seminato zizania respersit, pro lucro reputant si
" possunt inter aliquos odium et discordiam seminare. Sed
" idem rex legatum prædictum et litteras nostras devotione
" qua decuit sicut accepimus non recepit. Nos autem, sicut

---

[1] See Decr. ii. p. caus. xi., qu. 3, c. 10. Teutgaud archbishop of Treves, 847–863, and Gunther archbishop of Cologne, 850–864; the two prelates who declared the divorce between Lothar and Teutberga at the council of Aachen in 862.

[2] Centius, cardinal deacon of S. Lucia in Orthea; chamberlain to the pope.

A.D. 1195. He has received a pedigree of husband and wife, annuls the divorce, and forbids Philip to marry again.

" novit Dominus, licet propter hoc simus conturbati, pro
" salute tamen animæ ejus, de qua nos oportet propensius
" cogitare, amplius contristamur, volentes ipsum ea semper
" efficere, quæ et Creatori suo placere debeant, et suæ animæ
" dispendium non incurrat. Inde est quod publicum instru-
" mentum super genealogia, ex parte venerabilium fratrum
" nostrorum Lundensis archiepiscopi et suffraganeorum ejus
" nobis transmissum, et famam publicam attendentes, senten-
" tiam illam divortii contra ordinem juris prolatam, de fra-
" trum nostrorum consilio cassantes et penitus irritantes,
" fraternitati vestræ per apostolica scripta mandamus atque
" præcipimus, quatinus si supradictus rex suæ conditionis
" oblitus ea vivente aliam superducere forte voluerit, vos
" auctoritate freti apostolica id eidem inhibere firmiter pro-
" curetis. Datum Laterani iii^tio idus Martii, pontificatus nostri
" anno quinto."

Letter of the pope to the clergy of Canterbury, July 25.

[1] " Celestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus
" fratribus Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, apostolicæ sedis legato,
" et suffraganeis et dilectis filiis aliis ecclesiarum prælatis in
" provincia Cantuariensi constitutis, salutem et apostolicam
" benedictionem.

Lamentation over the state of Palestine.

" Misericors et miserator Dominus, qui[2] ut humani generis
" lapsum sua misericordia restauraret, de utero virgineo
" carnem sumere ac mortis non dubitavit subire discrimen,
" nolens nos quos de tenebris et umbra mortis sua morte
" redemit, nostrorum meritorum exigentia iterum manibus
" tradi inimici, omnem filium quem recipit miserando castigat,
" monitis nos aliquando, quandoque flagellis corripiens, ut[3]
" cum meritis et peccatis nostris talia et majora deberi con-
" spicimus, ad meliorem vitam facilius et libentius inclinemus.
" Verum cum diebus nostris in tantum excreverit malitia mo-
" dernorum, ut nec sacræ scripturæ monitis nec infirmitatis
" nostræ corripiamur flagellis, manum Suam super nos in
" tantum voluit aggravare, ac terram nativitatis Suæ, quod
" sine cordis amaritudine non possumus explicare, in manibus
" tradere paganorum, ut cum propheta merito deplorantes
" 'Deus venerunt gentes in hæreditatem,' et cætera, auribus Ps. lxxix. 1, 2.
" nostris audierimus, quod quibusdam etiam ad majorem
" compunctionem datum est intueri, morticina sanctorum in
" escas tradita volatilibus cœli, et sanguinem eorum in potum
" bestiis terræ. Audientes pariter abhominationem desolationis Dan. ix.
" factæ in loco sancto, cum ibi, sicut dicitur, ab Agarenis

---

[1] This letter is printed also in Mansi, Concilia, xxii. 603.

[2] *qui*] quod, A. B.

[3] *ut*] et, A..

" factum sit prostibulum meretricum ubi quondam mensa A.D. 1195. July 25. Profanation of the Holy Places;
" panum fuerat et propositio sancta, et ibi sit usque hodie
" stabulum jumentorum ubi corpus Christi et sepultum exstitit
" et a fidelibus percipi consuevit. Signum etiam salutare,
" videlicet sacratissimum lignum crucis in quo apostolus
Gal. vi. 14. " typice gloriabatur cum diceret, 'Nos autem gloriari oportet loss of the True Cross,
" 'in cruce Domini nostri Jesu Christi,' in quo est salus,
" vita et resurrectio nostra, per Quem salvi et liberi sumus,
" in exterminio terræ illius peccatis Christiani populi exigen-
" tibus in illorum potestatem devenit, qui crucifixum cum
" cruce pariter detestantur et filios ecclesiæ totis conatibus
" persequuntur. Jerusalem præterea quondam pacis visio, et and desolation of the Land of Promise.
" terra veteribus patribus repromissa, in qua Dominus noster
" pro nobis pati voluit, et certa Suæ divinitatis argumenta
" monstrare, quæ etiam quondam a Christianæ fidei profes-
" soribus consueverat devotissime ac frequentissime visitari,
" calcatur pedibus iniquorum et illorum spurcitia inquinatur,
" quibus olim et timori fuerat et horrori, ut solita gloria et
" divitiis spoliata, et religiosis viduata et deserta cultoribus,
Lament. i. 1. " ad se ipsam conversa deploret, 'Quomodo sedet sola civitas
" 'plena populo, facta est quasi vidua domina gentium?' Quis
" igitur Christicola tantæ desolationis non inmemor lacrimas
" teneat? Quis hujus calamitatis audita miseria non condoleat
" columbæ gementi? Quis hujus inmoderati doloris consola- An exhortation to all men to exert themselves for its deliverance.
" tionem recipiat? cum non sit qui consoletur ecclesiam lacri-
" mantem ex omnibus caris ejus. Accingimini ergo, fratres,
" ad verbum Dei populis evangelizandum et gloriam. Accin-
" gantur quibus licet materialem gladium in persecutores fidei
" exercere, ut injuriam crucis vindicta celeri ulciscantur.
" Accingantur quibus datum est solis orationibus et contem-
" plationibus vacare, ut Dominum possint assidua oratione
S. Luke, xxii. 21. " placare. Ecce enim expetiit nos Sathanas ut in hac turba-
" tione cribaret sicut triticum. Ecce qui nunc cum Christo
" non fuerit, juxta evangelicæ auctoritatis doctrinam, ipse erit
" aversus; et quem ad præsens crucifixi non movebit inju- Ill success is no argument against final victory.
" ria, in signo non confidat alterius salutari. Nec aliquorum
" volumus prudentiam admirari, si diversi mundi principes,
" qui ad expugnandam gentem Saracenicam hactenus in hasta
" et gladio sunt profecti, quasi nichil penitus profecerunt,
" quia non hasta et gladio salvos facit Dominus de Sua
" misericordia confidentes, sed in multitudine miserationum
" suarum salvabit eos. Nec nostra merita hactenus usque
" adeo profecerunt ut iratum Dominum ad misericordiam
" provocaverimus et medelam. Licet enim quondam filii Israel
" ad vindicandam mortem uxoris Levitæ de monte Effraym

A.D. 1195. July 25. Exhortation to repentance and prayer.

" contra tribum Benjamim ascenderunt Domino præcipiente Judges, xx.
" armati; non tamen prius eos potuerunt aliquatenus superare
" quam ab illis semel et secundo fugati excessus suos et ini-
" quitatem propriam purgavissent. Ascendite igitur spe ad
" cor altum, karissimi, ut in mirabilibus Suis exaltetur Domi-
" nus. Effundite coram Illo corda vestra, ut adiciat misereri
" Deus, et servet in ira misericordiam Suam, et post tempesta-
" tem et fletum exultationem inducat. Sumant crucis signa-
" culum, qui hactenus arma militaria inter Christianos populos
" assumpserunt, nec desperent de paucitate nec in multitudine
Let those who are at war against Christians take the Cross.
" glorientur. Si enim ad defensionem terræ nativitatis
" Christi, passionis, resurrectionis et ascensionis Ipsius, cum
" humilitate debita voluerint festinare, Dominus conterens
" bella Qui currus et exercitus Pharaonis projecit in mare, Exod. xv. 4.
" docebit manus eorum ad prælium et digitos ipsorum ad
" bella, et multitudinem paganorum ut paleam ante faciem Ps. cxliv. 1.
" venti protinus exsufflabit, et ut lutum platearum delebit eos.
The bishops must pray and preach.
" Vos autem fratres, archiepiscope et episcopi, quibus post
" summæ sedis pontificem cura est universorum et animarum
" sollicitudo commissa, precibus instantibus ad Dominum
" incessanter subjectos vobis populos, ut assumpto crucis
" signaculo ad confundendos et confutandos persecutores
" Christianæ fidei accingantur, prædicationibus assiduis labo-
" retis. Speramus siquidem, et vos ipsi sperare debetis, quod
" Dominus in verbo prædicationis et orationis vestræ rete S. Luke, v. 4.
" laxabit, et tales ad defensionem orientalis provinciæ pro-
" pitius excitabit, quorum potius exigentia meritorum quam
" armorum fiducia exurget Deus et inimici dissipabuntur Ps. lxviii. 1.
Promises of indulgence to crusaders.
" Ipsius, et fugient a facie Ejus qui oderunt Eum. Nos autem
" illis qui pro divinitatis amore laborem hujus profectionis
" assumere et quantum in se fuerit implere studuerint, de
" indulto nobis a Deo auctoritatis officio illam remissionem
" impositæ pœnitentiæ per sacerdotale ministerium facimus,
" quam prædecessores nostri noscuntur suis temporibus statu-
" isse, ut videlicet qui corde contrito et humiliato spiritu
" laborem hujus itineris assumpserint, et in pœnitentia pec-
" catorum et fide recta discesserint; plenam suorum criminum
" indulgentiam, et vitam propter hoc consequantur æternam.
" Sive autem supervixerint sive mortui fuerint, de omnibus
" peccatis suis[1] de quibus fuerint recte confessi impositæ

---

[1] MS. A. has a MS. note in a sixteenth century hand: " Nota hic " ad hoc signum, per declarationem " papæ Cœlestini quod indulgentiæ " extendunt se ad remissionem pœ- " nitentiæ injunctæ et impositæ per " sacerdotem; ergo ex isto sequi- " tur quod non se extendunt ad

" satisfactionis relaxationem de omnipotentis Dei misericordia, A.D. 1195. July 25.
" et apostolorum Petri et Pauli auctoritate et nostra, se nove- Their pro-
" rint habituros. Bona quoque ipsorum, ex quo crucem ac- perty and families are
" ceperint, cum familiis suis sub sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ, under the
" necnon et archiepiscoporum atque aliorum prælatorum protection of the
" ecclesiæ Dei protectione consistant, et nullam de his quæ church.
" in susceptione crucis quiete possederint, donec de ipsorum
" reditu vel obitu certissime cognoscatur, sustineant quæs-
" tionem, sed bona ipsorum integra interim remaneant et
" quieta. Illi autem qui in subsidium terræ illius de bonis
" suis transmiserint, de peccatis suis veniam consequantur
" juxta suorum moderamina prælatorum. Verum tibi, frater The arch-
" archiepiscope, cui sollicitudo legationis regni Anglorum est bishop is to
" ab apostolica sede commissa, oneris hujus laborem duximus urge the king and
" injungendum, mandantes ut apud karissimum in Christo nation to help.
" filium nostrum Ricardum Anglorum regem illustrem, ut ad
" defensionem terræ Jerosolimitanæ, milites et pedites bene
" instructos transmittat, assiduis exhortationibus elabores, et
" provinciam circuiens Anglicanam opportunis et importunis
" prædicationibus instes, ut pro defensione Christianitatis
" assumpto crucis signaculo terram visitent transmarinam.
" Vobis autem, fratres episcopi, et dilecti filii ecclesiarum
" prælati, præsentium auctoritate mandamus, ut dictum archi-
" episcopum vestrum, tanquam apostolicæ sedis legatum,
" benigne recipere, ac honorifice pertractare curetis, et monitis
" ejus et mandatis salubribus obedire. Datum Laterani viii^vo
" kalendas Augusti, pontificatus nostri anno quinto."

MCXCVI. " W. Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo de- A.D. 1196.
" cano Lundoniensi.

" Experti sæpius sinceritatem dilectionis qua nos in viscери- Letter of the archbishop of
" bus Christi amplectimini, et affectionem piæ mentis qua Rouen to Ralph de
" nobis compatimini, sicut personam vestram tenerius diligi- Diceto.
" mus, ita et prolixius et confidentius angustias animæ nostræ,
" et statum nostrum actaque a nobis in colloquio inter regem
" Francorum et regem Anglorum habito nunciamus. Veni- Account of a conference between the
" entibus itaque nobis ad colloquium infra octavas Epiphaniæ two kings.
" inter reges habitum, primo die rex Anglorum a mane usque
" ad vesperam, tum per se, tum per nuncios episcopos,
" abbates, et barones supplicavit cum omni instantia efflagi-

" remissionem illius ad quod quis
" tenetur jure naturali, scilicet dic-
" tamine veræ rationis et apertæ,
" super quod currit Domini præ-
" ceptum, sed ad pœnam arbitrariam
" impositam a sacerdote in con-
" fessione. Deo gratias ⁘ Ave
" Maria." ⁘

[1] *Jerosolimitanæ*] Orientalis, B.

A.D. 1196. The archbishop and chapter had refused to be Richard's sureties in a secret agreement with Philip.

" tans, ut nos et capitulum nostrum fidejuberemus pro eo,
" quod nisi scilicet præcise et integre singula capitula, sicut
" in autentico inter ipsum et regem Francorum confecto con-
" tinentur, observaret, ad solutionem ii. milium marcarum
" regi Francorum faciendam teneremur, super sponsione
" etiam facta litteras sigillis nostris impressas præberemus.
" Quia vero auctenticum non inspexeramus, cujus mentio
" litteris nostris imprimi debuerat, tanquam illi cohærenti-
" bus, et vigorem si quem habituræ erant contrahentibus,
" corisco cooperto et scripto nobis ignoto assensum præ-
" bere, vel illud confirmare, quod detectum tenebamur ab-
" horrere detestari et redarguere, minime voluimus. Itaque
" rege et satrapis ejus instantibus nichilque proficientibus,
" nobisque in proposito persistentibus, circa vesperam facta
" est nobis copia auctentici. Quo a decano et quibusdam ex
" nostris inspecto, comperimus inter cætera hæc in eo inserta
Contents of the secret article. " esse, videlicet, 'Non licere archiepiscopo Rothomagensi in
" 'terras vel homines regis Francorum, seu regis Anglorum,
" 'interdicti vel excommunicationis sententiam dictare, præter
" 'assensum iiii^or clericorum ab ipsis regibus pro voluntate
" 'sua eligendorum, et super caput archiepiscopi ponendo-
" 'rum. Quod si lata fuerit, ad eos spectabit cognitio sen-
" 'tentiæ utrum tenere debebit vel non. Quod si injustam
" 'esse protulerint, rex in cujus terram vel homines ecclesi-
" 'asticam exercuerat sententiam, ad mobilia et immobilia
" 'archiepiscopi manus extendet, et ea in proprios usus con-
" 'vertet, donec sententiam relaxaverit, et ei secundum arbi-
" 'trium dictorum iiii^or primatum satisfecerit.' Annexum est
" in auctentico a regibus jurejurando et sigillorum suorum
" munimine confirmato, 'Ut illata ecclesiis seu quibuscumque
" 'personis ecclesiasticis, seu viris religiosis, injuriæ dampna
" 'remittantur, et interdicti vel excommunicationis sententiæ
The archbishop excommunicated the authors. " 'propter hæc latæ, sine ulla satisfactione solvantur.' Tam
" enormibus autem contra Dei ecclesiam perspectis et auditis,
" ilico in omnes inventores et fautores illius execrabilis auc-
" tentici exceptis duobus dumtaxat personis regum, sententiam
" excommunicationis tulimus, constanter auctentico contra-
" dicentes, et pro nobis, et ecclesia, provinciaque nostra
" universa appellantes. Secundo die colloquii precibus regiis,
" tum allegationibus superficialibus et palliatis, tum minis et
" contumeliis additis, circa nonam cruce Dominica præcedente
" innumeraque multitudine nos quasi ad spectaculum sequente,
" et nobis causam ecclesiæ Dei agentibus favente, accessimus
" et stetimus coram rege Francorum, quærentes ab eo, si salva
" integritate ordinis nostri, et juris, et potestatis ecclesiæ

" Rothomagensis, concederet nobis fidejubere pro rege Angliæ. A.D. 1196.
" Quo clamose contradicente nosque obprobriis et contumeliis Philip refuses to allow them to act as sureties; and they asked leave to depart.
" multiplicibus lacessente, recessimus ab eo, et paulo post
" a colloquio. In crastino per episcopum Ebroicensem [1] et
" quosdam clericos nostros postulavimus a rege licentiam
" remeandi ad ecclesiam nostram, ad quam ceu ad asilum
" properavimus. Ubi cum quieseremus, et nocte Sabbati
" membra sopori dedissemus, ecce duo milites a latere regis
" missi nobis ex parte ejus dixerunt, quod mane coram eo
" compareremus. Intelligentes autem illum omni modo cum
" genuflexione etiam nobis facienda, adhibita caterva pon-
" tificum, abbatum, comitum, baronum, velle satisfacere volun-
" tati suæ, et præcipue voluntati regis Francorum, habito
" maturiori consilio maluimus nocte et clam recedere quam
" periculum libertatis et juris ecclesiastici, cum dispendio
" famæ et bonæ conscientiæ incurrere. Sicque duobus tantum, The archbishop has now taken refuge at Cambray.
" scilicet clerico et uno serviente, comitati, Cameracum veni-
" mus, ubi moram facimus adhuc, expectantes dubios rerum
" eventus, et per Dei gratiam status nostri in melius com-
" mutationem, parati propter justitiam quælibet adversa
" sustinere. In tantis itaque tribulationibus et angustiis con-
" stituti, et injuriis et oppressionibus afflicti, discretioni
" vestræ supplicamus attentius, quatinus nostris passionibus
" tanquam amici et devoti vestri condoleatis, et quid nobis
" in tantis articulis constitutis agendum sit, consilium vestrum
" recurrentibus litteris et auxilium exhibitione operis velitis
" efficaciter impertiri. Valete."

" Reverendo patri dominoque Waltero Dei gratia Rotho- Letter of Ralph de Diceto in answer.
" magensi archiepiscopo, suus ille quondam fidelis et adhuc
" fidelissimus salutem, et debitam patri et domino cum omni
" devotione reverentiam et obedientiam.[2]

" Quod tacito nomine proprio vobis scribimus, illud efficit
" traditum generaliter,

" An nescis longas regibus esse manus?

" Cum itaque tres sint ecclesiæ persecutiones, violenta, frau- Reason for concealing his name.
" dulenta, deceptoria, primam Rothomagensis ecclesiæ bona,
" clericorum vestrorum possessiones dissipasse cognovimus;
" personam quoque vestram illicitis fidejussionibus involven-
" dam infestasse quamplurimum, in tantum ut ad declinandas

---

[1] *Ebroicensem*] Guarin de Cierrey, 1193–1200.

[2] *Reverendo . . . . obedientiam*] Waltero Dei gratia Rothomagensi archiepiscopo suus ille quondam fidelis et adhuc fidelissimus salutem, D. The letter is the work of our author Ralph de Diceto himself. See below, p. 140.

A.D. 1196. The archbishop is congratulated on the honours of confessorship.

" tyrannorum versutias coacti sitis regnum Alemannicum
" subintrare, a quo cum per Dei gratiam ad propria redieritis
" cum triumpho, cantabitur ab occurrentibus vobis canticum
" novum, canticum jocunditatis et lætitiæ, canticum metrice
" compositum, quod est hujusmodi.

" Felix homo qui pro domo
" Dei murum se futurum
" Dicto facto
" Publicat,
" Ante reges pravas leges
" Execrando, detestando,
" Cœlum sibi
" Vendicat.

Expression of sympathy and prayer.

" Nos interim vestris et vestrorum deprædationibus intimo
" cordis affectu compatimur, et ad Dei clementiam recur-
" rentes attentius genibus flexis Dominum deprecamur cotidie
" dicentes,

" Serva clerum, Rex insignis,
" Votis tentum laude dignis,
" Ne consumat vorax ignis
" Tuæ laudi deditos.
" Legem pone regnaturis,
" Si statutis instent duris,
" Ad radicem stat securis,
" Motus frænans vetitos.

" Valere vos optamus in Domino, karissime pater."

Safe conduct for the archbishop, given by king Philip.

" [1] Philippus Dei gratia rex Francorum universis præpositis
" et bailivis ad quos litteræ præsentes pervenerint, salutem.
" Noveritis quoniam fidelis noster Rothomagensis archiepisco-
" pus et omnes qui cum eo sunt per nostram terram in nostro
" sunt conductu, unde vobis præcipimus quod ipsum et suos
" per terram nostram salvo conducatis."

Richard writes promising him redress for his losses.

" Ricardus rex Angliæ Waltero Rothomagensi archiepiscopo.
" Noverit sanctitas vestra quod vobis nullatenus deesse
" volumus vel valemus, in quacumque necessitate fueritis
" constituti. Et si jacturam aliquam vel dampnum occasione
" nostri incurratis, nullo modo poterimus omittere, quin dampna
" vestra et jacturam vobis resarciri faciamus. De adventu
" vestro ad nos consilium vestrum [2] accipite quid expedire

---

[1] Twysden omits this letter, substituting for it the letter given below, p. 140. It is omitted in MS. C.

[2] *vestrum*] de vobis, B.

" videritis ; et gratum habebimus quod super hoc sanctitas ves- A.D. 1193.
" tra duxerit statuendum. De loquela versus dominum regem He is to confer with the king of France.
" Francorum, scilicet de quietatione clericorum et laicorum,
" cum eo sermonem habeatis. Sed animum vestrum consulite
" et providete, utrum id ei proponere [1] ex parte vestra,[2] tan-
" quam id nobis inconsultis et ignorantibus per vos fuisset
" procuratum."

" Ricardus rex Anglorum, Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo. Richard informs the archbishop of Canterbury that the dean of Rouen has been chosen bishop of Worcester.
" Noveritis quod dilectus noster et decanus Rothomagensis,[3]
" vir benignus, modestus, discretus, et secundum Deum am-
" bulans, in præsentia nostra et clericorum vestrorum, in
" episcopum Wigornensem sollempniter et canonice ab eis
" quorum intererat est electus: unde vos rogare duximus
" quatinus electionem illam ratam habeatis et gratam, eamque
" confirmare velitis; scientes pro certo quod jus vestrum et
" ecclesiæ vestræ dignitatem integra conservari volumus et
" illæsa."

" Philippus rex Francorum Waltero Rothomagensi archi- The king of France informs the archbishop of Rouen that he is at liberty to enter France.
" episcopo.
" Memores sumus quod dilectos et fideles nostros Ansellum
" decanum Turonensem et Ursonem camerarium [4] ad vos trans-
" misimus, per quos vobis nostra voluntas innotuit, videlicet
" quod in nostro eratis amore et gratia, et quod vobis Ande-
" leium, et aliam terram vestram, et alia quæ ad vos pertine-
" bant, libere reddideramus. Illud idem vobis mandamus, et
" in ampliori gratia et amore de die in diem proficiscitis.
" Pro certo etiam vos scire volumus quod si in terram nos-
" tram venire volueritis, terra vobis et omnibus vestris patens
" est et parata, sicut specialissimis clericis nostris et amicis."[5]

[5] " Ricardus rex Anglorum episcopo Ebroicensi:—Significa- The king of England writes to the bishop of Evreux, that it has been agreed that he shall release
" vimus vobis quod rex Francorum in pacto habuit venerabili
" patri nostro Waltero Rothomagensi archiepiscopo, quod si
" nos archiepiscopum Turonensem solveremus et quietaremus
" de plegio conventionum pacis inter nos et eundem regem
" tenendarum, ipse archiepiscopum Rothomagensem quietum

---

[1] *proponere*] exponere, B., corr.

[2] *ex parte vestra*] ex parte ex vestra, A.

[3] John of Coutances, bishop of Worcester, 1196–1198.

[4] Anselm dean of S. Martin's, Tours, and Urso the chamberlain, concluded a truce with Richard July 23, 1194. See Hoveden, iii. 257.

[5] Both these letters are omitted in MS. D.

A.D. 1196. the archbishop of Tours and Philip shall acquit the archbishop of Rouen of their claims upon them. Philip has changed his mind. The archbishop of Rouen is to return.

" haberet et solutum de his omnibus quæ petebat ab ipso per
" nos sibi fieri. Nos autem per pactum ipsius quod fecit præ-
" dicto archiepiscopo Rothomagensi inducti, et de commodo
" sanctæ ecclesiæ curiosi, litteras nostras patentes quas vidit
" de archiepiscopo Turonensi destinavimus, prælibatam quie-
" tationem continentes. Hoc audito a rege Francorum et cog-
" nito, ipse a pacto resilire voluit et idem pactum archiepi-
" scopo Rothomagensi non servare. Cum autem ex concessu
" ejus res ista ita processerit, nobis videtur nos et eundem
" archiepiscopum inde esse solutos et liberos. Inde est quod
" vobis significamus quod litteris vestris eidem archiepiscopo
" significetis, quod in terram nostram secure redeat. Et nos
" vobis pollicemur, quod pro nulla quæstione inter nos et
" regem Francorum facta, coactionem aliquam in eum vel
" in suos exercebimus, vel exerceri patiemur, sicut jam eidem
" archiepiscopo per litteras nostras significavimus."

Safe conduct from Philip to the archbishop.

[1] " Philippus rex Francorum Waltero Rothomagensi archi-
" episcopo:—Nosse vos volumus quoniam adventum vestrum
" et moram vestram per terram nostram plurimum desidera-
" mus, et nos bailivis nostris præcipimus ut vos et vestros
" per terram nostram salvo conducant."

The archbishop of Rouen thanks Ralph de Diceto for his anonymous letter.

" Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo decano
" Lundoniensi.
" Licet nobis deliberatione provida tacito nomine scriberetis,
" nostri tamen stilum cognovimus amatoris, et inter legen-
" dum tanta fuimus consolatione refecti, ut præteritæ tribu-
" lationis immemores vestra frui præsentia videremur. Jo-
" cundum quidem nobis et delectabile fuit semper, quicquid
" ex ore vestro, vel de calamo procedebat. Sed nunc con-
" solationes vestræ superant quicquid supra dorsum nostrum
" fabricaverunt peccatores. Et ne forte tribulatio nostra vos
" ultra mensuram affligat, hoc de statu nostro certissimum
" teneatis, quod in prosperitate qualibet nunquam fuimus
" lætiores, quam nos præsentis adversitatis tempora reddide-
" runt. Quippe mundus iste, cotidie semetipso deterior, doc-
" tor est disertissimus vitæ nostræ, ut semper ejus gaudia
" declinantes ex ipsius asperitatibus discamus perpetuis con-
" solationibus inhærere, et nunquam delectari in eo quod est
" labile et caducum, et ibi fixa sint corda nostra ubi sunt vera
" gaudia et mansura; et nichil erit in hoc mundo quod nos
" terreat vel molestet, dum Ei fide firmissima militemus Cujus
" sumus sive vivimus, sive moriamur. Verumtamen si respi-

His worldly experience has been a discipline of faith.

[1] The following letter is placed by Twysden above, p. 138.

" ciendum est ad præsentis temporis blandimenta, pro liquido A.D. 1196.
" habeatis, quod causa nostra ex temptatione præterita nobis
" spondet proventus felicioris eventum, et ex litteris quas
" super hoc domino Cantuariensi misimus constare poterit,
" quod ex primitiis prælibatis libertatem debitam in proximo
" per Dei gratiam consequemur."

[1] " Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo decano The archbishop of Rouen to Ralph de Diceto.
" Lundoniensi.

" Vobis, amice amantissime, viro scienti infirmitates, viro
" olei et misericordiæ, revelavimus causam ecclesiæ Dei et His sorrow is being turned into joy.
" nostram, amaritudinem spiritus, et tribulationes quæ invene-
" runt nos nimis, cujus flentis et sedentis nobiscum in tristitia
" ubera consolationis satiaverunt et lætificaverunt animam
" nostram. Porro post tristia sabbata felix irradiavit dies, et
" per Dei gratiam luctus noster jam conversus in gaudiolum,
" convertetur in gaudium, gaudium inquam magnum valde.
" Quarta enim feria post Ramos Palmarum dominus rex Philip met him at Pontoise on April 17, with kind treatment and promises.
" Franciæ nos venientes Pontisaram honorifice suscepit, in
" nobis Deum venerans; in accessu benigne obviam exiens, in
" penetralia domus suæ introducens, nosque præcedere cogens
" ibidem nos in amaritudine spiritus positos jocundo suo col-
" loquio et secretiori, promissioneque multiplici de honoris
" nostri conservatione, sacerdotalis dignitatis et libertatis ec-
" clesiasticæ, adjecta, recreans et refovens, in recessu nos libe-
" raliter et humiliter in viam nostram deducens. Et quia non
" sufficit bonum inchoasse et non consummasse, animæque
" esurienti nulla est satietas, ne ridiculi haberemur, ne com-
" muni consilio fratrum et coepiscoporum et cæterorum pru-
" dentum virorum obviaremus, in anteriora totam spem in At Paris on April 30 he had been most kindly received by Philip.
" Domino ponentes nos extendimus, de contingentibus pro mo-
" dulo virium nostrarum nichil emittentes. Cum igitur in
" vigilia apostolorum Philippi et Jacobi Parisius venissemus,
" paululum progressi, dominum regem invenimus cum fratre
" B. de Vicenis, ad quem accedentes, divina præordinante
" clementia, gratiam, immo cumulum gratiæ, mensuram in-
" quam gratiæ refertam et supereffluentem invenimus in
" oculis ejus. Exponentes enim ei statum nostrum, et cum
" suspiriis et in amaritudine cordis, et in persona Christi con-
" stanter petentes consilium et auxilium ejus, quatinus mini-
" sterio ejus adiceret Deus, ut sacrosancta ecclesia multiplici
" oppressione resurgeret, abrogatis et deletis quibusdam capi-

[1] This letter is omitted in D.

A.D. 1196. Philip's speech to him on the occasion of the demand of surety-ship.

" tulis contra nos, immo Deum et ecclesiam, in nephando illo
" cyrographo conscriptis : demisso vultu, gerens personam
" Christi, sicut vere pœnitentis, nobisque ex intimis cordis
" compatientis, voce mansueta, voce misericordiæ plena, voce
" caritatis qua nos amplecti videtur expressiva, in hæc verba
" prorupit : 'Noveritis, dilecte archiepiscope et sacerdos Christi,
" 'etiam cum contradictione satraparum et consiliariorum nos-
" 'trorum nos intuitu Dei et personæ nostræ non tantum
" 'preces vestras velle exaudire, sed et illis hoc conditionali-
" 'ter superaddere, videlicet non solum nos, sed et episcopos
" 'et abbates, omnes conventus et ecclesias dioecesis vestræ,
" 'qui fidejusserunt pro rege Angliæ, absolvi a plegio et fide-
" 'jussione qua nobis obligati sunt, si episcopos, abbates, con-
" 'ventus et ecclesias, qui pro nobis erga eum fidejusserunt
" 'voluerit et concesserit absolvi. Indecens enim et iniquum
" 'est, ecclesias Dei et ecclesiasticas personas pro excessibus
" 'nostris et regis Angliæ puniri, vel eas sic citra auctorita-
" 'tem ecclesiæ juxta voluntatem principum coarctari et obli-
" 'gari.' Et ut breviter et ad summam vobis rem tangamus,
" omnes petitiones nostras benigne, et animo tranquillo et
He is staying within the territories of the king of France. " prompto, exaudivit. Eapropter habito consilio dignum duxi-
" mus et profuturum nobis et ecclesiæ Dei, in partibus Galliæ
" jurisdictioni nostræ subjectæ morari pro viribus, et per in-
" nuntios ad dominum regem Angliæ destinandos experiri
" satagentes, ut promissa nobis a domino rege Franciæ effec-
" tui et optato fini mancipentur. Commendamus autem nos
" et causam ecclesiæ nostræ orationibus vestris, quatinus, illis
" mediantibus, et pro ea in conspectu Domini[1] effusis, valeat
" respirare ab actione iniqua et servitute importabili erepta."

A great flood at Paris drives king Philip to S. Genevieve's.

[2] Circa dies istos aquarum inundatio subita, vehemens, et fluctibus procellosis involvens omnia circa Sequanam adjacentia tam lignea quam lapidea, Philippum regem Francorum, Mauritium Parisiensem episcopum, Parisius commorantes, non parum exterruit. Rex forsitan statuit intra se ; " Ne me demergat tempestas " aquæ, nec absorbeat profundum," salvabor in monte. Relinquens ergo palatium suum, Ludovicum quoque filium secum assumens, cum domestica familia sua pernoctare decrevit apud Sanctam Genovefam. Episcopus

Ps. lxix. 16.

[1] *Domini*] Dei, B.

[2] Here MS. D. resumes.

Ps. lxix. 2. autem dixit, "Ad animam meam intraverunt aquæ;" sed ut sibi provideret et suis, apud Sanctum Victorem quievit. A.D. 1196. The bishop stays at S. Victor's.

Circa dies istos iniquitatem et contradictionem in civitate Lundonia vidi sæpius habitam inter divites et pauperes, ob distributionem munerum subeundorum ad fisci commodum secundum facultatem cujusque factam, multotiens inæqualiter, sicut dicebatur a multis. Hujus dissensionis signifer fuit quidam Willelmus filius Osberti, contra dignitatem regiam populum sæpius convocans, et multos sub sacramento constringens. Fratrem quoque suum carnalem, duos etiam alios opinionis integræ viros, tanquam regiæ proditionis reos in conventiculis suis ad mortem usque persequebatur. Ad ultimum in ecclesia doctoris gentium Pauli seditionem, conclamationem, tumultuationem multociens concitavit. Cum autem publicæ potestatis indignationem adversus se graviter excitatam suis meritis exigentibus intelligeret, intra turrim cujusdam ecclesiæ, pertinentis specialiter ad archiepiscopum, sese conclusit, locum sacrum in castellum commutans. Postmodum videns concurrere multitudinem armatorum, ut proximam mortem fugeret, intra templum gloriosæ Virginis ignem injecit, et locum Domino consecratum flammis discurrentibus pro parte combussit. Extractus ab ecclesia, perductus est ad Turrim Lundoniæ, calculum reportans diffinitivum, et ut unius pœna metus possit esse multorum, de communi sententia procerum vestibus exspoliatus, manibus vinctis a tergo, pedibus longis funibus colligatis, equi ministerio per mediam civitatem trahitur ad furcas prope Tyburnam. Suspensus est itaque, ferreis constrictus cathenis ne cito corrueret. Appensi sunt cum eo novem ejusdem litis consortes, ut quos par facinus æquarat et inquinaverat, similis pœna constringeret. Ob pacem ergo totius regni sollicitius et securius procurandam et conservandam, de justitiarii principalis decreto, multorum mediæ manus hominum filii vel pro-

William Fitz Osbert after provoking sedition and conspiring against the king, gets up a riot at S. Paul's.

He shuts himself up in Bow-church,

and sets it on fire.

He is dragged to Tyburn and hanged with nine of his accomplices.

A.D. 1196. Security taken for good behaviour.

pinqui dati sunt in obsidatum, in diversis per patriam munitionibus carcerali custodiæ mancipandi; pauperes congrua satisdatione pro vicinorum arbitrio satisfecerunt.

Letter of the archbishop of Rouen to Ralph de Diceto, recounting his troubles.

"Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo decano
" Lundoniensi.[1]

" Aggredientibus iter arduum et angustum, per quod ab hujus
" valle plorationis est per varios casus et multa discrimina
" rerum ad cœlestis eminentiam patriæ redeundum, Dominus
" nunquam a misericordiæ proposito recedens, tanquam in-
" nixus adhuc scalæ Jacob, manum consolationis porrigit ne
" lacescant. Ipse quidem aspera dirigit in vias planas, defec-
" tuum conscius humanorum, dum forte gradus ascensionum
" difficiles steriles minantur laborantium sudores, ut ad per-
" severantiam promoveat fatigatos, quos in stadio discurrentes

The quarrels of the citizens and clergy of Rouen.

" bravii dilatio suspendit. Multæ tribulationes, sicut ecclesiæ
" Dei satis universaliter innotuit, nobis per Dei gratiam hoc
" iter ingressis obicem posuerunt, qualiter videlicet, dum in
" domo Domini cum fratribus vellemus unanimes habitare,
" inimicus homo inter clericos et laicos nostræ urbis discor-
" dias seminavit; unde tot germina maliciæ pullularunt, quæ

Then followed the quarrels of the kings.

" nondum potuerunt ab eorum cordibus exstirpari. Subinde
" regum hostilitas subintravit, quæ, redditus et possessiones
" ecclesiæ nostræ deforis invadens, gloriam ejus abintus ma-
" litia civium denigratam ad enormem confusionem et pau-

Next the two kings had conspired against the liberty of the church.

" pertatem redegit. Nec contentus est malignus spiritus
" nobis in exterioribus adversari, sed et in caput nostrum ille
" adversarius, cui nulla sufficit iniquitas, calcaneum erexit, et
" reges nostros adeo veneficæ suggestionis artificio reddidit
" insensatos, ut catholicæ professionis inmemores quatuor no-
" bis vellent superponere primates, et nostræ jurisdictionis
" potentiam sub eorum ministerio sepelire. Statuerunt etiam
" quod de omnibus dampnis quæ passa fuerat ecclesia per eos,
" ipsos absque compensatione præmissa redderemus liberos et
" immunes, et sub jurejurando firmaverant nos ad hoc juribus
" et injuriis cohercere; unde sicut audivistis, potius elegimus
" pauperes exulare, quam ecclesiam nobis sine ruga et macula
" commissam pateremur corrumpi, ut eam ancillam de libera,
" et de gloriosa ignobilem redderemus. Dum itaque propter
" Deum extremam exilii fortunam subissemus, et forte qui-

[1] MS. D. omits the following letter.

A.D. 1196.

But a change has ensued, and the church has received a compensation of five hundred pounds a year.

" busdam propter æstus persecutionis importabiles lacescere " videremur, Dominus supposuit manum Suam cui derelictus " est pauper, et ventis imperans et mari procellam statuit in " auram; nec potuerunt reges in rebellione proposita morari, " cum Ipse aliter disposuerit in Cujus manu corda sunt " regum. Sed favente Deo compuncti sunt et ad cor peni- " tus redierunt adeo, ut sicut lex compositionis inter ipsos " initæ diffinivit, ecclesia nostra in dampnorum suorum re- " compensationem annuo et perpetuo quingentarum librarum " redditu sit ditata. Abbates vero, pro quorum dampnis nos " opponebamus, nobis litteris suis patentibus ediderunt, quod " dominus rex Angliæ eos securos reddidisset, quod eis satis- " faceret competenter. Adhuc et pro minoribus ecclesiasticis " personis relaxationem interdicti, quod propter hoc in terram " regis Francorum posueramus suspendentes, litteras domini " regis Angliæ habuimus, quibus firmissime promittebat se " dampnificatis omnibus ad nostrum arbitrium recompensa- " tionem debitam præstiturum. Nos igitur, diligenti cum epi- " scopis et viris prudentibus deliberatione præmissa, præfatam " sententiam duximus relaxandam. Tandem vero, multis ta- " men ante dilationibus impediti, cum et utriusque regum " benivolentia et assensu in libertate pristina solidati, cum " suffraganeorum nostrorum et totius ecclesiæ nostræ flagi- " tatione et consilio ad nostram sumus ecclesiam per Dei " gratiam reversi; in qua nunc valemus et volumus adjuvante " Domino, prout honestati pastorali congruit, præsulari. Fac- " tumque est, Domino disponente, quod Dominica qua canta- " tur 'Dominus illuminatio mea,' fuimus in ecclesia nostra " ab universo clero et populo sollempniter recepti; et a ple- " risque felix est auspicium annotatum, quod quasi denuo " consecrati iterum ad pontificalem cathedram nobis esset sub " eodem cantico procedendum, quo pridem fuimus ad Lincol- " niensis episcopatus gradum apud Andegavim consecrationis " oleo delibuti.[1] Et multo nostræ restitutionis honorem lætitia " festivior illustravit, quod in urbe Rothomagensi karissimos " fratres nostros et coepiscopos Lincolniensem, Saresbirien- " sem, et Exoniensem, casus inopinatus coegit, qui nobis ab " exilio revertentibus gratæ societatis solatia reddiderunt. Et " hanc saltem caritatis vicem vobis reddere volebamus, ut qui " nostræ persecutionis condolendo participes fuistis, in nostræ " consolationis apicibus legatis; quod utcumque vobis com-

Relaxation of the interdict.

He has returned to his church, on the Sunday which was the anniversary of his consecration, the third Sunday after Trinity.

Three English bishops were present.

[1] From this note of date we ascertain that the consecration of Walter of Coutances to the see of Lincoln took place on the 3rd of July, 1183, an important date not given in its proper place by the historians.

A.D. 1196. " municare noster spiritus concupiscit, quod exhiberemus " libentius corporali."

John of Coutances, dean of Rouen, consecrated bishop of Worcester at Ham Abbey, Oct. 20.

Johannes decanus Rothomagensis assensu communi Wigorniensium electus est in episcopum Wigornensem apud——.[1] Quem Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, suffraganeis suis de consuetudine sollempniter convocatis, consecravit prope Lundoniam in abbatia quæ dicitur Hamma, xiii° kalendas Novembris.[2]

Letter of archbishop Hubert to the clergy of York.

[3] " Hubertus Dei gratia Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, totius " Angliæ primas, et apostolicæ sedis legatus, dilectis in Christo " filiis decano, et capitulo Eboracensi, et universis capitulis, " abbatibus et prioribus Eboracensis provinciæ, salutem et " benedictionis gratiam salutarem.

" Volens universalis ecclesiæ sponsus ut sponsa ejus valeret " uberius, totius salutem ex integritate partium resultare, inter " alias eam sui portionem, quam sub occiduo sole plantatam " meminit, in extento virtutis suæ brachio solidare curavit, et " apostolicæ visitationis oleo delibutam, perpetuati nexus " fœdere suo capiti colligare. Verum quia, ipso in Romana " ecclesia, quæ caput est omnium, residente, membrorum in- " dempnitati providetur cautius, et inferior universitas e specula " sublimiori facilius dirigitur in salutem; quod ipse personali- The legatine office in the English church is committed to him. " ter implere non valuit suppleri voluit in ministro. Sed nec " ad ecclesiam Anglicanam vice apostolica visitandam, de " nationibus exteris quemquam assumpsit, de corpore ipsius " elegit super quem adjutorium ejus poneret, ex quo quia filio " nulla in matrem iniqua dominatio grassaretur. Nobis itaque " non ex virtutum vel scientiæ merito in hoc ministerium " evocatis, et jurisdictione per universum regni ambitum dila- " tata, in suscepti officii executionem pro tenore diffinito par-

---

[1] *apud*] A blank in A. and B,

[2] Here Twysden inserts the following paragraph, which is not in our MSS. A. B. C., but only in D.

" Circa dies istos Walterus Ro- " thomagensis archiepiscopus Ro- " mam profectus est, consilium ha- " biturus cum domino papa Celes- " tino super causa quæ vertebatur " inter ipsum archiepiscopum et " dominum Ricardum regem An- " glorum et W. Luxoviensem epi- " scopum, in matricem ecclesiam et " ipsum archiepiscopum violenter " insurgentem." The bishop of Lisieux was William de Ruffiere. The notice seems to be a sort of abstract of part of the letter which follows at pp. 148, 149.

[3] MS. D. omits the following letters, as far as p. 150, below.

" ticulares ecclesias in regno disposuimus circumire, semper " et studiosius id agentes ne vel conscientia et post facto " remorderet interius, vel fama exterius laboraret. Sub Dei " testimonio loquimur confidenter asserentes, quia pro legationis " exercitio nichil amaritudinis conscientia repræsentat; exop- " tantes etiam ne famæ obsequium fides veritatis excedens, " vel pervertat honesta, vel contraria superaddat. Hunc " autem per Dei gratiam fructum collegimus ex labore, quod, " præter obsequium sicut speramus Altissimo præstitum, in " conspectu domini papæ servitus nostra suavitatem odoris " effudit, qui post litteras super indulta legatione transmissas " consequenter et alias destinavit, in quibus et jocunda nostri " famulatus commendatione usus est, et ministerio nostro " ferventem in forma qua incepimus processum injunxit. " Sane quos de provincia nostra visitavimus, considerantes " opera nostra, certatim et sponte scripserunt in testimonium " veritatis, dignum ducentes Romanæ sedi et nostræ visita- " tionis modum, et sui visitatoris diligentiam intimare. Quia " igitur et penes vos in nullo ad legationem contingentibus " credimus excessisse, vestraque insinuatione quod rei veritas " habet, in hac parte pulcrius innotesceet, universitatem vestram " exoramus cohortantes in Domino, et qua fungimur auctori- " tate firmiter injungentes, quatinus zelo rectitudinis et veritatis, " quæ Deus est, singula capitula provinciæ vestræ, singulæ " congregationes, domino papæ, quæ de nostra legatione cog- " noverint fideliter protestentur, quomodo vices apostolicas " executi fuerimus apud omnes, qualiter agro Dominico in " messis abundantiam excolendo commissæ falcis ministerium " curavimus adhibere. Cum hiis etiam volumus Romanæ sedi " certius a singulis designari, quantum nobis in causam procu- " rationis impenderint, vel quatinus eis occasione legationis " fuerimus onerosi. Quod ideo sub hac forma fieri mandamus, " quia sicut de securitate nostra confidentes rei hujus fidele " testimonium formidare non possumus, sic non poteritis quæ " vobis super articulis memoratis constiterint salva honestatis " conscientia subticere. Præterea quia redditus Eboracensis " archiepiscopatus, postquam ipse archiepiscopus a possessione " cecidit, redditusque Dunelmensis episcopatus, dum vacavit, " certissime nostis ex mandato regis confiscatos, et per minis- " tros publicos, qui ad hoc specialiter constituti fuerant, sicut " moris est in regno, in regios usus dumtaxat integre devo- " lutos, præfatis attestationibus distincte subjungi volumus " hujus seriem, et certitudinem veritatis."

A.D. 1196.

The spirit in which he conducts his visitation.

He has received encouragement and approval from Rome.

The visitation has been approved by the churches of his own province.

He asks them to send to Rome an account of the way in which he has visited them, and what has been the cost of his procurations.

He wants also a certificate of the confiscated revenues of York and Durham.

Omnes ecclesiæ conventuales in Eboracensi provincia

A.D. 1196. constitutæ, domino papæ scribunt a paribus in hunc modum ;

The clergy of the province of York, at the request of archbishop Hubert, inform the the pope that he has carried out his visitation with mildness.

" Veritatis filii non essemus si rogati veritati testimonium " perhibere postponeremus. Parumque refert in delicto an " quis verum tacendo in fraudem alterius supprimat, vel in " alterius præjudicium falsum asseverando exprimat. Requi- " siti igitur a venerabili patre et domino Huberto, Dei gratia " Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, apostolicæ sedis legato, quatinus " visitationis suæ modum et diligentiam dignum duceremus " sedi Romanæ intimare, sublimitati vestræ zelo rectitudinis " et veritatis, quæ Deus est, notum facimus, et quæ de legatione " sua cognovimus fideliter protestamur: Quod cum apud " nos visitationem suam exerceret, vices apostolicas diligen- " ter executus fuit, agrum Dominicum fructuose in messis " habundantiam excoluit, nichil nobis moleste intulit, nichil a " nobis exegit, sed in omnibus verbis et operibus modeste se

The revenues of the archbishop are in the king's hands.

" habuit, in nullo onerosus nobis existens. Præterea nove- " rit excellentia vestra quod villas, et possessiones Eboracensis " archiepiscopatus, postquam dominus Eboracensis eas possi- " dere desiit, per publicos ministros regis confiscatas fuisse, " et omnes redditus et proventus ipsarum in regios dumtaxat " usus devolutos fuisse." [1]

Letter of the archbishop of Rouen to Ralph de Diceto.

" W. Rothomagensis archiepiscopus Radulfo decano Lun- " doniensi.

" Discretioni ves- " træ satis innotuit " quantis tribula- " tionibus et jactu- " ris Rothomagensis " ecclesia diutius sit " vexata. Et nos " hæc omnia domi- " num nostrum re- " gem pariter atten- " dere sperabamus, ut saltem nobis et ecclesiæ condolentis

Stet procul Rogerus cum toxi } co.
Longius abhinc abeat suppli }
Solus eat in exterminii } um.
Neque ducem habens nec soci }
In voluminis nostri ser } ie,
Non est locus ejus memor }
Involutus in tanto crimi } ne.
Vix est ut sit subscriptus in margi }
Glosa volatili, vel glosa volatilis.[2]

King Richard has seized Andely.

" animum exhiberet. Ipse vero potius favens prævaricationibus " aliorum, patrimonium ecclesiæ solum et unicum, Andeleium " scilicet, occupavit, et contra prohibitionem nostram in insula

[1] The history of Hubert's legatine visit to York is given in Hoveden, vol. iv.

[2] These lines are inserted in the margin of MSS. A. and B. They refer no doubt to the attempt made by Roger of Ripon to poison the enemies of archbishop Geoffrey, the account of which is given by Hoveden, vol. iv. p. 15.

" nostra munitiones ædificare cœpit, in capite præsumens quod A.D. 1196.
" in membra poterit tractu temporis perniciosius redundare. He has not regarded remonstrances on this and on his detention of the chaplaincy of Blyth.
" Ipsum quidem sicut decuit tam per nos quam per alios
" semel et secundo et tertio convenimus diligenter, ut desis-
" teret ab incepto, et de dampnis villarum nostrarum a suis
" incendio consumptarum, et de aliis dampnis nobis et ecclesiæ
" nostræ illatis per ipsum et suos satisfactionem debitam ex-
" hiberet, et capellaniam nostram de Blia,[1] quam per annum
" et eo amplius in manu sua tenuit, nobis cum fructibus inde
" perceptis restitueret. Ipse vero quasdam responsiones, ar-
" gutas quidem sed minus efficaces nec ratione subnixas, præ-
" tendens, semper perstitit in incepto, nec nostros monitus
" exaudivit. Certe si misereri vellet et parcere vitæ nostræ,
" Andelcio pepercisset, quod nostris et pauperum necessita-
" tibus unicum subsidium habebamus. Hoc autem præfatam Moreover he has begun to fortify a position in the isle of Andely.
" enormitatem inexcusabilem reddit, quod post nostram pro-
" hibitionem et monitus non solum insulam nostram detinet
" occupatam, verum etiam de novo maximam partem dominici
" nostri post insulam nostram occupans, illud fossatis et bar-
" bacanis munire contendit. Nos igitur invasionem manifestam
" nimis crescere cernentes, iterum ad dominum nostrum regem
" cum omni humilitate accessimus. Et ne quid cum impetu The archbishop has approached him as a suppliant and given him three days to make amends.
" et minus discrete facere videremur, adjunctis nobiscum ma-
" joribus ecclesiæ nostræ, instanter et affectuose supplicavimus
" quatinus misericorditer ageret nobiscum, et insulam nostram
" et dominicum nostrum quod usurpaverat nobis restitueret,
" et dampna nostra et nobis et ecclesiæ nostræ illata resarci-
" ret. Adjecimus etiam, quod nisi infra tertium diem quem
" ei assignavimus, super prædictis satisfaceret, ulterius non
" possemus tantam pertinaciam clausis oculis præterire et
" relinquere impunitam. Ad hæc ut contritio adderetur con- Contumacious conduct of the bishop of Lisieux.
" tritioni, et ecclesia nostra intestino affligeretur bello, Wil-
" lelmus Lexoviensis episcopus, spiritu superbiæ cæterisque
" pestibus herebi impulsus adversus eam matrem suam suum
" erexit calcaneum, a qua cum consilio venerabilium fratrum
" et coepiscoporum nostrorum, pro multiplicibus ejus excessibus
" et inobedientia contumaci, præmissa multiplici ammonitione
" ut ad viam veritatis rediret, in interitum carnis vinculo
" anathematis meruit innodari. Cum itaque modis aliquibus
" non potuerimus dominum nostrum regem vel prece vel
" monitis ad emendationem convertere, et terminus sine aliqua
" satisfactione elapsus sit, multiplici necessitate et prudentum
" virorum consilio monemur ascendere ex adverso, et in pro-

[1] *Blia*] Blyth, in Nottinghamshire, where the king had a free chapel.

A.D. 1196. He will bear it no longer, and has set out for Rome on the 7th of November.

" posito firmissimo habemus ulterius non pati tot et tantas " injurias impunitas, nisi dominus noster errorem tantum " maturaverit revocare. Cæterum contra episcopum Lexo- " viensem iter ad sedem apostolicam urgere compulsi, die " Jovis proxima post festum Omnium Sanctorum cœpimus " proficisci, sperantes per Dei gratiam faciem ejusdem episcopi " coram summo pontifice reddere confusam. Cujus excessus " intolerabiles nos invitos ut diximus coegerunt, ut eum " animadversione dignissima puniremus. Vos autem per Dei " misericordiam exoramus, ut nobis fraternæ compassionis " animum rependatis, et vestris nos juvetis orationibus apud " Deum."

A.D. 1197. Walter Map made archdeacon of Oxford, William of Blois precentor and Richard of Kent subdean of Lincoln.

MCXCVII. De cantore Lincolniensi, Waltero Map, in Oxenefordensem archidiaconum translatione facta, Willelmus Blesensis[1] subdecanus Lincolniæ, de liberalitate mera pontificis, subrogatus est in præcentorem. Cum autem de subdecani substitutione tractatus haberetur prolixior inter concanonicos, nec per biduum in unam possent convenire personam, episcopus utens propria potestate Ricardum Kentensem canonicum ejusdem ecclesiæ subdecanum instituit, et ei sedem debitam assignavit vel assignari præcepit, tam in choro quam in capitulo, doctoris gentium Pauli subnixus auctoritate laudabili, qui modis omnibus persuasit quiddam in ecclesia Dei salubriter observandum, scilicet zelus et contentio tollantur de medio, sit pax in desiderio. 1 Cor. iii. 3.

Death of the bishop of Ely.

Willelmus Helyensis episcopus,[2] cancellarius regis, dum Romam tenderet, completis a die consecrationis suæ viiem annis et triginta diebus, diem clausit extremum apud Pictavim. Sepultus autem est in abbatia quadam ordinis Cisterciensis, quæ vocatur abbatia de Pinu.

Illness of archbishop Hubert at Christmas, 1196.

[3]Archiepiscopus Cantuariam veniens incommodo gravi tactus est, ut die Natalis Domini divina celebrare non posset; qui per Dei gratiam convalescens dies Natali-

[1] William of Blois became bishop of Lincoln in 1203.

[2] William Longchamp died Jan. 31, 1197.

[3] *Archiepiscopus . . . expeteret*] om. D.

tios explevit ibidem. Tractatum igitur habiturus cum priore, cum monachis, intravit capitulum xii° kalendas Februarii, sicut dicitur, omnes domesticos, bajulum etiam crucis, relinquens pro foribus. Unus e monachis Johannes de Dovera prævius exstitit cruce suscepta. Quid autem actum sit in congregatione tanta per triduum, ignoratur a multis.[1] Solum hoc celebriter divulgatum est:—pacificus intravit archiepiscopus, pacificus exiit regni justiciarius, nec enim inventum est aliquid in toto collegio, quod publici cognitoris ecclesiastici vel civilis animadversionem expeteret.

A.D. 1197. He visits the convent of Christ Church, Jan. 21.

Circa dies istos episcopo Cameracensi Johanne[2] rebus humanis exempto, tres sunt electi, Walterus, Nicholaus, Stephanus, et infra quadraginta dies sunt defuncti.

Rapid succession of bishops at Cambray.

" Celestinus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, Huberto Can-
" tuariensi archiepiscopo.

Letter from the pope directing the archbishop's action touching the abbot of Thorney.

" Cum de agro Domini lolium messem triticeam oppressurum
" falce sit apostolica resecandum, fraternitati tuæ per apostolica
" scripta mandamus, quatinus[3] abbate de Torneia tam ab
" amministratione quam ab officio abbatiæ amoto, monachis[4]
" auctoritate nostra sublato appellationis obstaculo licentiam
" tribuas in abbatem personam idoneam eligendi. Ad hæc,
" ne prædicti abbatis excessus remaneat impunitus, volumus
" et præsentium tibi auctoritate mandamus, quatinus auctori-
" tate nostra ipsum capi facias, et tam diu carcerali custodiæ
" mancipari, donec super hoc nostræ receperis beneplacitum
" voluntatis. Datum Laterani, pridie nonas Maii, pontificatus
" nostri anno quinto."[5] [May 6, 1195.]

Robertus prior Helyensis,[6] cancellarii frater, xiiii. Robert Longchamp

[1] See Epp. Cantuar., Introduction, p. xciv.

[2] John d'Antoing bishop of Cambray died in 1196; his successor Nicolas de Roeux in 1197; and the next bishop, Hugh d'Oisy, only held the see until 1199.

[3] *quatinus*] si tibi constiterit de præmissis, marked for erasure in A.; om. B. C. It appears from this that an abstract only of the letter is here given.

[4] *monachis*] ipsis, add. A., marked for erasure.

[5] This date is likewise crossed out in rubric in MS. A. It is given in C.; omitted in B.

[6] Robert Longchamp was abbot of S. Mary's at York from 1197 to 1239. He was no doubt the possessor of the Ripley MS. of Ralph de Diceto's collections which is used in the subsequent portion of this volume.

A.D. 1197. is elected abbot of St. Mary's, York, Mar. 17; and blessed Mar. 23.

monachis cum capituli sui litteris a collegio sanctæ Dei genitricis apud Eboracum antiquitus instituto directis, xvi^to^ kalendas Aprilis coram regni justiciario sollempniter electus est in abbatem apud Westmonasterium. Quem Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, benedixit apud Colecestriam in abbatia Sancti Johannis x^o^ kalendas Aprilis. Sua postmodum sollempniter est collocatus in sede iiii^to^ nonas Aprilis.

Richard burns St. Valery, April 15.

Rex Anglorum, milite multo stipatus, castellum Sancti Valerici succendit, adjacentem prædavit provinciam, quinque navium hostibus suis victualia deferentium gubernatores suspendit in patibulo. Quæ repperit in navibus comportata familiæ suæ distribuit xvii^o^ kalendas Maii.

Heavy rains.

Imbrium infusio triduana per Angliam multos exterruit.

Consecration of the bishop of Durham, Apr. 20.

Philippus[1] Dunelmensis electus a domino papa consecratus est Laterani xii^o^ kalendas Maii.

Capture of the bishop of Beauvais, May 19.

Marchadeus, nephariis Brebantinorum vallatus catervis, episcopum Belvacensem,[2] Willelmum de Merlou, multosque cum eis jure belli captos et durissimis constrictos in vinculis, transmisit Rothomagum xiiii^o^ kalendas Junii.

Notice of treaty between Richard and the count of Flanders.

[3] "Notum sit universis hoc scriptum visuris, quod hoc est "fœdus et conventio inter Ricardum regem Angliæ, et Baldewinum comitem Flandriæ et Hainoiæ consanguineum suum; "quod idem rex Angliæ pacem aut treugas cum rege Francorum non faciet nec facere poterit absque voluntate et "assensu ejusdem comitis; nec idem comes faciet aut facere "poterit pacem aut treugam cum rege Francorum absque

---

[1] Philip of Poictiers, bishop of Durham, 1197–1208.

[2] Philip of Dreux, bishop of Beauvais, 1175–1217.

[3] The text of this treaty is printed from the original MS. in the Exchequer, in the Fœdera, i. 67, 68; with a long array of witnesses and sureties: but with no other material difference from that give above. A marginal note in MS. A. "For Mr. "Bele," seems to show that a transcript has been made for some other collection.

" voluntate et assensu prædicti regis Anglorum. Et si forte A.D. 1197.
" de voluntate et assensu utriusque pax aut concordia fieret Treaty of Richard with the count of Flanders.
" inter regem Francorum et eos, et rex Francorum postmodum
" alterutrum guerrearet, tenerentur prædicti rex Anglorum et
" comes ad mutuum subsidium et auxilium sibi invicem con-
" ferendum prout melius potuerunt, et sicut fecerunt tempore
" quo fœdus istud inter eos contractum est. Et sciendum est
" quod hoc fœdus et conventio non solummodo duratura est
" tempore guerræ, sed imperpetuum inter eos et hæredes
" eorum qui terras ipsorum tenebunt post eos, sive pax fuerit
" sive guerra; ita quod si rex Anglorum hoc fœdus et hanc
" conventionem non observaverit, illi qui juraverunt hoc fœdus
" et conventionem hanc tenendam, pro rege Anglorum, mittent
" se in captione præfati comitis infra mensem postquam id
" bona fide scierint, non expectata summonitione dicti comitis.
" Similiter si dictus comes hoc fœdus et hanc conventionem
" non observaverit, illi qui juraverunt hoc fœdus et hanc con-
" ventionem tenendam, pro ipso comite, mittent se in captionem
" dicti regis Angliæ, infra mensem postquam id bona fide
" scierint, non expectata summonitione dicti regis Angliæ.
" Hoc juravit pro ipso rege bona fide tenendum Johannes John is surety for his brother.
" comes Moritonii frater ipsius regis et in animam ejusdem
" regis; et pro se ipso juravit idem comes in animam suam.
" Et comes Flandriæ Baldewinus juravit propria manu hoc
" fœdus et hanc conventionem tenendam bona fide. Hinc
" inde multi testes sunt quos enumerare longum est. Acta[1]
" sunt apud Insulam Andeleii."[2]

" Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus dilecto et speciali Letter of the archbishop of Rouen to Ralph de Diceto.
" amico Radulfo decano Lundoniensi.

" Benedictus Dominus qui non amovit orationem nostram et
" misericordiam Suam a nobis, dans nobis et ecclesiæ nostræ
" pacem in præsenti, in futuro per gratiam Suam daturus

---

[1] *Acta*] Gesta, B.

[2] *Andeleii*] MSS. D. and Otho D. 7 (the burnt MS.), introduce here the following matter which is not in the other MSS., omitting the letter to Ralph de Diceto: —

"Alwoldus Wintoniensis episco-
" pus, canonicos sæculares in ec-
" clesia sancta reperiens, eos ejecit
" et monachos superinduxit. Hugo
" Cestrensis episcopus, in contra-
" rium sentiens, a Coventreia mona-
" chos expulit, sæculares canonicos
" introducens. Hubertus Cantua-
" riensis archiepiscopus, sedis [apo-
" stolicæ] legatus, Hugo Lincolni-
" ensis episcopus, Samson abbas
" Sancti Eadmundi, juxta manda-
" tum summi pontificis Celestini
" papæ tertii, canonicos amoventes a
" Coventreia sollempniter monachos
" reintroduxerunt, præficientes eis
" priorem Jobertum nominatum.
" Gesta sunt hæc xv^to^ kalendas
" Februarii."

A.D. 1197. He announces that he has accepted from Richard an exchange for Andely.

" pacem super pacem. Noverit caritas vestra, qua nos semper " in visceribus Christi tenerius amplexati estis, per excambium auctoritate domini papæ et curiæ Romanæ, cum etiam " consilio multorum virorum prudentum, archiepiscoporum, " episcoporum, abbatum, virorum religiosorum et jurisperitorum initiatum; labore, sollicitudine et meditatione domini " Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, episcopi Wigornensis et electi " Helyensis[1] consummatum, inter dominum regem et nos et " ecclesiam nostram, ad honorem ipsius et commodum reformata esse. Omnes enim intelligentes situm Andeleii paci " ineptum, et guerræ vicinum et expositum, domino etiam " regi ad acquisitionem et defensionem terræ suæ valde congruum; afferentes etiam nobis auctoritates non tantum " super commutatione reddituum ecclesiarum, sed etiam de " translatione sedium hostilitate cogente conscriptas, nos ad

He returned to his church, Oct. 16.

" excambium cum domino rege faciendum induxerunt. Sic " itaque ne nota singularitatis, superbiæ et protervitatis, notari " possimus, consilio tot et tantorum adquievimus xvii° kalendas " Novembris; et ea die suscepti sumus in ecclesia nostra, " præsente domino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, episcopo Wigornensi, omnibus etiam episcopis Normanniæ, abbatibus " multis et magnatibus multis."[2]

Letters of Richard announcing the completion of the negotiation about Andely, Oct. 16.

[3]" Ricardus Dei gratia rex Anglorum, dux Normanniæ, Aquitaniæ, comes Andegaviæ, archiepiscopis, episcopis, abbatibus, " prioribus, comitibus, baronibus, justiciis, senescallis, vicecomitibus, præpositis, ministris, et omnibus baillivis et fidelibus suis, salutem.

" Cum sacrosancta ecclesia sponsa sit Regis regum, et unica " dilecta Illius per Quem reges regnant et principes gubernacula possident, tanto ampliorem ei volumus devotionem et " reverentiam exhibere, quanto certius non regiam tantum " sed omnem a Domino Deo esse credimus potestatem. Unde " sicut venerabilis Rothomagensis ecclesia, quæ inter universas " terrarum nostrarum plurima celebritate dinoscitur enitere, " pro rerum necessitate vel temporum nostris ducit utilitatibus oportuna diligentia consulendum; sic nos ejusdem matris " nostræ commodis et augmentis digna compensatione dignum " ducimus respondere. Sane villa de Andeli et quibusdam " aliis adjacentibus locis, quæ erant Rothomagensis ecclesiæ,

[1] John of Coutances, bishop of Worcester, and Eustace elect of Ely. The latter was consecrated Mar. 8, 1198, and remained bishop until 1215.

[2] *multis*] Valete in Domino semper, add. B.

[3] The following document is printed from our author's text in the Fœdera, i. 68, 69.

" minus sufficienter firmatis, inimicis nostris in terram nos- A.D. 1197. Oct. 16.
" tram Normanniæ per eadem loca patebat ingressus, per quæ Reasons for making the exchange.
" incendiis et rapinis necnon et aliis hostilitatis sævitiis, in
" eandem terram nonnunquam licentius grassabantur. Quo-
" circa venerabili patri nostro Waltero archiepiscopo et capitulo
" Rothomagensi debitum habentibus ad nostra et prædictæ
" terræ nostræ dampna respectum, facta est permutatio inter
" ecclesiam Rothomagensem et archiepiscopum Rothomagensem
" Walterum ex una parte, et nos ex altera parte, de manerio
" de Andeli in hac forma: scilicet quod idem archiepiscopus Details of the exchange.
" de conscientia et voluntate domini papæ Celestini tertii, et
" de assensu capituli Rothomagensis ecclesiæ, et coepiscopo-
" rum suorum, et cleri ejusdem archiepiscopatus, concessit et
" imperpetuum quietum clamavit nobis et hæredibus nostris
" prædictum manerium de Andeli, cum novo castello de Rupe
" et cum foresta et cum omnibus pertinentiis aliis et libertati-
" bus suis, exceptis ecclesiis et præbendis[1] militum, et ex-
" cepto manerio de Fraxinis cum pertinentiis suis, quæ omnia
" idem archiepiscopus ecclesiæ Rothomagensi et sibi et suc-
" cessoribus suis retinuit, cum omnibus libertatibus et liberis
" consuetudinibus suis, et cum omni integritate sua imperpe-
" tuum. Ita quod tam milites quam clerici et omnes homines
" tam de feodo[2] quam de præbendis, sequentur molendina
" de Andeli, sicut consueverunt et debent, et moltura erit
" nostra; archiepiscopus autem et homines sui de Fraxinis
" molent ubi idem archiepiscopus volet. Et si voluerint mo-
" lere apud Andeli dabunt molturas suas sicut alii ibidem
" molentes. In excambium autem prædicti manerii de Andeli
" cum pertinentiis, concessimus et imperpetuum quieta cla-
" mavimus ecclesiæ Rothomagensi, et prædicto archiepiscopo
" et successoribus suis, omnia molendina quæ nos habuimus
" Rothomagi, quando hæc permutatio facta est, integre cum
" omni sequela et moltura sua, sine aliquo retinemento eorum
" quæ ad molendina pertinent vel ad molturam, et cum om-
" nibus libertatibus et liberis consuetudinibus quas solent et
" debent habere; nec alicui alii licebit molendinum ibidem
" facere, ad detrimentum prædictorum molendinorum; et de-
" bet archiepiscopus solvere elemosinas antiquitus statutas de
" eisdem molendinis. Concessimus etiam eis villam de Diepe
" et villam de Butéiles cum omnibus pertinentiis et liberta-
" tibus et liberis consuetudinibus suis, exceptis elemosinis
" constitutis in manerio de Diepe a nobis et antecessoribus
" nostris, quarum summa est cclxxii. libræ Andegavensium,
" quæ debent solvi per manum prædicti archiepiscopi et suc-

[1] *præbendis*] et feodis, ins. B. | [2] *feodo*] militum, ins. B.

A.D. 1197. Oct. 16. Exchange of Andely.

" cessorum suorum his quibus assignatæ sunt. Concessimus
" eidem manerium de Lovers cum omnibus pertinentiis et
" libertatibus et liberis consuetudinibus suis cum ministerio
" de Lovers, salvis ad opus nostrum venatione nostra et
" destructione forestæ, ita tamen quod non sit in regardo.
" Concessimus etiam eis totam forestam de Alihermont, cum
" feris et omnibus aliis pertinentiis et libertatibus suis, sicut
" eam habuimus. Hæc autem omnia, in excambium prædicti
" manerii de Andeleio cum prædictis pertinentiis data, habe-
" bunt ecclesia Rothomagi et prædictus archiepiscopus et
" successores sui imperpetuum, et cum omnibus libertatibus
" et liberis consuetudinibus suis, sicut prædictum est. Ho-
" mines autem prædicti archiepiscopi de præfato excambio
" habebunt omnes libertates et liberas consuetudines quas
" habuerunt homines de Andeleio, dum manerium illud esset
" in manu ipsius archiepiscopi. Hæc etiam omnia quæ idem
" archiepiscopus in hoc excambio recepit, warantizabimus nos
" et hæredes nostri ecclesiæ Rothomagensi, et prædicto archi-
" episcopo et successoribus suis imperpetuum contra omnes
" homines: ita quod si aliquis excambium aliquod est recepturus
" pro aliquo prædictorum, quæ memoratus archiepiscopus
" hic recepit, nos vel hæredes nostri faciemus illud excam-
" bium, et ecclesia Rothomagensis hæc omnia prædicta imper-
" petuum pacifice possidebit. Nos vero, quantum potest rex,
" excommunicamus, et concedimus quod incurrat indignationem
" omnipotentis Dei, quicumque contra hoc facinus venerit.
" Testibus his, Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, Johanne
" Wigornensi, Hugone Conventrensi, Savarico Batoniensi,
" Henrico Bajocensi,[1] Lisiardo Sagiensi, Willelmo Lexoviensi,
" Willelmo Constantiensi episcopis; Willelmo Abrincensi electo,
" R. Sanctæ Trinitatis de Monte Rothomagi, Reginaldo Sancti
" Wandregeri, Victore Sancti Georgii, Arturo Ulterioris por-
" tus, Osberto de Pratellis, de Augo, de Cornevilla, abbatibus;
" Johanne comite de Moritonio, Otone comite Pictavensi,
" Radulfo comite de Albemarla, Radulfo comite de Augo,
" Willelmo Marescallo comite de Striguilla, Willelmo filio
" Radulfi senescalli Normanniæ, Roberto de Turneham se-
" nescallo Andegaviæ, Willelmo de Humet constabulario
" Normanniæ, Hugone Brun, G. de Lisinnan, Willelmo de
" Rupibus, Radulfo comite de Tancarvilla, W. Martel, Radulfo
" Tessun, G. de Say, Giliberto filio Reinfredi, Roberto de
" Harecort, et multis aliis. Datum per manum E. Eliensis
" electi vices cancellarii tunc agentis, apud Rothomagum,
" anno ab Incarnatione Domini M°C°XC°VII°, XVI^to die Octobris,
" anno regni nostri octavo."

[1] *Bajocensi*] Garino Ebroicensi, ins. B., and, in a late hand, C.

Si quis fuerit inter canonicos Rothomagenses fidus antiquitatum interpres et assertor præcipuus, qui dixerit Karolum magnum ecclesiæ Rothomagensi nomine dotis Andeleium contulisse, recolligat secum quod annus octingentesimus quartus decimus ab Incarnatione Domini tunc temporis effluebat, quando Karolus Aquisgrani sepultus est. Recolligat etiam quod ab anno prædicto postmodum post trescentos octoginta tres annos Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus ab Anglorum rege Ricardo receperit in excambium Andeleii commodissimum, et intelliget archiepiscopi prædicti sollicitudinem et industriam post labores quamplurimos et expensas multiplices ecclesiæ suæ providisse viriliter et profuisse quam plurimum. Cui per Dei gratiam et providebit et proderit semper in posterum per tempora longa.[1]

A.D. 1197. Note on the original gift of Andely by Charles the Great.

Good wishes for archbishop Walter

"Walterus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus karissimo et speciali amico suo Radulfo Lundoniensi decano se totum, et cum silentio præstolari adventum Domini.

Letter of the archbishop to Ralph de Diceto.

Eccles. ii. 16. "Sicut testantur sacra eloquia, 'Væ illis qui perdiderunt 'sustinentiam,' sustinuimus mala sic castigati, apprehendimus disciplinam parati in flagella Domini; aporiati sed non 2 Cor. iv. 8. destituti; temptati rapinis, asperitatibus viarum, intemperiei aeris, malignantium insidiis expositi, sed non defecimus: Dominus enim ne collideremur supposuit manum Suam; imperavit ventis et mari, et facta est tranquillitas magna; oculo misericordiæ Suæ respexit nos et ecclesiam nostram, et cessavit quassatio, pace reddita ecclesiæ. Dominus enim, in Cujus manu corda sunt regum, cor domini tetigit, ut desiderio desideraret quæ ad pacem essent et ampliationem Rothomagensis ecclesiæ. Cujus votum et desiderium Dominus prospiciens, labore, sollicitudine et ministerio domini Cantuariensis et Johannis Wigornensis episcopi et Eustachii Eliensis electi effectui mancipavit. Istis enim mediantibus et inter partes discurrentibus, per excambium domino regi ad tuitionem et adquisitionem terræ suæ accommodum, ecclesiæ Rothomagensi et nobis saluberrimum et honestum, ut puta voluntati

Thanksgiving for the restoration of peace.

It was negotiated by three English prelates.

[1] *Si quis . . . longa*] This paragraph is found in MSS. A. and B. inserted in the margin, in the same hand as the text. It is not in C., and is omitted by Twysden.

A.D. 1197. The conclusion of the exchange.

" domini papæ et curiæ Romanæ, necnon et aliorum multo-
" rum archiepiscoporum, episcoporum, abbatum, clericorum et
" aliorum virorum religiosorum et jurisperitorum consenta-
" neum, pax inter regem et nos et ecclesiam nostram refor-
" mata est. In quo excambio ecclesia Rothomagensis juxta
" veridicam assertionem omnium comprovincialium in quin-
" gentis libris et eo amplius excrevit. Hæc autem commutatio
" scriptis autenticis anathemate a domino rege, archiepiscopis,
" episcopis, abbatibus, sacerdotibus innumerabilibus in viola-
" tores prolato, testibus etiam magnatibus omnibus Norman-
" niæ adhibitis, ut perpetuam et incommutabilem optineat
" firmitatem, et ecclesia Rothomagensis pace gaudeat inviola-
It is to be confirmed by the pope. " bili et irrefragabili, roborata et confirmata est, auctoritate
" et scripto autentico domini papæ, per gratiam Dei ad preces
" et instantiam domini regis et aliorum magnatum et præla-
" torum ecclesiæ corroboranda. Hæc autem dignum duximus
" vobis exponenda, quia semper nobiscum flevistis et compassi
" estis, ut cum gaudentibus gaudeatis, eo quod concupiscentes
" semper concupieritis ea quæ Dei sunt, augmentum et hono-
" rem sanctæ ecclesiæ, cujus instantia cotidiana sollicitudinem
" vestram esse credimus."

Archbishop Hubert returns from Normandy to Lambeth, Nov. 8;

Ab ea die qua Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, mandato regis transfretaturus, a Lamheia recessit, ad eum usque diem quo revertens in Angliam locum rediit ad eundem, vi^to scilicet idus Novembris, septimanæ viginti completæ sunt, additis vi. diebus. Archiepiscopus, cum rege moram faciens in Normanniam, multorum necessitatibus providit utilitatibus. Episcopum itaque Belvacensem fascibus geminis, episcopi scilicet et comitis, juxta suorum prærogativam antecessorum, sicut jactat, antiquitus decoratum, militaribus armis accinctum, captum jure belli, durissimis audivit constrictum in vinculis, quem per gratiam regis cum multa supplicatione multo levioribus vix arctari promeruit. Rothomagensem ecclesiam a divinorum celebratione suspensam reconciliavit. Sollempniter fœdus ineundum inter regem Anglorum, et Baldewinum Flandrensium comitem, et successores eorum, certis distinxit capitulis. Inter dominum regem et Walterum Rothomagensem archiepiscopum paci reformandæ sollicitudinem impendit operosissimam, sicut rei probavit eventus:

having obtained milder treatment for the bishop of Beauvais, concluded a treaty with Flanders, and an agreement between Richard and the church of Rouen.

sicut etiam excambium Andelcii datum ecclesiæ Rothomagensi perpetuo duraturum manifeste declarat. A.D. 1197.

MCXCVIII. Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus clericos, quos Hugo Cestrensis episcopus ejectis monachis apud Coventreiam collocaverat, summi pontificis auctoritate munitus amovit, monachos reintroducens ibidem xv^to^ kalendas Februarii.[1] A.D. 1198. Jan. 18. Removal of canons from Coventry.

Ab ea die qua Willelmus Elyensis episcopus in abbatia de Pinu sepultus est, ad eum usque diem quo decanus Saresbiriensis Eustachius electus est in Eliensem episcopum xxvii. septimanæ fluxerunt. Ab electione facta sollempniter apud Vallem Rodoli die festo beati Laurentii martyris ad illud usque tempus quo prædictus electus in Angliam veniens, ab archiepiscopo Huberto munus consecrationis accepit viii^to^ idus Marcii, xxx^ta^ perfectas computamus ebdomadas. Electionem in Normannia factam, præsentationem, postulationem, factam apud Westmonasterium in capella Sanctæ Katerinæ, prior Elyensis Johannes complevit, die Dominica qua cantatur "Lætare Jerusalem." Astiterunt archiepiscopo ix. episcopi.[2] Eustace, dean of Salisbury, elected Aug. 10, 1197, at Vaudreuil, and consecrated bishop of Ely, Mar. 8, at Westminster.

Celestino papa tertio rebus humanis exempto, Lotharius cardinalis diaconus electus est in summum pontificem v^to^ idus Januarii, vocatus Innocentius papa tertius. Nono kalendas Marcii presbiter ordinatus est. In cathedra Sancti Petri consecratus est episcopus, et in Sancti Petri cathedra collocatus.[3] [4] Innocent III. consecrated, Feb. 22.

---

[1] Here MS. B. ends. The continuation down to the year 1272 is appended to the Capitula Ymaginum, which follow here in that MS. See above, vol. i. pp. 267–286. With the word *Hubertus* the more regular scribe's hand is resumed in MS. A.

[2] *Ab ea . . . episcopi*] om. D.

[3] *collocatus*] Eustachius decanus Saresbiriensis in episcopum Elyensem electus viii° idus Martii consecratus est apud Westmonasterium, ins. Twysden from D.

[4] MS. A. has this note in the margin, in a hand of the 13th century, "Ordo prædicatorum incepit "qui Jacobitæ voluerunt appel- "lari."

A.D. 1198. Letter of the pope to the archbishop of Rouen, confirming the exchange of Andely.

"Innocentius episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabili
" fratri Waltero Rothomagensi archiepiscopo, salutem et apo-
" stolicam benedictionem.

"Cum emergentium litigia quæstionum vix possint sine
" alterutrius litigantium læsione judicialiter diffiniri, sed quando
" partes inter se super mota quæstione honeste conveniunt,
" tanto libentius compositioni eorum præsidium apostolicum
" impertimur, quanto per hoc neutrum lædimus, et amplius
" utrumque juvamus. Intelleximus siquidem tam ex litteris
" tuis quam karissimi in Christo filii nostri Ricardi Angliæ
" regis illustris, et plurium aliorum, quod super discordia
" quæ inter te et eundem regem super villam Andeliaci, cum
" Rupe ac insula, mota fuerat, regia serenitas evangelicum
" illud attendens, 'Qui se humiliat exaltabitur,' et 'quanto
" 'major es humilia te in omnibus,' humiliavit magnificen-
" tiam suam et severitatem regiam passus est emolliri, ut ad
" honorem Ejus Cui [servire] regnare est amicabilem tecum
" compositionem iniret, et in utilitatem Rothomagensis eccle-
" siæ molendina quæ habuit apud Rothomagum, cum villis
" de Diepa et Boteiles, et manerio de Lovers, cum omnibus
" pertinentiis et libertatibus suis, et ministerio de Lovers,
" et foresta de Aliermont, sicut in autentico ejusdem regis
" confecto exinde plenius continetur, tecum perpetuo commu-
" taret. Nos igitur permutationem ipsam sicut amicabiliter
" facta est, et ab utraque parte recepta, et autentico ipsius
" regis exprimitur, auctoritate apostolica confirmamus, et
" præsentis scripti patrocinio communimus. Ad majorem
" autem hujus nostræ confirmationis evidentiam, autenticum
" ipsum de verbo ad verbum nostris duximus litteris expri-
" mendum, quod tale est:—'Ricardus Dei gratia rex Angliæ,
" 'dux Normanniæ, Aquitaniæ, comes Andegaviæ, archiepi-
" 'scopis, episcopis, abbatibus, prioribus, comitibus, baronibus,
" 'justiciariis, senescallis, vicecomitibus, præpositis, ministris,
" 'bailivis, et omnibus fidelibus suis salutem. Cum sacro-
" 'sancta ecclesia sponsa sit Regis regum et unica dilecta
" 'Illius per Quem reges regnant et principes gubernacula
" 'possident, tanto ampliorem ei volumus devotionem et
" 'reverentiam exhibere, quanto certius non regiam tantum,
" 'sed omnem a Domino suo esse credimus potestatem.
" 'Unde sicut venerabilis Rothomagensis ecclesia, quæ inter
" 'universas terrarum nostrarum plurima celebritate dinos-
" 'citur enitere, pro rerum necessitate vel temporum nostris
" 'ducit utilitatibus oportuna diligentia consulendum: sic
" 'nos ejusdem matris nostræ commodis et augmentis digna

" ' compensatione dignum ducimus respondere. Sane villa A.D. 1193.
" ' Andeliaci et quibusdam aliis adjacentibus locis quæ erant Papal confirmation of the exchange of Andely.
" ' Rothomagensis ecclesiæ minus sufficienter firmatis, inimicis
" ' nostris in terram nostram Normanniæ per eadem loca
" ' patebat ingressus, per quæ incendiis et rapinis, necnon
" ' et aliis hostilitatis sævitiis in eandem terram nonnun-
" ' quam licentius grassabantur. Quocirca venerabili patre
" ' Waltero archiepiscopo et capitulo Rothomagensi debitum
" ' habentibus ad nostra et prædictæ terræ nostræ dampna
" ' respectum, facta est hæc permutatio inter ecclesiam Rotho-
" ' magensem et archiepiscopum Rothomagensem Walterum
" ' ex una parte, et nos ex altera parte, de manerio de Andeli
" ' in hac forma: scilicet quod idem archiepiscopus de con-
" ' scientia et voluntate domini papæ Celestini tertii, et de
" ' assensu capituli Rothomagensis ecclesiæ, et coepiscoporum
" ' suorum, et cleri ejusdem archiepiscopatus, concessit et im-
" ' perpetuum quietum clamavit nobis et hæredibus nostris
" ' prædictum manerium de Andeli, cum novo castello de
" ' Rupe, et cum foresta, et cum omnibus aliis pertinentiis et
" ' libertatibus suis, exceptis ecclesiis, præbendis, et feodis
" ' militum, et excepto manerio de Fraxinis cum pertinentiis
" ' suis, quæ omnia idem archiepiscopus ecclesiæ Rothoma-
" ' gensi, et sibi, et successoribus suis retinuit, cum omnibus
" ' libertatibus et liberis consuetudinibus suis, et cum omni
" ' integritate sua imperpetuum; ita quod tam milites quam
" ' clerici, et omnes homines tam de feodis militum quam de
" ' præbendis sequentur molendina de Andeli, sicut consueve-
" ' runt et debent, et moltura erit nostra. Archiepiscopus
" ' autem et homines sui de Fraxinis molent ubi idem archi-
" ' episcopus volet, et, si voluerint molere apud Andeli, dabunt
" ' molturas suas sicut alii ibidem molentes. In escambium
" ' autem prædicti manerii de Andeli cum pertinentiis conces-
" ' simus, et imperpetuum quieta clamavimus, ecclesiæ Rotho-
" ' magensi et prædicto archiepiscopo et successoribus suis,
" ' omnia molendina quæ nos habuimus Rothomagi, quando
" ' hæc permutatio facta fuit, integre cum omni sequela et
" ' moltura sua, sine aliquo retinemento eorum quæ ad molen-
" ' dina pertinent vel ad molturam, et cum omnibus libertati-
" ' bus et liberis consuetudinibus quas solent et debent habere.
" ' Nec alicui alii licebit molendinum facere ibidem ad de-
" ' trimentum prædictorum molendinorum; et debet archi-
" ' episcopus solvere eleemosinas antiquitus statutas de eis-
" ' dem molendinis. Concessimus etiam villam de Diepe, et
" ' villam de Boteilles, cum omnibus pertinentiis et libertati-
" ' bus et liberis consuetudinibus suis, exceptis elemosinis

A.D. 1198. Papal confirmation of the exchange of Andely.

" ' constitutis in manerio de Diepa a nobis et antecessoribus
" ' nostris, quarum summa est trecentæ et septuaginta duæ
" ' libræ, quæ debent solvi per manum prædicti archiepiscopi
" ' et successorum suorum his quibus assignatæ sunt. Con-
" ' cessimus eisdem manerium de Lovers cum omnibus perti-
" ' nentiis et libertatibus et liberis consuetudinibus suis, cum
" ' ministerio de Lovers, salvis ad opus nostrum venatione
" ' nostra et destructione forestæ, ita tamen quod non sit
" ' in rewardo. Concessimus etiam eis totam forestam de Ali-
" ' ermont, cum feris et omnibus aliis pertinentiis et liber-
" ' tatibus suis sicut eam habuimus. Hæc autem omnia in
" ' escambium prædicti manerii de Andeli, cum prædictis
" ' pertinentiis data, habebunt ecclesia Rothomagensis et
" ' prædictus archiepiscopus et successores sui imperpetuum,
" ' cum omnibus libertatibus et liberis consuetudinibus suis
" ' sicut prædictum est. Homines autem prædicti archiepi-
" ' scopi de prædicto escambio habebunt omnes libertates et
" ' liberas consuetudines quas habuerunt homines de Andeli
" ' dum manerium illud esset in manu ipsius archiepiscopi.
" ' Hæc etiam omnia quæ idem archiepiscopus in hoc escam-
" ' bio recepit, warantizabimus nos et hæredes nostri ecclesiæ
" ' Rothomagensi, et prædicto archiepiscopo et successoribus
" ' suis, imperpetuum contra omnes homines, ita quod si
" ' aliquis escambium aliquod est recepturus pro aliquo præ-
" ' dictorum quæ memoratus archiepiscopus hic recepit, nos
" ' vel hæredes nostri faciemus illud excambium, et ecclesia
" ' Rothomagensis hæc omnia prædicta imperpetuum pacifice
" ' possidebit. Nos autem quantum rex potest excommuni-
" ' camus, et concedimus quod incurrat indignationem omni-
" ' potentis Dei quicumque contra hoc factum venerit. Multi
" ' sunt testes.' "[1]

May 8. Rain of blood at Andely.

VIII^vo idus Maii pluit sanguis undatim super ædificantes turrim apud Andeleium in territorio Rothomagensi.

The bishop of Chester consecrated, June 21.

Galfridus[2] Cestrensis electus ad petitionem et præsentationem Joberti Coventrensis prioris Cantuariæ con-

---

[1] *testes*] hinc inde, cardinales, episcopi tam Normanniæ quam Angliæ; data Romæ apud Sanctum Petrum vi^to kalendas Maii, add. D., omitting the following paragraph; which is written over an erasure in MS. A., but in the same hand. See Innoc. Epp., ed. Baluze, i. 58; ep. 108.

[2] Geoffrey Muschamp, bishop of Lichfield and Coventry, 1198–1208.

secratus est xi° kalendas Julii. Sollempnia celebravit Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus. A.D.1193

Othoni nepoti regis Anglorum Ricardi redditum est Aquisgranum, quod obsederat, vi^to^ idus Julii. In crastino desponsavit unicam filiam et hæredem ducis Brebantiæ septennem. Quarto vero idus ejusdem mensis coronatus est ab Adulfo Colonensi archiepiscopo, et sedem ascendit Augustorum. Coronation of Otho IV. July 12.

In marchia principales defensivæ locorum, prope munitionem illam quæ vocatur Castellum Matildis, ad pugnam accincti concurrerunt hostiliter. In prima caterva Walensium collocati sunt pedites tantum. In secunda, pedites et equites. In tertia, tantum equites. In prima caterva Francorum collocati sunt pedites. Equites in secunda. Totum robur exercitus in tertia fuit caterva. Sub primo congressu terga verterunt Walenses, quorum spolia data sunt in rapinam. Multi capti sunt, interfecti quamplures, quorum numerus excrevit, sicut dicitur, ad tria milia pugnatorum, die festo sancti martyris Ypoliti. Propheticum igitur illud impletum est, "Catuli rugientis stragem non mini- " mam ex obstantibus facient."[1] Battle on the Welsh marches. Defeat of the Welsh, Aug. 13.

Comes Flandriæ venit ante villam Sancti Audomari cum exercitu suo viii^vo^ idus Septembris, et villam obsedit per tres septimanas. Siege of S. Omer by the count of Flanders, Sept. 6.

Ricardus bonæ memoriæ Lundoniensis episcopus tertius, cum sedisset annis octo, mensibus octo, diebus decem, diem clausit extremum iiii^to^ idus Septembris. Death of the bishop of London, Sept. 16.

Dum comes prædictus esset in obsidione, venit nuncius regis Franciæ, litteras ex parte regis ferens dicentes, quod si castellanus et burgenses villam suam tenere et defendere possent erga comitem usque pridie kalendas Octobris, ad succurrendum eis cum exercitu magno die illa veniret; si non veniret, castellanus The king of France proposes to relieve S. Omer before Sept. 30.

[1] A part of the prophecy of Merlin; Geoff. Mon., lib. vii. c. 3.

A.D. 1198. S. Omer surrendered.

et burgenses de villa sua ad melius quod possent facerent. Sicque reddita fuit villa comiti.

Richard takes Courcelles, Sept. 27;

Ricardus rex Anglorum intravit terram regis Francorum cum exercitu magno v^to^ kalendas Octobris, et cepit castellum de Curcelles et Burriz, et tertium castrum Sirefontanum. Die crastina rex Francorum venit de Mantua cum cccc^tis^ militibus, et servientibus et communis suis, ad succurrendum castro de Curcelles, quod non putavit esse captum. Rex igitur Anglorum, ex quo eum venire cognovit, insecutus est eum in fugam conversum, et in tanta districtione posuit in portam Gisortii, quod pons fractus est sub illo, submersis de suis xx^ti^ militibus. Interim rex Angliæ propria lancea prostravit Mathæum de Monte Morenciun et Alanum de Rusci et Fulconem de Gilervalle, et captos detinuit. Et capti sunt cum eis usque ad centum milites, et servientes quorum non est numerus. Dextrarii capti sunt ducenti, quorum septies viginti cooperti fuerunt ferro.[1]

and pursues Philip to Gisors.

Prisoners taken.

Letter of the archbishop of Canterbury to the dean and chapter of S. Paul's.

"Hubertus Dei gratia Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, totius
" Angliæ primas, dilectis in Christo filiis decano et capitulo
" ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli Lundoniensis, salutem, gratiam, et be-
" nedictionem.

"Quia vos et ecclesiam vestram sincere diligimus, et ea
" efficiendi quæ vobis et eidem ecclesiæ vestræ ad honorem
" cedant et utilitatem, promptam gerimus voluntatem, ideo
" quantis potuimus apud dominum regem precibus pro vobis
" institimus, ut desolatæ ecclesiæ vestræ pastorem annueret
" ydoneum provideri. Quod sui gratia ad supplicationem
" nostram annuit, sicut ex litteris ejus perpendere poteritis,
" quas vobis, ut septem ex capitulo vestro ad eum et ad nos
" in octavis Sancti Andreæ cum litteris ratihabitionis capituli
" pro electione facienda mittantur, transmittit. Quapropter
" vobis mandamus et consulimus, quatinus ad terminum in
" litteris ipsius domini regis nominatum, secundum quod in
" eisdem litteris continetur, septem ex vobis ad eum et ad
" nos cum litteris ratihabitionis patentibus transmittatis; ita

They are to send seven canons to elect a bishop on Dec. 7.

[1] MS. D. omits what follows as far as "Ab apostolo Petro," p. 165, below.

" quod W.[1] præcentor ecclesiæ vestræ qui nobiscum in Nor- A.D. 1198.
" mannia moratur septimus ex eis nominetur."

" Ricardus Dei gratia rex Anglorum, dux Normanniæ, Nov. 9.
" Aquitanniæ, comes Andegaviæ, dilectis sibi decano et capi- Letter of the king to the chapter
" tulo Sancti Pauli Lundoniensis salutem. ordering the
" Sciatis quod bonum animum et bonam voluntatem habemus attendance
" consulendi ecclesiæ vestræ quæ pastore suo desolata est. of seven canons on
" Unde ob reverentiam Sancti Pauli in cujus honore ecclesia Dec. 7.
" vestra fundata est, et ad petitionem domini Cantuariensis
" archiepiscopi, ei in pastore providere volumus. Et ideo vobis
" mandamus, quod mittatis ad nos septem de discretioribus
" canonicis ecclesiæ vestræ, et coram prædicto archiepiscopo,
" ita quod sint ad nos in octavis Sancti Andreæ cum litteris
" vestris de rato, ad eligendum ydoneum pastorem, secundum
" Deum et libertatem ecclesiæ vestræ. Teste meipso apud
" rupem Andeleii, ix^no^ die Novembris."

MCXCIX. Ab[2] apostolo Petro, cui dictum est a Do- A.D. 1199.
S. Matt. xvi. 18. mino nostro Jesu Christo, "Tu es Petrus, et super Innocent III. is the 184th pope.
" hanc petram ædificabo ecclesiam Meam," in catholoqo summorum pontificum labentibus annorum curriculis, Innocentius papa tertius qui modo sedet inventus est centesimus octogesimus quartus. Inventum est et aliud non leviter prætereundum: Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus prothomartyr in Anglia temporibus Normannorum, ob triumphalem sui sanguinis effusionem, apud Lameheyam in nomine suo fundatam, omnium The church of S. Thomas at Lambeth demolished by papal authority; of which the right is very questionable.
hominum veneratione condignam, magnificavit ecclesiam, quam Baldewinus inchoavit archiepiscopus, quam et Hubertus Baldewini successor, Innocentio papa tertio monachis Cantuariensibus, si fas est dicere, nimium et subitum impendente favorem, sumptibus propriis, proh dolor! demolitus est ad confusionem multorum.[3] Data fuit Petro potestas ædificandi, potestas multiplicandi, potestas transferendi sedes, sed qua lege, quo canone sit indulta licentia diruendi locum sanctum, judicet Ipse qui potestatem dedit ædificandi.

---

[1] Walter Fitz Walter.
[2] *Ab*] Here MS. D. resumes.
[3] The church at Lambeth was demolished soon after Jan. 27, 1199. See Epp. Cantuar., p. clxiv.

A.D. 1199. Consecration of the bishop of London, May 23.

Willelmus[1] genere Normannus, ecclesiæ Lundoniensis canonicus, ad postulationem Radulfi de Diceto decani Lundoniæ, munus consecrationis accepit apud Westmonasterium in capella Sanctæ Katerinæ per manum Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, præsentibus tredecim episcopis, x° kalendas Junii.

Richard mortally wounded, Mar. 26;

Ricardus rex Anglorum cum regnasset annis novem, mensibus sex, diebus decem et novem, in Aquitannico ducatu, Lemovico territorio, castello Chaluz, vii^mo^ kalendas Aprilis a Petro Basilii sagitta percussus est; et

dies, April 6, and is buried at Fontevraud.

postmodum viii^vo^ idus Aprilis, die Martis, vir operi Martio deputatus, diem clausit extremum apud prædictum castellum. Sepultus autem est apud Fontem Ebraldi secus pedes patris sui regis Henrici secundi.

John made duke of Normandy, April 25;

Johannes Hyberniæ dominus, fratris sui Ricardi regis hæres [legittimus],[2] de ducatu Normanniæ per ensem et gladium potestatem accepit apud Rothomagum per manum Walteri Rothomagensis archiepiscopi vii° kalendas Maii. Qui cum venisset in Angliam, Ascensionis Dominicæ die sollempni sollempniter est unctus in

crowned king, May 27.

regem apud Westmonasterium per manum Huberti Cantuariensis archiepiscopi vi^to^ kalendas Junii.[3]

John visits Canterbury and S. Edmund's, and leaves England, June 19.

Johannes rex Angliæ, sub ipso coronationis suæ initio visitans Sanctum Thomam et postea Sanctum Eadmundum, dies Pentecostes egit apud Norhamtoniam. Qui postea collecta multitudine militum et peditum et navium apud Sorham transfretavit xiii^to^ kalendas Julii.

His divorce. Celebratum est divortium inter Johannem regem Angliæ et filiam comitis Glocestriæ in Normannia, ab

---

[1] William of S. Mere l'Eglise, bishop, 1199–1221.

[2] *legittimus*] erased in A.

[3] *Junii*] Here MS. A., which has up to this point furnished the text of this edition, ends: and MS. C., the S. Alban's copy, which has faithfully followed MS. A., here ceases to represent the text of our author, and has a short independent continuation to A.D. 1215. From this point we have to depend on the text of MS. D.; the companion MS. Otho D. 7, which Twysden probably used, being almost entirely destroyed by fire, and only available for a reference here and there. What remains therefore cannot be certainly affirmed to be the work of Ralph de Diceto.

episcopis Lisoviensi, Bajocensi, Abrincensi, et aliis episcopis qui interfuerant, quam ipse tempore patris permissione Romanæ ecclesiæ duxerat in uxorem cum comitatibus de Glocestria, de Sumersate, de Devenesire, de Cornewaille, et aliis quampluribus per Angliam honoribus. Sed ille, sublimioris thori spe raptatus, consilio pravorum eam abegit, unde magnam summi pontificis, scilicet Innocentii tertii, et totius curiæ Romanæ indignationem incurrit, præsumens temere contra leges et canones dissolvere quod eorum fuerat auctoritate colligatum. A.D. 1199. Contrary to the canons.

Dominus Johannes rex Angliæ Arturum filium fratris sui Galfridi comitis Britanniæ venientem ad se, et ejus se per omnia subicientem voluntati, minus caute dimisit a se. At ille transtulit se ad regem Franciæ, qui eum, bonis ejus inhians, facit nutrire cum filio suo Parisius. Arthur goes over to Philip.

Bellum factum est horribile inter Petrum comitem Nivernensem et Herveum de Donziaco prope abbatiam Sancti Laurentii, non longe a Donziaco, iij^tio nonas Augusti. Sed comes prædictus cum coterellis quos rex Franciæ ei utpote cognato suo in subsidium miserat, victus aufugit. Battle between the count of Nevers and Hervey of Donzy, Aug. 3.

Nec multo post prædictus comes conniventia regis Franciæ dedit filiam suam unicam et hæredem prædicto Herveo in conjugem cum comitatu, retentis sibi quoad viveret Autisiodoro, et Turneire, cum omni honore Autisiodorensi et Turnerensi. Peace and marriage.

Concilium actum est apud Digun in Burgundia, præsidente Petro de Chapes presbytero cardinali,[1] Dominica secunda Adventus Domini, qua scilicet cantatur "Populus Syon." Ubi ad vocationem prædicti cardinalis convenerunt archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates et priores omnes a mari Britannico usque ad Alpium juga, ut de resumenda relicta regis Franciæ, sorore videlicet illustris regis Danemarchiæ, tractarent, et prædictum regem ad eam resumendam compellerent, vel terram Council at Dijon, under Peter of Capua, Dec. 5, on the question of Philip's divorce.

[1] Peter of Capua, cardinal deacon of S. Mary in Via Lata.

A.D. 1199. Sentence deferred.

ejus interdicto supponerent, sed in eo negotio meticulosæ continentiæ fucis infecti sententiam differentes recesserunt.

A.D. 1200. Eclipse of the moon, Jan. 4.

[MCC.] Eclipsis lunæ facta est iido nonas Januarii media nocte per tres horas :[1] postmodum in ruborem sanguinis conversa est, emittens a se radios velut ignis.

Consecration of Mauger bishop of Worcester, June 4.

Magister Malgerius,[2] domini regis Ricardi medicus, a monachis Wigornensibus nominatus in episcopum Wigornensem, cum non esset de legitimo matrimonio natus, confirmatio electionis ejus accepit dilationem; qui Romam veniens, consecratus est apud Sanctum Petrum ab Innocentio papa iiitio die Sanctæ Trinitatis.

Peace between John and Philip.

Hoc anno facta est pax inter Philippum regem Franciæ et Johannem regem Angliæ.[3] Ludovicus filius

Marriage of Lewis and Blanche of Castile.

regis Franciæ duxit filiam regis Hispaniarum, neptem regis Angliæ, in uxorem; cui rex Angliæ dedit in maritagium totam terram suam de Berri et de Auvernia, castella etiam et honores plurimos tam in Normannia quam in Gasconia et aliis pluribus locis.

The count of Flanders goes to Jerusalem.

Comes Flandrensis et comes Boloniæ, uterque cum uxore sua, acceperunt cruces eundi Jerusalem. Terra

Interdict in France.

regis Franciæ sub interdicto posita est ab archiepiscopo Rothomagensi et episcopo Pictavensi de præcepto summi pontificis, quia noluit accipere uxorem suam, et mansit sub interdicto a media Quadragesima usque ad festum Sanctæ Mariæ Magdalenæ; dilata sententia in personam ipsius regis, ut sic facilius animi ejus emollirent duritiam. Sub hoc tempore magister Philippus,

Philip the pope's notary visits London.

Romanæ ecclesiæ notarius, Lundoniis moram faciens, domibus religiosis circumquaque consistentibus exactione hospitii sui plurimum extitit onerosus.

Per totam Angliam, de præcepto summi pontificis,

---

[1] This eclipse took place Jan. 3, 1200, at five in the morning.

[2] Mauger, consecrated bishop of Worcester, June 4, 1200; died 1212.

[3] The peace was concluded in May 1200; Hovèden, iv. 148, sq.

quadragesima pars omnium reddituum, mobilium et immobilium, tam clericorum quam domorum religiosarum, ad subventionem, ut dicebatur, terræ Jerosolimitanæ ascripta, per manum prædicti Philippi transmissa, nisi forte Romani naturali et insitæ sibi cupiditati abrenunciaverint, his quorum usibus perquisita est nunquam est ad plenum restituenda. A.D. 1200. Exaction of a fortieth for the defence of Palestine.

Celebratum est concilium apud Westmonasterium xiii° kalendas Octobris, præsidente Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, præsentibus episcopis Willelmo Lundoniensi, Gilleberto Rofensi, Hereberto Saresberiensi, Johanne Exoniensi, E. Elyensi, Gaufrido Coventrensi, R. Bangornensi, episcopo Landavensi, R. de Sancto Asaph, G.[1] electo Herefordensi, cum abbatibus et prioribus diversi ordinis, qui ad vocationem domini Cantuariensis eo convenerant, ut de causis ecclesiasticis tractarent. Gaufridus prior Cantuariensis sedit ex opposito contra dominum archiepiscopum a latere episcopi Roffensis. Archiepiscopus Eboracensis concilio non interfuit, cum esset in Anglia, nec qui ejus allegaret absentiam, cum juxta priscorum consuetudinem ad vocationes Cantuariensis concilio teneretur interesse vel justam absentiæ suæ causam allegare. Dominus Lincolniensis a Roma rediens gravi tactus infirmitate, tunc temporis apud Vetus Templum Lundoniis lecto decubuit. Dominus Wintoniensis et dominus Cicestrensis corporis sui infirmitatem prætendentes litteratorie se excusaverunt. Vacabat tunc sedes Norwicensis. Dominica sequenti, scilicet viii° kalendas Octobris, consecratus est in episcopum Herefordensem Gilo de Bruse, et in episcopum Norwicensem Johannes de Grai,[2] domesticus clericus regis, in capella Sanctæ Katerinæ a domino Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo præsentibus pluribus ejus suffraganeis. Council at Westminster, Sept. 19. Illness of the bishops of Lincoln, Winchester, and Chichester. Consecration of bishops of Hereford and Norwich, Sept. 24.

[1] *G.*] Giles de Braiose.

[2] John de Gray, bishop of Norwich, 1200–1214.

A.D. 1200. John proposes to marry a daughter of the king of Portugal;

Dominus Johannes rex Angliæ, habens in proposito ducere in uxorem filiam regis Portugalensium, cujus fama animum ejus pellexerat, ad eam perquirendam transmisit a Rothomago illustres et magnificos viros, scilicet episcopum Lisoiensem, Willelmum de Stagno, Radulfum de Ardene, Hubertum de Burch, et alios plures, tam de Anglia quam de Normannia. Sed ipse, eorum saluti minus forte quam regiam deceret magnificentiam consulens, dum essent in itinere, ipsis nec præmunitis, desponsavit Ysabel filiam unicam et hæredem comitis Engolismensis, quæ prius, ut dicebatur, concessa erat cuidam nobili viro de Pictavia, scilicet Hugoni le Brun, unde maxima postmodum inter eos simultas exorta est, et statim fecit illam coronari in reginam apud Westmonasterium a domino Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, viii° idus Octobris, et ipse rex eadem die pariter coronatus est.

but in the absence of his envoys, marries Isabella of Angoulême.

She is crowned, Oct. 8.

Final decision on the church of Lambeth, given against the archbishop, about Michaelmas.

Hoc anno[1] circa festum Sancti Michaelis, causa quæ vertebatur inter Cantuariensem archiepiscopum et monachos super capella de Lamheya reædificanda et ecclesiis et exeniis quæ monachi ab archiepiscopo petebant, tandem post longas disceptationes et allegationes, et testium hinc inde productiones, coram venerabilibus Lincolniensi et Eliensi episcopis et abbate Sancti Eadmundi, a summo pontifice de communi partium assensu ad causæ hujus decisionem delegatis, partibus in arbitros conpromittentibus eosdem, scilicet qui fuerant delegati, cautione hinc inde præstita quod appellatione cessante eorum starent arbitrio, hoc modo finem accepit, omni scilicet spe revertendi canonicis ablata sæcularibus imperpetuum:—si dominus archiepiscopus voluerit, liceat sibi apud Lamheie capellam ædificare, in qua ponat canonicos ordinis Præmustrensis xiii. ad minus, xx. ad plus; qui tamen in nominatione

Terms of the decision.

[1] See Epp. Cantuar. pp. 512–514. The arbitration was settled Nov. 6, and ratified by the pope, June 30, 1201.

archiepiscopi cum sedes Cantuariensis vacaverit nunquam audientur. Super ecclesiis vero, personæ igitur eas, qui tenebant tunc temporis, quoad vixerint libere et pacifice possideant, solventes monachis memoratis annuatim assignatas possessiones sibi. Quibus defunctis media pars omnium proventuum omnium ecclesiarum cedent in usus monachorum, media pars in usum vicarii, qui tamen per archiepiscopum instituetur. Exenia vero possideat archiepiscopus libere, et quiete, et pacifice tota vita sua; post mortem vero ejus sit inter successores ejus et monachos rediviva disceptatio, et cui datum fuerit vel judiciali diffinitione, vel amicabili compositione, vel alio quovis juris ordine, ejus convertantur in usum. Hoc arbitrium primo ab ipsis arbitris apud Westmonasterium intra se statutum, postmodum apud Cantuariam, Dominica proxima ante festum Omnium Sanctorum, iiii^to^ scilicet kalendas Novembris, a domino Elyensi in publico prolatum, præsentibus partibus, præsentibus etiam totius Angliæ primoribus, episcopis scilicet, abbatibus, comitibus, baronibus, justiciariis, et aliis domini regis fidelibus, qui eo convenerant ab decidendam tam diuturnæ dissensionis nebulam inter patrem et filios.

A.D. 1200.

The sentence is accepted and published, Oct. 29.

Feria iiii^ta^ sequente, vigilia scilicet Omnium Sanctorum, auditum est tonitruum subitum et horribile, aliquid magni portendens. Hugo Lincolniensis, genere Burgundio, natione Gratianopolitanus, cum sedisset annos xv., dies xv. a Roma rediens, apud Vetus Templum Lundoniis diem clausit extremum kalendis Decembris. Deinde iiii^to^ die sequente, corpus ejus, ad sedem suam prolatum, sollempni processione ibidem receptum est in præsentia duorum regum, archiepiscoporum trium, omnium episcoporum Angliæ, abbatum et priorum diversi ordinis, et aliorum regni magnatum, quos illuc domini regis præsentia simul et propria negotia de diversis regni partibus deduxerant.

Oct. 31. Thunderstorm.

Death of the bishop of Lincoln, Dec. 1.

His funeral at Lincoln.

Dominus rex Natalicios dies celebravit apud Gelde-

John keeps Christmas at Guildford.

A.D. 1200. Election of an abbot of Westminster.

ford. Cum sedes ecclesiæ Westmonasterii vacaret, ne monachi emendicatis aliunde suffragiis uterentur, Radulfum natione Lundoniensem, cognomento de Arundel, priorem de Hurle, apud Norhamthoniam in abbatem sibi elegerunt ii^do kalendas Decembris. Electioni factæ dominus rex, qui præsens aderat, et dominus archiepiscopus assensum præbuerunt. Electus vero munus benedictionis accepit a domino W. Londoniensi episcopo in ecclesia Doctoris gentium Dominica qua cantatur "Gaudete," et eadem die in sede sua sollempniter est collocatus.

He is blessed, Dec. 17.

A.D. 1201. John crowned at Canterbury, at Easter, Mar. 25.

[MCCI.] Dominus rex dies Paschales egit apud Cantuariam sollempniter; ibi cum regina sua instinctu archiepiscopi coronatus est sub præsentia plurimorum et magnorum virorum quos domini archiepiscopi liberalitas invitaverat.

Earthquake in Dorsetshire, May 22.

Terræ motus magnus factus est in partibus Sumerset et Dorsete xi^mo kalendas Junii circa horam diei sextam, ita ut stantes prostraret.

John goes abroad.

Dominus rex ortis simultatibus inter ipsum et comitem Aucensem, cum videret terram suam transmarinam tumultuari, collecta multitudine militum transfretavit apud Portesmue; nec multo post discessum ipsius regina transfretavit.

A man killed by lightning.

Quidam monachus transmarinus cum iter ageret versus Sanctum Eadmundum, subito percussus fulmine cum equo suo apud Novum Mercatum interiit nullam omnino habens læsionem; corpus ejus apud Sanctum Eadmundum delatum est.[1]

The count of Champagne dies.

Theobaldus comes Campaniæ expletis a diebus nativitatis suæ xxi. annis, diebus xi., obiit Trecis;[2] juxta fratrem suum sepultus est.

---

[1] Here MS. D. ends; and the remainder of the text rests on the authority of Twysden's edition only. The editor may have used the burnt MS. Otho D. 7, but if so the portion answering to this is lost. The text is in two or three places ungrammatical or corrupt.

[2] Count Theobald died May 24, 1201.

A.D. 1201. Suit between the abbot of Cluny and the earl of Warenne about Lewes.

Hoc anno longa disceptatio super institutione prioris Lewensis inter abbatem de Cluniaco et comitem de Warenna, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo et Elyensi et Cicestrensi episcopis, a summo pontifice commissa, tali fine conquievit: scilicet cum prioratus Lewensis vacaverit, infra xv. dies mittet dominus comes nuncios suos cum monachis Lewensibus Cluniacum propter priorem. Abbas vero duos eliget secundum Deum ubicumque ei placuerit in ordine Cluniacensi, excepto majore priore Cluniacensi, et priore de Karitate, quos utiliores et magis necessarios domui Lewensi convenerit, et nuntiis comitis præsentabit. Ipsi vero unum e duobus absque tergiversatione et dolo, quemcumque voluerint, accipient et absque difficultate in domo Lewensi priorem instituent; quando prior sit institutus, liberam habebit administrationem tam in interioribus quam exterioribus admonendi et admovendi. Nec poterit de cætero amoveri [1] nisi certa et rationabili causa. Nec poterit abbas Cluniacensis exigere nisi antiquam pensionem c. solidorum.

Settlement of the dispute.

Floods at Exeter and S. Ives.

Subita et improvisa aquarum inundatio pluribus in locis per Angliam facta est, unde plures homines submersi sunt, et domus eversæ, maxime apud Excestre et Sanctum Ivonem.

John of Salerno received at S. Paul's, Aug. 31.

Johannes Salernitanus presbyter et cardinalis, a summo pontifice transmissus, tam Hyberniæ quam Scotiæ legatus, transitum habens per Angliam, sollempni processione receptus est in ecclesia Doctoris gentium Pauli pridie kalendas Septembris.

Bishops and abbots summoned to Normandy

Ad vocationem domini regis Hubertus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus transfretavit apud Sorham xix° kalendas Januarii. Vocati sunt etiam qua de causa Elyensis, Salesbiriensis, Lundoniensis, Norwicensis episcopi, abbas de Sancto Eadmundo, de Westmonasterio, de Theokesbiria.

---

[1] *amoveri*] So we must read instead of Twysden's *admoveri*. Possibly "admovendi" in the previous line should be read "amovendi."

A.D. 1202. Conference at le Goulet, Mar. 25.

MCII. Colloquium habitum est inter regem Franciæ et regem Angliæ viiiᵛᵒ kalendas Aprilis in Normannia prope Andeleium, in loco qui dicitur Gulet.

Hucusque protraxit satis magnifice Chronica præscripta magister Radulfus de Diceto, decanus Lundoniensis ecclesiæ, qui qualis fuerit eloquentiæ sollerti lectori satis potest liquere ex pluribus factis et dictis quæ idem magister proprii ingenii verbis enarrando exposuit.

RADULFI DE DICETO LUNDONIENSIS DECANI OPUSCULA.

RADULFI DE DICETO
DECANI LUNDONIENSIS
OPUSCULA.[1]

Willelmo de Longocampo Radulfus de Diceto.[2]

[3] Sicut a multis accepimus, cum a studiis liberalibus ad negocia pertransisses ecclesiastica, de familiaritate Ricardi ducis Aquitanorum ulteriore solus inter multos bravium reportasti, cancellariæ nomen potestative nancissens. Itaque præstita fidelitate sex illa quæ secuntur annexa tacite repromisisti, sicut infra reperies; "Aquitanorum duci Willelmo, Fulbertus "Carnotensis episcopus orationis suffragium. De forma fide- "litatis aliquid scribere monitus, hæc breviter quæ secuntur "ex librorum auctoritate notavi. Qui fidelitatem jurat ista "sex in memoria semper habere debet; incolume, tutum, "honestum, utile, facile, possibile. Incolume, ne sit in damp- "num domino de corpore suo: tutum, ne sit in dampnum "domino de secreto suo, vel de munitionibus per quas tutus "esse potest: honestum, ne sit in dampnum domino de sua "justitia vel de causis aliis quæ spectare videntur ad hones- "tatem ejus: utile, ne sit in dampnum domino de possessio- "nibus suis; facile vel possibile, ne bonum id quod dominus "suus leviter facere poterat faciat ei difficile vel impossibile."[4] Dux itaque Ricardus, sullimatus in regem, te non solum in

Letter of good advice from Ralph de Diceto to bishop Longchamp.

Fulbert, ep. 101.

Force of the oath of fealty.

---

[1] The following collections are here printed from the text of the Ripley MS., in which they occur in the best order and in the most perfect form (MS. R.). They are for the most part contained also in the Cotton MSS. Tiberius A. 9 (MS. T.), and Faustina A. 8, in good form and order, and also in the Lambeth MS. A. on the spare leaves.

[2] The title in MS. R. is in Lombardic letters, alternately red and black. The initial S is illuminated in blue and red. There is a title at the top of the page, *Cronica Radi de Diceto*, in a hand of the 14th century.

[3] The following letter is in MS. R. only, and perhaps was written on the occasion of the presentation of that MS. to bishop Longchamp.

[4] Fulberti Carnotensis, Opera Varia (ed. Villiers), epist. ci., fo. 95.

The lesson to be drawn from Longchamp's promotion.

cam quam prius habueras familiaritatem, sed in ulteriorem admisit; ut intelligi daret ad expediendas regni necessitates et populorum pacem fortius procurandam, armatam militiam non semper solam sufficere, sed inermem fuisse multotiens pernecessariam. Probavit hoc Alcwinus thesaurarius Turonensis, inter consiliarios Karoli magni primus, præcellens, præcipuus; qui statum ecclesiæ semper evexit in melius, et animum imperatoris ad salutaria monita studuit informare.[1] Gratiam magnam apud Karolum magnum Alcwinus invenit. Et tu quam gratiam apud summum pontificem, apud regem Anglorum inveneris docebunt sequentia;

His commission as legate, June 5, 1190.

"Clemens papa Willelmo Elyensi episcopo salutem. Juxta "commendabile desiderium et salubrem postulationem karissimi filii nostri Ricardi regis Anglorum, fraternitati tuæ "legationis officium in Anglia tota, Walia, tam per Cantuariensem quam per Eboracensem archiepiscopatus, et in illis "Hiberniæ partibus in quibus nobilis vir Johannes frater "ipsius regis jurisdictionem habet et dominium, auctoritate "duximus apostolica committendum. Datum Laterani, nonis "Junii, anno M°C°XC°."[2]

His appointment as the king's lieutenant, June 6, 1190.

Rursus: "Ricardus rex Anglorum omnibus fidelibus suis salutem. Mandamus vobis et præcipimus quod, sicut de nobis "confiditis, et sicut vos ipsos et omnia vestra diligitis, sitis "intendentes omnino dilecto et fideli cancellario nostro Elyensi "episcopo super omnibus quæ spectant ad nos, et faciatis pro "ipso sicut pro nobismet ipsis faceretis de omnibus hiis quæ "vobis ex parte nostra dixerit. Teste me ipso apud Baionam, "vi° die Junii."[3]

Vides quam gratiam intra triduum tibi Dominus Deus contulerit, in conspectu summi pontificis, in conspectu regis Anglorum. Quisquis igitur circa latus principis militare decreverit, inermi militia decoratus, ex ejus familiaritate nichil sibi repromittat perpetuum, sed mutationi totum orbem obnoxium animadvertat, sicut ait philosophus, "Mobile mutatur semper "cum principe vulgus." Mutatur princeps, mutatur et vulgus. Inter hæc duo mutabilia nullam sibi securitatem expectet.[4]

All earthly promotion is liable to change.

Claudian, de iv^to Cons. Honorii. v. 302.

[1] *Ad expediendas . . . informare*] These words are introduced into the preface to the Historia Britonum, as given in the MSS. Tiberius A. 9 and Faustina A. 8; see below, p. 222.

[2] See the Imagines above, vol. ii. p. 83.

[3] See the Imagines above, vol. ii. p. 83.

[4] *Quisquis . . . expectet*] The same words occur in the preface to the Historia Britonum, as given in the MSS. Tiberius A. 9 and Faustina A. 8; see below, p. 222. The line "Mobile mutatur semper

Erit aliquis fortasse qui dicat, "Willelmus Elyensis episcopus, "domesticis suis vices suas in episcopatu committens, actibus "cancellariæ se totum immisceat, ut fidelitatem quam domino "regi juraverat tempore necessitatis observet inviolabiliter. "Cum enim rex Francorum Philippus Ricardum regem Anglo- "rum a Normanniæ finibus exterminare contendat, pluribus "intra Normanniam, nec dicam fraudulenter, munitionibus "occupatis, a quatuor mundi partibus irruunt auxiliarii, cau- "sam Normannorum attendentes justissimam." Quod si te procurante factum est, non ob hoc aliquam debes notam incurrere, cum ad sacrosanctam matrem nostram Romanam ecclesiam exempli causa recurrere possis et debeas. Gregorius siquidem,[1] ab apostolo Petro centesimus quinquagesimus secundus, hujus nomine in papatu sextus, videns mala quæ fiebant in terra, beati Petri patrimonium a prædonibus undique vastatum et usurpatum, undecumque milites, equos, arma, viriliter conquisivit, et, primum basilicam beati Petri præoccupans, raptores oblationum vel extinxit vel effugavit; regalium occupatores ab imperatore Constantino tam papæ Silvestro quam successoribus suis jure perpetuo collatorum invasit; prædia multis amissa temporibus in antiquum jus ecclesiæ Romanæ reformare non destitit. Ita pax, per multorum segnitiem exulans, per unum hominem in patriam rediit. Unde Quirites assueti de rapto vivere sanguinarium illum celebriter inclamabant. Cardinales etiam, cum ille beatus invaletudine longa fatigatus decumberet, eum ausu temerario communiter ammonebant, ne se cum cæteris apostolicis in ecclesia beati Petri tumulari præciperet, quam tot hominum cædibus violentis fœdasset. Quibus ille respondit. "Omnia "divino committamus examini; corpus meum antecessorum "more compositum ante januas ecclesiæ sistite; januæ seris "dampnentur et repagulis. Si Deus voluerit ut ingrediar, "applaudetis miraculo, si minus, de cadavere meo facite quod "animis vestris insederit." Accidit postmodum ut prædictus papa Gregorius VI^tus cum spiritum efflasset extremum, ante portas seris obclusas firmissimis, exanimis præsulis cardinales deportarent exuvias. Sed emissus mox divinitus turbo vehementissimus, omnia repagulorum disrumpens obstacula, valvas etiam ipsas impetu vehementi cominus patefactas ad parietem impulit. Itaque populus astans acclamabat in gaudium, pontificis corpus cum patribus suis celebri veneratione locatur.

If the bishop has devoted himself to the chancery, leaving his episcopal work to be done by his officers,

he has an authority and precedent in the history of pope Gregory VI.

W. Malmesb., G. R. lib. ii.

"cum principe vulgus," seems to have been a favourite commonplace of the author; see the Imagines above, p. 115.

[1] See above, vol. i., pp. 180, 261.

Example of Gregory VI.

Qui Gregorius VI^tus^, sibi nomen apud Romanos memoriale volens relinquere, prope patriarchium Lateranense sumptibus magnis nobile condidit ædificium, quod adhuc palatium sanguinarii de nomine conditoris vocatur.

Juxta desiderium Radulfi de Diceto decani Lundoniensis, bene valeat reverendus pater et dominus Willelmus Dei gratia præsul Eliensis. Bene valeat etiam idem ipse Ricardi regis Anglorum illustris cancellarius.

De dupplici potestate.[1]

The spiritual power and the temporal.

Apostolus ait "omnis anima potestatibus subdita sit sublimioribus; qui potestati resistit ordinationi Dei resistit." Unde, Phariseis inquirentibus utrum liceat dari Cæsari censum annon, respondit Jesus, "Reddite Cæsari quæ sunt Cæsaris." Item alibi Petro dixit, "In ore piscis invenies staterem, quem sumens da pro me, da pro te." Si scripturam sacram revolvas attentius, profecto reperies quod a tempore prævaricationis Adæ sumus omnes sub debito constituti, sub peccato constricti. Verum ecclesiarum prælati, Petri successores, spirituali gladio muniuntur; mundi principes accinguntur gladio materiali. Discipuli dixerunt ad Jesum, "Ecce gladii duo." Mundi principes "timori non sunt operis boni, sed mali. "Vis non timere potestatem? bonum fac. Time, si malum "feceris." Ad animadvertendum in facinorosos, extrahitur gladius. Gladio suo Petrus Ananiam percussit et Saphiram. Sed quoniam anima dignior est quam corpus, de qua solvenda vel liganda Petrus et successores sui pontificium acceperunt a Domino, sumendum est initium a domo Dei, Romana scilicet ecclesia, quam Petrus suo tempore viriliter rexit, martyrio decoravit, quam successores sui primi triginta glorioso martyrio reddiderunt illustrem et per orbem terrarum prædicabilem effecerunt.

Rom. xiii. 1.

S. Matt. xxii. 21.

S. Matt. xvii. 26.

S. Luke, xxii. 38.

Rom. xiii. 3.

I. De prælatis Ecclesiarum.

Incipiunt Capitula.

List of contents of the following pages.

1. De summis pontificibus quanto tempore sederint.
2. De scismaticis.
3. De Catholicis a scismate respirantibus.

---

[1] De dupplici potestate: MS. R., fo. 2.,; MS. T., fo. 25 v°.; MS. F., fo. 51.

4. De Cantuariensibus archiepiscopis ab ecclesia Romana directis, vel a synodo propria consecratis, vel assumptis aliunde.
5. De Lundoniensibus episcopis.
6. De Wintoniensibus episcopis.
7. De Siresburnensibus episcopis.
De Malmesbiriensibus episcopis.
De Saresbiriensibus episcopis.
8. De Wigornensibus episcopis.
9. De Dorcacestrensibus episcopis.
De Lincolniensibus episcopis.
10. Qualiter Elyense monasterium infulas episcopales accepit.
Quot ibi sederint episcopi.
11. De Bathoniensibus episcopis.
12. De Lichefeldensibus episcopis.
De Cestrensibus episcopis.
De Coventrensibus episcopis.
13. De Elmanensibus episcopis.
De Dummocensibus episcopis.
De Thedfordensibus episcopis.
De Norwicensibus episcopis.
14. De Selesiensibus episcopis.
De Cicestrensibus episcopis.
15. De Cridiensibus episcopis.
De Exoniensibus episcopis.
16. De Herefordensibus episcopis.
17. De Eboracensibus archiepiscopis.
De illis qui simul fuerunt et Eboracenses archiepiscopi, et Wigornenses episcopi.
18. De Lindisfarnensibus episcopis.
De Dunelmensibus episcopis.
19. Rursus de Cantuariensibus archiepiscopis, a quibus apostolicis pallia susceperint vel quanto tempore sederint.

Vita Sancti Thomæ Martyris.

20. De Rofensibus episcopis, qui semper ab archiepiscopis Cantuariensibus instituti sunt, et in puplicis præstationibus archiepiscopo soli semper sunt obnoxii.
21. De fundatoribus ecclesiarum tempore Britonum, temporibus Anglorum, temporibus Danorum.
22. Canonizatio Sancti Thomæ Martyris.

List of contents of the following pages;
I. Catalogues of Bishops.

II. De Cæsaribus.[1]

Contents of the following pages.

II. Catalogue of the Cæsars.

Prologue to the list of Cæsars.

Ab apostolo Petro decursis successionibus prælatorum ecclesiæ tam Romæ quam in Angliæ regno, transitum faciamus ad mundi principes de Cæsaris nomine gloriantes. Quorum primus fuit Julius Cæsar, urbanæ vir eloquentiæ, qui de narratione temporum historiam texuit. Quo nullus celerius scripsit, nemo velocius legit; quaternas etiam epistolas simul dictavit. Qui tantæ fuit bonitatis ut quos armis subegerat clementia magis vinceret.[2] Qui cum ab insidiantibus impeteretur, toga caput obvolvit sinistra manu sinum ad ima crura deducens, quo caderet honestius, inferiore corporis parte velata.[3] Julio successit Augustus arrogantius nomen affectans; vocatus est Cæsar Augustus imperator Romanus; cujus temporibus exiit edictum ut describeretur universus orbis. Augustus genus eloquendi secutus est elegans et temperatum, vitatis sententiarum ineptiis et concinnitate verborum.[4] Fuit idem Augustus mitis, gratus, animi civilis et lepidi, corpore toto pulcher sed oculis magis.[5] Augustus præcipuam curam duxit sensum animi quam aptissimis verbis exprimere. Quod quo facilius efficeret aut nec ubi lectorem vel auditorem obturbaret ac moraretur, neque præpositiones urbibus addere, neque conjunctiones sæpius iterare dubitavit.[6] Mors Augusti Cæsaris sic est prænognita: sub idem tempus ictu fulminis ex inscriptione statuæ sui nominis effluxit littera prima. Responsum est centum solos dies posthac victurum, quem numerum C littera notaret.[7] Augustus auxit Romam ædificiis multis; isto dicto glorians, "Urbem latericiam reperi, relinquo "marmoream."[8]

Eutrop. Libro vi°.

Suetonius.

Suetonius.

Eutropius Libro vii°.

Suetonius Libro ii°.

Eutropius Libro vii°.

---

[1] The prefatory matter, as above, does not occur in MS. A. in connexion with the lists, which begin below, p. 213. It is however, as will be seen, only a working up of old materials already used in the Abbreviationes.

[2] *Quo . . . vinceret*] See above, vol. i., p. 52.

[3] *Qui . . . velata*] Ibid.

[4] *Augustus . . . verborum*] Above, vol. i., p. 53.

[5] *Fuit . . . magis*] Above, vol. i., p. 53.

[6] *Augustus . . . dubitavit*] Above, vol. i., p. 53.

[7] *Mors. . . . notaret*] Above, vol. i., p. 54.

[8] *Augustus . . . marmoream*] Above, vol. i., p. 54.

De Romanis Imperatoribus.

Anni Domini.

CI. De Trajano, qui per orbem terrarum Deo proximus habitus est.

CXCIIII. De Severo, qui regnavit in Britannia.

CCXLVI. De Philippo, primo Christiano, qui respexit ad cœlum.

CCCVIII. De Constantio, qui regnavit in Britannia.

CCCIX. De Constantino, qui regnavit Romæ simul et Constantinopolis.

CCCXLVIII. De Valente, qui regnavit tantum Constantinopolis.

CCCXLVIII. De Valentiniano, qui Romæ tantum regnavit.

CCCLXXIX. De Theodosio magno qui Romæ simul regnavit et Constantinopolis.

DCCCI. De Francis imperatoribus, quorum fuit primus Karolus Magnus.

List of the contents of the following pages.

II. Catalogue of Cæsars.

Lotharius nepos Karoli Magni diadema deposuit.

De regno Bajoariorum in Germania, quorum primus rex fuit Lotharius secundus.

III. De regibus Francorum et eorum triplici successione.

De successione Mervingorum.
De successione Præfectoriorum.
De successione Capatitiorum.

III. List of the kings of the Franks.

IV. De regnis diversis.

1. Ut autem regna recolamus antiquiora, primum regnum surrexit Assiriorum, quorum primus rex Ninus.
2. Surrexit regnum Medorum, quorum primus rex Arbaces.
3. Surrexit regnum Persarum, quorum primus rex Cyrus.
4. Surrexit regnum Egiptiorum, quorum primus rex Tholomeus.
5. Item surrexit regnum Persarum, quorum primus rex Sapor.
6. De origine Gotthorum, quorum primus fuit rex Berith.
7. De regibus Ostrogothorum, quorum primus rex fuit Wintharius; quorum rex postmodum Theodoricus Romam occupavit.
8. De regibus Wissigothorum, quorum rex primus Fritigernus.
9. De regno Longobardorum, quorum primus rex Ibor.

IV. Lists of diverse ancient kings.

V. De regibus Britonum, Saxonum et Anglorum, Danorum, Normannorum.

Abhinc quia scriptum est a cosmographis, "Finis erat orbis "hora Gallici littoris, si non insula Britannia pene nomen

V. Kings of Britain.

List of the contents of the following pages.

"orbis alterius mereretur;"[1] de regibus Britonum adjungamus. Quorum nomina per libros undecim seriatim expassa, si certam redigantur ad summam, ad nonaginta novem excrescunt, quorum primus rex fuit Brutus.

V. Kings of Britain.

Postmodum septem populis Germanicorum Britanniam incursantibus, nomen regium usurpatum est subregulis sexaginta sex; quorum primus rex fuit Hengistus.

Ad ultimum reges quindecim in Anglia regio diademate sublimati sunt, quorum primus rex fuit Aluredus. Inter hos quindecim fuerunt tres de Dacia, scilicet Cnuto, Haroldus, Hardecnutus.

In fine, septem de genere Normannorum, in urbe Lundonia coronati sunt, quorum primus rex fuit Willelmus.

VI. Synods.

VI. De synodis.[2]

I. Prologus.

Prologue to the catalogue of popes.

Annum ab ea die qua Petrus apostolus Romæ primo cathedram pontificalem ascendit feliciter inchoatum, opusculo præsenti primordium præstare cognoscas. Debes etiam meminisse traditum a majoribus, et cautum in cathalogo virorum illustrium, Clementem papam modo secundum, modo tertium, modo quartum nominatum a Petro. Sed nos si Lino, Cleto, conservemus honorem annorum serie, sicut eis concorditer exhibent nostri patres in canone missæ, profecto possumus vitare ruinam; sed ultra posse nostrum est quantum ad annos Dominicales solvere dissonantiam. Namque scriptum est,

Above, vol. i. p. 19.

Difficulty of the early succession.

Primus papatus Petrus est in sede locatus.
Qui consederunt Linus Cletusque fuerunt.
His Clemens junctus simili fuit ordine functus.
Disputat hinc mundus sit quartus sive secundus.

Rursus alibi scriptum est, "Tertius ecclesiæ Romanæ præ-
" fuit Clemens episcopus, sed quotiens tibi plenius innotuerit
" in volumine nostro manifestum errorem, deprehensum anno-
" rum vel numerorum in calculo, manum apponas. Excessum
" poterit abolere correctio festinata, si pura fuerit in repre-
" hensione fraternæ caritatis intentio. Pro varietate negotio-
" rum et conditione stili, narratiuncula sæpius intercidenda,
" si brevis, aperta, probabilis auribus insonuerit, saltem in hoc
" redimat cultus coloratioris defectum, si vel in aliquo pro-

---

[1] See above, vol. i., p. 24: the extract from Solinus.

[2] Here the list of contents or capitula seems to end, and the several catalogues of names, &c. begin in the order assigned above.

Above, vol. i. p. 19.

" mercatur accessus. Si quid autem hebetis sensus oratio tur- Let the reader revise.
" gidum importaverit vel inflatum, si vel arida vel exsangui
" verborum junctura dejectior emarcuerit, si translatio dictio-
" num impudens offenderit auditorem, si vocalium hiulca col-
" lisio subsannationem extorserit, manum rursus apponas.
" Voluptati siquidem aurium morigerari debet oratio."

1. *Romani pontifices quantum sederint.*[1]

1. List of the popes.

Petrus sedit annis xxv., m. i., d. vii.

Linus sedit annis xii., m. iii., d. xii.

Cletus consedit annis xii., m. i., d. xi.; cessavit episcopatus d. xx.

Clemens sedit annis ix., m. ii., d. x.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxii.

Anacletus sedit annis xii., m. x., d. vii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xiii.

Euaristus sedit annis xiii., m. vii., d. ii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xiiii.

I. Alexander sedit annis x., m. vii., d. ii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxxv.

I. Sixtus sedit annis x., m. iii., d. xxii.; cessavit episcopatus d. ii.

Teclesphorus[2] sedit annis xi., m. iii., d. viii.

Yginus sedit annis iii., m. iii., d. viii.; cessavit episcopatus xiiii. d.

Anitius sedit annis ix., m. iii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xiiii.

Pius sedit annis xi., m. iii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xiiii.

Sother sedit annis ix., m. iii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxii.[3]

Eleuter sedit annis xv.; cessavit episcopatus d. v.

Victor sedit annis x., m. ii., d. x.; cessavit episcopatus d. xii.

Zepherinus sedit annis xvii., m. ii., d. x.; cessavit episcopatus d. vii.

---

[1] The following list occurs in MS. A. at folio 146, immediately following the Gesta Normannorum, below, pp. 243 sq. It should be compared with the lists given by Anastasius, ed. Bianchini, II., vii., as the work of pope Liberius, and by Eccard, Corpus Historicum, i., 25, the results of which may be found in Jaffé's Regesta Pontificum. The numbers of years, months, and days, as given here, agree best with the Catalogue, "non diu post annum "1048 confectus," also printed in Eccard ii., 1629. But the authority of the present list is not so great as to make an extensive collation necessary in this place.

[2] Telesphorus, A.

[3] *xxii.*] xxvii, A.

List of the popes.

Calixtus sedit annis v., m. ii., d. x.; cessavit episcopatus d. vii.

Urbanus sedit annis xi., m. xi., d. xii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxx.[1]

Pontianus sedit annis v., m. ii.; cessavit episcopatus d. x.

Antheros sedit m. i., d. xv.; cessavit episcopatus d. xiii.

Fabianus sedit annis xiiii., m. i., d. x.; cessavit episcopatus d. vii.

Cornelius sedit annis iii., d. x.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxxv.

I. Lucius sedit annis iii., m. iii., d. iii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxxv.

I. Stephanus sedit annis iiii., m. ii., d. xv.; cessavit episcopatus d. xii.[2]

II. Sixtus sedit annis ii., m. xi., d. xv.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxv.

Dionisius sedit annis ii., m. iii., d. xii.; cessavit episcopatus d. v.

I. Felix sedit annis ii., m. i., d. x.;[3] cessavit episcopatus d. v.

Eutichianus sedit annis viii., m. x., d. xii.; cessavit episcopatus d. viii.

Gaius sedit annis xi., m. iiii., d. xii.;[4] cessavit episcopatus d. xi.

Marcellinus sedit annis viii., d. xxv.; cessavit episcopatus annis viii.,[5] m. vi., d. xxv.

Marcellus sedit annis v., m. vii., d. xvi.; cessavit episcopatus d. xx.

Omnes superscripti[6] *fuerunt martires.*

Eusebius sedit annis ii., m. i., d. xxv.; cessavit episcopatus d. vii.

Melchiades sedit annis iii., m. vii., d. viii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xvi.

I. Silvester sedit annis xxiii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xvi.

Marcus sedit annis ii., m. viii., d. v.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxx.

Julius sedit annis xi., diebus xi.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxv.

Liberius sedit annis x., m. vii., d. iii.; cessavit episcopatus d. vii.

II. Felix sedit anno i., m. iii., d. ii. Hic quoque martir fuit. Cessavit episcopatus d. xxxviii.

---

[1] *xxx.*] vii., A.
[2] *xii.*] xxii., A.
[3] *m. i., d. x.*] m. x., A.
[4] *xii.*] viii., A.
[5] *viii.*] vii., A.
[6] *superscripti*] supradicti, A.

I. Damasus sedit annis xviii., m. ii., dies x. Hic purgavit se de adulterio. Cessavit episcopatus dies xxxi. List of the popes.

Siricius sedit annis xv., m. ix.,[1] d. xxv.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxi.

I. Anastasius sedit annis ii., d. xxv.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxi.

I. Innocentius sedit annis ii.,[2] m. ii.; cessavit episcopatus d. x.

Zozimus sedit anno i., m. viii., d. xxv.; cessavit episcopatus d. x.

I. Bonefacius sedit annis iii., m. viii., d. xiii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xx.

I. Celestinus sedit annis viii., m. i., d. viii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xx.

III. Sixtus sedit annis viii., dies xix.; cessavit episcopatus dies xxii. Hic purgavit se.

I. Leo Magnus sedit annis xxi., d. xxviii.; cessavit episcopatus d. vii.

Ylarus sedit annis vi., m. iii., d. x.; cessavit episcopatus d. x.

Simplicius sedit annis xv., d. vi.; cessavit episcopatus d. vi.

III. Felix sedit annis vii., m. ii.,[3] d. xviii.; cessavit episcopatus d. v.

I. Gelasius sedit annis iiii., m. viii., d. ix.; cessavit episcopatus d. vii.

II. Anastasius sedit anno i., m. xi., d. xxiii.; cessavit episcopatus d. iiii.

Simachus sedit annis xv., m. vii., d. xxviii. Hic purgavit se. Cessavit episcopatus d. vii.

Hormisda sedit annis ix., d. xvii.; cessavit episcopatus d. vii.

I. Johannes sedit annis ii., m. viii., d. xvi.; cessavit episcopatus d. lviii.

IIII. Felix sedit annis iiii.,[4] m. ii., d. xiii.; cessavit episcopatus m. ii.

II. Bonefacius sedit annis ii., d. xxvi.; cessavit episcopatus m. ii. d. xv.

II. Johannes sedit annis ii., m. iiii., d. vi.; cessavit episcopatus d. vi.

I. Agapitus sedit mensibus x.; cessavit episcopatus —.

Silverius sedit m. ix.; cessavit episcopatus dies xviii.

Vigilius sedit annis xvii., m. vi., d. xxv.; cessavit episcopatus m. iii., d. v.

---

[1] *ix*] xi., A.
[2] *ii.*] xii., A.
[3] *ii.*] xi., A.
[4] *iiii.*] iii., A.

List of the popes.

I. Pelagius sedit annis iiii., m. x., dies xviii. Hic purgavit se de morte Vigilii papæ. Cessavit episcopatus m. iii., dies xxi.

III. Johannes sedit annis xii., m. xi., d. xxvi.; cessavit episcopatus m. x., d. iii.

I. Benedictus sedit annis iiii., m. i., d. xxiiii.; cessavit episcopatus m. iii., d. x.

II. Pelagius sedit annis x., m. ii., d. x.; cessavit episcopatus m. vi., d. xxv.

I. Gregorius (*Dialogus*) sedit annis xiii., m. vi., d. x.; cessavit episcopatus m. v., d. xix.

Savinianus sedit anno i., m. v., d. xxix.; cessavit episcopatus m. vi.,[1] d. xxv.

III. Bonefacius sedit[2] m. viii., d. xxviii.; cessavit episcopatus m. viii., d. vi.

IIII. Bonefacius sedit annis vi., m. viii., d. xiii.; cessavit episcopatus m. vi., d. v.

Deusdedit sedit annis iii., m. x.; cessavit episcopatus m. i., d. vi.

V. Bonefacius sedit annis v., m. x.; cessavit episcopatus d. xiii.

I. Honorius sedit annis xii., m. xi., d. xvii.; cessavit episcopatus ann. i., m. vii., d. xviii.

Severinus sedit annis ii., d. iiii.; cessavit episcopatus m. iiii., d. xxiiii.

IIII. Johannes sedit anno i., m. ix., d. xviii.; cessavit episcopatus m. i., d. xiii.

Teodorus sedit annis v.,[3] m. v., d. xviii.; cessavit episcopatus d. lii.

Martinus sedit annis vi., m. i., d. xxvi. Hic quoque martir fuit.

I. Eugenius sedit annis ii., m. ix., d. xxiiii.; cessavit episcopatus m. i., d. xxvi.

Vitalianus sedit annis xiii.,[4] m. vi.; cessavit episcopatus m. ii., d. xiii.

Adeodatus sedit annis iiii., m. ii., d. v.; cessavit episcopatus m. iiii., d. xv.

I. Donus sedit anno i., m. ii.,[5] d. x.; cessavit episcopatus m. ii.

Agatho sedit annis ii., m. vi., d. xiiii.; cessavit episcopatus ann. i., m. vii., d. v.

---

[1] *vi.*] xi., A.
[2] *sedit*] annis vi., ins. A.
[3] *v.*] vi., A.
[4] *xiii.*] xiiii., A.
[5] *ii.*] v., A.

II. Leo sedit m. x., d. xvii.; cessavit episcopatus m. x., d. xxii. List of the popes.

II. Benedictus sedit m. x., d. xii.; cessavit episcopatus m. ii., d. xv.

V. Johannes sedit anno i., d. viii.; cessit episcopatus m. ii., d. xviii.

Conon sedit mensibus xi.; cessavit m. ii., d. xiiii.[1]

I. Sergius sedit annis xiii., m. viii., d. xxiiii.; cessavit d. L.

VI. Johannes sedit annis iii., d. xii.; cessavit m. i., d. xviii.

VII. Johannes sedit annis ii., m. viii., d. xxii.; cessavit m. iii.

Sisinnius sedit diebus xx.; cessavit episcopatus m. i., d. xviii.

Constantinus sedit annis vii., d. xv.; cessavit episcopatus d. xl.

II. Gregorius sedit annis xv., m. viii., d. xxiiii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxv.

III. Gregorius sedit annis x., m. ix., d. xxiiii.

Zacharias sedit annis x.

II. Stephanus sedit annis v., d. xxix.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxxv.

Paulus sedit annis x., m. i.; cessavit anno i., m. i.

Constantinus.

III. Stephanus sedit annis iii., m. v., d. xxvii.; cessavit d. ix.

I. Adrianus sedit annis xxiiii., m. x., d. xvii. Hic dedit pallium Aldulfo Lichefeldensi episcopo.

III. Leo sedit annis xx., m. v., d. xx.; cessavit d. x. Hic purgavit se.

IIII. Stephanus sedit m. vii.; cessavit episcopatus d. ii.

I. Paschalis sedit annis vii., m. iii., d. xvii.; cessavit d. x.

II. Eugenius sedit annis iiii.; cessavit episcopatus —.

Valentinus sedit xl. d.

IIII. Gregorius sedit annis xvi.; cessavit d. xv.

II. Sergius sedit annis iii.; cessavit m. ii., d. xv.

IIII. Leo sedit annis ix., m. iii., d. vi. Hic Aluredum regem Angliæ Romæ consecravit; cessavit m. ii., d. xv.

III. Benedictus sedit annis ii., m. vi., d. ix.; cessavit d. xv.

I. Nicholaus sedit annis vii., m. ix., d. xiii.

Cessavit episcopatus annis viii., m. vii., d. xix.

II. Adrianus sedit annis iiii., m. xi., d. xv.

VIII. Johannes sedit annis x., d. ii.

I. Marinus sedit anno i., m. v.

---

[1] *xiiii.*] xxiii., A.

List of the popes.

III. Adrianus sedit anno i., m. iiii.
V. Stephanus sedit annis iiii., m. vii., d. xiiii.
Formosus sedit annis iiii., m. vii., d. xiii.
VI. Bonefacius sedit d. xv.
VI. Stephanus sedit anno i., m. i., d. xviii.
Romanus sedit m. iiii., d. xx.
Teodorus sedit d. xviii.[1]
IX. Johannes sedit anno i.
IIII. Benedictus sedit annis iiii., m. vi., d. xiiii.
V. Leo sedit m. i., d. xxvi.
Cristoforus sedit m. vii.
III. Sergius sedit annis vii., m. iii., d. xxiii.[2]
III. Anastasius sedit annis ii., m. i., d. xxii.
Lando sedit m. iiii., d. xxvi.
X. Johannes sedit annis xiii.,[3] m. ii., d. iii.
VI. Leo sedit m. vii.,[4] d. xv.
VII. Stephanus sedit annis ii., m. i., d. xv.
XI. Johannes sedit annis iiii., m. x.
VII. Leo sedit annis iii., m. vi.
VIII. Stephanus sedit annis iii., m. iiii.
II. Marinus sedit annis iii., m. vi.
II. Agapitus sedit annis ix., m. vii., d. xxviii.
XII. Johannes sedit annis viii., m. iiii. Hic de causis nefariis diffamatus est.
V. Benedictus sedit m. ii., d. xv.
VIII. Leo sedit anno i., m. iii.
XIII. Johannes sedit annis vi., m. xi., d. v.
VI. Benedictus sedit m. ii., d. ii.
II. Donus sedit anno i., m. v.
VII. Bonefacius sedit m. i., d. xii.
VII. Benedictus sedit annis ix.
XIIII. Johannes sedit m. viii.
XV. Johannes[5] sedit m. x.
XVI. Johannes sedit annis x., m. vi., d. x.
V. Gregorius sedit annis ii., m. vi.
XVII. Johannes sedit m. x.
II. Silvester sedit annis iiii., m. v., d. xii.
XVIII. Johannes sedit m. vi.
XIX. Johannes sedit annis v.
IIII. Sergius sedit annis ii., m. ix, d. xii.
VIII. Benedictus sedit annis xi., m. xi., d. xxi.

---

[1] *xviii.*] xxvi., A.
[2] *xxiii.*] xxiiii., A.
[3] *xiii.*] xiv., A.
[4] *m. vii.*] ann. vii., A.; ann. xvii., R.
[5] Qui et Gerebertus, A.

XX. Johannes sedit annis vii., m. vi. Hic quidam volunt quendam Mercurium vicesimum numerari. List of the popes.

IX. Benedictus sedit annis xii., m. iiii., d. xx.

III. Silvester sedit d. lvi.

VI. Gregorius sedit annis ii., m. vi.

II. Clemens sedit m. iiii., d. xvii.

II. Damasus sedit d. xxiii.; cessavit episcopatus m. vi.

IX. Leo sedit annis v., m. ii., d. v.

II. Victor sedit annis ii., m. iii., d. xxvi.

IX. Stephanus sedit m. vii., d. xxix.

X. Benedictus sedit m. ix., d. xxii.

II. Nicholaus sedit annis ii., m. vi., d. i. Cessavit m. ii., d. ix. Hic purgavit se de simonia.

II. Alexander sedit annis xi., m. vi., d. xv.

VII. Gregorius sedit annis xii., m. i., d. xii.; cessavit annis ii.

III. Victor sedit m. iiii., d. vii.; cessavit episcopatus m. v., d. xxv.

II. Urbanus sedit annis xi., m. v., d. xviii.; cessavit episcopatus d. xxv.

II. Paschalis sedit annis xviii., m. v., d. ix.

II. Gelasius sedit anno i., d. v.

II. Calixtus sedit annis v., m. x., d. xii.

II. Honorius sedit annis vi.

II. Innocentius sedit annis xii.

II. Celestinus sedit m. v.

II. Lucius sedit anno i.

III. Eugenius sedit annis viii.

IIII. Anastasius sedit annis ii.

IIII. Adrianus sedit annis v.

III. Alexander sedit annis xxii.

III. Lucius [sedit annis iiii., m. iii., d. —].[1]

III. Urbanus.

VIII. Gregorius [sedit m. ii.][1]

III. Clemens.

III. Celestinus.[2] Hic habita computatione legitima repertus est in numero summorum pontificum centesimus octogesimus iii^tius.

---

[1] *sedit*] from MS. A.

[2] *Celestinus*] added in a later hand in A.; iii. Innocentius is added in the same hand. The computation that follows occurs in A. in a shorter form, only the names and numbers being given, thus: Petrus, xxv., I. Silvester, xxiii., I. Leo, xxi., I. Adrianus, xxiiii., III. Leo, xx., III. Alexander, xxii. In MS. Faustina, A. 8, is added "Innocen- "tius:—hic habita computatione

List of the popes.

Qui summi pontifices in annorum supputationibus papatui coherentibus ab annis xx. Petro papæ primo proximiores successerint diligens lector inveniet in sequentibus.

The longest reigns.

I. Petrus sedit annis xxv., m. i., d. vii.
I. Adrianus sedit annis xxiiii., m. x., d. xvii.
I. Silvester sedit annis xxiii.
III. Alexander sedit annis xxii.
I. Leo sedit annis xxi., d. xxviii.
III. Leo sedit annis xx., m. v., d. xx.

Qui fuerunt in ecclesia Romana summi pontifices cæteris digniores sortiendis nominibus in papatu sequacibus suis occasionem præcipuam præstiterunt fortassis. Sed qua ratione vel a quo tempore suppressum est nomen illud quod in baptismo receperant, et novum nomen imponitur in papatu, si dubites a Romanis requiras.

Popes of the same name.

Felices quatuor.[1]
Adriani IIII.
Bonefacii VII.
Gregorii VIII.
Stephani IX.
Leones IX.
Benedicti X.
Johannes XX.

2. List of schisms.

2. [2] Ut de bonis sumamus exempla, quæ sunt ad pacem veram semper in melius provehere cupientes, scismaticorum consortia declinemus.[3] Bonefacius itaque papa bonis operibus jugiter inhærendo bona faciens inter subditos, invidia pressus est Eulalii pulsus ab urbe.

[4] Bonefacius papa: contra hunc ordinato Eulalio et pro hoc dissidente ecclesia, ambo jussu Honorii Augusti urbe egrediuntur, et sic reprobato Eulalio jussu Augusti Bonefatius, quia prior ordinatus fuerat sedi apostolicæ restituitur. cccx. scis.

"legitima repertus est in nu-
"mero summorum pontificum
"clxxxiiii^{tus};" then in a later hand
"Honorius sedit annis xi.; Gre-
"gorius sedit annis —."

[1] Given thus in MS. A.: Gregorii vii., Bonefacii vii., Stephani ix., Leones ix., Benedicti x., Johannes x. The omitting of Gregory viii., and the fact that the ink changes after Alexander III., above, seems to show that this list was drawn up as early as A.D. 1181.

[2] This list of schisms is given in MS. A. on folio 152 vo., without the preface, and much shortened. The list is in fact nothing more than a copy of those entries in the Abbreviationes Chronicorum, to which the mark $\overline{SC}$ is affixed in the margin.

[3] Damasus papa primus, contra quem insurgit Ursinus. Anno cccLxxiii., A.

[4] Anno cccccx. Bonifacius papa primus, contra hunc ordinatur Eulalius; sed jussu Theodosii magni Augusti secundi Eulalius cicitur, A.

List of schisms.

Simacus papa, contra quem per contentionem[1] ordinatur Laurentius.	CCCCXXIII.	SCIS.
[2] Constantino papa scismatico oculis privato, Stephanus papa constituitur. Hic synodum Romæ congregat et ordinatos a Constantino scismatico reordinat.	DCCLXVIII.	SCIS.
Benedictus papa III^tius^, adversus quem Anastasius præsulatum invadit.	DCCCLIII.	SCIS.
Leo papa V^tus^, contra hunc Cristoforus surgit.	DCCCCVII.	SCIS.
[3] Collecta a tota Italia episcoporum synodo, Johannes papa de nephariis causis infamatur, qui dum se excusatum venire cunctatur, Leo, adhuc laicus, electione omnium et consensu imperatoris papa substituitur. Sic Leo fecit ordinationes et alia quæ erant apostolica. Nec longum, Romani alterata fide apud imperatorem, papam recipiunt Johannem. Ille synodo collecta Leonem deposuit et ejus gesta cassavit. Statutumque est synodum a Leone habitam non nominandam synodum sed prostibulum favens adulteris. Quicunque ergo eo ordinante erant dampnati jussi sunt suam ipsorum proscriptionem præsentare in carta hæc continente ; "Pa- "ter meus nichil sibi habuit, nihil mihi "dedit," et sic depositi remanserunt in illis gradibus quos habuerant nondum a Leone ordinati.	DCCCCLXVIII.	SCIS.
[4] Johannes papa, se cum uxore cujusdam oblectans, a diabolo in tempore percutitur ac sine viatico Dominico obiit.		
[5] Romani contra juramentum quod imperatori fecerant, se numquam electuros papam sine ejus et sine filii ejus Ottonis consensu Benedictum papam constituunt.		SCIS.

[1] *per contentionem*] om. A.

[2] Stephanus papa tertius; contra hunc Constantinus, sed privatus oculis eicitur, A.

[3] See above, vol. i., p. 151. MS. A. has only the words, "Pater meus "nichil sibi habuit, nichil michi "dedit."

[4] Vol. i., p. 151. Johannes Papa xii^mus^ ; contra hunc Leo instituitur, anno DCCCCLXIIII., A.

[5] Vol. i., p. 151.

List o schisms.

[1] Benedictus papa: imperator Roma obsessa adeo Romanos afflixit ut Leonem papam se recepturos promitterent, et sic Benedictus rejicitur. DCCCCLXVIII. SCIS.

[2] Benedictus qui symoniace papatum invaserat, cum esset rudis litterarum, alterum ad vices ecclesiastici officii exsequendas secum papam Silvestrum consecrari fecit. Quod cum multis non placeret, tertius superducitur Gregorius qui solus vices duorum impleret. MXLV. SCIS.

[3] Romæ uno contra duos et duobus contra unum de papatu altercantibus, rex Henricus contra eos Romam vadit, et eis canonica et imperiali censura depositis, Clemens præsidet, et ab eo rex Henricus in imperatorem benedicitur, jurantibus Romanis se sine ejus consensu numquam papam electuros. MXLVI. SCIS.

[4] Romæ duobus de papatu contendentibus, Alexander, cum suam purgasset innocentiam de symonia, recipitur; Cadalus Parmensis episcopus reprobatur. Unde dictum est, MLXVIII. SCISM.

Cadalus in Parma, Parmæ fuit arcus et arma;
Cadalus occubuit, Parma ruina fuit.

[5] Henricus urbem Romæ infregit et Wibertum in sede apostolica constituit; Hiltibrandus vero Beneventum adiit, ubi usque ad obitum suum deguit. MLXXXIII. SCISM.

[6] Desiderius, qui et Victor, papa contra Clementem factus est. MLXXXVII. SCISM.

[7] Erant duo sicut ferebatur qui dicebantur Romani pontifices, a se invicem discordantes, et ecclesiam Dei inter se divisam trahentes: Urbanus scilicet, qui primum vocatus Odo fuerat episcopus Ostiensis, et Clemens qui Wibertus ar- MXCI. SCISM.

[1] Vol. i., pp. 151, 152. Benedictus papa contra Leonem instituitur a Romanis. Leo instituitur ab Otone imperatore et sic Benedictus cicitur, A.

[2] Vol. i., p. 187.

[3] Vol. i., p. 187.

[4] Vol. i., p. 200.

[5] Above, vol. i., p. 211.

[6] Ibid.

[7] Above, vol. i., p. 216.

List of schisms.

chiepiscopus Ravennensis. Quæ res per plures annos ecclesiam Angliæ in tantum occupavit ut, ex quo Gregorius, qui et Hiltibrandus, defunctus fuit, nulli loco papæ usque ad hoc tempus subdi vel obedire voluerit.

[1] Calixtus papa Mauricium, quem vocatum Gregorium Henricus imperator papam constituerat, cepit et monacavit. MCXXI. SCISM.

[2] Innocentius papa: intrusus est Petrus Leonis et dictus est Anacletus, qui regem Rogerum Siciliæ consecravit. Innocentius papa transivit in Franciam, unde MCXXX. SCISM.

"Romam Petrus habet totum Gregorius orbem."

Alexander papa III^tius^, contra quem Octovianus intruditur, sed in scismate moritur. MCLIX. SCISM.

Item Guido Cremensis intruditur, sed in scismate moritur.

Item contra quem Johannes intruditur, sed reconciliatur.[3]

Early conversion of Britain.

3.[4] Eleuther papa misit Faganum et Duvianum, qui regem Britonum Lucium baptizaverunt, templa etiam, quæ in honore plurimorum deorum fundata erant, uni Deo dedicaverunt. Anno Domini CLXXVIII.

Note on the names of bishops.

[5] Augustinus Anglorum temporibus a Gregorio papa directus in Angliam primus est consecratus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus. Qui labentibus annorum curriculis plurimorum ad præsens usque tempus successores plusquam xl. dinoscitur habuisse; quos in catalogo patrum Dorobernensium ascriptos solempniter diversis nominibus appellatos fuisse profecto reperies. Quod vehementer mirandum est, cum in ecclesiis late

---

[1] Above, vol. i., p. 243.

[2] Above, vol. i., p. 246.

[3] MS. A. adds:

"Guido de Crema Jo-et-hannes sunt anathema;

"Non puto peccavi nec falso grammaticavi,

"Scismatici pravi si nomen scismaticavi.

[4] MS. Faustina A. 8, fo. 57; MS. T. fo. 30. See above, vol. i., p. 66. It will be observed that this section has no clear relation to the title (3) given at p. 180.

[5] *Augustinus . . . ostendet*] MS. A., fo. 148 v°.; MS. Faustina A. 8, fo. 57; MS. Tiberius A. 9, fo. 30.

Bishops of the same name.

diffusis in regno contrarium frequenter evenerit. Intra non multos siquidem annos in ecclesia Lundoniensi consecrati fuerunt præsules Elstani tres, Wlstani duo, Roberti duo, Ricardi tres, duo Gileberti.[1] Fuerunt apud Wintoniam Alfegi duo, Elsii duo. Fuerunt apud Sireburnam et Malmesbiriam Elstani duo. Fuerunt apud Wigorniam Wlstani duo. Fuerunt apud Lincolniam duo Roberti. Fuerunt apud Batoniam Wlfelmi duo. Fuerunt apud Cestriam duo Ceddæ, duo Roberti. Fuerunt tam apud Tedford[2] quam apud Norwicum Willelmi duo. Fuerunt apud Cicestriam Sefridi duo. Fuerunt apud Exoniam Roberti duo. Fuerunt apud Herefordiam Roberti quatuor. Fuerunt apud Eboracum archiepiscopi Thomæ duo. Fuerunt apud Dunelmum duo Willelmi. Quod loco suo crocus nominibus suprascriptis superfusus, tibi signanter ostendet.

4. Cantuarienses Archiepiscopi.

List of the archbishops of Canterbury, with their consecrators.

Augustinus Arelate consecratus est. Anno Domini DCII.[3]

Laurentius consecratus est ab Augustino.

Mellitus Lundoniensis episcopus.

Justus Roffensis episcopus.

Honorius consecratus est a Paulino Eboracensi archiepiscopo in urbe Lincolnia, scilicet in ecclesia quæ modo dicitur Sancti Pauli, sed temporibus Anglorum dicebatur Sancti Paulini.[4]

Deusdedit consecratus est ab Itamaro Rofensi episcopo.

Theodorus consecratus est Romæ.

Brichthwaldus[5] abbas de Raculf consecratus est a Godwino metropolitano Walliarum.

Stadwinus[6] presbiter de provincia Merciorum consecratus est ab Ingwaldo Lundoniensi episcopo. Hujus tempore Beda obiit.

Nothelmus Lundoniensis presbiter Romæ consecratus est a Gregorio papa II^do^.

Cuthbertus Herefordensis episcopus.

Breowinus.[7]

Jambritus,[8] abbas Sancti Augustini, Romæ[9] consecratus est a Paulo papa.

---

[1] *Gileberti*] Willelmi duo, add. A.

[2] Theforde, A.

[3] *Anno . . . DCII.*] om. A. The following tables begin in MS. A. at fo. 147.

[4] *Scilicet . . . Paulini*] om. A.

[5] Brichtwaldus, A.

[6] Statwinus, A.

[7] Brewinus, A.

[8] Jambertus, A.

[9] *Romæ*] om. A.

List of the archbishops of Canterbury, with their consecrators.

Athelardus Wintoniensis episcopus.
Wlfredus Romæ consecratus est a Leone papa III^tio.
Feologildus.
Ceonodus consecratus est Romæ a Gregorio papa III^tio.
Ethelredus Romæ consecratus est ab Adriano papa II^do.
Plegemundus Romæ consecratus est a Formoso papa.
Adelelmus Wellensis episcopus.
Wlfelmus Wellensis episcopus.
Odo episcopus Malmesbiriæ.
Elsinus Wentanus episcopus. Hic in Alpibus periit.
Brichthelmus electus sed reprobatus.
Dunstanus Wigornensis episcopus.
Ethelgarus Selesiensis episcopus.
Siricius Wiltuniensis episcopus. Hic clericos expulit et monachos induxit.
Aluricus Wintoniensis episcopus.
Alfegus Wintoniensis episcopus.
Livingus Wellensis episcopus.
Ethelnodus filius Egelmari comitis, decanus in ecclesia quæ dicitur Cristescherche in Hamtesire, et post ut dicitur Lincolniensis episcopus.
Elsius Wentanus episcopus, regis Haroldi capellanus.
Robertus Lundoniensis episcopus.
Stigandus Wintoniensis episcopus.
Lamfrancus[1] abbas Cadamensis, Beccensis monacus, consecratus a Gisone Wellensi et Waltero Herefordensi episcopis.
Anselmus abbas Beccensis, consecratus a Walkelino Wintoniensi episcopo vice Mauricii Lundoniensis episcopi.
Radulfus Rofensis episcopus.
Willelmus prior Sanctæ Osithæ de Chich, consecratus a Willelmo Wintoniensi episcopo vice Lundoniensis ecclesiæ.
Teobaldus Beccensis abbas, consecratus ab Alberico Hostiensi episcopo et apostolicæ sedis legato.
Thomas regis cancellarius, archidiaconus Cantuariensis, præpositus Beverlaci, consecratus a Henrico Wintoniensi episcopo vice Lundoniensis ecclesiæ tunc vacantis, episcopo Lundoniensi Ricardo secundo rebus humanis exempto.[2]
Ricardus prior Doverensis, consecratus Anagniæ ab Alexandro papa tertio.

---

[1] *Lamfrancus*] Lanfrancus, A.

[2] *episcopo . . . exempto*] Nam cum Walterus Rofensis episcopus hoc ad jus suum spectare contenderet, a causa cecidit, A.

Archbishops of Canterbury.

Baudewinus [1] Wigorniensis episcopus.
Hubertus Saresbiriensis episcopus.[2]

5. Lundonienses Episcopi.

Bishops of London.

Temporibus Britonum in urbe Lundonia multi flornerunt archiepiscopi, sed Anglorum temporibus dignitate translata, primus sedit Lundoniæ,

Mellitus.
Cedda.
Erkenwaldus.
Waldere.
Ingualdus.
Eguf.
Wigeth.[3]
Filbricth.[4]
Eadgar.
Kenwald.
Ebad.
Herebertus.
Osmundus.
Ethenoth.
Celbertus.
Cernlf.
Swithulf.[5]
Elstanus.[6]
Wlsius.
Edelwardus.
Elstanus.
Teodoricus.
Wlstanus.
Brichtelmus.
Elstanus.
Wlstanus.
Elphunus.
Alwinus.[7]
Elphwordus.[8]
Robertus I., *archiepiscopus.*
Willelmus.
Hugo.
Mauricius.
Ricardus I.
Gilebertus I.
Robertus II.
Ricardus II.
Gilebertus II.; hic consecravit Petrum Menevensem episcopum.[9]
Ricardus III.

---

[1] *Baudewinus*] Baldewinus, A.

[2] *episcopus*] MS. A. has a continuation of the list in a much later hand, and erased:—"et apostolicæ "sedis legatus; consecratus anno "gratiæ 1193." MS. Faustina A. 8 continues the list down to archbishop Winchelsey in later hands.

[3] *Wigeth*] Wichet, A.

[4] *Filbricth*] Filbricht, A.

[5] *Swithulf*] Switulf, A.

[6] *Elstanus*] Etstan, A.

[7] *Alwinus*] Alwius, A.

[8] *Elphwordus*] Elfimordus, A.

[9] *hic . . . episcopum*] om. A.

6. Wintonienses Episcopi.

Bishops of Winchester.

Primus apud West Saxones beatus Birinus in Dorcestria sedit episcopus. Post eum Agelbertus, Lentherius, Sanctus Hedda. Quo defuncto diocesis ejus divisa est in duas. Una data Danieli, videlicet Wintonia; altera Sancto Aldelmo, Sireburnia. Successit Danieli,

Humfredus.[1]
Kinehardus.[2]
Edelardus.
Egbad.[3]
Dud.
Kinebero.[4]
Alhmod.[5]
Wigdein.[6]
Herefrid.
Edmundus.
Elmstan.
Swithunus.
Alfridus.
Dunbertus.
Denewlfus.
Fridestanus; hic dimisit episcopatum.
Brinstanus.
Elfegus.
Elfsius.
Brichtelmus.
Alwoldus; hic clericos expulit et monacos induxit.
Elfegus.
Elnodus.
Elsius.
Elfwinus.[7]
Stigandus.
Walkelinus.
Willelmus.
Henricus.
Ricardus.
Godefridus.

7. Saresbirienses Episcopi.

Bishops Sherborne and Salisbury

In Schiresburnia primus sedit episcopus

Aldelmus.
Fordhere.
Herewoldus.
Ædelmod.
Denefrid.
Wlbertus.
Alstanus.
Edmundus.
Edelegus.
Alsius.

Asserus: deinde in tres parochias divisa est. Unam tenuit Athelwardus, id est Sireburniam; alteram tenuit Athelmus, id est, Wellensem ecclesiam; tertiam Eadulfus, id est Cridiensem ecclesiam.[8]

---

[1] *Humfredus*] Humfredus, A.
[2] *Kinehardus*] Kenehardus, A.
[3] *Egbad*] Eghad, A.
Kinebero] Kinehero, A.
[5] *Alhmod*] Almod, A.
[6] *Wigdein*] Wigohem, A.
[7] *Elfwinus*] Elwinus, A.
[8] *deinde . . . ecclesiam*] om. A.

Bishops of Sherborne and Salisbury.

Sigelmus.[1]
Werstanus.
Adelbaldus.
Aluredus.
Wlsinus.
Alsiwoldus.
Edelricus.
Edelsius.[2]
Bricthwinus.
Alwoldus ; hic mutavit sedem in Malmesbiriam.
Elstanus.[3]
Odo.
Osulfus.
Algarus.
Elstanus.[4]
Siricius.
Alluricus.
Bricthwoldus.
Hermannus[5] ; hic transtulit eandem sedem Saresbiriam.
Osmundus.
Rogerus.
Jocelinus.
Hubertus.
Herbertus.[6]

8. Wigornienses Episcopi.

Bishops of Worcester.

Beatus Theodorus archiepiscopus Cantuariæ cum consensu Adelredi regis Merciorum diocesim Saxulfi episcopi in v. dioceses divisit : cui episcopali sede in civitate constituta Leogera, Cudwinum ad Lichesfeldam ; Edwinum ad Lindesim provinciam : Etlam ad Dorkecestram ; Bosel ad Wigorniam consecravit[7] episcopos ; post Bosel,

Ostoro.
Edwinus.
Milredus.
Wermundus.[8]
Tilherus.
Headoredus.[9]
Denebert.
Alfwinus.
Werferd.
Edelhunus.
Coenwaldus.
Dunstanus.

Oswaldus. Hic clericos expulit et monacos induxit in ecclesia Wigorniæ.
Aldulfus.
Wlstanus.
Leofsius.

} Hi tres fuerunt simul episcopi Wigorniæ et archiepiscopi Eboracenses.

---

[1] *Sigelmus*] Sichelmus, A.

[2] In MS. A. Edelsius and Edelricus change places.

[3] *Elstanus*] Edelstanus, A.

[4] *Elstanus*] Estanus, A.

[5] *Hermannus*] Heremannus, A.

[6] *Hubertus* is added in different ink and *Herebertus* in a different hand in A.

[7] *consecravit*] ordinavit, A.

[8] *Wermundus*] Weremundus, fo. 6 ; see p. 206 ; and A.

[9] *Headoredus*] Eadoredus, fo. 6 and A.

Bishops of Worcester.

Brichtegc.[1]
Livingus.
Aldredus.[2]
Wlstanus.
Samson.[3]
Teolfus.[4]
Simon.
Johannes.
Aluredus.
Rogerus.
Baldewinus.
Willelmus.
Robertus.
Henricus.[5]

9. Lincolnienses Episcopi.

Bishops of Dorchester and Lincoln.

Dorkecestria[6] est villa in pago Oxenefordensi. Ibi post Adeead[7] hi episcopi fuerunt,

Adelwinus.
Edgarus.
Kinebertus.
Alewi.
Adulfus.
Chelwlfus.
Brichtredus.
Lewinus, qui ambos conjunxit episcopatus.
Ednot.[8]
Ascwy.[9]
Alfemus.[10]
Ednode.
Edericus.[11]
Ednod.
Wlwi.
Remigius; hic sedem transtulit ad Lincolniam civitatem, ibique fundatam ecclesiam canonicis multis implevit. Cenobium monachorum apud Sanctam Mariam de Stowe adauxit. Alterum apud Bardeneie ex veteri favore suo innovavit.
Successit ei Robertus, qui monacos apud Stowe summoveri et apud Egeneham[12] locari jussit.
Successit Alexander.
Robertus II.
Galterus.[13]
Hugo.

Foundation of Ely.

10.[14] Annus ab incarnatione Domini millesimus centesimus nonus tunc temporis effluebat, quando rex Henricus filius regis Willelmi, consilio venerabilis patris Anselmi Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, simul et auctoritate summi pontificis Urbani secundi, statum mutavit in alterum monasterium Elyense, cui

---

[1] *Brichtege*] Brictheke, fo. 6; Brichteche, A.
[2] *Aldredus*] Eboracensis archiepiscopus, add. A.
[3] *Samson*] Sanson, A.
[4] *Teolfus*] Theolfus, A.
[5] *Henricus*] Johannes added in A. in another hand.
[6] *Dorkecestria*] Dorchecestra, A.
[7] *Adeead*] Edead, A.
[8] *Ednot*] Ælfnod, A.
[9] *Ascwy*] Æscwi, A.
[10] *Alfemus*] Elfelmus, A.
[11] *Edericus*] Ædricus, A.
[12] *Egeneham*] Egenesham, A.
[13] *Galterus*] Walterus, A.
[14] This section is omitted in MS. A. MS. F. fo. 60; MS. T. fo. 32.

History of the see of Ely.

præcrat abbas Symeon, et ipsum infulis episcopalibus insigniri decrevit, præficiens ibi Herveium Bangorensem episcopum, virum sicut dicitur religiosum, cui curam de salute sua commiserat, et ad animæ suæ proficuum potius attendebat quam ad aliquod commodum temporale. Ne vero Lincolniensis ecclesia detrimentum pateretur in aliquo, manerium quoddam quod vocatur Espalwic, Elyensibus monachis ab antiquis collatum temporibus, Robertus Bloet Lincolniensis episcopus in escambium suæ jurisdictionis in proprios usus convertendum accepit. Herveius prædictus, accedens ad ecclesiam Elyensem, eam multis possessionibus dilatatam invenit, eam ornamentis pretiosissimis decoratam, juxta propheticum illud, "erit deau- Gal. Mon.
Succession of bishops. "ratio in templis," plurimum adaugere curavit. Herveio vii. 3.
successit Nigellus regis thesaurarius, nepos Rogeri Saresbiriensis episcopi; Nigello Galfridus Ridel; Galfrido Willelmus de Longocampo Ricardi regis cancellarius.

11. Batonienses Episcopi.

Bishops of Wells and Bath.

Tertius episcopatus West Saxonum fuit apud Wellas, villam[1] in Sumersatensi pago, pro copia fonticulorum ibi ebullientium ita dictam. Ibi a tempore regis Eadwardi senioris usque ad tempus Willelmi junioris, hi fuerunt episcopi;

Aldelmus.
Wlfelmus.
Alfech.
Wlfelmus.
Brichthelmus.
Kinewardus.
Segar.
Alwinus.
Livingus, qui et Elstan.
Edelmus.
Brichthwinus.[2]
Alwinus.
Merewit.[3]
Dudeca.
Gisa.
Johannes: hic transtulit sedem episcopalem Bathoniam, in qua Offa rex monasterium composuit,[4] et rex Edgarus more suo auserat.
Successit Godefridus.
Robertus.
Reginaldus.
Savaricus.

---

[1] *villam*] om. A.
[2] *Brichthwinus*] Brichtwinus, A.
[3] *Merewit*] Merehwit, A.
[4] *composuit*] composuerat, A.

12. Cestrenses Episcopi.

Bishops of Lichfield, Chester and Coventry.

Lichefeld est villa exigua[1] in qua Cedda et sedit et obiit, successit ei Drima, Cellad; post hos Trumhere.

Laruman.
Cedda.
Wlfridus.
Sewulf; cui successerunt duo episcopi, Hedda apud Lichesfeld; Wulfridus apud Ligrecestram; quo vi hostilitatis ejecto, ambas tenuit parochias
Hedda, et post eum
Aldwinus: quo defuncto tres facti episcopi in illa diocesi;
Vitta, Lichesfeld.
Totta, Ligrecestriam.
Adbead, Dorkecestria.[2]
Lichesfeldenses ergo episcopi post Vittam, fuerunt hi;
Hemel.
Clifrid.
Bertin.
Higeberd.
Aldulfus; hnic dedit pallium Adrianus papa.
Herewinus.
Erkenwald.
Humbertus.[3]
Kinerbertus.[4]
Tumbricth.[5]
Elle.
Elgar.
Kinsin.
Wnsi.
Elfech.[6]
Godwinus.
Lefgar.
Brichthmar.[7]
Wlsi.
Lefwinus.
Petrus; hic sedem transtulit apud Cestriam.
Robertus; hic sedem transtulit apud Coventriam.
Robertus.
Rogerus.
Walterus.
Ricardus.
Girardus.
Hugo.

13. Norwicenses Episcopi.

Episcopate of the East Angles.

Primus Orientalium Anglorum episcopus, Sanctus Felix Burgundus natione, in Ramesiensi humatus cenobio; cui successit Thomas, Bonefacius alias Bergisel, Bisi; quo defuncto rexerunt duo episcopi provinciam illam, usque ad tempus Ailbricti regis West Saxonum. Quorum unus sedebat apud Dommoc, alter apud Helmeham: quorum ista sunt nomina;[8]

---

[1] *exigua*] added in a different hand in A. Drima is altered to Diuma, and Cellas to Cellach.

[2] *Dorkecestria*] Dorchecestria, A.

[3] *Humbertus*] Hunberd, A.

[4] *Kinerbertus*] Kineberd, A.

[5] *Tumbricth*] Tunbricht, A.

[6] *Elfech*] Elfeh, A.

[7] *Brichthmar*] Brichtmar, A.

[8] *Primus . . . nomina*] Estanglorum episcopi, scilicet Norwicenses; Felix, hic rexit et Norfolc et Sufolch; Thomas, Bonifacius, Bisi. Post Eastanglia in duas parochias dividitur, A.

Bishops of Elmham, Dunwich, Thetford, and Norwich.

Helmanenses episcopi.	Domocenses episcopi.
Baldewinus.	Ecca.
Nobertus.[1]	Asculfus.
Ethlacus.[2]	Edredus.
Adelfridus.	Godwinus.
Lamfertus.[3]	Albertus.
Ethewlfus.[4]	Ailafus.[5]
Hunfertus.	Heardredus.
Humbrictus.	Elfunus.
	Hidfertus.
	Weremundus.
	Wilredus.

Quando rex Offa fecit archiepiscopatum apud Lichefeld, Alherdus Helmanensis et Tyfridus Dommocensis[6] erant episcopi; et tempore Ludecani[7] regis Merciorum et Athelbrichti regis West Saxonum, Hunbricht et Wilredus fuerunt episcopi Anglorum Orientalium. Sed eodem Ludecano incursante provinciam, etiam episcopis necessariorum copia destitutis, ex duobus unus factus sedem apud Helmeham villam habuit.

Helmanenses Episcopi.[8]

Ædulfus.
Tedredus.
Tedredus.
Elstanus.
Algarus.
Elwinus.
Alwricus.
Stigandus.
Agelmarus, frater Stigandi.
Arfastus: hic transtulit sedem episcopalem de Helmeham apud Thedforde tempore regis Willelmi primi.
Willelmus.
Herebertus: hic transtulit sedem apud Norwicum.
Everardus.
Willelmus.
Johannes.

---

[1] *Nobertus*] Notbertus, A.

[2] *Ethlacus*] Heatholaeus, A.

[3] *Lamfertus*] Lanfertus, A.

[4] Between Ethewlfus and Hunfertus A. has Hlh, and Sibba.

[5] *Ailafus*] Eilauus, A.

[6] *Dommocensis*] Dunewicensis, A.

[7] *Ludecani*] Ludecanii, Ludeeanio, A.

[8] The list in MS. A. is as follows: Athulfus, Alfricus, Theodredus, Thedredus, Athelstanus, Algarus, Alwinus, Alfricus, Alfricus, Stigandus, Agelmarus, Arfastus, &c., as in the text.

14. Cicestrenses Episcopi.

Bishops of Selsey and Chichester.

Primus apud Australes Saxones loco qui dicitur Selesie sedit Beatus Wilfridus; post quem cessavit episcopatus multis annis. Postmodum vero a Nothelmo archiepiscopo factus est episcopus ibi,

Ebrit.
Ella.
Sigthelm.[1]
Alubricht.
Bosa.
Gilshere.
Totta.
Pehtun.
Adelwlf.
Bernegus.
Cenred.
Cudred.
Ælfed.
Æadhelm.
Ædelgar.
Ordbricht.
Ælmer.
Ægelric.[2]
Grimketel.
Hecca.
Stigandus; non ille Wintoniensis et Cantuariensis. Hic autem Stigandus a Willelmo rege ibi factus episcopus, mutavit sedem in Cicestram diocesis suæ civitatem; successit episcopus
Willelmus.
Radulfus.
Sefridus.
Hilarius.
Johannes.
Sefridus.

15. Exonienses Episcopi.

Bishops of Crediton and Exeter.

Cridia est villa Devoniæ, quæ vulgo dicitur Devenesire,[3] xii. milibus ab Exonia. Hic sederunt per ordinem pontifices isti,

Edulfus.
Edelgar.
Alfwof.
Sideman.
Aluricus.
Alwelf.
Elnod.
Livingus.
Leouricus: hic sedem episcopalem transtulit in civitatem Excecestriam. Hanc urbem primus Elstanus in potestatem Angliæ effugatis Britonibus redegit.
Leourico successit
Osbertus.
Willelmus.
Robertus.
Robertus.
Bartholomeus.
Johannes.
Henricus.[4]

---

[1] *Sigthelm*] Sighelm, A.
[2] *Ægelric*] Egelrich, A.
[3] *Devenesire*] Deveneschire, A.
[4] *Henricus*] Different ink in A.

16. Herefordenses Episcopi.

Bishops of Hereford.

In civitate Herefordensi a principio hii fuerunt episcopi,

Putta.
Tirel.[1]
Torhere.
Waltrod.
Cuthbertus postea Cantuariensis archiepiscopus.
Successit ei Wodda.
Ecca.
Cedda.
Albertus.
Esnedus.
Colmannus.
Utel.
Wlfeardus.
Benna.
Edulfus.
Cudulfus.
Mucel.
Denilef.
Kinemundus.
Edgar.
Tidelm.
Wlfhelm.
Aluricus.
Edulfus.
Elstanus.
Leovegar: hunc tempore regis Eadwardi Griffin rex Walensium, urbe cremata, expulit sede et vita. Successit
Walterus.
Robertus.
Girardus.[2]
Reinelmus.
Goffridus.
Ricardus.
Robertus.
Gilebertus.
Robertus.
Robertus.
Willelmus.

17. Eboracenses Archiepiscopi.

Archbishops of York.

Primus Paulinus Eboraci fuit archiepiscopus; quo expulso, Scoti videlicet,

Aidanus,
Finianus,

Colmannus, successerunt; nec pallio nec urbis nobilitate volentes attolli, in insula Lindefarnensi delituerunt: successit Wlfridus, quo ultra mare causa consecrationis moras nectente, Cedda contra regulas ab Oswio rege intronizatur, sed ipso ab archiepiscopo Theodoro extruso, Wlfridus[3] item episcopus constituitur. Quo iterum expulso, duo pro eo constituti sunt, in Eboraco Bosa, in Augustaldo Eata. Illo autem defuncto Johannes pro eo ordinatur. Tempore Alfridi regis iterum in episcopatum totum Wlfridus, expulsis Johanne de Haugustaldo et Bosa de Eboraco, receptus est: post annos v. expulso iterum Wlfrido, illi sedibus suis restituti sunt. Defuncto rege Alfrido,

---

[1] *Tirel*] Tirheel, A.

[2] In the margin is inserted the list of the bishops of Worcester given above: "Wigornenses episcopi. Os- " toro," &c., as above, p. 200.

[3] *Wlfridus*] Wilfridus, A.

iterum Wlfridus in concordiam receptus, sedem apud Haugustaldum habuit, Johanne in Eboraco migrante, quia jam Bosa defunctus erat. Cui successit in Eboraco Wlfridus presbyter suus; hoc defuncto substituitur Archbishops of York.

Egbertus, frater ejusdem provinciæ regis Egberti. Is sua industria et fratris potentia sedem illam in genuinum statum reformavit; hujus successori Cenæ substitutus est Eubaldus: post eum hi fuerunt archiepiscopi:

Wlsius.
Wimundus.
Wlfhere.
Edelbaldus.
Rodewaldus.
Wlstanus.
Oskitel.
Oswaldus, Aldulfus, Wlstanus — Hi tres simul fuerunt et episcopi Wigornenses et archiepiscopi Eboracenses.
Kinisius.
Aldredus. Hic fuit episcopus Wigorniæ, sed non simul optinuit episcopatum et archiepiscopatum: hic fundavit ecclesiam Sancti Petri Glavorniæ.
Thomas.
Girardus.
Thomas.
Turstinus.
Willelmus.
Henricus.
Rogerus.
Galfridus.[1]

18. Dunelmenses Episcopi.

Lindisfarne est insula exigua quæ nomine a provincialibus Hāligeland vocatur, in qua Aidanus primus sedit episcopus: fuerunt successores ejus, Bishops of Lindisfarne, Chester le Street, and Durham.

Finianus.
Colmannus.
Tua.[2]
Eata.
Cuthbertus.
Eadbertus.
Eadbertus.
Adelwoldus.
Kinewlfus.
Higebaldus: hujus temporis Dani depopulati sunt insulam, ut nec sacrosanctis parcerent altaribus. Tunc corpus Sancti Cuthberti quidam apud Hubenford[3] deposuerunt juxta amnem Tunda, ubi jacuit multis annis usque ad adventum Edredi regis. Higebaldo fuerunt successores,
Egbert.[4]
Erdulfus.
Cuthardus.[5]
Milred.
Wilredus.[6]
Uthredus.[7]
Sexhelmus.

---

[1] *Galfridus*] in a different hand in A.
[2] *Tua*] Tuda, A.
[3] *Hubenford*] Hunbenford, A.
[4] *Egbert*] Egberd, A.
[5] *Cuthardus*] Cudheard, A.
[6] *Wilredus*] Widredus, A.
[7] *Uthredus*] Uhtredus, A.

Bishops of Lindisfarne, Chester le Street, and Durham.

Aldredus.
Alsius.
Alhun.
Edmundus, sub quo corpus Sancti Cuthberti Dunelmum relatum est. Post Edmundum,
Edred.
Egeluinus.
Engelricus.
Walkerus.
Willelmus.
Rannulfus, scilicet Flambard.
Gaufridus.
Willelmus.
Hugo.[1]

Bishops of Ely.

[2] Cum superius ageretur de Lincolniensibus episcopis, insertum est qualiter Eliensis abbacia proprium cœpit habere territorium episcopii jure simul et appellatione gavisa:

Herveius.
Nigellus.
Gaufridus.
Willelmus.

19.[3] *Quantum archiepiscopi Cantuarienses in archiepiscopatu vixerunt, et a quibus apostolicis pallia sua susceperunt.*

List of the archbishops of Canterbury, and names of the popes from whom they received the pall.

Gregorius papa primus cum sedisset undecim annis Augustino pallium direxit archiepiscopo Cantuariensi; qui genti præfuit Anglorum xvi. annis. Item scribitur quod idem Gregorius Laurentio pallium miserit archiepiscopo; miserit etiam et archiepiscopo Mellito. Quorum uterque sedit annis quinque. Quod de facto dicimus impossibile, quia pro certo constat quod Gregorius tantum sedit annis xiii., mensibus vi., diebus x.

Anni Domini DCII.	Sedit.	Annos.	Menses.	Dies.	Summa. Annorum.	Mensium.	Dierum.
Gregorius .	Augustino .	XVI.			XVI.		
Idem . .	Laurentio .	V.			XXI.		
Idemque . .	Mellito .	V.			XXVI.		
Bonefacius .	Justo . .	III.			XXIX.		
Honorius. .	Honorio .	XXVI.			LV.		
	Vacavit .	I.	VI.		LVI.	VI.	
Idem Honorius	Deusdedit .	X.			LXVI.		
	Vacavit .	III.			LXIX.		
Vitalianus .	Theodoro .	XXII.			XCI.		
	Vacavit .	I.			XCII.		
Idem . .	Brichtwaldo	XXXVII.	VI.		CXXIX.	XII.	XIIII.
Gregorius .	Tatwino .	III.			CXXXII.		
Idem . .	Nothelmo .	V.			CXXXVII.		

[1] *Hugo*] Philippus added in a different hand in A.

[2] MS. A. merely gives a list of the bishops of Ely: "Helyenses "episcopi: Herveus, Nigellus, Gau- "fridus, Willemus," to which another hand has added Eustachius.

[3] MS. F. fo. 64; MS. T. fo. 34. The following list, without the introduction, has been given above, vol. i., pp. 16, 17. It is given here in order to reproduce the Ripley MS. in its integrity.

	Sedit.	Annos.	Menses.	Dies.	Summa. Annorum.	Mensium.	Dierum.
Idemque . .	Cuthberto .	XVII.					
	Hic Cuthbertus primus in ecclesia sua sepultus fuit, et omnes successores ejus præter Jambertum.						
Paulus . .	Bregwino .	III.			CLVII.	XV.	
Idem . .	Jamberto .	XXVII.			CLXXXIIII.		
Adrianus . .	Adelardo .	XIII.			CXCVII.		
Leo . . .	Wlfredo .	XXXVIII.			CCXXXV.		
Johannes .	Feologildo .		III.				
	Vacavit .	I.			CCXXXVI.		
Gregorius .	Chelnoth .				CCLXXVII.		
Adrianus . .	Athelredo .				CCXCV.		
	Vacavit .	II.			CCXCVII.		
Formosus .	Pleimundo .	XXXIIII.			CCCXXXI.		
Johannes . .	Athelmo .						
Idem . .	Wlfhelmo .	XXXV.			CCCLXVI.		
Agapitus . .	Odoni .						
Johannes .	Dunstano .	XXVII.			CCCXCIII.		
Idem . .	Algaro .	I.	III.		CCCXCIIII.	XVIII.	
Johannes .	Sirico . .	V.			CCCXCIX.		
Idem . .	Alurico .	XI.			CCCCX.		
Idem . .	Alfego .	VI.	VII.		CCCCXVI.	XXV.	
Benedictus .	Livingo .	VII.			CCCCXXIIII.		
Idem . .	Egelnotho .	XVIII.			CCCCLI.		
Alexander .	Adsino .	XI.			CCCCLII.		
Idem . .	Roberto .	II.			CCCCLIIII.		
	Iste Robertus expulsus fuit ab Anglia.						
Victor . .	Stigando .	XVII.			CCCCLXXI.		
	Iste Stigandus a Willelmo rege in carcere positus est ibique defunctus. Hic primus in habitu clericali archiepiscopatu functus est.						
	Vacavit .	II.			CCCCLXXIII.		
Alexander .	Lanfranco .	XIX.			CCCCXCII.		
	Vacavit .	IIII.			CCCCXCVI.		
Urbanus .	Anselmo .	XVI.			DXII.		
	Vacavit .	V.			DXVII.		
Paschalis . .	Radulfo .	VIII.	VI.		DXXV.	XXXI.	
	Vacavit .		IIII.			XXXV.	
Calixtus . .	Willelmo .	XIII.	IX.		DXXXVIII.	XLIIII.	
	Vacavit .	II.	I.	XIII.	DXL.	XLV.	XXVIII.
Innocentius .	Teobaldo .	XXII.	IIII.		DLXII.	XLIX.	
	Vacavit .	I.	I.	XVI.	DLXIII.	LX.	XXXV.
Alexander .	Thomæ .	VIII.	VI.	XXVIII.			
	Vacavit .	I.	V.	IIII.			
Idem . .	Ricardo .	IX.	XI.	XIII.			
	Vacavit .		X.	IX.			
Lucius . .	Baldewino .	VI.	VI.	XVII.			
	Vacavit .	III.		minus	XVI. diebus.		
Celestinus .	Huberto .						

Bishops of Rochester.

20. De episcopis Rofensibus.[1]

Beda, libro i°. cap. iii°. Fecit rex Athelbertus in civitate Londoniæ ecclesiam Sancti Pauli, in qua Mellitus locum sedis episcopalis et successores ejus haberent. Justum vero in ipsa Cantia Augustinus episcopum ordinavit in civitate quam gens Anglorum, a primario quondam illius qui dicebatur Rof, Rovecester cognominat. Bed. II. E. ii. 3.

L. ii. cap. ultimo. Romanus Rofensis episcopus ad Honorium papam a Justo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo legatarius missus absortus fuit fluctibus, ac per hoc curam episcopatus Paulinus archiepiscopus Eboracensis, a sede sua ejectus, invitatione Honorii antistitis Cantuariensis et Edebaldi regis suscepit. Ib. ii. 20.

L. iii. cap. xiii°. In locum Paulini Rofensis episcopi Honorius Cantuariensis episcopus ordinavit Ythamar. Ib. iii. 14.

Theodorus in civitate Rofi post Damianum ordinavit Puttam. Ib. iv. 2.

L. iiii. cap. xii°. Theodorus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis post Puttam in civitate Rofi Quitelmum consecravit episcopum, et eo decedente Gebmundum pro eo substituit antistitem. Ib. iv. 12.

Libro v°. cap. viii°. Brichtwaldus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus Tobiam ecclesiæ Rofensis consecravit episcopum. Ib. v. 8.

Adulfus.	Ernostus.
Dun.	Gundulfus.
Ardulfus.	Radulfus.
Deora.	Arnulfus.
Wermundus.	Johannes.
Bernmodus.	Ascelinus.
Burhicus.	Walterus.
Alstanus.	Gualerannus.
Godwinus.	Gilebertus.
Siwardus.	

Relation of the see of Rochester to Canterbury.

Si consuetudo memoriam hominum sursumversum excedens diligentius exquiratur, profecto reperies quod Rofensis episcopus non ut alii per regnum episcopi vel abbates in regiis præstationibus regi seu vicecomiti tenetur obnoxius, quinimmo dumtaxat archiepiscopo soli, vel officialibus suis, in quibuslibet functionibus pro tempore satisfacit.[2]

List of the founders of churches.

21.[3] De fundatoribus ecclesiarum per Angliam vel monasteriorum antequam regnum sibi subjugassent Normanni, dicendum est. Nam numerus religiosarum domorum quæ fundatæ sunt Normannorum temporibus in immensum excrescit, et annis singulis augmentatur. Quarum numerum et ordinem,

[1] This is given in much shorter form in MS. A.

[2] See above, vol. ii., p. 14.

[3] This section is omitted in A.

a quibus vel quo tempore fundatæ sunt posteros sinamus inquirere. List of the founders of churches in England, before the Norman Conquest.

Ecclesia Sanctæ Trinitatis apud Cantuariam a Romanis fundata est, sed ab Augustino consecrata.

Ecclesia apostolorum Petri et Pauli extra muros Cantuariæ, ab Augustino fundata est, sed a Laurentio archiepiscopo consecrata est.

Ecclesia Sancti Pauli Lundoniæ ab Athelberto rege fundata est.

Ecclesia Sancti Andreæ de Rovecestra, similiter.

Ecclesia Sancti Petri Eboraci fundata est ab Eadwino rege Northanhymbrorum.

Ecclesia Sanctæ Mariæ Lincolniæ fundata est a Paulino primo archiepiscopo Eboracensi.

Ecclesia Wintoniensis a Cenewaldo filio Keneglisii fundata est.

Ecclesia Sancti Petri de Burgo a Saxulfo fundata est.

Ecclesia Wigornensis ab Athelredo rege fundata est.

Ecclesia de Certesheie et de Berkinges fundata est a Sancto Erkenwaldo Lundoniensi episcopo.

Ecclesia Batoniæ ab Offa rege fundata est, sed ab Eadgaro ditata.

Ecclesia Abendduniæ a Cissa patre Inæ regis inchoata est, sed ab Eadgaro ditata.

Ecclesia Sancti Albani ab Offa rege fundata est.

Ecclesia Glastoniæ ab Ine rege fundata est.

Ecclesia de Evesham ab Egwino Wigornensi episcopo fundata est.

Ecclesiæ de Edelingesgaie et Saftesbiriæ et Muchelneæ ab Aluredo rege fundatæ sunt.

Ecclesia de Wiburna a Sancta Culburc fundata est.

Ecclesia monialium apud Wintoniam ab Athelwoldo ejusdem urbis episcopo fundata est.

Ecclesia quæ dicitur Croilande a Waltcolfo fundata est.

Ecclesia de Romescia ab Eadwardo seniore fundata est.

Ecclesia de Mideltune ab Elstano rege fundata est.

Ecclesia de Torneia a rege Eadgaro fundata est.

Ecclesia de Rameseia ab Alfwino comite fundata est.

Ecclesia Wiltoniensis ab Edida filia regis Edgari fundata est.

Ecclesia Malmesbiriæ a Maidulfo fundata est.

Ecclesia Sanctæ Mariæstowe ab Elnotho Lincolniensi fundata est.

Ecclesia Cernel ab Egelwardo fundata est.

Ecclesia Ambresbiræ ab Alfrida fundata est.

Ecclesia Coventreiæ a Leurico et Godiva fundata est.

Ecclesia Sancti Eadmundi ab Alfwino Orientalium episcopo

List of founders.

Anglorum fundata est, sed rex Canutus ibidem posuit monachos.

Ecclesia de Essendune a rege Canuto fundata est.

Ecclesia Sancti Petri Gloucestriæ ab Aldredo Wigorniensi episcopo fundata est.

Ecclesia Sancti Petri de Westmonasterio a Mellito Lundoniensi episcopo fundata, sed a rege Eadwardo tertio ditata fuit.

Canonization of S. Thomas of Canterbury.

22. [1] Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, prothomartir in Anglia Normannorum temporibus, ob triumphalem sui sanguinis effusionem apud Lambeiam in nomine suo fundatam glorificavit ecclesiam, quam Baldewinus archiepiscopus inchoavit, quam et Hubertus Baldewini successor et regni justitiarius et apostolicæ sedis legatus—.

Canonizatio Sancti Thomæ Martyris.[2]

" Alexander episcopus, servus servorum Dei, venerabilibus " fratribus archiepiscopis, episcopis, et dilectis filiis aliis ec- " clesiarum prælatis et universo clero et populo per Angliam " constitutis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.

" Redolet Anglia fragrantia et virtute signorum quæ per " merita illius sancti et reverendi viri Thomæ, quondam Can- " tuariensis archiepiscopi, Dominus operatur; et universa læ- " tatur ubique fidelium Christiana religio pro eo quod Ille " qui est mirabilis et gloriosus in sanctis sanctum Suum post " mortem clarificavit. Cujus vita mirabilis multa fulsit gloria " meritorum, et tandem martirio consummata est certaminis " gloriosi. Quamvis autem de sanctitate ipsius dubitare non " possit qui ejus vitam et laudabilem conversationem attendit, " et gloriosam considerat passionem, voluit tamen Salvator et " Redemptor noster ejus sanctitatis insignia post mortem " suam magnificis irradiare miraculis, ut qui pro Christo in- " superabilis virtutis constantia necessitates et pericula pertu- " lit, sui laboris et certaminis in æterna beatitudine cognos- " catur ab omnibus suscepisse triumphum. Nos autem auditis " innumeris et magnis miraculis, quæ jugiter per illius sancti " viri merita fieri universitas narrat fidelium, et super his non " sine magno gaudio per dilectos filios nostros, Albertum tituli

[1] This sentence refers, of course, to the unfortunate church at Lambeth, which our author expected to see finished and consecrated by archbishop Hubert. The church was destroyed by papal order before it was consecrated, and thus the record of the foundation was never completed. The sentence occurs in the Imagines, above, p. 165.

[2] Above, vol. i., p. 369.

" Sancti Laurentii in Lucina, et Theodinum tituli Sancti Vi- Canonization of S. Thomas.
" talis, presbiteros cardinales, apostolicæ sedis legatos, qui
" eadem miracula tanto perspicacius didicerunt, quanto amplius
" sunt loco vicini, præcipue certiores effecti, et plurium alia-
" rum personarum testimonio fidem sicut debuimus adhibentes,
" prædictum archiepiscopum sollempniter in ecclesia, magno
" ibidem clericorum et laicorum collegio præsente, in capite
" jejunii, deliberato fratrum nostrorum consilio canonizavimus,
" ipsumque decrevimus sanctorum cathalogo ascribendum.
" Universitatem itaque vestram monemus, et auctoritate qua
" fungimur districte vobis præcipimus, ut natale prædicti
" gloriosi martiris die passionis suæ sollempniter annis singulis
" celebretis, et apud ipsum votivis orationibus satagatis pec-
" catorum veniam promereri; ut qui pro Christo in vita exi-
" lium, et in morte virtutis constantiam passionis martirium
" pertulit, fidelium jugi supplicatione pulsatus, pro nobis apud
" Dominum intercedat. Datum Signiæ, iii^tio idus Martii."

II. Imperatores Romani.[1]

II. List of the Cæsars and Roman emperors.

Gaius Julius Cesar regnavit annis v.

Octovianus, a quo Augustus mensis qui Sextilis dicebatur, regnavit annis lvi.

Tiberius regnavit annis xxiiii.

Gaius Calicula regnavit annis iiii.

Clandius regnavit annis xiiii.

Nero regnavit annis xiiii.

Galba regnavit mensibus vii.

Otho.

Vitellius.

Vespasianus regnavit annis ix., m. ix., d. xxiii.

Titus regnavit annis ii.

Domitianus, Titi frater junior, regnavit annis xv., m. v.

Nerva regnavit anno i., m. iiii.

Trajanus regnavit annis xviii., m. vi.

Adrianus regnavit annis xxi.

Titus cognomento Pius Antoninus, cum liberis suis Aurelio et Lucio, regnavit annis xxii., m. iii.

Marcus Antoninus, qui et Verus, cum fratre suo Lucio Aurelio Commodo, regnavit annis xxiiii., m. i.

Commodus regnavit annis xiii.

Elius Pertinax regnavit mensibus vi.: Julianus jurisperitus occiditur ad Pontem Moluii.

---

[1] MS. A., fo. 153, in much shorter form. Faustina A. 8, fo. 66 v°; Tiberius A. 9, fo. 40.

II. List of Roman emperors.

Severus ex provincia Tripolitana regnavit annis xviii; Pertinacem se vocari jussit.

Antonius cognomento Caracalla, Severi filius, regnavit annis vii.

Macrinus, ex præfecto imperator factus, regnavit anno i.

Aurelius Antonius, Caracallæ filius, regnavit annis iii.

Alexander, Mammeæ filius, regnavit annis xiii.

Maximinus, primus ex militari manu senatu nolente imperans, regnavit annis iii.

Gordianus regnavit annis viii.

Philippus cum Philippo filio suo regnavit annis vii.

Decius, de Pannonia inferiore, Burdaliæ natus, regnavit annis iii., m. vi.

Gallus.

Valerianus et Galienus regnaverunt annis xv.

Claudius regnavit anno i., m. viii.

Aurelianus regnavit annis v., m. vi.

Tacitus regnavit m. vi.

Florianus regnavit diebus lxxxix.

Probus regnavit annis vi., m. iiii.

Carus, cum filiis Carino et Numeriano, regnavit annis ii.

Dioclitianus Dalmata, scribæ filius, cum Maximiano regnavit annis xx.

Galerius moratus est in Illirico.

Constantius in Britannia annis xiii.

Constantinus:[1] hic ædificavit Constantinopolim, et ibi transtulit imperium, et regnavit simul et Constantinopolis et Romæ; et isti similiter regnaverunt; Constantinus, Constantius, Constans:—

Julianus.

Jovinianus.

Isti post Jovinianum diviso imperio regnaverunt; alii Constantinopolis, alii Romæ:—

Constantinopolis.	Romæ.
Valens.	Valentinianus.
Valentinianus.	Gratianus.
Theodosius.	
Archadius.	Honorius.
Theodosius junior.	Valentinianus.
Marcianus.	Maximinus.
Leo.	Avitus.

[1] Constantinus cum tribus filiis; Constantinus transtulit imperium Constantinopolim, A.

II. List of Roman emperors.

Constantinopolis.	Romæ.
Zenon.	Majorianus.
Anastasius.	Anthemius.
Justinus.	Olimbrius.
Justinianus; hic reduxit imperium, superato Vitigio per Bilisarium, et deinde Totila qui illi successerat per Narsetem interfecto.	Glicerius.
	Augustulus.
	Odoacer.
	Teodoricus.
	Vitigius.
	Totila.

Justinus junior.
Tiberius regnavit annis vi.
Mauritius regnavit annis xx.
Focas regnavit annis viii.
Heraclius regnavit annis xvi.
Constantinus Heraclii filius imperio coronatus cum Irradona fratre suo regnavit annis vi.
Constantinus Constantini filius regnavit annis xv.
Justinianus ante dejectionem regnavit annis x.
Leo per tirannidem regnavit annis iii.
Tiberius regnavit annis vii.
Justinianus secundo regnavit annis vi.
Absimarius regnavit annis vi.
Philippicus regnavit quadram cum anno.
Anastasius regnavit dodram cum anno.
Arcesius, qui et Theodosius, regnavit annis ii.
Leo cum Constantino filio regnavit annis xxvii.
Constantinus.
Leo Cazarus.
Constantinus cum Hirene matre.
Hirene sola.

The empire transferred to the Franks.

Sub hoc tempore imperium Romanum ad reges Francorum translatum est, Karolo magno filio Pepini regis primo imperatore facto.

In Constantinopoli vero regnum Græcorum permansit, et post Hirenem Niceforus imperium arripuit.

Franci Imperatores.

Frank emperors.

Karolus Magnus.	hactenus constat imperium Romanorum.
I. Ludovicus.	
I. Lotharius: diademate deposito private vixit, post quem Baioariorum surrexit regnum, apud quos	II. Lotarius.
	II. Ludovicus.
	II. Karolus.
	III. Karolus.

II. List of emperors.

III. Ludovicus.
I. Berengarius.
II. Berengarius.
I. Hugo.
III. Berengarius.
III. Lotarius.
IIII. Berengarius.
I. Otto.
II. Otto.
III. Otto.
I. Henricus.
I. Conradus.
II. Henricus.
III. Henricus.
IIII. Henricus.
IIII. Lotharius.
II. Conradus.
Fredericus.
V. Henricus.,

Constantinopolitani Imperatores.

Emperors of Constantinople.

Niceforus.
Michael Curopalatas.
Leo Armenius.
Michael.
Teopilus.
Michael cum Constantino.
Michael et Porphirogenitus.
Michael solus.
Basilius.
Leo et Alexander et filius ejus cum eo.
Leo et Alexander soli.
Leo cum filio Constantino Porfirogenito.
Alexander cum eodem Constantino nepote suo.
Constantinus prædictus Porfirogenitus cum Zoe matre.
Romanus Elipotanus cum eodem Constantino, cujus filiam accepit uxorem.
Constantinus idem cum filio Romano.
Romanus filius ejus cum filio suo Basilio.
Niceforus.
Johannes, interfecto Niceforo, regnavit cum Basilio et Constantino.
Constantinus frater Basilii.
Romanus gener ejus cum uxore Zoi.
Michael Etheriarchis.
Michael Arcuntopantin.
Theodora.
Michael Senex.
Ysai cum Eano.
Constantinus dux.
Edoclia uxor ejus.
Romanus Diogenes.
Niceforus Butaniot.

Alexius nepos Ysaci. Hic pugnavit cum Roberto Wiscarde. II. Roman emperors.
Johannes Porfirogenitus.
Manuel.
Alexius.
Andronicus proditor.
Cursac Angeli.

III. Reges Francorum.[1]

III. Kings of the Franks.

Priamus dux.
Marcomirus dux.
Faromundus rex.
Clodio rex.
Meroveus.
Childericus.
Clodoveus, qui et Ludovicus.

Sigilbertus frater Crannii occiditur a Fredegunde uxore sua.
Lotarius pater Crannii: Brunichildem reginam suam equo indomito alligatam dirumpi præcepit.

Majores domus in Francia.	Chilpericus. Hic, quia luxuriosus erat, ejectus est a Francis. Franci vero Egidium Romanum, magistrum militum, viii° annis habuerunt regem. Sed post Chilpericus rediit Francis,	
Erkanoaldus.	Clotarius.	Post transmigrationem generationis ex Blitilde filia Clotarii regis Ansbertus genuit Arnoldum, Arnoldus genuit
Ebroinus.	Dagobertus.	
Wlfoaldus.	Clodoveus.	
Leudesius.	Clotaricus.	
Waratho.	Theodoricus.	
Bertarius.	Clodoveus.	
Pipinus.	Childebertus.	
Grimoaldus.	Dagobertus.	Arnulfum.
Theodowaldus.	Chilpericus: hic alienus.	Arnulfus genuit Anseisum.
Raginfredus.	Theodoricus filius Dagoberti.	Anseisus genuit Pipinum.
Karolus Martellus.	Childericus et Hilderi-cus.	Pipinus genuit Karolum Martellum.
	Hic finita est successio Merovingorum.	Karolus Martellus genuit Pipinum.
		Pipinus genuit Karolum Magnum.

[1] MS. A. fo. 154; MS. Faustina A. 8, fo. 68.

III. Kings of the Franks.

Ex præfecto palatii factus est rex Francorum
- Pipinus.
- Karolus Magnus.
- Ludovicus pius.
- Karolus Calvus.
- Ludovicus Balbus.
- Karolomannus.
- Ludovicus nil fecit.
- Karolus simplex.

Dux Aquitaniæ . Odo alienus.
Dux Parisiensis . Robertus alienus.
Dux Burgundiæ . Radulfus alienus.

Hic reductum est regnum.
Ludovicus filius Karoli.

Hic finita est successio præfectoriorum, qui a Meroveo descenderunt per Blitildem.
- Lotarius xxx.
- Ludovicus ix.
- Carolus frater ejus anno dimidio.

Hic translatum est regnum.
Hugo Chapet ix.
vel xxx.
Robertus xxxix. et s.
Henricus xxv. vel xxiiii.
Philippus xlix. vel l.
Ludovicus xxx.
Philippus ii.
Ludovicus.
Philippus.

Successio Merovingorum.

The Merovingians.

Meroveus genuit Childericum.
Childericus genuit Clodoveum.
Clodoveus genuit Clotarium.
Clotarius genuit Chilpericum.
Chilpericus genuit alium Clotarium.
Clotarius genuit Dagobertum et Blitildem.
Dagobertus genuit alium Clodoveum.
Clodoveus genuit Theodoricum.
Theodoricus genuit Childebertum.
Childebertus genuit alium Dagobertum.
Dagobertus genuit alium Theodoricum.

Theodoricus genuit Clotarium. III. Kings of the Franks.
Et post transmigrationem generationis ex filia regis Clotharii Ansbertus genuit Arnoldum.

Successio Præfectoriorum.

Arnoldus genuit Arnulfum. The race of Karolings.
Arnulfus genuit Anseisum ex filia Pipini ducis, qui fuit major domus sub Dagoberto fratre Blitildis.
Anseisus genuit Pipinum.
Pipinus genuit Karolum Martellum.
Carolus Martellus genuit alium Pipinum.
Pipinus genuit Karolum Magnum.
Karolus Magnus genuit Ludovicum.
Ludovicus genuit Karolum Calvum.
Karolus Calvus genuit alium Ludovicum.
Ludovicus genuit Karolum Simplicem.
Karolus Simplex genuit alium Ludovicum transmarinum.
Ludovicus genuit alium Lotharium, de quo natus est Ludovicus qui fuit captus in Normannia, hujus prosapiæ rex ultimus.

Successio Capaticiorum.

The race of Hugh Capet.

Hugo.	Ludovicus.
Robertus.	Philippus.
Henricus.	Ludovicus.
Philippus.	Philippus.

IV. [De regnis diversis.]

1. Reges Assiriorum.[1]

IV. Kings of diverse nations :— 1. Assyrians.

Ninus condidit civitatem Ninum in regione Assiriorum, quam Ebrei vocant Niniven.

Primus rex.

Ninus.	Armamus.
Semiramis.	Belochus.
Zameis.	Baleus.
Arius.	Artadas.
Aralius.	Mamithus.
Xerses.	Paschalis.
	Sperus.
	Mamilus.
	Sparetus.
	Astacadus.
	Amintus.
	Bolochus.
	Belesper.

[1] MS. A., fo. 154 v°; MS. Faustina A. 8, fo. 68; MS. Tiberius A. 9, fo. 41.

IV. Kings of diverse nations:—

1. Assyrians.

Lamper.
Sosarus.
Lampridis.
Pannias.
Mithreus.
Thananes.[1]
Tenterius.
Tineus.
Dercilus.
Eupales.
Laostenes.
Offractes.
Offractenus.
Agrazapes.
Sardanapalus.[2]

2. Reges Medorum.

2. Medes.

Arbaeus Medus Assiriorum regno destructo regnum in Medos transtulit.
Primus Rex
Arbacus.
Sosarus.
Medidus.
Cardiceas.
Deioses.
Fraortes.
Ciaxares.
Astiages.

3. Persians.

3. Cirus Medorum destruxit imperium et regnavit Persis, subverso rege Medorum Astiage.

Primus rex Persarum.

Cirus.
Cambises, qui et Nabugodonosor.[3]
Darius.
Xerses.
Artaxerses.
Darius.
Artaxerses qui et Asuerus; hic cxviii. habuit filios.[4]
Artaxerses qui et Ochus.
Arxes.
Darius.

4. Reges Egipciorum.[5]

4. Egyptians.

Ptholomeus.
Ptholomeus Philadelphus.
Ptholomeus Euergetes.
Ptolomeus Philopator.
Ptolomeus Epiphanes.
Ptolomeus Philometor.
Ptolomeus Euergetes.
Ptolomeus Fiscon, qui et Sother.
Ptolomeus qui et Alexander.
Ptolomeus.
Ptolomeus Dionisius.
Cleopatra.

5. Item reges Persarum.

5. Persians.

Siluit regnum Persarum usque ad annum Domini ccclxxxi., in quo regnavit Persis Sapor, xx^{ti}iiii^{or} annis.
Sapor.
Sidigerdis.
Gauranes.[6]
Cuades.
Kabades.
Cosdroe.
Hosmisda.
Cosdroe.
Sirophis.
Adesir.

---

[1] *Thananes*] Tathanes, A.

[2] *Sardanapalus*] Sardanapaulus, A.

[3] *Nabugodonosor*] Nabuchodonosor, A.

[4] *qui . . . filios*] om. A.

[5] *Egipciorum*] Egyptiorum, A.

[6] *Gauranes*] Gaurarnes, A.

6. De Origine Gothorum.

IV. Kings of diverse nations:—
6. Goths.

Gothi, qui et Getes, Scantiam,[1] Scithiæ insulam, cum rege suo Berith primo incoluerunt; post sub Filemere v^to^ rege suo ad citeriores usque ripas, scilicet Danubii,[2] progressi, Traciam, Daciam, Mesiam pervagati sunt. Qui transito Danubio Romanum imperium infestantes, imperatorem Decium cum filio suo Decio peremerunt. Adhuc tamen trans Danubium constituti, et civili jam inter se bello fatigati, ab Hunis in Scithia debacantibus partim sunt bello subjugati, partim a patria sunt expulsi. Gothi igitur expulsi Romanum imperium adierunt, et a Valente imperatore Romano inhabitandi locum impetraverunt. Isti appellati sunt Wisigothi,[3] id est, Occidentales Gothi. Alii vero trans Danubium remanentes, Ostrogothi, id est Orientales Gothi dicti sunt.

7. Reges Ostrogotorum.

7. Ostrogoths.

Winitharius.[4]
Hunimundus.

XL. *annis fuerunt sine rege.*

Walamer.
Theudemer.
Theodoricus.
Athalaricus.
Theodatus.
Eldepatus.
Erarius.
Totila.
Theias.

8. Reges Wisigothorum.

8. Wisigoths.

Fritigernus.

XIIII. *annis sine rege.*

Alaricus.
Athanulfus.
Sigericus.
Wallia.
Teodoricus.
Turismodus.
Teodoricus; hujus tempore fuit Sydonius.[5]
Eoricus.
Alaricus.
Amauricus.[6]
Theuda.
Teudesgisilus.
Agilam.
Athanagildus.
Leuigildus.
Richaredus.
Bethericus.
Sisebodus.
Suitilam.
Sisenandus.
Chintilan.
Tolgan.
Thintas.
Flavius.

---

[1] *Scantiam*] Cantiam, B.
[2] *scilicet Danubii*] om. A.
[3] *Wisigothi*] Witsigoti, A.
[4] *Winitharius*] Winitarius, A.
[5] *hujus . . . Sydonius*] om. A.
[6] *Amauricus*] Amalricus, A.

IV. Kings of diverse nations:—

9. Lombards.

9. Reges Longobardorum.

Ibor.
Agion.
Agelmundus.
Lamissio.
Lethu.
Hildeoch.
Gudeoch et Clafforn.[1]
Latton.[2]
Wacco.
Waltharith.
Audohinus.
Albuinus; hic in Italia regnavit annis vi.
Cleb.
Duces.
Flavius.
Agiulfus.[3]
Adaloaldus.
Rotharith.
Rodoaldus.
Ariperth.
Godobertus et Bertar.
Grimoaldus.
Bertharith.
Cuniperth.
Luithperth.
Reginberth.
Ariperth.
Luitprandus.
Rachis.
Haistulfus.
Desiderius; hunc subjugavit Karolus magnus, et ex tunc reges defecerunt in Italia.

V. Kings of Britain.

V. Hucusque de regnis gentium exterarum aliqua breviter prælibavimus, sed ne forte nobis opponatur in faciem "omissis "propriis aliena negotia curas," de regibus Britonum, quorum patriam sibi fataliter deputatam inhabitamus, aliqua subjungamus compendiosissime.

Liber primus incipit.[4]

Abstract of the history of the Britons.

Brutus genere Trojanus, filius Silvii, filii Ascanii, filii Eneæ fuit. Hic Brutus, prædicente hoc mago, utrumque parentem interfecit; matrem nascens enecavit, patrem vero juvenis sagitta ludens ad necem percussit. Unde exulatus per responsa Galf. Mon. Lib. i.

[1] *Clafforn*] Claffon, A.
[2] *Latton*] Tatton, A.
[3] *Agiulfus*] Agilulfus, A.

[4] This abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth begins on fo. 149 in A.; MS. Tiberius A. 9, fo. 42; MS. Faustina A. 8, fo. 70; the last two MSS. have the following preface:—

"Ad expediendas regni necessitates militiam semper non credimus ar-
"matam sufficere solam, sed in arduis sæpe negotiis inermem audivimus
"fuisse multotiens pernecessariam. Probavit hoc Alcuinus thesaurarius
"Turonensis, inter consiliarios Karoli magni primus præcellens. Qui
"statum ecclesiæ semper evexit in melius, et imperatoris animum ad
"salutaria monita studuit informare. Quisquis igitur circa latus principis
"militare decreveris, ex ejus familiaritate nichil tibi repromittas perpetuum,
"sed mutationi obnoxium totum orbem animadvertas; sicut ait philoso-

Galf. Mon. Lib. i.

Dianæ ad insulam sub solis occasu sitam perductus est, quam a suo nomine Britanniam nuncupavit. Gigantibus igitur debellatis qui inibi habitaverant, primus regnavit.

Primus Rex Brutus. Hic Trinovantum, id est, novam Trojam, quam Lundoniam vocamus, ædificavit, temporibus Heli sacerdotis.

Abstract of the history of the Britons: the first book of Geoffrey of Monmouth.

Liber secundus.

Galf. Mon. Lib. ii.

The second book.

Locrinus.

Godoleva; fœmina, tempore Samuelis et Homeri.

Mempricius; tempore Saulis regis Judæorum.

Embraucus;[1] hic Eboracum et castellum Puellarum construxit tempore David regis.

Brutus, cognomine "viride scutum," tempore Salomonis.[2]

Rudbudetrabs;[3] hic ædificavit Cantuariam et Wintoniam tempore Amos prophetæ.[4]

Bladud;[5] hic construxit Bade, et balnea, et ibi posuit ignem perpetuum in domo Minervæ.

Lier; qui construxit Legerecestriam.[6] Hic tantum tres filias habuit, quarum primæ dixit, "Quanta est apud "te dilectio mea?" Cui illa, "Sub luna, quæ "disterminat ab æternis mutabilia, nichil in- "veniri poterit quod tanti possit esse michi." Ait rex mediæ, "Et apud te quanti est amor "mei?" Ait, "Pretiosior est mihi cunctis "opibus, et omnia quæ desiderantur huic non "valent comparari." Tunc rex juniori, "Tu me "quantum diligis?" At illa, "Quantum habes

---

"phus, 'Mobile mutatur semper cum principe vulgus.' Inter hæc duo "mutabilia nullam tibi repromittas securitatem. Insulam quam modo "inhabitamus, gigantibus effugatis, primi Britones incoluerunt; et Britto- "nibus invitati sunt Saxones, regni sublimati sunt diademate. De Dacia "more piratico quidam patriam incursantes, brevi tempore regimen "obtinuerunt. Tribus istis in prælio subjugatis, populus in ligno "veniens et tunicis ferreis monarchiam obtinuit. Quatuor ergo popu- "lorum principibus juxta temporum vicissitudinem patriam istam totam "subjugatam fuisse non dubites." See above, pp. 178, 179.

[1] *Embraucus*] Ebraucus, A.

[2] *Salomonis*] Here MS. A. has in a later hand, "Leil; hic Caer- "leil ædificavit eo tempore quo "Salomon templum ædificavit, et "regina Saba venit audere sapien- "tiam Solomonis, circa annum ab "origine mundi MMMMCCIIII."

[3] *Rudbudetrabs*] Rudbudethras, A.

[4] *prophetæ*] Tunc aquila loquebatur Sheftoniæ, ins. A. in another hand.

[5] *Bladud*] Bladut, A.

[6] *Legerecestriam*] Legecestriam, A.

History of the Britons: the second book of Geoffrey of Monmouth.

" tantum vales, tantum te diligo." Rex igitur iratus juravit eam nichil regni sui participaturam; et regno suo cum duabus diviso, dedit eas duobus ducibus Britanniæ. Juniorem vero omnino fecit extorrem; quam tamen Aganippus rex Gallorum præ specie pulcritudinis conduxit uxorem. Sorores autem illius patrem suum diutius desiderato viventem expulerunt a regno; qui, ad Cordeillam filiam suam fugiens, et ad pedes ejus provolutus, ait, " Precor ut michi " regno expulso, saltem victum non abneges et " vestitum." Illa vero patris commota lacrimis, cum viro suo Aganippo rege Britanniam adiit, et, generis suis debellatis et peremptis, patrem regno restituit. Et post patrem regnavit annis quinque. Galf. Mon. Lib. ii.

Cordeilla.[1]

Cunedagus:[2] hoc tempore Osee et Ysias fuerunt, et Roma facta est.

Rivaldo; hoc tempore sanguis pluit tribus diebus.

Gurgutius.

Sisillius.

Lago.

Kinemarcus.

Bobogodo vel Gerbegus.[3]

Porrex.

Dummallo; hic quinque reges qui erant in Britannia debellavit, et leges quæ Molmutinæ vocantur creavit.

Liber Tertius. Genuit filios Belinum et Brennum; qui post mortem patris compræliati sunt, sed tandem confœderati matris eorum interventu, Belinus regnum optinuit. Brennus autem dum apud urbem regnasset Senonensem, cum ccc. milibus Gallorum ad Italiam venit, et eam usque ad Senogalliam super mare Adriaticum sitam occupavit; et ibi abinvicem separati sunt Galli. Quorum centum milia Delfos adeuntes Græcorum gladiis perierunt. Alia vero centum milia intra Græciam remanentes, primum Gallo-Græci a candore corporis, postea autem Galathæ idem Galf. Mon. Lib. iii.

---

[1] *Cordeilla*] " Quæ a filiis sororis " suæ victa in carcere se interfecit," ins. A. in another hand.

[2] *Cunedagus*] Cunedagius, A.; circiter annos ab origine mundi 4443, ins. A. in another hand.

[3] *Gerbegus*] Gerbegug, A.

Galf. Mon. Lib. iii.

sunt appellati. Alia autem centum milia remanserunt, Ticinum, Mediolanum, Pergamum et Brixiam construentes, Cisalpinæ Galliæ nomen dederunt. Unde Gallia transalpina quæ ultra Alpes habetur, et Gallia Cisalpina quæ infra Alpes est, vocitatur. History of the Britons

HAMONIUS LIBRO SECUNDO.

The third book of Geoffrey of Monmouth.

Gurgutarturc.	Urianus.
Kintelmus.	Eliud.
Sisinnius.	Elodacus.
Marcus.	Clotenus.
Danius.	Gurguntius.
Moriudus.	Merianus.
Gorbonianus.	Bledano.
Arcallo.[1]	Capoenus.
Elidurus pius.	Sisillius.
Peridurus.	Blagabred.
Marganus.	Arunai.
Cumanus.	Eldol.
Idwallo.	Redion.
Runo.	Redolchis.
Gerontinus.[2]	Sauuil.
Catellus.	Pir.
Coillus.	Capoir.
Porrex.	Dignellus.
Cherin.	Hely.
Fulgenius.	Luid; hic Lundoniam renovavit, et nomine suo Carlunden[3] vocari præcepit.
Eldradus.	
Andragius.	

LIBER IIII^tus.

Galf. Mon. Lib. iv.

Cassibellanus: hunc proditione Androgei fratris sui vicit Julius Cesar. Nam cum Julius Cesar bis victus terga sua Britonibus ostenderet, præ gaudio ludum statuerunt Britanni, in quo filius Androgei filium regis interfecit. Unde rex fratri suo mortem minatus est, nisi filium suum sibi traderet ad occidendum. Unde Androgeus Cesarem revocavit, et tradita The fourth book.

[1] *Arcallo*] Arkallo, A.
[2] *Gerontinus*] Ierontinus, A.
[3] *Carlunden*] Calunden, R.

History of the Britons: sibi Lundonia fratrem suum et gentem Britonum Romanis subjugavit. Galf. Mon. Lib. iv.

Themantius.

Cristus natus est.

Kinelinus. Hunc Augustus Cesar Romæ cingulo militari donavit.

Guiderius.

Armigarius.[1]

Marius.

Coillus.

LIBER V^tus^.

The fifth book of Geoffrey of Monmouth. Lucius; hic primus fidem Christi suscepit, et herede carens mortuus est; post quem Galf. Mon Lib. v.

Severus perdomuit Britones rebellantes; qui fecit vallum inter Britones et Pictos; sed, eo tandem a Pictis perempto,

Basianus, fratre suo Zeta superato, regnavit.

Caurasius Basianum occidit.

Alectus Caurasium,

Asclepiodotus Alectum occidit, et Gallium socium ejus; unde Walesbroc[2] dicitur.

Cole, dux Colecestriæ, Asclepiodotum occidit.

Constantius Cole subjugavit sibi, et post mortem ejus regnans x. annis, Helenam filiam ejus duxit, et post

Constantinus filius ejus, qui postea Romam occupavit, et Constantinopolim ædificavit, de suo nomine sic vocatam, translato illuc imperio.

Octavius, dux Gewiseorum,[3] regnum optinuit.

Trahern, avunculus Helenæ, Octavium vicit et regnum optinuit.

Octavius, dissipatis Romanis regnum obtinuit; qui senio confectus invitavit Maximum senatorem, et ei filiam suam unicam cum regno donavit.

Maximus, patre Britannus, filius Johelini avunculi Helenæ, matre vero et natione Romanus, Armoricorum regnum, quæ nunc Britannia dicitur, debellavit, Umbaldum ducem Armoricum et xxv. milia armatorum cum eo interfecit, et quicquid erat masculini sexus per Armoricam. Tandem sedato regno Armorico ipsum Britannico populo replevit. Triginta milia militum et centum

---

[1] *Armigarius*] Armigarus, A.

[2] *Walesbroc*] Walebroc, A. Walbrook in the city of London.

[3] *Gewiseorum*] Gewisseorum, A.

Galf. Mon. Lib. v.

milia plebanorum ab insula Britannia collegit, et eos per diversas Armorici regni nationes distribuit, fecitque alteram Britanniam, et eam Conano Meriadoco donavit. Ipse vero ulteriorem Galliam et totam Germaniam subjugavit, tronum suum statuens apud Treveros. Imperatores vero Gratianum et Valentinianum, alterum interemit, alterum ex Roma fugavit. Conanus autem, ut nullam commixtionem cum Gallis faceret, decrevit ut ex Britannia insula mulieres venirent quæ suis maritarentur. Direxit ergo nuncios in Britanniam insulam ad Deonotum regem Cornubiæ. Deonotus igitur collegit per diversas provincias nobilium filias numero xi. milia virginum, de plebanis sexaginta milia, apud Lundoniam, quas Guanius rex Hunorum et Melga rex Pictorum periclitatas interfecerunt apud Coloniam Agrippinam.

History of the Britons:

Liber Sextus.

Galf. Mon. Lib. vi.

Gratianus municeps, cum Maximus interfectus fuisset Romæ ab amicis Gratiani imperatoris, cepit diadema Britanniæ, sed a plebanis interfectus est. Britones subjectionem sui in perpetuum voventes Romanis, acceperunt legionem Romanam, quæ veniens in Britanniam, inter Albaniam et Deiram a mari usque ad mare, murum construxit ad arcendos hostes, et postmodum repedavit. Iterum hostes Guanius et Melga Britones oppresserunt. Unde dictum est Echio ter consuli gemitus Britonum. Tunc Guitelinus Lundoniensis archiepiscopus in Minorem Britanniam, ut auxilium a confratribus postularet, transfretavit; regnabat tunc in illa Androenus quartus a Conano Meriadoco.

The sixth book of Geoffrey of Monmouth.

Constantinus frater Aldroeni cum duobus milibus militum transfretavit in Britanniam insulam, et a Guitelino Lundoniensi archiepiscopo regni diadema suscepit; qui ex regina sua tres filios genuit, Constantem, Aurelium Ambrosium, Uterpendragon. Constans factus est monachus in ecclesia Amphibali infra Wintoniam.

Constans monacus per Vortigernum consulem Gewiseorum erectus est in regem et consilio ipsius Vortigerni postmodum interfectus est.

History of the Britons: Seventh book of Geoffrey of Monmouth.

LIBER VII^us.

Vortigernus regni diadema suscepit; Aurelius Ambrosius, Uterpendragon, fugerunt in Minorem Britanniam. Tempore Vortigerni venit Horsus et Hengistus. Venit etiam Germanus Autisiodorensis et Lupus Trecacensis episcopi in Britanniam. Galf. Mon. Lib. vii.

Vortimerius filius Vortigerni erectus est in regem a Britonibus: cum autem Horsus et Hengistus impetum Vortimerii ferre non possent, petierunt Germaniam; sed Vortimerius insidiis novercæ suæ Rowein interfectus est, et sepultus in Lundonia.

Vortigernus restitutus est in regnum. Hengistus cum trecentis milibus armatorum reversus est in Britanniam. Postmodum Vortigernus et Hengistus in pago Ambrii convenerunt kalendis Maii, facturi pacem cum Britonibus. Sed Saxones dolo principes Britonum invaserunt, et quadringentos sexaginta barones et consules Britonum cultris interfecerunt. Eldol consul Claudiocestriæ, visa proditione, sustulit palum, quo septuaginta Saxones interfecit. Cum autem Saxones totam fere Britanniam occupassent, Vortigernus secessit in partes Cambriæ, turrim fortissimam ædificaturus; ad quem adductus est Merlinus.[1]

LIBER VIII^us.

The eighth book.

Aurelius Ambrosius regni diadema suscepit, et in turrim quam Vortigernus ædificaverat ipsum combussit. Eldol Hengistum interfecit. Aurelius, Uterpendragon fratre suo ministrante, corcam gigantum ab Ybernia fecit afferri. Eboracum vero Samsoni concessit, urbem Legionum Dubricio archiepiscopis. Eopa quidam de Saxonibus, fingens se medicum, Aurelium regem veneno occidit. Sepultus autem est in cimiterio Ambrii quod vocatur Corea gigantum. Galf. Mon. Lib. viii.

Uterpendragon, frater Aurelii regis, sublimatus est in regem, qui ex Ygerna uxore Gorlois ducis Cornubiæ, falsa specie mariti decepta, genuit Arturum et Annam; qui bibens de fonte quam Saxones veneno affecerant, sepultus est infra Choream gigantum.

[1] *Merlinus*] Mellinus, A.

Liber ix^us^.

History of the Britons: Ninth book of Geoffrey of Monmouth.

Galf. Mon. Lib. ix. Arturus a Dubricio, Legionum urbis archiepiscopo, consecratus est in regem in civitate Circecestria. Arturus Cheldricum ducem Saxonicum, et sexcentas naves quas Cheldericus habebat, in fugam vertit; quem post occidit dux Cornubiæ Cador in insula Thanet. Arturus Piramum capellanum suum, post Samsonem, apud Eboracum archiepiscopum præfecit. Mare transfretavit. Frollonem ducem Romanorum Parisius interfecit. Comitia suis distribuit. Post revertens in Britanniam in festo Pentecostes curiam habuit in urbe Legionum.

Liber x^us^.

The tenth book.

Galf. Mon. Lib. x. Lucius reipublicæ procurator duodecim viros misit Arturo, petens ab eo tributum dari Romanis. Arturus super hoc exasperatus, transfretavit infinito exercitu congregato; inter eundum gigantem interfecit. Cum Lucio vero congrediens victoriam reportavit. Interim audita Modredi sui nepotis infamia Britanniam petiit, et congrediens cum Modredo victoriam reportavit. Tamen letaliter vulneratus, in insulam Abvallonis ad curanda vulnera sua secessit. [Anno Incarnationis DXLII.]

Galf. Mon. Lib. xi. Constantinus, filius Cadoris ducis Cornubiæ, suscepit diadema Britanniæ. Filios Modredi trucidavit, alterum in ecclesia Sancti Amphibali apud Wintoniam, alterum Lundoniis. Qui cum viginti annis regnasset, sepultus est apud Choream gigantum.

Aurelius Conanus, nepos Constantini, monarchiam suscepit, tricesimo regni suo anno defunctus.

Wortiporius Saxones superavit, et monarchiam adeptus populum cum diligentia et pace gubernavit.

Malgo totam insulam optinuit; Yberniam, Yslandiam, Godlandiam, Orcades, Norwegiam, Daciam adjecit potestati suæ.

Catericus Godmundum regem Affricanorum, cum centum sexaginta milibus Britanniam infestantem, sustinere non potuit, sed intra Cirecestriam obsessus Ysembertum nepotem regis Francorum Godmundo venisse in auxilium expavit. Capta civitas succensa est. Theonus Lundoniensis archiepiscopus, et Cadiocenus Eboracensis, ad tutamina nemorum in Walliis diffugerunt.

History of the Britons.

Britones multis temporibus monarchiam amiserunt, Walia tantum tribus tirannis subdita. Sed nec Saxones adepti sunt insulæ diadema, tribus subditi regibus. Interea missus est Augustinus a beato Gregorio. Ethelfridus rex Nortahimbrorum, cum apud Legecestriam mille ducentos monachos interfecisset, et ei Britones restitissent, amisit de suis decem milia. Galf. Mon. Lib. xi.

Caduanus dux Venedociæ regni diadema suscepit apud Legecestriam, pacem fecit cum Athelfrido rege Northanhimbrorum, partito inter se regno. Galf. Mon. Lib. xii.

Caduallo filius Caduani, consilio Briani nepotis sui, congressum faciens cum Eadwino rege Northanhimbrorum, amissis multis militibus in fugam conversus est adiens Yberniam. Qui passus naufragium applicuit in insulam Garnareiam, ubi infirmatus ad mortem carnem ferinam desideravit. Qua non inventa, Brianus femur suum scidit, et abstraxit inde frustum, coxit, et pro venatione porrexit Caduano, qui ea vescens convaluit. Qui navem ascendens venit ad Salomonem regem Britanniæ. Cujus auxilio cum decem milibus militum veniens in Majorem Britanniam, Edwinum regem Nortanhimbrorum occidit, et quadragesimo octavo regni sui anno migravit a sæculo. Cujus corpus Britones, balsamo conditum, in quadam ænea ymagine ad mensuram staturæ suæ fusa, posuerunt super occidentalem portam Lundoniæ, sed et ecclesiam subtus in honore Sancti Martini ædificaverunt.

Cadualadrus[1] filius Caduallonis, cum duodecim annis regnasset, incidit in infirmitatem. Britannia fame nimia superveniente consumpta est. Cadualadrus cum navigio miserabili petiit Alanum regem Armoricorum, et post, abjectis mundialibus, Romam petiit, et a papa Sergio confirmatus, anno ab incarnatione Domini secentesimo octogesimo nono, migravit ad Dominum.

Ivor filius Cadualadri Saxones infestavit lxix.[2] annis, sed non profuit. Jam non vocabantur Britones sed Gualenses, vocabulum sive a Gualone duce eorum, sive a Galaes regina trahentes. Post quem

[1] *Cadualadrus*] Cadualladrus, A. | [2] *lxix.*] lxxx., A.

supervenientibus Anglis, Britones et nomen et regnum penitus amiserunt.[1] History of the Britons.

De Saxonibus.

Anni Domini. CCCCXLIX. Tempore Vortigerni regis pseudo Christiani, Britones in fide catholica persistentes afflicti gravissime crebris incursionibus Scotorum et Pictorum, cum a Romanis auxilium impetrarent, sicut consueverant, et habere non possent; ad subsidium conferendum invitarunt Germanos. Quorum auxilio roborati viriliter restiterunt. Horsum autem et Hengistum principes eorundem, errore gentilitatis penitus involutos, Vortigernus provincia Kentensi donavit, Hengisti filiam adhuc incredulam accipiens in uxorem. Progressu temporis ortis inter Britones et Germanicos inimicitiis, Britannia, quondam alter orbis a cosmographis nominata, pluribus annis eam incursantibus undique Saxonibus, Anglis et Jutis, ludibrio fortunæ subjacuit. A finibus namque Germaniæ navigio vecta gens frequenter erumpens, lacessivit maritima circumquaque. Britonibus itaque profligatis, dum in ore gladii pagos Britonum percussisset quam plurimos, et agros incolere commodum judicasset, nec unius dominio subici partium studia diversarum ullatenus tolerarent, principes suos arrogantioris vocabuli titulis insigniri decrevit, et ut essent honoratiores apud finitimos, pro diversitate provinciarum quas jam a Britonibus violenter extorserant, eos reges appellari sancivit, sicut trames multifidus in sequenti pagina per septenarium numerum infra limitatus, signanter ostendit. Igitur qui reges Germanicorum

History of the Saxons.

Sketch of the history of the Conquest.

Institution of kingdom

[1] MS. F. fo. 74; MS. T. fo. 44. MS. A. adds in the form of a note: "*Merlinus:* Exin coronabitur "germanicus vermis et eneus prin- "ceps humiliabitur (vel humabi- "tur). Terminus illi positus est "quem transvolare nequibit. Cen- "tum namque quinquaginta annis in "inquietudine et subjectione mane- "bit, et trecentis vero insidebit." After omiserunt, MS. Faustina, A. 8, reads in rubric, "In prophetia "Merlini quotiens inter legendum "occurrerit tibi dictio quædam "dissilaba, scilicet exin, totiens de "regni mutatione vel de regni nimia "concussione noveris cœptasse "Merlinum, et unam jam præces- "sisse cognoscas et alteram in "proximo superventuram expectes. "Quo tempore Saxones venerunt "in Britanniam."

Account of the following arrangement.

in Britannia primo Christi fidem susceperint, vel a quibus episcopis, quive reges regno renunciantes terreno monachatum elegerint, iuvenies in sequentibus. Cum autem Saxones Occidentales magnitudine virium superaverint et Anglos et Jutas, cum etiam sex alios reges et eorum regna dominio suo subjecerint; cum ad ultimum optinuerint totius Britanniæ monarchiam, cur regnum ipsorum Anglia nominetur, et non Saxonia, qui pro certo novit edisserat. Quicquid tamen minus habent in nomine suppleatur in ordine. Sic regnum West Saxonum, non quia sit antiquius, sed quia magnificentius et diuturnius, reliquis seriatim dispositis præponatur in serie.

Table of Anglo-Saxon kings.

Reges West Saxonum.	Reges Kentenses.	Reges Estsexæ.	Reges Norhumbre.	Reges Est Angliæ.	Reges Merciæ.	Reges Suthsexæ.
CCCCXCV. Cerdicus XVII.	Hengistus.	Erkenwinus.	Hyda.	Uffa.	Crida.	Ella.
Kinricus XXVII.	Esca.	Slede.	Ella.	Titulus.	Wibba.	Scissa.
Chevlingus XXXII.	Octa.	Sebertus.	Edelfridus.	Redwaldus.	Ceorlus.	Cæteros penuria scriptorum vel fama obscura recondidit, præter
Ceolricus V.	Himiricus.	Sigebertus.	Edwinus. Hic conversus est per Paulinum episcopum.	Erwaldus.	Penda.	Edelwoldum.
DXC. Cheluulfus XIIII.	Athelbertus. Hic conversus est per Augustinum episcopum.	Sibertus. Hic conversus est per Mellitum episcopum.	Oswaldus.	Sigebertus. Hic conversus est per Felicem episcopum.	Peda. Hic conversus est per Finianum episcopum.	Hic conversus est per Birinum episcopum.
Kinglis XXXII. Hic per Birinum episcopum conversus est.	Edbaldus.	Gwithelmus.	Oswi.	Egnius.	Wlfhere.	Cessavit regia stirps et transiit potestas in jus regis West Saxonum.
Cenwaldus XXXIII.	Erkenbrictus.	Sebbius. Hic factus est monachus apud Sanctum Paulum Lundoniæ.	Egfridus.	Anna.	Peda.	
Sexburc I.	Egbrictus.	Siwardus. Hic cessavit regia stirps et transiit in jus regis Est Angliæ.	Alfridus.	Adelherus.	Edelredus.	
Eswine IIII.	Lottarius.		Osredus.	Edweldus.	Hedda. Hic Romæ monachus factus est.	
Kenwine XII.	Edricus.		Eadbrictus. Hic Romæ factus est monachus.	Aldulfus. Hic cessavit regia stirps et transiit potestas in jus regis Merciorum.	Kenredus. Hic Romæ factus est monacus.	
Ceddualla II. Hic Romæ monachus factus est.	Nidredus.		Osulf.		Chelredus.	
Ino XXXVII. Hic Romæ monachus factus est.	Victredus.		Moledelwoldus.		Edelbaldus.	
Adelardus XVIII.	Edbrichtus.		Ailredus.		Beonredus.	
Cudredus XX.	Edebrictus.		Alwoldus.		Offa. Huic Karolus magnus litteras misit.	
Sigebertus IIII.	Egfertus.		Osredus.		Egfredus.	
Kenewlfus XX.	Edbrictus.		Edelredus.		Kenwlfus.	
DCCXCIII. Brichticus XX.	Cuthredus.		Aldulfus. Hunc Eadbrictus rex West Saxonum subjugavit.		Beornulfus.	
Eadbirchtus XXXVII. Septem supradicta regna conjunxit.	Baldredus. Hunc Eadbrictus rex West Saxonum subjugavit.				Ludecanus.	
					Wilafus. Hunc Eadbrictus rex West Saxonum subjugavit.	

History of the English.

Qui vocati sunt huc usque reges West Saxonum, abhinc appellati sunt solummodo reges Anglorum, sed nondum monarchiam optinuerunt.

Reign of Ethelwulf.

DCCCXXX. Athelwolfus filius Eadbricti, xx. annis. Hic in ætate primæva fuit episcopus Wintoniensis. Heredibus aliis deficientibus postmodum, necessitate compulsus, in se gubernacula regni suscepit. Hujus temporibus inmisit Deus omnipotens crudelissimas gentes quæ nec ætati nec sexui parcerent, scilicet Dacos cum Gothis, Norwagenses cum Suathedis, Wandalos cum Fresis; qui ab exordio regni sui usque ad adventum Normannorum Willelmi regis ductu ccxxx. annis Angliam desolaverunt. Qui nonnunquam etiam ex affinitate Britanniæ Dei vindices et stimuli Galliam invaserunt. In Italia Lunam civitatem subverterunt, ducem habentes Biher filium regis Danemarchiæ et Hastingum magistrum suum. H. Hunt. p. 737. H. Hunt. p. 736.

DCCCL. Edebaldus filius Edelwolfi regis.
DCCCLIX. Edelbrictus filius Edelwolfi regis.
DCCCLXIIII. Edredus filius Edelwolfi regis.
} regnaverunt annis xxii.

De regibus Anglorum ubi vel a quibus regalem susceperint unctionem, vel ubi tumulati sunt.

Reign of Alfred.

DCCCLXXII. Aluredus filius Edelwolfi junior, qui regiam unctionem olim a Leone papa quarto Romæ susceperat, Anglorum regnum suscepit, et xxviii. annis laboriosissime sed fortissime rexit. Hic Aluredus Lundoniam, caput regni Merciorum, cuidam primario Etheredo cum filia sua Elfleda concessit, quæ primi partus difficultatem experta perpetuo viri complexum exhorruit, protestans non convenire regis filiæ ut illi voluptati se inmisceret, quam tale incommodum post tempus urgeret. Hic aliam filiam suam Eltrudem Baldewino Calvo Flandrensium comiti nuptui collocavit; de qua Baldewinus genuit duos filios Arnulfum et Aldulfum. Aldulfus autem comes factus est Boloniæ. Rex Aluredus, licet inter arma leges sileant, inter fremitus armorum leges tulit, et centurias quas hundred dicunt, et decimas quas thiethingas vocant, instituit. Unde in semitis quæ per quadrivium finduntur armillas aureas jussit suspendi quæ viantium aviditatem riderent, dum non essent qui eas arriperent. Hic etiam xxiiii. horas quæ rotantur inter diem et noctem jugiter ita dividebat, ut octo transigeret in orando, legendo, scribendo; post in cura corporis octo; postmodum in expediendo regni negotia alias octo. Dum autem omnia feliciter consummasset, Wintoniæ sepultus est in ecclesia beati Petri de Hyda. W. Malmesb., G. R. ii. §§ 121, 125, 123. W. Malmesb., G. R. ii. § 122.

W. Malmesb., G. R. ii. § 125, 126. DCCCC. Eadwardus filius Aluredi regnavit annis xxiiii^{or}. Hic consecratus est a Pleiemundo Dorobernensi archiepiscopo apud Kingestune, litterarum scientia multo patre inferior, sed regni potestate gloriosior incomparabiliter. Hujus filiam Edivam Oto Romanus imperator accepit uxorem; aliam Adildam Karolus simplex rex Francorum accepit uxorem; tertiam vero Eagitham Sistricus rex Nortanhimbrorum accepit uxorem; quartam autem Ealgipham Hugo magnus dux Parisiensium accepit uxorem. History of the English. Reign of Edward the Elder.

Ib. § 129. Formosus papa sententiam excommunicationis in regem Eadwardum tulit, eo quod per octo annos omnis regio Gewisseorum fuerat episcopis destituta. Unde rex duos episcopatus West Saxonum in quinque divisit, ut ab apostolico impetraverat, et ordinati sunt et consecrati una die Cantuariæ vii. Seven bishops consecrated.

Ib. § 130. episcopi a Pleimundo archiepiscopo. Rex autem Eadwardus finem vitæ faciens, sepultus est in monasterio quo et pater suus.

Ib. § 131. DCCCCXXIIII. Ethelstanus filius Eadwardi regnavit annis xvi.; consecratus ab Athelmo Doroberuensi archiepiscopo apud Kingestum: primusque monarchiam optinuit. Hic Judualum regem omnium Walensium, Constantinum regem Scottorum, regnis cedere compulit. Quos tamen non multo post miseratione infractus in antiquum statum sub se regnaturos instituit, dicens gloriosius esse regem provincias facere quam regem esse. Huic reguli Norwalensium nomine vectigalis annuatim xx. libras auri, ccc. etiam argenti pendebant; boves xxv. milia; Reign of Athelstan.

Ib. § 139. præterea quotlibet canes venatorios et volueres. Hic fratrem suum Eadwinum apud se de proditione insimulatum, solum cum armigero navem ascendere jussit, remige et remigio vacuam, ex vetustate quassam. Sed juvenis in talibus vitæ pertæsus voluntario in aquas præcipitio vitam finivit. Unde rex septenni pœnitentia, ut ferunt, apud Lamport, spontaneum carcerem subivit. Sed delator fratris, scilicet pincerna regis, cum sollempni die propinaret, et uno pede lapsus cum altero se

Ib. § 140. recollegisset, ait "Sic frater fratrem adjuvat." Quo rex audito, proditorem fratris obtruncari præcepit, auxilii fratris sui si viveret et mortis reminiscens. Post hujus vitæ decursum obiit Gloucestriæ, sed Malmesbiriæ tumulatus est.

Ib. § 144. DCCCCXL. Eadmundus frater Edelstani regnavit annis vii., consecratus ab Odone Dorobernensi archiepiscopo apud Kingestun. Progressu temporis a latrone sicca confossus occubuit, sepultus autem est apud Glestoniam. Reign of Edmund.

Ib. § 146. DCCCCXLVII. Edredus frater Edelstani regnavit decem annis, consecratus ab Odone Dorobernensi archiepiscopo apud Kingestun. Sepultus autem est apud Wintoniam in episcopatu. Reign of Edred.

History of the English.

Reign of Edwy.

DCCCCLVII. Eadwinus filius Eadmundi regnavit annis quatuor, consecratus ab Odone Dorobernensi archiepiscopo. Sepultus autem est apud Wintoniam in novo monasterio. W. Malmesb., G. R. ii. § 147.

Reign of Edgar.

DCCCCLXI. Eadgarus filius Eadmundi regnavit annis xvi. Hic regem Scottorum Kinnadium, Cumbrorum Malcolmum, archipiratam Macusium, omnesque reges Walensium, scilicet Dufnal, Huual, Jacob, Juikel, ad curiam coactos uno et perpetuo sacramento obligavit, adeo ut apud civitatem Legionum sibi occurrentes in pompam triumphi per fluvium Dhe, illos deduceret. Una enim navi impositos ipse [ad] proram sedens eos remigare cogebat, per hoc ostentans regalem magnificentiam, qui subjectam haberet tot regum potentiam. Hic etiam in frivolis pacis sequax, ut quia compatriotæ in tabernis convenientes jamque temulenti pro more bibendi contenderent, ipse clavos argenteos vel aureos jusserit vasis infigi, ut dum metam suam quisque cognosceret, non plus subserviente verecundia vel ipse appeteret vel alium appetere cogeret. Hic Judualo regi Walensium edictum imposuit ut sibi quotannis tributum ccc. luporum pensitaret. Quod cum tribus annis fecisset, quarto destitit, nullum se invenire posse ulterius professus. In quodam convivio fama est regem Scottorum Kinadium ludibundum dixisse, mirum videri Eadgaro tam vili humuncioni tot provincias subici. Quod dixisse regem Scottorum Eadgarum non latuit. Qui quasi consultandi gratia Kinnadium accersiit, longeque in silvam deducto unum e duobus ensibus quos secum attulerat, tradidit, et "Nunc," ait, "licebit vires tuas experiare cum "soli simus. Jam enim faxo ut appareat quis alteri merito "supponi debeat. Turpe enim est esse regem in convivio "dicaculum, nec esse in prælio promptum." Confusus autem ille ad pedes regis cecidit, simplicis joci veniam precatus et confestim consecutus. Sunt qui regem Eadgarum dicunt crudelem fuisse temporibus primis in cives, libidinosum in fœminas, ita ut quendam comitem suum Edwoldum ob uxoris suæ pulchritudinem in silva Werewella gratia venandi accitum jaculo transfodisset. Quandam etiam virginem Deo dicatam, a monasterio abstractam, non semel thoro suo collocavit. Sed a beato Dunstano super hoc increpatus, septennem egit pœnitentiam. Peracta pœnitentia tunc demum consecratus est a Dunstano Dorobernensi et Oswaldo Eboracensi archiepiscopis apud Batoniam, quæ dicitur civitas Achaman. Postquam vero mortuus est sepultus est Glastoniæ, cujus corpus ab Ailwardo abbate anno ab incarnatione Domine MLII. inventum est nullius labis conscium. Quod cum in locellum levare pararet, et illud præ magnitudine difficilem minaretur ingressum, abbas per audaciam regales Ibid. § 148. Ibid. § 149. Ibid. § 155. Ibid. § 156. Ibid. § 157. Ibid. § 158. Ibid. § 160.

exuvias ferro temeravit; unde continuo sanguis undatim emicuit. History of the English.

DCCCCLXXVII. Edwardus filius Eadgari regnavit annis quatuor, consecratus a Dunstano Dorobernensi et Oswaldo Eboracensi archiepiscopis apud Kingestun. Qui per insidias Elfridæ novercæ post poculum porrectum et basia prælibata per satellitem sicca transfossus obiit, et sepultus est sine honore apud Werham.[1] Reign of Edward the Martyr. W. Malmesb., G. R. ii. § 162.

Circa dies istos tempore Suenonis regis Danemarchiæ quater est Anglia facta sub tributo. Primum tributum exercvit ad summam xxiiii. millium librarum argenti; secundum tributum ad summam xxxvi. millium librarum argenti; tertium tributum ad summam xlviii. millium librarum argenti; quartum tributum ad summam lxxii. millium librarum argenti: quæ quidem dira calamitas per xvi. annos sub certis quatuor interstitiis, vix locum aliquem respirandi reliquit.[2] Payments to the Danes.

DCCCCLXXX. Edelredus filius Eadgari regnavit annis xxxvi., consecratus a Dunstano Dorobernensi et Oswaldo Eboracensi archiepiscopis apud Kingestun. Cujus vitæ cursus sævus in principio, miser in medio, turpis in exitu fuit. Hujus tempore Sweno[3] rex Danorum Ælphegum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum interfecit,[4] Athelredum a regno expulit. Edelredus ex Emma filia Ricardi ducis Normannorum genuit Aluredum et Eadwardum. Moriens in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Lundoniæ sepultus est. Reign Ethelred W. Malmesb., G. R. ii. § 164. § 165. § 180.

MXVII. Edmundus ferreum latus non regnavit per annum; filius Edelredi regis ex prima uxore. Consecratus autem est a Livingo Dorobernensi archiepiscopo apud Lundonias. Quem Edridus[5] veru ferreo fecit interfici. Sepultus autem est apud Glestoniam. Reign of Edmund Ironside.

MXVII. Cnuto rex Danorum regnavit in Anglia xx. annis, consecratus a Livingo Dorobernensi archiepiscopo, apud Lundonias. Cui cum primo anno regni sui Edricus improperaret, quod propter eum Edmundum regem West Saxonum[6] ob fidelitatem ejus exstinxerit, rex inquit, "Et tu merito moriere "qui dominum proprium et fratrem mihi fœderatum occideris, "et miseris manum in christum Domini." Cnuto rex peregre profectus Romam petiit. In reditu suo Haroldum filium suum Reign Canute. Ibid. § 181. Ibid. § 182.

[1] *Werham*] Werram, A.

[2] *Circa . . . reliquit*] om. A.

[3] *Sweno*] Swanus, A.

[4] *Alphegum . . . . interfecit*] quater in Anglia tributum suscepit, A.

[5] *Edridus*] Eadricus, A.

[6] *Saxonum*] deseruerit et eundem Eadmundum, ins. A. in marg.

History of the English.

constituit regem.[1] In Angliam rediens mortuus est; sepultus apud Wintoniam in veteri monasterio.

Reign of Harold.

MXXXVII. Haroldus filius Cnutonis regnavit annis iii.; consecratus ab Ethelnodo Dorobernensi archiepiscopo apud Lundonias. Qui moriens sepultus est apud Westmustier, et post ejectus de sepulchro sepultus est apud Sanctum Clementem.

Hardicanute.

MXL. Hardecnutus[2] rex Danemarchiæ, filius Cnutonis,[3] regnavit in Anglia ii. annis, consecratus ab Ethelnodo Dorobernensi archiepiscopo apud Lundonias. Hic Gunnildam sororem suam Henrico imperatori Romano nuptum misit. Quæ postmodum adulterii accusata, per puerum quendam quem ex Anglia secum adduxerat monomachico certamine defenditur. Homo giganteæ molis, qui Gunnildam accusabat, enervatur succiso poplite. Gunnildis repudium misit imperatori, suscipiens habitum sanctimonialem. Hardecnutus moriens sepultus est apud Wintoniam.

W. Malmesb., G. R. ii. § 189.

Edward the Confessor.

MXLII. Eadwardus filius Edelredi regnavit annis xxiiii., consecratus ab Eadsio Dorobernensi archiepiscopo et ab Alfrico Eboracensi archiepiscopo apud Wintoniam. Qui moriens sepultus est apud Westmustier; de cujus sollempni canonizatione meritis exigentibus salubriter in ecclesia Romana statutum est his verbis; "Alexander papa Christi fidelibus universis. Nos " de communi fratrum nostrorum consilio beatum Eadwardum " regem Anglorum, confessorem egregium, ita glorificandum " censuimus et debitis præconiis honorandum in terris, sicut " eundem confessorem Dominus per Suam gratiam glorificavit " in cœlis, ut videlicet inter sanctos confessores de cætero " numeretur qui hoc ipsum apud Deum signis meruit et vir- " tutibus optinere."[4]

Harold II.

MLXVI. Haroldus filius Godwini non regnavit per annum, consecratus ab Aldredo Eboracensi[5] archiepiscopo apud Lundoniam. Occisus autem in bello, ut dicitur, quiescit apud Waltham.

William I.

MLXVII. Guillelmus dux Normannorum regnavit in Anglia xxi. annis, consecratus ab Aldredo archiepiscopo Eboracensi apud Lundonias. Qui moriens in Normannia sepultus est apud Cadomum.

William II.

MLXXXVIII. Guillelmus filius Willelmi regis regnavit xiii. annis, consecratus a Lanfranco Dorobernensi archiepiscopo

---

[1] *In reditu . . . regem*] In reditu suo Hardeknutum filium suum regem constituit, A.

[2] *Hardecnutus*] Hardecanutus, A.

[3] *Cnutonis*] Cnuti, A.

[4] *de cujus . . . optinere*] om. A. It is an extract from the Bull of canonization, dated Feb. 7, 1161; printed in Wilkins, Conc. i. 434.

[5] *Eboracensi*] Dorobernensi, A.

apud Westmustier; qui sagitta occisus sepultus est apud Wintoniam.

MCI. Henricus filius regis Willelmi, et frater regis Willelmi Rufi, regnavit annis xxxv., consecratus a Mauritio Londoniensi episcopo apud Westmustier. Thomas autem archiepiscopus coronam capiti regis imposuit cum Mauritio. Rex moriens in Normannia apud Liuns, sepultus est in Anglia apud Redinges. Henry I.

MCXXXVI. Stephanus filius Alæ sororis regis Henrici regnavit annis xix., consecratus a Willelmo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Westmustier; qui moriens sepultus est in Cantia apud Faveresham. Stephen.

MCLIIII. Henricus nepos Henrici regis ex filia sua Matilde imperatrice consecratus est a Theobaldo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Westmustier. Rogerus Eboracensis archiepiscopus præsens fuit, sed manum non apposuit. Qui cum regnasset annis xxxiii., additis xx. septimanis et octo, diebus etiam v., sepultus est apud Fontem Evraldi. Henry II.

MCLXX. Henricus filius Henrici regis Angliæ consecratus est in regem a Rogero archiepiscopo apud Westmustier.[1] Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus tunc temporis exulabat. Qui cum a nativitate sua complesset xxviii^{um} annum, additis xiiii. septimanis et vi. diebus, intra Gasgoniam[2] obiit, sepultus autem est Rotomagi.[3] Henry the younger.

Ricardus, regis Anglorum Henrici filius, iii^{tio} nonas Septembris a Baldewino Cantuariensi archiepiscopo consecratus est in regem apud Westmustier:[4] Rothomagensis, Dublinensis, Treverensis archiepiscopi convenerunt ad coronationem. Richard.

---

[1] *Westmustier*] Westmostier, A.

[2] *intra Gasgoniam*] infra villam de Martell, T.

[3] MS. A. reads, "Sepultus autem est bis, primo Cenomannis in choro canonicorum ecclesiæ Sanctæ Julianæ, postmodum Rothomagi juxta partem majoris altaris beatæ virginis aquilonarem." And here in MS. A. the list ends.

[1] *Westmustier*] MS. Faustina A. 8 proceeds: "iii^{tio} nonas Septembris. Qui vulneratus jaculo balistæ mortuus est apud Chaluz viii^{o} idus Aprilis, et sepultus est apud fontem Everardi ad pedes Henrici patris sui.

"Johannes Rex Anglorum, filius regis Henrici secundi, consecratus est ab Huberto Cantuariensi archiepiscopo apud Westmustier vi^{to} kalendas Junii, scilicet in die Ascensionis." Then in another hand: "Regnavit xvii. annis, mensibus quinque, diebus v., obiit apud Newerc xiiii^{to} kalendas Novembris, et sepultus est Wigorniæ."

MS. Tiberius A. 9, after recording the reign of Richard, proceeds to give the character drawn of him by a contemporary writer, which appears at the end of the Itinerarium, pp. 447–449: and then proceeds: "Si quis

Kings of Spain.

[1] Ne quid nobis desit ad regnorum enumerationem breviter recolendam et posteris relinquendam in posterum, de quibusdam regibus Hispaniarum interserendum est aliquid, qui post tempora Recaredi regis Withsigottorum dominationem in populos Castellæ, dominationem in populos Navarræ vel Nageræ, dominationem super Arraconenses exercuerunt suis temporibus.

See Bened. i. 146.

Rex Sanctius Grossus habuit filios tres, Fredinandum, Garsiam, Ramirum.

Rex Fredinandus Castellæ genuit regem Adelfonsum.

Rex Adelfonsus Castellæ, qui cepit Toletum, genuit reginam Wracham. Regina Wraca genuit imperatorem, imperator genuit regem Sanctium.

Rex Sanctius genuit regem Adelfonsum.

Rex Garsias Nageræ cum Navarra genuit Sanctium.

Rex Sanctius occisus in Pennalem regem Sanctium puerum.

Rex Sanctius puer. Hic decessit sine prole; et ei successit rex Adelfonsus consanguineus patris sui in Nagera et in Navarra usque ad Pontem reginæ et usque Sangosa, et eidem puero successit rex Sanctius Arraconensis consan-

Rex Ramirus Araconensis qui genuit regem Sanctium.

Rex Sanctius Arraconensis genuit regem Petrum et regem Adelfonsum.

Rex Petrus Arraconensis: hic decessit sine prole; cui successit rex Adelfonsus frater suus.

" plenius nosse desiderat seriem itineris regis Ricardi et quæ in itinere " gesserit, seu qualiter Messanam ceperit, et qua de causa insulam Cipri " invaserit et subjugaverit, et imperatorem in bello devicerit, et captivaverit, " et quomodo expugnaverit et in profundo maris demerserit illam mag- " nam navem Saracenorum plenam, quos destinaverat Saladinus ex omni " paganismo in auxilio obsessorum in Acon, qui omnes ibidem perierunt, " et serpentes vivi quos secum habebant similiter sunt submersi; quod " si navis illa in obsidionem Achonensem salva pervenisset, nunquàm a " Christianis capta fuisset; de carvarna autem quam viriliter rapuit, et " Saracenos interfecit et captivaverit, et quanta prælia in terra illa contra " Saladinum commiserit et devicerit, seu qua occasione rex Philippus " repatriaverit, legat librum quem dominus Petrus prior Sanctæ Trinitatis " Lundoniæ ex Gallica lingua in Latinum tam eleganti quam veraci stilo " transferri fecit." See R. Coggeshall, Chron. Terræ Sanctæ, p. 257. Then follows a continuation from 1199 to 1216, which could not have been written by Ralph de Diceto.

[1] MS. Faustina A. 8, fo. 80.

Rex Adelfonsus.	guineus patris sui, in reliqua parte Navarræ et Pampilona.	Rex Adelfonsus Arragonensis frater prædicti regis Petri, qui cepit Cesaraugustam.

Kings of Spain.

[1] Ab enumeratione regnorum ad comitia transitum faciamus, ut quæ sunt primo loco regiæ potestati contigua de proximo vicinentur ad narrationem ex ordine contexendam. Sicut enim in annalibus reperitur, rex Arturus, Gallia subjugata, fidelibus suis comitia per regnum Francorum longe lateque diffusa potestative distribuit.[2] Sed ne nimis vaga scribendi licentia nobis desuper vidcatur indulta scribendo de singulis, duos tantum quos rex inter suos collaterales judicabat præcipuos adducamus in medium. Beduero quidem pincernæ Neustriam contulit quæ nunc Normannia dicitur, inter aliarum insignia provinciarum ensis notatam signaculo. Subinde Cheunoni dapifero contulit Andegaviam et Turoniam, ut quoniam officio dupplici fungeretur in curia regis, scilicet in diebus profestis primus dapifer, et in præliis solus signifer, honore dupplicato gauderet, dum aciebus ad congrediendum dispositis, ad dimicandum instructis, ad victoriam reportandam feliciter assuetis, in manibus lanceam principalem acciperet, regio deputatam vexillo vibraret et proferret intrepidus. Post tempora Bedueri pincernæ regis Arturi, labentibus annorum circulis, Rollo de Dacia cum exercitu navali Neustriam potenter aggrediens eam vastavit, incendit, prædavit. Sed postmodum reconciliatus cum Karolo Simplice rege Francorum patriam totam optinuit, et a genere suo vocabulum sumens, eam appellavit Normanniam; quam tam ipse quam successores sui viriliter postmodum rexerunt et munitionibus plurimis ornaverunt.

The counties of Normandy and Anjou.

The count of Anjou steward and standard-bearer of France.

[3] Incipit Abreviatio de Gestis Normannorum fine compendioso conclusa.

Rollo Danus Popam filiam Berengarii Danico more sibi copulavit, de qua filium nomine Willelmum genuit et filiam nomine Gerloc.[4]

Pedigree of the Norman dukes.

Rollo.

---

[1] MS. Faustina A. 8, fo. 80; MS. Tiberius A. 9, fo. 8 : om. A.

[2] Galf. Mon. Hist. Brit. lib. 9, c. 11.

[3] This little work, in MS. A., immediately follows the Imagines Historiarum, on folio 140 of the MS. In the MS. Tiberius A. 9 it occurs as in the Ripley MS. MS. Faustina A. 8 gives the list of counts of Anjou first.

[4] *Gerloc*] Gerloch, A.

Pedigree of the Norman dukes.

William Longsword.

Willelmus Longaspata, Rollonis filius, ex Sprota nobilissima puella filium genuit quem Ricardum vocavit. Willelmus postmodum filiam Herberti comitis accepit uxorem; sororem quoque suam Gerloc Willelmo comiti Pictavensi dedit in uxorem.

Richard I.

Ricardus primus dux Normannorum Emmam filiam Hugonis magni ducis Parisiorum accepit uxorem, de qua prolem non sustulit. Postmodum idem Ricardus, Emma mortua, Gunnor ex Danorum ortam prosapia, duxit uxorem; de qua genuit tres filios, Ricardum, Robertum, Malgerium; et duos alios, Radulfum et Godefridum;[1] necnon et filias tres, Emmam, Hawis, Matildem. Emma nupsit Adelredo regi Anglorum, Hawis nupsit Galfrido comiti Britannorum; Matildis Odoni comiti Carnotensi.

Richard II.

Ricardus secundus dux Normannorum Willelmo filio patrui sui Radulfi dedit Occnsem comitatum et quandam puellam nomine Licelinam, filiam Turketilli viri nobilissimi; de qua Willelmus genuit tres filios, Robertum qui successit in comitatum, Willelmum etiam comitem Suessionensem, Hugonem quoque Luxoviensem episcopum. Idem Ricardus sororem suam Hawis Galfrido comiti Britonum dedit in uxorem, de qua Galfridus genuit duos filios, Alanum et Eudonem.

Ricardus secundus dux Normannorum Judith sororem Galfridi comitis Britannorum accepit uxorem, de qua tres filios genuit, Ricardum, Robertum, Willelmum, totidemque filias; quorum Adeliz Reginaldo Burgundiorum comiti nupsit, ex qua Willelmum atque Guidonem procreavit; altera Baldewino Flandrensi. Tertia virgo moritur.

Hasting lord of Chartres.

Hastingus a Karolo rege Francorum stipendii munere Carnotensem urbem accepit.

Chief dates of Norman history.

Anno ab Incarnatione Domini octingentesimo sexto Rollo penetravit ora Sequanica.

Anno Dominicæ Incarnationis nongentesimo xii. Rollo baptizatus est.

Willelmus dux Normannorum complevit vitæ suæ cursum anno Dominicæ Incarnationis nongentesimo xlii.[2]

Primus Ricardus obiit anno nongentesimo sexto.

Secundus Ricardus obiit anno M°xx°vi°.

Tertius Ricardus anno M°xx°viii°.

Robertus obiit anno M°xxx°v°.

William the Conqueror.

Willelmus filius Roberti ducatum Normanniæ xxx^ta^ duobus annis potenter rexit, postmodum cum Angliam subjugasset coronatus est Lundoniis anno M°lx°vi°. In regno suo vixit xxi. annos. Sepultus autem est in ecclesia Sancti Stephani quam ædificavit apud Cadomum.

---

[1] *Radulfum et Godefridum*] om. A. | [2] *xlii.*] xliii°, A.

QUALITER DANEMARCHIA[1] MULTOS PROCREAVERIT QUI REGNUM FRANCORUM AB OMNI PARTE VASTAVERINT, INCENDERINT, SUBJUGAVERINT, TIBI SEQUENTIA DECLARABUNT. Norman History.

LIBER I^us^.

W. Gemmet. i. 3. [2]Japhet junior filius Noæ genuit Magog, cujus Gotica soboles, de similitudine paterni nominis vocabulum trahens, duos ex se produxit Gottorum populos, ex quibus unus ulteriorem Scithiam, alter Gotthorum cuneus inter Germanicos sinus Mæothidas occupavit[3] paludes. Postmodum in Dacia regnaverunt et eam a quodam Danao suæ stirpis rege Danemarchiam nuncupaverunt. Quæ gens nimio dedita luxui multis mulieribus jungebatur. Pater etiam adultis filiis cunctos a se pellebat, præter unum quem heredem sui juris relinquebat. Quæ Origin of the Danes.

Ib. i. 5. lex inconvulsa mansit, quoadusque Lotbrocus rex patrum legibus excitus, cum ingenti juvenum agmine, sorte cogente, filium nomine Biher ejecit a regno cum ejus pedagogo Hastingo. Qui regna peregrina petens "Costa ferrea" vocabatur, quia, nisi clipeus ei obiceretur, inermis in acie stans, armorum vim quamcunque sperneret illæsus, vehementissimis matris suæ veneficiis infectus. Biher et Hastingus a patria proscriptus innumerabilem pugnantium tironum congregavit exercitum. Inde statuto die naves quas paraverant inpelluntur pelago, vento flante secundo Viromandensem aggrediuntur portum. Biher and Hasting,

Ib. i. 6. Exilientes de navibus, Sancti Quintini monasterium, Noviomensem quoque comitatum comburunt. Dehinc aggrediuntur ora Sequanica, et apud Gemeticum obsidionem componunt. Qui locus Clodovei regis Francorum temporibus, a beato Philiberto, opitulante regina Batilde, constructus, in tanto incremento adolevit ut in nongentorum monachorum numero quantitas suppleretur illius. Monachi vero quidam et incolæ, Normannorum comperientes adventum, fuga lapsi celeriter invade Gaul.

Flight from Jumieges.

Ib. i. 7. evaserunt. Abhinc vero Sequanæ sulcantes alveum, Rothomagum adeunt, igneque comburunt. Interiora quoque Franciæ prolixius petentes, omnem fere Neustriam quæ a Genabensi urbe per transversum Lutheciam usque Parisiorum pertingit opidum, Normannica feritate invadunt. Exin inopinatos exagitantes discursus, modo navibus modo equis delati, totam circumcirca delevere provinciam. Et primo quidem adventu Namneticam urbem incendio cremaverunt, deinceps Andega- Rouen burnt.

Nantes and Angers.

[1] *Danemarchia*] Danamarchia, A.

[2] The following pages are a careful abstract of the work of William of Jumieges; the particular references are given in the margin.

[3] *occupavit*] occuparunt, A.

Norman History.

vensem, Pictavorum castella depopulantur. Sequenti tempore navigio Turonum adeunt civitatem; haud longe post superiora Ligeris amnis navibus expetentes Aurelianis perveniunt, captamque urbem auro distrahunt. Ab ipso siquidem, ut ita loquar, Oceani littore versus orientem usque clarissimam Arvernum Aquitanniæ urbem, nullam libertatem retinere valuit regio, non oppidum aut vicus, non denique civitas quæ non strage ferali conciderit Normannorum. Testatur id Pictavis, testatur hoc Sanctonum, hoc Engolisma, Lemovicæ, Petragoricum, ipsum etiam Avaricum, caput Aquitannici regni. Hiis calamitatum malis Gallis per annorum fere triginta spatium detritis, Hastingus dominium suum cupiens ad altiora provehere, Romam optinere deliberavit. Sed exorta tempestate civitatem Lunis demolliri conatus est; cives repagula portis inducunt, propugnacula clipeis et jaculis muniunt. Quorum audaciam Hastingus ut comperit, ratus hanc Romam fore, ministros dirigit, mandans non sua sponte illuc appulisse, sed suam repetere patriam voluisse, pacem quærere, letali se pressum languore Christianum fieri supplici prece deposcere. Quod episcopus loci, comes etiam audiens, pacem firmant. Fit communis utrique populo civitatis ingressus. Tandem ad ecclesiam fertur Hastingus, sacro mergitur in baptismo. Quem a fonte suscipiunt episcopus et comes. Quo facto bajulorum manibus refertur ad navem. Post hæc intempestæ noctis medio loricatus locatur in feretro, fit intolerabilis luctus per exercitum. Hastingum obisse neophitum resonat maris littus. Sacra vestitur antistes indumenta; fit animæ commendatio. Dum esset Hastingus tradendus sepulturæ, de feretro prosilit, episcopum et comitem obtruncat gladio; depopulatur civitas; mœnia diruuntur a fundamentis. Urbis peracta subversione comperientes pagani Romam se nullatenus destruxisse, de regressu disponunt. Biher, dum nativum solum repeteret, naufragium passus, vix apud Anglos portum optinuit, quampluribus de suis navibus submersis. Hastingus vero Karolum Francorum regem adiens pacem petiit. Quam adipiscens munere stipendiis Carnotensem urbem ab ipso suscepit.

Tours and Orleans.

Aquitaine ravaged.

W. Gemmet. i. 8.

Hasting sails to Italy, and mistakes Luna for Rome.

Ib. i. 9.

Pretended conversion of Hasting.

Ib. i. 10.

His pretended death and funeral.

Sack of Luna.

Ib. i. 11.

Chartres given to Hasting by the Franks.

Explicit liber primus.

Liber Secundus.

Emensis annorum curriculis rursus quidam de Danemarchia, cum sex navibus armato milite plenis, maria petunt, Angliam aggrediuntur. Hiis Adelstanus rex illius terræ compertis, missa legatione pacem petit et adipiscitur, a quo suæ postulant expeditionis auxilium. Igitur octingentesimo septuagesimo

Invasion of England by the Danes.

W. Gemmet. ii. 1, 3.

Ib. ii. 4.

Ib. ii. 6.

W. Gemmet. ii. 9. sexto ab Incarnatione Domini anno, Sequanica penetrant ora. Quorum adventum agnoscens Franco Rotomagensis archiepiscopus pacem petit ab eis, et optatam consequitur. Dani postmodum[1] festinantes ad urbis Rotomagensis mœnia quantocius propellunt naves; unum etiam ex semetipsis nomine Rollonem eligunt sorte, quem sibi dominum militiæque suæ principem, ei pacta fidelitate, præficiunt.[2] Rollo prælatione potitus de Parisiaca cum suis tractat eversione, sicque classem solventes Sequanæ fluvium sulcant. Reginaldus totius Franciæ dux, agnito Rollonis adventu, cum manu valida super Auture fluvium ei processit obvius. Hastingum etiam in urbe Carnotena morantem adhuc, ob peritiam linguæ cum aliis legatis Rolloni præmittit. Veniens itaque Hastingus juxta decursum aquæ talibus illos adorsus est linguis: "Heus," inquit, "robustissimi "milites, quibus ab horis huc estis advecti? vel quid in hac "quæritis regione? Francorum sane regis sumus legati vobis "directi." Cui Rollo, "Dani sumus," inquit, "æquali do- "minio fungimur. Hujus terræ colonos venimus exstirpare, "nostræ ditioni patriam subdere cupientes. Tu vero quis es "qui tam fascete nobis loqueris?" Hastingus ad hæc, "Au- "distis," inquit, "aliquando de quodam Hastingo qui, a vestris "partibus exul cum multitudine navium huc adveniens, Fran- "corum regnum ex parte magna pessundedit et redegit in "solitudinem?" Cui Rollo: "Satis audivimus; Hastingus "enim omine bono sed cuncta malo fine complevit." Hastingus ad hæc, "Vultis," inquit, "Karolo regi subdi?" Rollo respondit, "Nequaquam alicui subjiciemur, sed quidquid ad- "quiremus armis nostro juri vendicabimus." Hiis auditis dux Reginaldus exercitu citato super Normannos irruit. Quem Rollo cum suis audacter excipiens, Reginaldi prostrato signifero Rollando, plurimos Francorum morti tradidit; Mellentæ municipium occupat; quo subverso cives gladio necat. Teo-

Ib. ii. 10.

Ib. ii. 11. baldus igitur comes Hastingum talibus verbis alloquitur, "Cur, "insignissime vir, ignavia torpes? Ignoras Karolum regem "te velle morti tradere? Consule tibi ne puniaris." Quibus verbis Hastingus territus Carnotenam urbem Theobaldo ven-

Ib. ii. 12. didit, et distractis omnibus peregre profectus disparuit. Reginaldus iterum exercitu congregato Rollonem aggreditur; cujus conatus Rollo prævenicns quosdam suorum gladiis truncat, alios fugientes fugat, ipsum etiam Reginaldum quidam piscator

Norman History.

Rollo chosen leader of the Normans.

Speech of Hasting to the Normans.

Conversation of Hasting and Rollo.

Victory of Rollo.

Departure of Hasting.

[1] *postmodum*] Here a folio has been torn out of MS. A.; the hiatus so caused ends with the word cenobio, p. 248 below.

[2] This is an important variation from the original authority, with whom Rollo has been the hero from the beginning of the second book.

Norman History.

jaculo transfixum mortuum sternit. Deinde Rollo subductis ancoris celeri remigio Parisius petit, obsidione cingit. Exploratores ilico superveniunt nunciantes urbem Bajocacensem a defensoribus vacuam. Avulsis ab obsidione navibus Rollo Bajocasium velivolo venit cursu. Quam captam aliquatenus subvertit, habitatoribus interfectis. In qua quandam nobilissimam puellam nomine Popam, filiam scilicet illustris viri Berengerii, capiens, non multo post eam sibi more Danico copulavit. Ex qua Willelmum genuit, filiam quoque nomine Gerloc. Ea sic urbe demolita Rollo concite Lutheciam regreditur. Cum autem in ejus expugnatione cum balistis et arietibus intenderet, misit exercitum ad Ebroicam urbem ut eam exterminarent. Quo cum venissent episcopum Sibar fuga lapsum non reperientes, cives perimunt, et cum maxima præda ducem suum repetunt. Cum hæc geruntur regis Anglorum Adelstani venerunt ad Rollonem legati, deprecatoriis verbis utentes, regi suo quantocius subveniret; adversus eum siquidem conspiraverant quidam rebelles. Rollo regis anxietate compatiens, obsidione dimissa, navigio magno venit in Angliam, rebelles regis expugnat, et acceptis obsidibus eos regi reconciliat. Exin in Franciam remeat. Quod audiens Karolus rex ad Rollonem misit Franconem archiepiscopum Rothomagensem, mandans ut a Francorum vexatione cederet, et trium mensium inducias ei daret. Tribus expletis mensibus, Rollo Franciam repetens Stampas demollitur, Carnotensem urbem obsidione circumdat. Ricardus Burgundiorum dux, et Antelmus Carnotensis episcopus sanctæ Dei genitricis suparum præferens, a tergo Rollonem invasit. Ebalus Pictavensis comes ad prælium veniens montem quendam quem Normanni conscenderant cinxit. Sed noctis medio Normanni per Francorum castra violenter erumpentes, vitæ dispendium evaserunt. Ebalus vero, Rollonem super suos irruisse suspicatus, domum cujusdam subintravit fullonis, ibique tota nocte delituit. Rollo suorum succensus infortuniis, ad patriam demoliendam totis insistit conatibus. Franci denique calamitatibus pressi regem Karolum appetunt, quæstuosis clamoribus unanimiter interpellant. Quorum querimoniis rex vehementer permotus, ascitus Franconem archiepiscopum ad Rollonem dirigit festinanter, mandans, si Christianus efficeretur, terram maritimam ab Epte fluvio Britannicos adusque limites cum sua filia nomine Gilla daret. Discurrentibus nunciis alternatim pax stabilitur, Rollone regi fidelitatem jurante. Superadditur autem ad sumptuum supplementa tota Britannia cum principibus suis, Alano scilicet et Berengerio sacramenta Rolloni jurantibus. Gilla filia regis, uxor Roberti ducis, sine liberis moritur; et dux repudiatam

Rollo besieges Paris.

He takes Bayeux, and marries Popa.

Evreux taken.

Visit of Rollo to England.

W. Gemmet. ii. 13.

His return.

Ib. ii. 14.

Danger of Rollo.

Ib. ii. 15.

Ib. ii. 16.

His escape and revenge.

Ib. ii. 17.

Peace between Rollo and the Franks.

Gift of Normandy.

His conversion and marriage.

W. Gemmet. ii. 22. Popam,[1] ex qua filium nomine Willelmum jam adultum genuerat, iterum repetens sibi matrimonio copulavit. Qui senio fessus totius Normanniæ proceres, Alanum etiam et Berengarium convocavit, filium quoque suum Willelmum illis exposuit, jubens ut eum sibi dominum eligerent militiæque suæ principem præficerent. Quod et factum est, et ab omnibus præstito sacramento. Post hæc uno vivens lustro diem clausit extremum, sepultus Rothomagi.

Norman History.

His son William chosen to succeed him.

His death.

Incipit Liber Tertius.

Ib. iii. 1. Berengerius et Alanus in Britannia comites a tenore fidei quam Willelmo duci Normannorum pepigerant dissidentes, regi Francorum ulterius militare volebant. Sed dux Britanniam tam diu vastavit, eorum municipia tam diu subvertit, quoadusque cogeret Alanum exire Britanniam, Anglos adire, Berengerio sibi reconciliato. Riulfus Ebroicensis collecta virorum multitudine Willelmum ducem intra Rothomagum obsidere disposuit. Sed dux cum trecentis militibus irrumpens castra Riulphi, maximam suorum multitudinem stravit. Riulfus autem commilitonum fiducia destitutus, inter profugos delitescens, evasit fugæ subsidio. Dux hostibus profligatis suorum recensens numerum, repperit ex eis interisse nullum. Locus in quo fuit conflictus belli pratum hactenus nuncupatur. De prælio duce regresso, legatus dirigitur, deferens ex quadam nobilissima puella sibi more solito copulata nomine Sprota filium ei natum esse. Quem cum festinatione Bajocas transmisit ut per

William conquers the Breton counts.

Riulf besieges Rouen.

Birth of Richard, son of Sprota.

Ib. iii. 3. episcopum Eiricum sacro lotum fonte vocaret Ricardum. Postmodum Hugo dux Francorum, Willelmus comes Pictavensis, Herebertus quoque Viromandensis, apud Leonis silvam ad ducem Willelmum veniunt. Quos ille cum magno sumptuum apparatu suscepit. Willelmus itaque Pictavensis comes sororem ducis nomine Gerloc petiit, ut ejus conubio jungeretur maritali lege. Quod et factum est. Herebertus etiam comes, adhortante Hugone magno, Willelmo duci filiam suam donavit.

Marriage of Gerloc.

Marriage of William.

Ib. iii. 4. Precibus postmodum Adelstani regis Anglorum, dux Willelmus Ludovicum suum nepotem, scilicet Karoli regis filium, in regno Francorum sublimari curavit. Alanum etiam Britanniæ comitem precibus Adelstani regis ad sua redire concessit. Ludovicus rex Francorum, cum per lustrum unum regnum suum

He makes Lewis king of France.

Ib. iii. 5. sub quiete disponeret, suorum improbitate coactus est Henrico Transreuano regi nuncios mittere, et cum eo pactum ami-

[1] Filiam Guidonis comitis Silvanectensis sicut dicitur, R. in marg.

Norman History.

citiarum stabile firmare se velle. Quibus rex Transrenanus respondit ad hoc fœdus ineundum se nullo modo consentire, nisi Willelmi ducis Normannorum astipulatione. Super itaque Mosæ fluvium ambo reges conveniunt; inter quos dux Willelmus tam fidelissimus quam prudentissimus exstitit mediator. Pax inter duos reges sacramentis hinc inde præstitis confirmatur. A colloquio dux Willelmus regrediens apud Laudunum filium Ludovici regis, quem ex Gerberga regina sua sustulerat, de sacro fonte levavit, cum vocans Lotharium. Sub eodem tempore duo monachi, Baldewinus et Gundewinus, a Cameracensi territorio proficiscentes, venerunt Gemeticum, ut locum pro viribus reædificarent. Legatos itaque dux Willelmus sorori suæ Gerloc, quam Willelmus comes Pictavensis sibi junxerat in matrimonium, dirigit, mandans ut monacos illi mitteret quos præfato subrogaret in loco. Soror autem sua xii. monacos cum abbate Martino sublatos a Sancti Cipriani cœnobio[1] duci destinavit. Quibus dux Willelmus Gemmeticum dedit, abbatique locum tradidit cum tota villa, quam ab allodariis auro redemit, seque monachum inibi fieri repromisit. Fecissetque voto satis si non obstitisset abbas. Verumptamen cucullam et stamineam ab illo suscipiens secum asportavit, quæ reponens in scrinio clavim ejus argenteam appendit in cingulo. Missis postmodum nunciis filium suum Ricardum a Fiscanno reductum fidelibus suis tam Normannicis quam Britannicis præsentavit, cui fidelitatem omnes unanimiter juraverunt. Haroldus subinde rex Danorum, a filio suo Sueno de regno pulsus, cum sexaginta navibus Normanniam adiit. Quem dux Normannorum cum honore congruo recipiens ad præsidium ei comitatum Constantiniensem concessit. Ea tempestate Flandrensis comes Arnulfus comiti Herlewino castrum quod vocatur Monasteriolum abstulit fraude. Qui penitus omni destitutus auxilio Normannorum ducem aggreditur. Cujus calamitati princeps compatiens congregavit exercitum et Monasteriolum obsidione cingens cepit, iterumque vallatum sumptibus alimoniarum Herlewino reddit. Per idem tempus Flandrensis Arnulfus duci Willelmo mandat amicitiam se cum eo velle firmare, cum innumera militum electissimorum super Sommæ fluvium ad colloquium veniens. Ex una parte fluminis consedit Arnulfus, Willelmus ex altera. Arnulfus næniis et ambagibus diem detinuit, donec ad occasum sole ruente dirimerentur adinvicem. Sed statim Eiricus, Balzo, Robertus,[2] Riulfus, ducem revocantes, referunt dominum suum

Interview of Lewis and Henry of Germany.

Restoration of Junieges.

Monks sent from Poictiers.

William wishes to become a monk.

Richard chosen to succeed him.

Harold king of the Danes settled at Coutances.

Siege of Montreuil.

Meeting of William with count Arnulf of Flanders.

W. Gemmet. iii. 6.

Ib. iii. 7.

Ib. iii. 8.

Ib. iii. 9.

Ib. iii. 10.

Ib. iii. 11.

Ib. iii. 12.

[1] *cœnobio*] Here the lacuna in MS. A. ends.

[2] Henricus Balzarob', A.

consilii melioris omisisse secretum. Quem navim retorquentem ad ripam, mox ut terram tetigit extractis gladiis interimunt, innocentem, nullum juvamen de suis habere valentem ob decurrentis aquæ profunditatem. Inde protenus fugæ petentes auxilium, corpus piissimi viri reliquerunt exanime. Principes Normannorum, Berengarius necnon et Alanus nomine, dominum suum perimi cernentes, ululatu, clamore littora repleverunt. Ducem Willelmum ad se relatum cum devestirent, argenteam clavim ejus strophio dependentem repererunt, habentem sub se stamineam scilicet et monachilem cucullam, quæ si comes ei vita fuisset ab hoc colloquio rediens sumpsisset apud Gemmeticum. Explevit autem sanctissimus dux Willelmus vitæ suæ cursum xvi. kalendas Januarii. Tunc temporis annus ab incarnatione Domini nongentesimus quadragesimus tertius effluebat.

Norman History.

Murder of William.

Dec. 17, 943.

Explicit liber tertius: incipit quartus.

Liber Quartus.

W. Gemmet. iv. 2.

Ludovicus rex Francorum, immemor beneficiorum quæ, dum viveret, dux Willelmus ei semper impenderat, Rothomagum venit concite; quem Radulfus, Bernardus, Anslec, totius Normannici ducatus tutores, cum honore regali suscipiunt. Rex itaque Ricardum puerum, filium ducis Willelmi, suis jussit aspectibus præsentari. Quem egregia forma perspiciens decoratum, cum coætaneis pueris educandum decrevit in palatio suo. Postmodum consultu suorum Ricardo puero paternam

Lewis comes to Rouen.

He takes charge of duke Richard.

Ib. iv. 3.

hæreditatem inde sibi pacta fidelitate concessit. Arnulfus Flandrensis metuens ne rex Ludovicus cum hostica manu super eum irrueret, et a crimine proditoris expiare se cupiens, missis legatis cum x. auri libris, a Willelmi nece se coram rege fatetur immunem. Consilium tamen dedit ut Ricardum puerum adustis poplitibus arctaret gravi custodia, gentemque Normannicam tam diu gravissimis affligeret vectigalibus, quoadusque Danemarchiam coacta repeteret. Unde cum apud Laudunum Ludovicus clavatum moraretur, puerum ab aucupio regredientem, acerbissimis confutans conviciis, meretricis filium ultro virum alienum rapientis vocavit, et a talibus nisi resipisceret cauteriatis genibus illum affligeret; deputatis etiam custodibus aliis ne forte posset elabi, sub magna jussit eum servari cautela.

Arnulf advises him to oppress the Normans.

He imprisons Richard.

Ib. iv. 4.

Osmundus procurator ejus, severissimam sententiam regis intelligens, animo consternatus Normannis legatum mittit, mandans dominum suum Ricardum a rege mancipari sub lugubri jugo captivitatis. Quibus compertis confestim per totam patriam Normannorum indicitur triduanum jejunium. Osmundus verso consilio puerum hortabatur ut ægritudine simulata lecto de-

Norman History.

cumberet, ut ab omnibus desperaretur. Cujus monitis puer obtemperans, tanquam in extremo mortis positus, lecto prosternitur. Quod custodes videntes ejus neglecta custodia de suis rebus procurandis huc illucque discurrunt. In area domus forte jacebat herbæ fasciculus, in quo puerum colligatum Osmundus tanquam humeris imponens velut pabulum equo laturus, cœnante rege nudatisque plateis a civibus, transgreditur urbis mœnia; veniens etiam in hospitis sui domum super equum festinus insilit, et arrepto puero fugiens quantocius Codiciacum appulit. In quo commendato puero castellanis equitans nocte diluculo Silvanectis venit. Quem Bernardus comes intuens tam mature venisse stupet, et qualiter erga pronepotem suum Ricardum se res habeant diligenter inquirit. Cui cum ordinem rei detexisset et solito lætiorem eum reddidisset, Hugonem magnum equitatu celeri statim petunt, et post Ricardum puerum ad Silvanectensem urbem gaudentes deducunt. Considerans Ludovicus rex votum suum irritum fore, Arnulfo Flandrensi mandat ut sibi festinus occurreret apud vicum qui dicitur Restibulus. Ubi dum ambo diversi disceptarent super evasione Ricardi pueri, subintulit Arnulfus; "Novimus," inquit, "Hugonem magnum cum Normannis diu sentire; quare tibi "plurimum expedit illum obcæcare muneribus. Igitur illi "concede ducatum Normannicum a Sequana versus mare, tibi "reservans urbem Rothomagensem, quatenus ejus privata "juvamine penitus cogatur a terra recedere gens perfida." Quibus verbis rex persuasus continuo per suum legatum convocat Hugonem magnum ad colloquium ad villam quæ dicitur Crux juxta Compendium. Quo cum vidisset et de ducatus Normannici distributione regem audisset tractare, Ricardo puero fidem inconvulsam servare præposuit. Quapropter a loco recedentes, adversus Normannos expeditione jurata, congregatis exercitibus ab utraque parte rex Calciva, Hugo Bajocasina cœperunt rapinis et incendiis obpugnare territoria. Quæ cum Bernardus Danus didicisset, Bernardi Silvanectensis usus consilio, confestim legatos dirigit, regi Ludovico verbis eruditos hujusmodi; "Quare, præpotentissime rex, tuam demo-"liris patriam, præsertim cum tibi sit obsistente nullo pacifica. "Desiste potius a tuorum rapinis, et utere Normannorum "militiis. Cur enim eos vexas incendiis cum tibi patula sit "urbs Rotomagensis?" Hac itaque rex legatione plurimum exhilaratus, prohibitis a præda militibus, ire festinat ad urbem quantocius. Cui venienti cum multimodis laudibus cunctus civitatis clerus ad portam processit obvius, clamans cum populorum turbis, "Benedictus qui venit in nomine Domini." Rex ad regales accedens dapes cœpit epulari splendide, Bernardo

Stratagem for Richard's escape.

Richard brought to Senlis.

Arnulf advises the king to bribe Hugh the great.

W. Gemmet. iv. 5.

Lewis and Hugh invade Normandy.

Ib. iv. 6.

Lewis enters Rouen.

Dano ministrante. Cum autem inter prandendum rex jam æstuaret vino, sic Bernardus ait: "Hodie, serenissime rex, lætis- "simus nobis dies illuxit, quoniam cœpimus esse regales; "hactenus militavimus duci; serviemus ulterius invictissimo "regi. Teneat sibi Bernardus Silvanectensis Ricardum pro- "nepotem suum; nos autem tempore longo te dominum ha- "beamus et regem." Hiis et hujusmodi rex placatus Hugoni magno legatos mittit ut a finibus exeat Normannorum. Rex apud Rotomagum morans præfectum comitatui præfecit Radulfum agnomento Tortum; qui paganis deterior monasteria circa Sequanæ littora diruit a fundamentis. Interea Bernardus, metuens ne Ludovicus rex cum Hugone magno Normannos pressuris opprimeret gravioribus, Haroldo regi Danorum apud Cheresburch degenti legatos clam mittit, mandans ut sociatis sibi Constantiniensibus atque Bajocasinis, a partibus marinis Normanniam totam concuteret. Cujus monitis Haroldus favens, celerrime propulsis ad mare navibus, et subductis in altum velis, solito more volans occupat maritima littora cum navium multitudine gravi. Rex Ludovicus hoc audiens, cum validum congregasset exercitum, quantocius venit Rotomagum, Haroldo regi mandans ut apud vadum qui Herlewini vocatur sibi confestim occurreret. Quæ res Haroldo regi vehementer complacuit, annisu toto mortem ducis Willelmi decernens ulcisci. Cum autem ambo reges die statuto convenissent juxta Divæ fluvium et de Willelmi ducis injusta nece diutius disceptarent, quidam Danus Herlewinum, Monasterioli castri comitem, pro quo dux idem occubuerat, inter alios prospiciens, zelo succensus illum perfodit lancea, mortuumque sub momento sternit. Cujus mortem Lambertus Herlewini frater ceterique Franci ferentes amare, concitatis animis ad dimicandum, super Danos impetu proruunt repentino. Quos pagani viriliter excipientes, sæviente Marte, satrapas interficiunt decem et octo, cum aliis innumeris. Rex Ludovicus a regis Haroldi captione lapsus, in cujusdam militis incidit manus, et apud Rothomagum arctatur sub arcta custodia. Gerberta regina Ludovicum regem audiens a Normannis captum esse, diriguit, et Henricum regem Transrenanum suum equidem patrem aggreditur, orans ut Rothomagum obsideret virumque suum inde violenter abstraheret. Cujus infortunium cum rex audisset, hoc illi juste contigisse respondit, quia fidem quam olim juraverat Willelmo duci Normanniæ Ricardum ejus filium capiendo manifeste corruperat. "Per tuos," inquit, "O filia, stude virum tuum juvare, quia de propriis ad "præsens oportet me tractare negotiis." Hugo magnus dux Parisiorum, misso Bernardo Silvanectensi, Normannos convocat ad colloquium ad Sanctum Clerum. "Reddite nobis regem nos-

Hugh dismissed.

W. Gemmet. iv. 7.

Bernard proposes to Harold to seize Normandy.

Herlewin of Montreuil slain.

Battle.

Lewis kept in prison at Rouen.

Ib. iv. 8.

Henry of Germany refuses to help him.

Hugh obtains his release.

Norman History.

" trum, et obsidem pro eo suscipite filium ejus et duos episco-
" pos, Hildericum Belvacensem et Guidonem Suessionensem."
Rex de sua lætus evasione regreditur Laudunum, et repetunt
Normanni Rothomagum. Post hæc Normanni mittentes ad W. Gem-
Silvanectensem Bernardum, convocaverunt inde cum exercitu met. iv. 9.

Hugh gives his daughter to Richard.

magno Ricardum seniorem suum. Hiis ita gestis, considerans
Hugo magnus puerum Ricardum viribus convalescere, consultu Ib. iv. 10.
Bernardi Silvanectensis, sacramentis ab utraque parte juratis,

Lewis offers Lorraine to Otho if he will aid him.

filiam suam Emmam nomine Ricardo despondit. Subinde rex
Ludovicus Arnulfum Flandrensem misit ad Transrenanum regem
Ottonem, mandans quoniam, si Hugonem omnino contereret,
Normannicamque terram etiam dominio suo subigeret, Lotha-
riense regnum illi contraderet. Imperator igitur stipatus mi-
litum legionibus multis super Hugonem magnum irruit. Et
postmodum super Normannos inmisit omne robur belli, præ-
mittens cum milite multo quendam suum nepotem ad terren-
dam Rotomagensem urbem. Normanni, portis impetu repentino

Otho's forces defeated.

patefactis, proruentes nepotem imperatoris prosternunt: quod
cum audisset Arnulfus in conticinio noctis cum suo festinus
aufugit exercitu. Quod ubi didicerunt Otto simul et Ludo- Ib. iv. 11.
vicus Arnulfum fugisse quo venerant itinere sunt regressi. Quos
maturius decedentes Normanni sunt adeo subsecuti gladiis,
ut per itinera diversa reperirentur undequaque prostrati. Hugo Ib. iv. 12.
denique dux senio fessus cum novissimum exitus sui diem
cerneret imminere, Ricardo duci Normanniæ filium suum
Hugonem Capeth ilico commendavit. Post cujus obitum
Ricardus filiam ejus Emmam prius sibi desponsatam accepit Ib. iv. 13.

Theobald of Chartres attacks Richard.

uxorem. Theobaldus Carnotensis comes duci Ricardo cœpit
adversari, Gerbergæ reginæ fultus patrocinio. Lotharius rex
hortante Theobaldo legatum dirigit Ricardo duci verbis in- Ib. iv. 14.
structum hujusmodi; " Quousque servitium mihi debitum
" exhibere detractas ? " Congregatis itaque Burgundiorum
Francorumque copiis Ebroicam civitatem aggreditur, civibus Ib. iv. 15.
incautis eam obsidione cingit ; expugnatam Theobaldo comiti
tradit. Ricardus dux evestigio Dunensem Carnotensem comi-
tatum prædis et incendiis vastat. Theobaldus apud Ermentrudis

Victory of Richard.

villam fixis papilionibus stationem componit. Dux Ricardus
diluculo super eum irruit. Theobaldus turpiter fugiens cum
paucis latitando per devia saltus Carnotum venit confusus.
Dum hæc agerentur Ricardus Haroldo Danorum regi legatos Ib. iv. 16.
dirigit ut illi succurrat. Veniens Danorum exercitus omnia
quæ fuerunt Theobaldi diripit: castella rediguntur in solitu-

King Lothar restores Evreux to Richard.

dinem. Dum hæc geruntur sinodalis episcoporum conventus
congregatur apud Laudunum. Quorum consilio Lotharius rex Ib. iv. 17.
Ricardo duci reddidit Ebroicam urbem. Paganorum plurimi

quos Haroldus rex Ricardo duci transmiserat, ad fidem Christi conversi sunt; alii transeuntes ad Hispanias decem et octo
W. Gemmet. iv. 18. diruerunt urbes. Emma filia Hugonis Magni, Ricardi ducis uxor, moritur absque liberis. Ricardus vero non multo post quandam speciosissimam virginem nomine Gunnor, ortam ex Danorum prosapia, desponsavit, ex qua filios genuit, Ricardum, Robertum, Malgerium, et duos alios, Radulfum et Godefridum, necnon et filias tres, Emmam, Hawis, Matildem. Emma nupsit Adelredo regi Anglorum; Hawis nupsit Galfrido comiti Britannorum, Matildis Odoni comiti. Dux Ricardus apud Fiscannum in honore Deificæ Trinitatis templum construxit; in suburbio Rothomagensi abbaciam Sancti Audoeni; in monte qui dicitur Tumba construxit abbaciam Sancti Michaelis. Mortuo Francorum rege Lothario, surrogatur Hugo Chapet, auxilio ducis Ricardi. Dum renueret Flandrensis comes Arnulfus militare Hugoni Chapet, illi violenter abstulit Attrebatum, cunctaque municipia quæ tenebat ultra flumen quod vocatur Lis. Hujus infortunii dolore confusus Arnulfus petiit Ricardum ducem ut pacificaret illum cum rege Francorum. Quod et fecit Ricardus. Mortuo Hugone Chapet, successit ei Robertus filius
Ib. iv. 20. suus, rex piissimus. Dux Ricardus ægritudine corporis aggravatus convocavit Radulfum comitem, suum equidem uterinum fratrem, consilio cujus Ricardum filium suum ducem Normannorum instituit. Obiit autem apud Fiscannum primus Ricardus anno ab incarnatione Domini nongentesimo nonagesimo sexto.

Ib. iv. 19.

Sons and daughters of Richard.

Hugh Capet becomes king by his help.

Richard dies, 996.

Liber Quintus.

Ib. v. 1. Ricardus, primi Ricardi filius, rusticos unanimiter per diversos
Ib. v. 2. totius Normanniæ comitatus agentes conventicula, juxta suos etiam libitus vivere decernentes, per Radulfum comitem patruum suum omissis concionibus et conventiculis ad aratra
Ib. v. 3. sua redire coegit. Quendam etiam fratrem suum ex patre nomine Willelmum, cui comitatum Oximensem contulerat ut inde sibi statutum exhiberet servitium, ab illius fidelitatis obsequio se cohibentem invenit. Qui dum per legatos a duce sæpius objurgaretur et resipiscere contradiceret, auxilio Radulfi comitis captus in Rothomagensis urbis turre retruditur per quinquennium. Tandem longissimo fune per eminentiorem fenestram a turre lapsus fugam iniit. Die vero quadam ducem reperiens in venatuum ludis se voluptuosius exercentem, vestigiis ejus ilico sclotenus provolutus, veniam petiit. Quem protenus dux misericordia motus favente Radulfo comite recepit in gratiam, et ut fratrem carissimum deinceps honoravit. Cui non multo post Occnsem tradidit comitatum, dans ei quan-

Richard II. duke.

Rebellion and submission of William, his brother.

The counts of Eu.

Norman History.

dam puellam nomine Licelinam, filium viri nobilissimi nomine Turketilli; de qua tres filios genuit, Robertum scilicet, post ejus mortem comitatus illius heredem, et Willelmum comitem Suessionensem, et Hugonem præsulem Luxoviensem. Circa dies istos Adelredus rex Anglorum, Emmam ducis Ricardi sororem habens in conjugem, quibusdam exortis inter eos dissensionibus, maximam navium multitudinem congregavit, ut totam Normanniam rapinis et incendiis exterminarent Angli: monti tamen archangeli parcendum decrevit. Qui subductis in altum navibus velivolo sulcantes æquora vento maritima totius Normanniæ tradunt exitiali Vulcano. Quod ut Nigellus vir nobilis comperisset, militibus Constantiniensibus congregatis super eos irruit impetu repentino, tantaque cunctos strage delevit ut nullus penitus remaneret qui facta posteris nunciaret. Britannorum comes Galfridus ducem Ricardum in omnibus prosperari considerans, consultu suorum fultus cum maxima militum multitudine curiam ducis appetiit. Quem dux ut tantum decebat virum recipiens honorifice, cum copiosa rerum affluentia secum illum aliquantisper detinuit. Erat duci soror nomine Hawis, valde decora, morum honestate gratissima. Post pactas amicitias inter eos eam sibi dari comes annisu toto poposcit; cujus voluntati dux, assentientibus Normannorum principibus, gratanter concessit, et petitam more tradidit Christiano. De qua postmodum Galfridus comes duos filios genuit, Alanum scilicet et Eudonem. Qui post ejus excessum toti Britanniæ robustissimo vigore feliciter præfuerunt. Per idem tempus rex Anglorum Adelredus Danos, per omne regnum suum unanimi concordia secum pacifice cohabitantes, die festo Sancti Bricii passim per Angliam perimi jussit. Quidam tamen Dani juvenes agilitate pernices ad quandam navem se contulérunt, et fugæ præsidio per Thamensen fluvium Danemargiam petierunt. Quod rex Suenus audiens, cum festinatione cunctos sub suo degentes regimine præparari jussit, ut suorum sanguinem totis viribus ulciscerentur. Qui dum suo junctus est exercitui, continuo regnum Anglorum tradit ultricibus flammis. Quod rex audiens Adelredus, apud Wintoniam degens, sublatis a terra thesauris, cum uxore, cum filiis, Eadwardo scilicet et Aluredo, Normanniæ ducem Ricardum expetiit. Igitur Suenus, dum apud Lundoniam de regni tractaret dispositione, diem clausit extremum. Adelredus rex audiens mortem Sueni, præparatis ad navigandum omnibus, ad suum cum uxore regnum regreditur, filiis suis dimissis cum avunculo. Rex itaque Canutus, collectis undequaque militum legionibus, ad Anglos velivolo cursu devehitur. Inde petens Tamisæ fluvium celeriter petiit Estsexæ comitatum. Cui cum

War with Ethelred.

Victory of Nigel over the English.

Geoffrey of Brittany marries the duke's sister Hawis.

Massacre of the Danes by Ethelred.

Sweyn invades England.

Ethelred flies to Normandy.

War of Canute with Ethelred.

W. Gemmet. v. 4.

Ib. v. 5.

Ib. v. 6.

Ib. v. 7.

Ib. v. 8.

suis egredienti de navibus occurrerunt Angli, cruentissimum
W. Gemmet. v. 9. inferentes bellum ad sui perniciem apud Essendune. Rex Canutus victor effectus ad suas naves cum suis est reversus. Hinc celeri se movens fiducia obsidione circumdat Lundoniam, intra quam urbem rex Adelredus graviter ægrotavit; et crudescente
Ib. v. 8. morbo corporis non multo post hominem exuit. Rex igitur Canutus habens secum Lagman regem Suavorum et Olavum regem Noricorum, audita morte regis Adelredi, suorum consultu fidelium Emmam reginam abstractam ab urbe post aliquot dies sibi junxit uxorem Christiano more; de qua succedente tempore genuit filium nomine Hardecnutum, postmodum regem Anglorum et Danorum, et filiam unam vocabulo Gun-
Ib. v. 10. nildam, quæ nupsit Henrico Romanorum imperatori. Temporibus sub eisdem Odo Carnotensis comes Matildem ducis Ricardi sororem legitime sibi copulavit in matrimonio. Cui dux medietatem Dorcasini castri dedit nomine dotis cum terra super Arvæ fluvium adjacente. Matildis moritur absque liberis. Post cujus obitum duci terram prætitulatam repetenti comes Odo cœpit contraire. Quapropter dux ascitis Britonibus cum Normannorum legionibus super Arvæ fluvium hostiliter veniens, castrum condidit quod Tegulense vocavit, et sumptis ex Odonis comitatu sufficientibus alimoniis eandem munitionem replevit habundantissime, Nigellum Constantiniensem, Radulfum Totimensem, Rogerum filium ejusdem cum eorum militibus custodes in ea relinquens. Odo comes convocatis clam ad sui suffragium comitibus, Hugone scilicet Cenomannensi, Gualerano Mellendensi, cum militum copiis equitans tota nocte diluculo venit ad Tegulense castrum. Quos cum viderunt principes prænominati, custodibus intra municipium derelictis, impetu repentino foras erumpunt, Odonem et suos ita prostraverunt ut, multis peremptis, plurimis vulneratis, reliqui per devia fugientes opaca quærerent silvarum latibula. Videns igitur dux
Ib. v. 11. Ricardus comitem Odonem ad tantam devolutum esse vecordiam, missis legatis duos reges, Olavum scilicet Noricorum et Lagman Suevorum, sui vocat in auxilium. Qui cum suis exercitibus pariter congregati, velis in altum expassis Britannorum littora, vi ventorum compulsi, petere sunt coacti. Quorum Britones repentinum agnoscentes accessum, per campi planitiem quo noverant illos venturos fore, profundissimos foderunt cuniculos angustissimos in superficie. Venientes Britones atrociter irruunt super hostes. Quorum descipulis prostrati sunt Dani. Progredientes inde castrum Doli circumdant obsidione, captum igne comburunt. Deinde sublatis ancoris mare repetentes ad ora devehuntur Sequanica; carpentesque fluminis alveum, remigio pernici Rothomagum appli-

He marries Emma the widow of Ethelred.

War of Richard with Odo of Chartres.

Defeat of Odo.

The kings of Norway and Sweden come to Richard's help.

After being defeated by the Bretons, they burn Dol and come to Rouen.

Norman History.

cuerunt. Quos dux vehementer gavisus competenti regaliter honore suscepit. Rex Francorum Robertus audiens paganos tantas Britannis contumelias intulisse, ducemque Ricardum ad confutandam Odonis comitis contumaciam accersisse, discordes ambos apud Coldras ad se convenire mandavit. Ubi dum causas dissensionum audisset, sopitis eorum animis protinus illos concordes effecit, eo tenore quidem ut Odo Dorcasinum castrum teneret, et dux præreptam terram reciperet, in suo statu Tegulensi castro perpetualiter persistente. Quibus dux ad votum peractis ad suos reges regreditur. Rex etiam Olavus oblectatus super Christiana religione, spretis cultibus idolorum, cum nonnullis suorum ad Christi fidem conversus est, et de percepta gratia gaudens ad suum regnum regreditur. Qui post a suis proditus, et a perfidis injuste peremptus, cœlestem curiam intravit rex et martir gloriosus. Subinde dux Ricardus Judith sororem Galfridi comitis Britannorum accepit uxorem; de qua tres filios genuit, Ricardum, Robertum, Willelmum, totidemque filias, quarum Aeliz Reginaldo Burgundiorum comiti nupsit, ex qua Willelmum atque Guidonem procreavit; altera Baldewino Flandrensi; tertia virgo moritur. Post Galfridus comes Romam proficiscitur, totam Britanniam duobus filiis, Alano videlicet et Eudone, sub ducis advocatu reliquit. Qui peragratis sanctorum locis in repatriando præventus morte diem obiit. Per idem tempus Burcardus Miludinensis castri comes Odonis comitis Carnotensis proditione clandestina castro spoliatus est. Quod ut comperit rex Francorum Robertus, Ricardum Normannorum ducem ad colloquium accersivit. Cujus obprobrium dux non ferens, exercitu congregato quantocius Milidunum venit, et illud fluminis ex una parte rex obsedit, ex altera Milidunenses portas aperiunt ducemque cum suis introducunt. Quorum dux parcens multitudini, Walterum proditorem cum uxore sua patibulo jussit suspendi. Tribus abhinc emensis annis Henricus dux Burgundiorum moritur, absque liberis, Robertum regem Francorum sui ducatus relinquens heredem. Rex Robertus accersito duce Ricardo tam diu civitatem obsedit Autisiodorum donec Landricum Nivernensem regis dominatui subjugavit. Interea Reginaldus trans Ararim fluvium comes Burgundionum, missis legatis filiam ducis Ricardi Adeliz petit in uxorem. Qua Christiana lege sibi sociata, captus est postmodum ab Hugone Cabilonense comite, et dolo diræ mancipatus custodiæ. Cujus anxietatem dux Ricardus agnoscens, Hugoni mandat quatinus absque difficultate dilationis generum suum sineret liberum abire; quod facere contempsit. Dux Ricardus filium suum Ricardum dirigit in Burgundiam, Milmandum cinxit obsidione

King Robert mediates.

W. Gemmet. v. 12.

Conversion of king Olaf.

Marriage and family of duke Richard.

Ib. v. 13.

Ib. v. 14.

Richard and Robert take Melun.

Richard brings Auxerre to submission.

Ib. v. 15.

Ib. v. 16.

He sends his son Richard into Burgundy to obtain the release of count Reginald.

castellum. Normanni castrum oppugnantes per girum, capiunt, igne comburunt; ad Cabilonensem urbem iter dirigunt. Considerans igitur Hugo contra tantum exercitum se nullo pacto posse resistere, sellam equestrem ferens humeris, genibus provolvitur adolescentis Ricardi; qui Reginaldum comitem reddidit, obsidibus datis apud Rothomagum ex hoc se fore satisfacturum patri suo duci jurejurando spopondit. Quibus ad votum peractis, Ricardus juvenis ad patrem reversus est cum suis. Novissime dux Ricardus Ricardum filium suum consultu sapientum suo præfecit ducatui, fratrem ejus Robertum Oximensi comitatui. Viam ingreditur universæ carnis Ricardus secundus anno ab incarnatione Domini M°XX°VI°.

Norman History.

W. Gemmet. v. 17.

Death of Richard, 1026.

Liber Sextus.

Ib. vi. 2. Robertus, frater ducis Ricardi juvenis, post biennium contempto dominio ducis, intra Falissæ castrum cum suis satellitibus se contulit ad resistendum. Quos furentis fratris conatus temerarios festine dux refrænavit, Falissæ castrum obsidione vallavit. Quod dum arietum et balistarum ictibus expugnaret, tandem a perfidia resipiscente Roberto, datis dexteris in pristinam redierunt concordiam; firmiterque pace composita secesserunt abinvicem. Tertius Ricardus cognomento Mantot, regressus Rothomagum M°XX°VIII° anno ab incarnatione Domini diem clausit extremum, fratrem suum Robertum heredem

Rebellion of Robert against Richard III.

Death of RichardIII., and succession of Robert, 1028.

Ib. vi. 3. relinquens. Dux Robertus in primordiis suorum actuum, suspectioni habens patruum suum Robertum archipræsulem Rothomagensem, Ebroicam urbem obsidione vallavit. Cujus efferos impetus declinans archiepiscopus Robertum regem Francorum exul adiit, Normanniam feriens anathemate. Dux autem Robertus non multo post eum a Francia revocatum in pristinum

Ib. vi. 4. honorem restituit pœnitens facti. Subinde Willelmus Bellemensis castrum Alencium, quod beneficii tenebat jure, adversus ducem munire curavit. Ad cujus insolentiam propere conterendam, dux Robertus adveniens, intra munitionem tam diu conclusit, donec Willelmus clementiam ejus expeteret, nudis vestigiis equestrem sellam ferens humeris ad satisfaciendum.

He subdues William of Belesme.

Ib. vi. 5. Dum hæc geruntur, Hugo præsul urbis Bajocasinæ castrum Ebroicum clam armis alimoniisque sufficienter munivit, et custodibus positis, Franciam ocius adiit. Dux autem Robertus accelerans, contractis copiis Normannorum idem castellum obsidione vallavit: a cujus ingressu cum Hugo se videret obtrusum, sollicitus intra castrum conclusis libertatem abeundi a duce petiit, et eos inde protinus abegit: ipse quoque diutius

He besieges Evreux.

Ib. vi. 6. extorris permansit. Tempore sub eodem Baldewinus Flandren-

Norman History.

sis comes, sobolem suam cupiens innormare regali prosapia, filiam Roberti regis Francorum filio suo Baldewino dari poposcit uxorem. Filius vero mox regali fretus affinitate patrem proprio solo pepulit. Pater Normannorum ducem festinanter aggreditur, suffragium adversus filium postulaturus. Cujus calamitatem dux miseratus, contractis militum viribus, Flandriam exterminare flammis exitialibus est adorsus. Baldewinus adolescens cum precibus humillimis duci legatos dirigit, patri se cupiens eo mediante reconciliari. Dux autem ejus petitioni favens patrem et filium libato pacis osculo pristinam redire fecit in concordiam. Moritur rex Francorum Robertus sub hac tempestate; cui successit filius ejus Henricus. Quem Francorum regno potitum mater ejus Constantia cœpit odio persequi novercali. Henricus itaque consultu suorum, confugium faciens cum xii. clientulis, apud Fiscannum ducem adiit Normannorum. Dux autem conflictibus crebris tamdiu rebelles regis violentius expugnavit, donec cervicibus plexis suo regi reconciliarentur. Matris Constantiæ conatibus exinanitis, Britannorum comes Alanus a ducis servitio se surripuit. Dux invadens Britanniam totum Doli comitatum flammis ultricibus tradidit, et cum ingenti præda Normanniam petiit. Post cujus abscessum Alanus Abrincatensem comitatum cum exercitu magno persequitur: cui Nigellus et Aluredus prænominati castelli custodes viriliter restiterunt, Britones tanta strage depopulantes ut Alanus cum dedecore recedens Redonim veniret. Alanus postmodum missa legatione Robertum Rothomagensem archiepiscopum, suum et Roberti ducis avunculum, ad se venire festinanter mandavit. Igitur archiepiscopus Alanum in servitio ducis Roberti pacta fidelitate coegit. Robertus cum in votum haberet Jerosolimam visitare, Willelmum filium suum tunc primum septennem optimatibus suis præsentavit, ut hunc sibi loco sui dominum eligerent et militiæ suæ principem præficerent. Quibus ad votum expletis, dux Robertus sub ductoribus et auctoribus sapientia vigentibus illum usque ad legitimam ætatem subegit, sanctissimam peregrinationem aggressus. Porro dux invictus in Jerosolimis, adorato Christo cum internorum singultuum suspiriis, et peragratis sanctorum locis, felicissimum convertens iter ad Nicenam regressus est urbem. In qua correptus ægrimonia corporis anno ab incarnatione Domini M°XXX°V°. spiritum Deo reddidit. Sepultus est etiam in basilica Sanctæ Mariæ.

He assists Robert of Flanders against his rebellious son Baldwin.

He helps king Henry against his stepmother.

W. Gemmet. vi. 7.

He subdues Brittany.

Ib. vi. 8.

Ib. vi. 11.

Robert goes to Jerusalem, after presenting his son to the Normans as his successor.

Ib. vi. 12.

Ib. vi. 13.

Death of Robert at Nicæa, 1035.

Liber Septimus.

Henricus rex Francorum, immemor beneficiorum a patre ducis Willelmi sibi sæpius impensorum, dixit se placabilem

Ib. vii. 5.

Duke William allows Tillieres to

nullo modo fore quamdiu Tegulense castrum in suo statu persisteret. Gillebertus vero cognomento Crispinus, cui dux Robertus illud olim commiserat, ad resistendum se protenus præparavit. Tandem Gilebertus precibus victus ducis Willelmi mœrens castrum reddidit. Quod confestim igne concremari conspexit. Postmodum perspicieus Turstinus Oximensis præses ducem Willelmum aliquantulum regi cessisse, Falissæ castellum ne serviret inde duci munivit. Dux vero legionibus Normannorum undequaque coactis, festinanter illud obsedit. Perpendens autem Turstinus se tantas hostium copias non posse diutius tolerare, profugus et extorris aufugit a patria. Quo tempore Robertus Rothomagensis archiepiscopus obiit, cui successit Malgerius frater Roberti ducis. Nam Ricardus dux secundus, mortua Judith, aliam duxit uxorem nomine Papiam, ex qua duos filios genuit, Malgerium scilicet archiepiscopum et Willelmum Archacensem. Willelmus postea castellum Arcarum in cacumine montis condidit. Dux vero Willelmus viribus Normannorum accitis super eum venit, et erectis aggeribus ad radicem montis castrum stabilivit, quod fortium robore virorum inexpugnabile reddidit. Henricus ergo rex Francorum cum hostili manu Normanniam introivit. Sed Willelmi ducis milites Ingelrammum Abbatis-villæ comitem et Hugonem cognomento Bardulfum cum multis aliis peremerunt. Quod ut rex agnovit mœstus propter milites amissos cum dedecore repatriavit. Willelmus Arcarum dominus affectus inedia castellum reddidit, et a nativo solo discessit in exilium. Eadem tempestate rex Cnutus diem obiit, cui successit Haroldus filius ejus ex concubina. Circa dies illos Aluredus filius Adelredi regis apud Witsand transfretans Doroberniam venit; ubi Godwinum comitem obvium habuit. Quem idem comes in sua fide suscipiens, intempestæ noctis silentio, manibus Aluredi post tergum ligatis, illum apud Lundonias Haroldo regi transmisit. Quem Haroldus ad insulam Heli duci jussit, et oculis privavit. Haroldus post non multo superstes mortem obiit, cui successit frater ejus Hardecnutus regressus a Dacia, frater Eadwardi natus ex Emma matre. Qui post paululum confirmatus in regem, fratrem suum Eadwardum a Normannia revocavit, ac secum cohabitare fecit. Sed non plene duobus annis subsistens exuit hominem, Eadwardum totius regni relinquens heredem. His temporibus Willelmus dux Normannorum Guidonem filium Reginaldi comitis Burgundiorum, cui contulerat castrum Brioci, Nigellum etiam Constantiensem præsidem, sibi plurimum adversantes invenit. Suorum etiam actus consilio Henricum regem Francorum expetiit. Tunc tandem rex memor beneficii quod pater ejus Robertus ei quondam impenderat,

W. Gemmet. vii. 6.

Rebellion and flight of Turstin.

Ib. vii. 7.

Mauger archbishop of Rouen.

William of Arques.

Ib. vii. 8.

He is banished.

Ib. vii. 9.

Alfred son of Ethelred is blinded and dies.

Hardicanute invites Edward to England.

Edward becomes king.

Ib. vii. 17.

Rebellion of Guy of Brionne and Nigel of the Côtentin.

Norman History.

Battle of Val-es-dunes.

viribus Francorum simul coactis Oximensem comitatum aggressus, Valesdunas advenit, et Normannos sibi prælium intemptantes invenit. Quorum efferos impetus cum duce Willelmo minime perhorrescens, alternatim militum facto concursu bellum commissum est; et quos gladius non extinxit fugientes absorbuit fluvius Olnæ. Guido prædictus e prælio lapsus Briocum expetiit. Quem dux Willelmus, rege Franciam repetente, cominus obsidione vallavit. Guido famis astrictus calamitate per amicos compulsus est supplex et pœnitens facti clementiam ducis expetere. Cujus dux suorum consultu miseriæ misertus illi clementer pepercit, et recepto castello Brioci cum suis

Aggression of Geoffrey Martel.

domesticis in sua manere domo jussit. His temporibus comes Andegavorum Gaufridus cognomine Martellus multos in vicino positos frequenter afflixit. Ex quibus comitem Theobaldum tamdiu captum custodiæ mancipavit, donec urbem Turonicam extorqueret ab illo cum nonnullis castellis. Hic Normanniam rapinis cœpit vehementer demoliri, Damfrontis castrum custodibus et alimoniis muniendo. Quod dux Willelmus, militari vallatus manu, viribus Normannorum accinctus firmissimis, castellum cinxit, et equitans tota nocte cum exercitu Alencium venit; et concitatis militum animis expugnans cepit, exitialibus flammis cremavit, illusores suos manibus pedibusque privari

W. Gemmet. vii. 18.

Surrender of Domfront.

jussit. Audientes Damfrontenses qualia dux suis commilitonibus intulerit, et considerantes a nullo se posse juvari, datis

William's marriage.

obsidibus ejus se cum castello dominatui tradiderunt. Postmodum dux Willelmus Matildem, comitis Baldewini Flandrensis filiam, duxit uxorem. De qua succedentibus annorum curriculis filios et filias genuit. In eodem tempore Malgerius Rothomagensis archiepiscopus archiepiscopatum duci reddidit; quem dux cuidam Maurilio multis virtutibus excellenti tradi-

Ib. vii. 21.

King Henry invades Normandy.

dit sinodali decreto. Postmodum rex Francorum Henricus Normanniam est aggressus, duorum agminibus hostium, unum ad Calcivum territorium subvertendum dirigens, cui fratrem suum præfecit Odonem; alteri vero cum Andegavorum comite Galfrido præfuit ipse, comitatum Ebroicensem devastaturus. Dux ergo Willelmus milites elegit quos ad comprimendos subversores Calcivi territorii celerrime direxit. Ipse vero contra

Ib. vii. 24.

William defeats him at Mortemer.

regem se contulit cum suorum nonnullis. Venientes Normanni contra Francos, duce Willelmo, reppererunt eos apud Mare Mortuum in incendiis et mulierum ludibriis occupatos. Cum quibus ilico mane commissum est bellum. Novissime Franci victi terga dederunt Normannis, cum eorum Odone signifero, fratre videlicet Henrici regis. Quorum infortunium rex ut agnovit, ab infestatione Normannica concito gradu recessit.

William conquers Maine.

Postmodum dux Willelmus ad urbem Cenomannicam subver-

Ib. vii. 27.

tendam arma convertit. Cenomanni, castellis per totum comitatum subactis, duci Willelmo dextras dederunt. Ipse vero duo municipia stabilivit, quæ suis militibus custodienda commisit. Rex Francorum Henricus Normanniam aggreditur cum expeditione gravi. Qui comitatum pertransiens Oximensem, et Bajocensem penetrans, tandem reflexo calle Divæ vadum appetit. Quod rege transeunte media pars exercitus substitit. Cum quibus dux superveniens sub regis oculis ilico congressus illos tanta cæde prostravit, ut quos gladius non extinxit, hos per Normannica compita dispergeret violentia diræ captivitatis. Videns autem rex suorum interitum, quam citius valuit a Normannis recessit, et ad eos ulterius venire non apposuit. Qui postmodum naturæ debita solvens Philippum filium suum in Francorum regimine reliquit heredem. Sub isdem temporibus rex Angliæ Eadwardus, successione prolis carens, ducem Willelmum heredem sui regni constituit, prius mittens illi Robertum Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, postmodum Haroldum, ut duci de corona regni fidelitatem facerent, et Christiano more sacramento firmarent. Haroldus dum ob hoc negotium venire contenderet, velificato freto, Pontivum appulit, ubi Guidonis Abbatisvillæ comitis in manus incidit. Quem idem comes captum cum suis in custodiam trusit. Quod ut dux comperit, missis legatis illum a Guidone violenter extorsit. Quem aliquamdiu secum moratum, facta fidelitate de regno plurimis sacramentis, cum muneribus multis regi remisit. Eadwardus postmodum completo termino vitæ felicis, anno ab incarnatione Domini MºLXºVº migravit ad Dominum. Cujus regnum continuo Haroldus invasit, spreta fidelitate quam duci juraverat. Circa dies istos stella radiis longius protensis per noctium xv. spatium cœli faciem illustravit. Considerans itaque dux Willelmus Haroldum viribus roborari, classem ad tria milia navium festinanter in Pontivo construxit apud Sanctum Walericum. Inde vento flante secundo velis in altum expassis appulit Penevesellum; ubi statim firmissimo vallo castrum condidit. Quod committens militibus festinus Hastingas venit, et aliud ibi firmavit. Haroldus Anglorum contrahens multitudinem duci festinanter occurrit. Dux legionibus militum in ordinibus tribus dispositis intrepidus obviam Haroldo processit. Haroldus in militum primo congressu letaliter vulneratus occubuit. Angli versa facie subsidium appetierunt fugæ. Fortissimus igitur dux ab inimicorum strage reversus, corporibus suorum carorum sepultis, iter arripuit quod tendit Lundoniam. Sed divertens ad castrum Warengefordiæ transmeato vado fluvii legiones ibi castra collocare præcepit. Inde Lundoniam est aggressus. Lundonienses datis obsidibus ducem Willelmum receperunt in principem; qui die Natalis ab omnibus tam Nor-

Norman History.

W. Gemmet. vii. 28. Henry again attacks Normandy and is beaten.

Philip succeeds him.

Ib. vii. 31. William named heir of England.

Story of Harold's shipwreck.

Ib. vii. 34. Invasion of England.

Battle of Hastings.

Ib. vii. 35.

Ib. vii. 37.

William chosen and crowned king, 1066.

Norman History.

mannorum quam Anglorum proceribus rex electus est, anno Dominicæ Incarnationis M°LX°VI°. Aldredus Eboracensis archiepiscopus ejus capiti coronam imposuit. Circa dies istos Eustachius comes Boloniæ, quorundam Anglorum versutiis depravatus, Doroberniæ castellum nisus est involare. Qui, noctis in conticinio mare transfretans, diluculo cum militum exercitu copioso castellum obsedit totisque viribus expugnare cœpit. Milites Odonis episcopi Bajocensis, milites etiam Hugonis de Monteforti, quibus erat commissa castelli custodia, patefactis portis repente foras proruunt unanimiter, consertoque certamine cunctos abigunt ab obsidione. Comes Eustachius cum paucis ad mare divertens, aufugit navigio. Rex Willelmus tunc temporis in Normannia morabatur; qui postea cunctis pro quibus venerat ad votum dispositis, Roberto filio suo ducatum Normannorum tradidit, et sic in regnum remeans plurimos ejusdem generis repperit quos Dacorum ab ejus fidelitate conspiratio prævaricatrix averterat. Qui regis Willelmi formidantes adventum, furtim ut maximi terroris festinum suasit consilium, in quandam unius comitatus partem, aquis pariter et silvis inaccessibilem, se contulerunt, quod propria lingua Dunelmum nuncupaverunt, ex quo diversos crebrius agitantes excursus Sueni Danorum regis præstolabantur subventum. Quorum conatus temerarios rex ut agnovit, productis Normannorum copiis, ad confutandam eorum contumaciam perrexit quantocius. Porro duo filii regis Haroldi regem Hiberniæ Dirmetum pro juvamine conferendo sunt aggressi. Qui cum lxvi. navibus ab Hibernia redeuntes Anglos ocius repetierunt, rapinis et incendiis terræ populum exterminantes. Quibus Briennus, Eudonis ducis Britanniæ minoris filius, cum suis obvius, protinus cum eis sub una die duobus præliis manum conseruit, cæsis Hiberniensium bellatoribus septingentis. Reliqui fugientes e certamine navium præsidio necis exitium evaserunt utcumque. Rex autem Willelmus ad hostium arcendos excursus tutissima castella per loca stabiliens oportuna, militum electissimorum robore communivit. Tandem bellorum ac seditionum tempestate conquiescente, totius Anglicæ monarchiæ potentius habenas temperat et gloria prosperitatis potitur.

Attempt of Eustace of Boulogne.

W. Gemmet. vii. 39.

William places Normandy under his son Robert, and completes the conquest of England.

Ib. vii. 40.

Attempt of the sons of Harold.

Ib. vii. 41.

William secures England.

Ib. vii. 42.

Liber Octavus.[1]

War between Geoffrey Martel and William.

Gaufredus Martellus, cum comitem Pictavensem Willelmum et comitem Carnotensem Theobaldum simul habuisset in vincu-

Will. Pictav., ed. Maseres, p 46.

[1] From this point the work of William of Poictiers supplies the basis of our author's narrative, and the abridgment does not quite so closely follow the language of the original.

Norman History.

lis, ne quid ei deesset ad famam ulterius propagandam, Willelmum ducem Normannorum molestare præsumpsit, invadens castellum Alencium. Dux Willelmus ut Galfrido Martello redderet talionem, Danfrontem, castrum scilicet Gaufridi Meduanensis qui Martello favebat, obsidione cinxit. Martellus ut liberaret Danfrontem exercitum congregavit. Dux Willelmus Rogerum de Montegomerico, Willelmum filium Osberni, præmisit ut Normannis essent auxilio, castrum obsidentibus Danfrontum, et mentem Martelli perscrutarentur. Qui superbe respondit. Dux Willelmus cum exercitu superveniens maximo fuit Martello terrori. Qui fugiens a facie ducis fuga sibi consuluit. Dux Willelmus Alencium superveniens eum ilico subjugavit. Quod audientes Danfrontini sese spontanee duci submisere Willelmo. Dicitur quod permissu Ricardi primi Normannorum comitis fundata sunt hæc duo castella, tam in confinio Normanniæ quam Cenomanniæ. Postmodum Gaufridus Meduanensis audito quod dux Willelmus Ambreras viris munisset et alimoniis, dominum suum Gaufridum Martellum supplex adiit. Martellus itaque Willelmum comitem Pictavorum et Eudonem comitem Britonum in adjutorium sui pertraxit, Ambreras conscendit ad oppugnandum accinctus. Sed dux Willelmus munitionis fundator, labore cognito suorum, exercitum evocat, ad suorum properans subsidium. Quo postquam tres supradicti comites adequitare percipiunt, mira celeritate cum inmanibus exercitibus dilabuntur, fuga sibi pernici consulentes. Dux Normannorum victor Gaufridum Meduanensem e vestigio bello adorsus, intra exiguum temporis cum ad hoc compulit ut in remotissimis Normanniæ partibus sibi manus daret perdomitas, fidelitatem quam satelles domino suo debet ei jurans. Tempore Hugonis Galfridus Martellus urbem Cenomannicam sæpe igne injecto cremavit, sæpe militibus suis eam prædam tribuit, plerumque vineas circa ejus ambitum exstirpavit. Aliquando expulso illo qui juste possedit, soli dominio suo eam vendicavit. Hugo hereditatem suam Hereberto filio suo reliquit et inimicitias easdem. Herebertus Martelli tirannide metuens omnino deleri, Willelmum ducem Normannorum sub quo tutus foret supplex adiit; manibus ei sese dedit, cuncta sua ab eo ut miles a domino recepit, cunctorum singulariter eum statuens heredem, si non gigneret alium. Herebertus tandem morbo iuteriit, suos in ipso fine obtestans et obsecrans, ne alium dominum sibi quærerent præter ducem Willelmum, quem ipse eis heredem reliquerat. At homines malefidi Gualterum Mendatinum, cui soror Hugonis nupserat, receperunt, ducis Willelmi deserentes dominium. Indignans ergo dux Willelmus jure multiplici

Will. Pictav., ed. Maseres, p. 47.

48. Flight of Geoffrey.

62. He besieges Ambrieres

63. and is

64. defeated.

William subdues Geoffrey of Mayenne.

69.

70. He is made heir to Herebert of Maine.

On Herebert's death he has to conquer the country.

Norman History.

successurus Hereberto, arma expedivit, quibus prærepta requireret. Placuit itaque duci Normannorum Cenomannicos in hunc modum expugnare. Crebris expeditionibus et diuturnis in ipso territorio mansionibus metum Cenomannicis incutiebat; vineas, agros, villas, vastabat, loca munita circumquaque capiebat; præsidia ubi res postulabat imponebat; plurima

Geoffrey Martel assists the Manceaux.

erumpnarum turba eos incessanter affligens. Quod videntes Cenomannici, anxii et trepidi onus molestissimum a cervicibus suis depellere cupiebant, et accito Martello, quem præses eorum Walterus Mendatinus dominum sibi præfecit ac tutorem, frequenter prælio decernere sunt minati, nunquam tamen ausi. Perdomiti tandem, castellis jam per totum comitatum subactis,

William subdues them.

duci Willelmo civitatem Cenomannicam reddunt, et quem longa detinuerant rebellione, supplici et ingenti suscipiunt honore; duci Willelmo sufficiens pœna fuit perdomitos in suam venisse potestatem, et urbis firmamentum a sua in reliquum custodia detineri. Gualterus Mendatinus voluntariæ consensit deditioni ne hereditaria amitteret, dum invasa protegeret. Clades enim a Normannis illata vicinitati Medanti et Calvi Montis, quos dux Willelmus subjugaverat, metum ei faciebat de majori. Gaufridus Meduanensis, qui ut supra memoravimus manus perdomitas duci Willelmo dederat, eique fidelitatem domino a satellite debitam juraverat, in deditione urbis Cenomannicæ se ab eo alienavit, virtutem ducis bello invictam

Will. Pictav., ed. Maseres, p. 71.

William besieges Mayenne.

præsumens lacescere. Qui cum iterum et iterum per legatos 73.
fuisset monitus ut duci Normannorum obsequeretur, nec tamen admonitus mentem omitteret obstinatam, statuit dux Willelmus rebelli et perjuro castrum Meduanum abalienare. Disponit ergo obsidionem, exercitum castro admovet. Sed cum nichil gladiis, nihil lanceis aut missilibus, nichil ariete aut tormento ceterisve instrumentis bellicis ageretur, aut agendum speraretur, dux Normannorum Willelmus sollerti consilio ignes castro injecit Meduano. Qui cito more suo diffusi obvia quæque vastabant. Custodes et propugnatores subita clade attoniti portas murumque deserunt, trepidi discurrunt, domibusque rebusque succensis primo festinant succurrere; deinde saluti propriæ in quantum possunt refugio festinant consulere, gladios Normannorum vehementius quam incendium metuentes. Normanni alacerrime concurrunt, exultantes animos et clamorem gratulantem pariter tollentes, certatim irrumpunt, potenter munitione potiuntur. Prædam optimam inveniunt, nobiles equos, arma militaria, omnisque generis suppellectilem. Quæ omnia dux Willelmus potius voluit esse militum quam sua. Castellani qui in arcem confugerant die postero dediderunt se, 74.
contra ducis Willelmi fortitudinem et ingenium nulli firma-

He sets it on fire and captures it.

Will. Pictav., ed. Maseres, p. 74.

mento confidentes. Dux Normannorum Willelmus præsidio providenter disposito, illisque restauratis quæ flamma corruperat, cum immenso exercitus sui gaudio domum revexit triumphum.

Norman History.

He returns home.

Supplementa.

80. Sicut in annalibus scriptum reperimus, Karolus rex Francorum pacem emit et amicitiam a Rollone primo duce Normannorum, natam suam ei tradens in matrimonium, et Britanniam
81. in servitium perpetuum. Exinde comites Britannici e jugo dominationis Normannicæ cervicem nunquam valuerunt solvere, quamvis multotiens id essent conati. Unde contigit quod tempore ducis Normannorum Willelmi, Conanus filius Alani, cum patri successit in comitatu, elegit potius hostis esse Normanniæ quam miles. Sed hanc Conani temeritatem dux Willelmus parvipendens, ei ad prælium festinanti intra Britanniæ fines occurrit, castra sua in Ruali figens territorio.
85. Conanus, cognito ducis Willelmi et suorum adventu, fugam instituit citissimam, longius profugiens, scilicet in ulteriora
80, 85. Britanniæ. Dux vero Willelmus in sua est reversus. Huic expeditioni interfuit Haroldus missus ab Edwardo rege Anglorum; qui, cum postmodum Edwardo successisset, a duce Normannorum Willelmo superatus est.

The counts of Brittany attempt to throw off the rule of the Normans.

Harold engaged under William.

Item Supplementa.[1]

Cont. W. Gemmet. viii. 37.

Gunnor comitissa duas habuit sorores, Weivam et Duvelinam; quarum una nupsit Turulpho de Ponte Audomari. Turulphi frater fuit Turketillus pater Ausculli de Harecurt. Turulphus genuit Humfridum de Vetulis patrem Rogeri de Bellomonte. Una soror Gunnor comitissæ Walterum genuit Giffardum primum, et Godefridum patrem Willelmi de Archis. Hic Willelmus pater fuit Matildis quam Willelmus camerarius de Tankarvilla habuit uxorem. Genuit Walterus secundum Walterum Giffardum et filias plures, quarum una nomine Roheis nupsit Ricardo filio comitis Gileberti. Qui Gilebertus fuerat filius Godefridi comitis Augensis, naturalis scilicet filii primi Ricardi ducis Normannorum. Hic Gilebertus habuit duos filios, prædictum Ricardum et Baldewinum; Baldewinus genuit tres filios, Robertum, Ricardum, et Willelmum, et totidem

Sisters and other kinsfolk of the countess Gunnor.

[1] The compiler now follows the 8th book or continuation of the History of William of Jumieges, the Vita regis Henrici, which is probably the work of Robert de Monte.

filias. Ricardus frater Baldewini genuit ex Roheis quatuor filios, Gilebertum, Rogerium, Walterium, Robertum; et tres filias, quarum una copulata est Radulfo de Felgeriis; natique sunt ex ea Framualus, Henricus et Robertus Giffardus. Gilebertus autem illam terram quam pater ejus habuerat in Angliam post ipsum adeptus est. Rogerus frater ejus de Normannia terram optinuit. Hic Gilebertus ex filia comitis de Claro Monte habuit tres filios, Ricardum, Gilebertum et Walterium, et unam filiam nomine Roheis.

Item Supplementa.

Descendants of Waltheof earl of Huntingdon.

Guallerius comes Huntedoniæ habuit tres filias ex uxore sua filia comitissæ de Albamara, quæ comitissa fuit soror uterina Willelmi regis Anglorum primi. Primogenitam earum accepit Symon Silvanectensis; aliam Radulfus de Thoeneio, scilicet Judith; tertiam Robertus filius Ricardi. Cont. W. Gemmet. viii. 37.

The kinsmen of Gunnor.

Habuit etiam Gunnor comitissa ex fratre suo Arfasto nepotem Osbertum patrem scilicet Willelmi comitis Herefordiæ. Habuit eadem Gunnor neptes quinque; una nupsit Willelmo de Warenno, et altera Nicholao de Bascrevilla, ex qua Willelmus Martel. Tertia Ricardo vicecomiti Rothomagensi, patri scilicet Lamberti de Sancto Sydonio. Quarta Osmundo Centumvillis, vicecomiti Vernoniæ, ex qua natus est Fulco de Alneio; quinta Hugoni de Monte Gumerii, ex qua natus est Rogerus pater Roberti de Belesme.

Item Supplementa.

The earls of Warwick.

Rogerus filius Henrici comitis fratris comitis Roberti Medenti, natus ex Margareta sorore Rotroci comitis de Pertico; genuit autem ex ea Henricum et plures alios et duas filias. Prædictus denique Rogerus successit patri in comitatum Warwic. Quidam vero fratrum suorum natus post ipsum, scilicet Robertus de Novoburgo, habuit terram quam pater eorum habuerat in Normannia. Ib. viii. 41.

Item Supplementa.

Family of Robert Wiscard.

Robertus Wiscardus reliquit uxorem de qua genuit Boamundum, et postmodum duxit filiam Gaumarii principis Salernitani, nomine Sichelgeitam, ex qua genuit filios tres et filias quinque, quarum una nupsit imperatori Constantinopolim. Boamundus filius Wiscardi ex Constantia filia Philippi regis Francorum genuit Boamundum. Boamundus filius Boamundi W. Gemmet. vii. 42.

genuit filiam quam Raimundus filius Willelmi comitis Pictavensis, patruus Alienor reginæ tam Francorum quam Anglorum, duxit uxorem. Roberto Wiscardo mortuo successit ei filius suus de Sichelgaita secunda conjuge sua Rogerius cognomento Bursa. Quo mortuo successit Rogero Bursæ Rogerus patruelis ipsius, filius Rogerii comitis Siciliæ fratris Roberti Wiscardi. Qui Rogerus postmodum rex creatus est; de quo scriptum est

" Apulus et Calaber, Siculus michi servit et Affer."

Item Supplementa.

W. Gemmet. vii. 30.

The Normans in Apulia.

[1] Primus in Apulia Normannis præfuit Turstinus cognomento Citellus: postmodum Rannulphus et Ricardus. Postmodum Drogo Constantiniensis, filius Tancredi de Alta Villa, princeps fuit; quem Narzo Neapolitanus comes trucidavit. Porro Humfridus frater ejus ei successit. Qui Humfridus Abailardum filium suum Roberto Wiscardo fratri suo cum ducatu Apuliæ commendavit.

Comites Andegavorum.[2]

History of the counts of Anjou.

Ingelgerius. Aelendis virgo, neptis Adelardi Turonensis archiepiscopi, cum allodiis, Ambaziaco, Buzenciaco, Castellione, copulata fuit Ingelgerio.[3]

Fulco Rufus duxit uxorem Rotillam Garnerii filiam, cum tribus castellis, scilicet Lochis, Villentras et Lahaie.[4]

Story of Fulk the good.

Fulco Bonus[5] comes Andegavensium in ecclesia Sancti Martini canonicus asscriptus fuit in Castello Novo. Qui quodam tempore, cum ecclesiam Beati Martini Turonensis procul aspiceret, sicut semper solitus fuerat, equo desiliit, ac flexis genibus toto corpore prostratus in terra, diutius oravit. Cum surgeret ab oratione vidit a dextris hominem aspectu horribilem, leprosa impetigine miserabiliter occupatum, et manum mittens ad loculum misericordiam leproso volebat impendere. Cui leprosus ait, " Non domine mi, non indigeo modo hujusmodi " indulgentia; sed quia pedibus lepra corrosis nec ipse ire nec

---

[1] An abridgment from William of Jumieges, lib. vii., c. 30.

[2] This section occurs in MS. Faustina A. 8, at fo. 80 v°. It is a selection from the Gesta consulum Andegavensium as extracted in the Abbreviationes, vol. i. above.

[3] *Ingelgerius . . . . Ingelgerio*] Above, vol. i., p. 139.

[4] *Fulco . . . . Lahaie*] Above, vol. i. p. 143.

[5] *Fulco Bonus*] Above, vol. i., pp. 148, 149.

Counts of Anjou.

" ab alio deferri ad ecclesiam confessoris præ nimia infirmitate " possum, necessitas mihi ac voluntas esset, quatinus tu ipse " me deferres; forsitan ibi invenirem aliquem Dei hominem qui " pro redemptione peccaminum in conventu leprosorum neces- " saria mihi administrari juberet." Quo audito comes proprio mantello diligenter leprosum ac devote involvit, ac, ceteris partim illudentibus partim stupentibus, propriis humeris pium pondus fere per duas leugas deferens ad ecclesiam beati Martini devenit. Quo peracto forma leprosi tam a pondere deferentis quam ab oculis intuentis evanuit. Cumque comes sequenti nocte in clericali habitu in choro beati Martini juxta decanum resideret, divinitus obdormivit. Interea quidam vir reverendus habitu, prætextus stola candida, habens in comitatu leprosum, dixit "Ego sum Martinus dominus tuus! iste leprosus " est Christus, Quem tu sæpius in membris Suis pie fovisti, " sed hodie in Sua persona et capite humeris portans hono- " rasti." Dum rediret Andegaviam, sicut dicitur, apparuit ei angelus dicens successores suos ad nonam usque generationem dominationis suæ fines semper in immensum extendere. Quod quondam probavit regnum Jerosolimitanum; quod adhuc ostendit regnum Anglorum, quod suo tempore declarabit Romanum imperium.[1]

Terminus Andegavensium comitum.

Galfridus Grisa-tunica comes Andegavensium a Roberto rege Francorum in præliis signifer, in coronatione regum dapifer constituitur.[2]

Mauricius duxit uxorem filiam Americi consulis Sanctonici.[3]

Fulco Nerra.

Galfridus Martellus ædificavit cœnobium Sanctæ Trinitatis apud Windocinum; uxor ejus ibidem Sancti Georgii construxit ecclesiam.[4]

Fulco Rechin.

History of Fulk king of Jerusalem.

Fulco comes[5] Andegavorum affinitate conjunctus est Heliæ comiti Cenomanensium, Sibillam filiam ejus unicam et here-

[1] *Quod . . . imperium*] This is a curious addition to the account given above, vol. i., p. 149, and looks like an anticipation of the election of Otho IV. to the empire, which took place in 1198. As bishop Longchamp died in 1197, before which date we must suppose the MS. R. to have been written, it can scarcely be a prophecy after the event.

[2] *Galfridus . . . . constituitur*] Vol. i., p. 154.

[3] *Mauricius. . . . . Sanctonici*] Vol. i., p. 259.

[4] *Galfridus . . . ecclesiam*] Vol. i., p. 185.

[5] *Fulco comes, etc.*] Above, vol. ii., pp. 15–18. This section is given in much shorter form in MS. F., which finishes with a list of the kings of Jerusalem.

dem ducens uxorem. Ex qua genuit Galfridum Plantegenest, tam patris quam avi materni legitimum successorem. In matrimonio comitis Sibilla defuncta, ne quid ipsi Fulconi deesset ad gloriam, cum nominis sui fama latius per orbem clarescceret, a regni Jerosolimitani principibus unanimiter evocatus, in solio David magni regis collocatus est, Millesendem Baldewini secundi filiam unicam et heredem uxorem accipiens; ex qua duos genuit filios, post patrem ordine successorio reges in Jerusalem, Baldewinum et Amalricum. Galfridus Plantegenest, magnanimitate patris sui Fulconis et industria roboratus, adeo paternis successibus incitatus est, ut et ipse de semine regio comparem affectaret sibi fœdere nuptiali jungendam. Matildem itaque regis Anglorum Henrici primi filiam unicam et heredem accepit uxorem. Quæ cum prius Henrico nupsisset imperatori, terque cum ipso pariter in consortium imperatoriæ majestatis Romæ coronata fuisset, licet ex eo prolem aliquam non sustulerit, nichilominus tamen post mortem imperatoris de mariti prærogativa semper enituit, quoad vixit, sibi nomen retinens imperatricis. Igitur ex imperatrice Galfridus comes procreavit Henricum secundum. Qui cum ætatis annum ageret xv. cingulo militari donatus est ab avunculo matris suæ David rege Scottorum apud Karluil in festo Pentecostes. Ætatis anno xvii° ducatum adeptus est Normanniæ, quam pater suus, viribus Andegavorum accinctus, de manibus Stephani regis Anglorum potenter extorserat. Galfridus comes, in ætate virili feliciter undequaque triumphans, lectum incidit ægritudinis, inque solo materno sibi locum eligens sepulturæ, dum apud castrum Lidii diem clausisset extremum, sepultus est Cenomannis in ecclesia Sancti Juliani. Mortuo Galfrido filius ejus Henricus ætatis annum inchoans xix. Willelmi comitis Pictavensium primogenitam Alienor, alienatam a thoro Ludovici regis Francorum, et sub examine Sampsonis Remorum archiepiscopi propter cognationem disjunctam, sibi thori participem sociavit, cum ea simul Aquitannici ducatus optinens principatum. Postmodum Henricus secundus a nativitate sua xxii^{obus} annis fere decursis, post mortem Stephani regis in regem Anglorum consecratus est. Et ut titulos plures ab antecessoribus emanantes sub una clausula sub unius persona complectamur paucissimis, Henricus rex Anglorum, dux Normannorum et Aquitannorum, et comes Andegavorum, avo materno tam in sobole procreanda quam in sobole numerosa multo felicior, ex legitimo matrimonio sex filios sustulit et tres filias, fecunditatem matris Alienor alienis etiam generationibus prædicabilem offerentes. Ex filiis autem duobus in pueritia sublatis de medio, quatuor et superstites et incolomes

Counts of Anjou.

Geoffrey and Matilda.

Henry II. and Eleanor.

Their six children.

Counts of Anjou.

The sons.

in spem magnam virium exercendarum succrescunt; et in hostibus prosternendis et mores antecessorum et actus imitari non cessant, et in nationibus diversis per orbem, quæ juxta dispositionem paternam suo regimini deputantur, cum moderatione justitiæ virgam directionis assumere strenuis repromittunt operibus. Henricus horum quatuor primogenitus in regem Angliæ consecratus est: Ricardus comes Pictavensis est assignatus a patre. Galfridus totius Britanniæ nactus est principatum. Johannes de promissione patris et provisione securus diversas Hiberniæ portiones, si desuper ei datum fuerit, in monarchiam reducet. Filiæ vero tres regis ut diximus et

The daughters.

Alienor, alienationem a nativo solo forsitan eo sustinent æquanimius, quod de semine regio procreatæ nupserint regiæ stirpis viris illustribus. Quorum nomina licet subticeam, populos quibus præsunt præterire non convenit. Hinc etenim Saxones, hinc Hispanos, hinc Siculos debita cohercione refrænant. Inter hos itaque populos, victu, vestitu, moribus, habitatione tam remotos ab Anglia, filias regis Angliæ commorantes, barbaries saxea, dubius Hispanorum cum Agarenis conflictus, tirannis effera Sicculorum, poterant in continuum horrorem inducere, nisi generositas aviæ suæ Matildis imperatricis et in ejus fœmineo corpore virile pectus, neptibus suis tolerantiæ semitas et apertas patientiæ vias imitabiles præmonstrassent. Sed ut sexus infirmior in aliquo firmius relevaret filias Alienor, alienum aerem sub annis tenerrimis imbiberunt, ibidem enutritæ salubrius diversitatem quoque facilius alienarum sunt edoctæ linguarum.

Family of Henry II.

VI. [De Synodis.][1]

Universal and general synods.

Antiquis temporibus fuerunt in ecclesia Dei scismatum consultationes de quibus est expeditum superius. Fuerunt et persecutiones ecclesiæ. Fuerunt et conciliorum statuta de quibus restat agendum.[2] Est itaque synodus universalis in qua Græci conveniunt et Latini; sinodus iterum est generalis in qua Latini tantum conveniunt, præsidente Romano pontifice.

Tempore Dioclitiani fuit in ecclesia Dei persecutio violenta, cum ad sacrificandum ydolis Christiani compellebantur. Fuit in diebus imperatoris Constantini primi persecutio fraudulenta per Arrium hæresiarcham, et ob hoc apud Niceam urbem Bithiniæ synodus congregatur. Præsens fuit Julius papa. Præ-

Council of Nicea.

---

[1] MS. A., fo. 153; MS. Faustina A. 8, fo. 82; MS. Tiberius A. 9, fo. 19.

[2] *Antiquis . . . agendum*] om. A.

sens fuit et Constantinus imperator primus. Præsentes fuerunt episcopi trescenti decem et octo. Cum autem Constantinus a singulis qui causas habebant suscepisset libellos, ait ad episcopos, "Deus vos constituit sacerdotes, vos non potestis ab "hominibus judicari:" querimoniarum vero libellos jussit exuri.[1] List of synods.

Anno Incarnati Verbi cccxxi.

Anno Incarnati Verbi ccc°lxxx°vi°. Sinodus universalis cl. episcoporum Constantinopolis congregatur, jubente Theodosio imperatore primo et annitente Damaso papa primo, contra Macedonium.

Anno Incarn. ccccxxiii. Synodus universalis ccc^{orum} episcoporum tempore Celestini papæ primi, jussu Theodosii imperatoris secundi, contra Nestorium, congregata est apud Ephesum.

Ann. Incar. ccccxxxiiii. Synodus lvi. episcoporum congregata est Romæ, tempore Archadii et Honorii, in qua Sixtus papa synodico judicio se purgavit.

Ann. Incar. cccc°l°ii°. Synodus universalis septingentorum xxx. episcoporum, vel patrum,[2] apud Calcedonem congregata est instantia Leonis papæ primi, jubente Martiano imperatore primo, contra Euticen.

Ann. Incar. cccc°xc°vi°. Synodus generalis cxv. episcoporum Romæ congregata est, tempore Theodorici imperatoris, contra Symacum papam, in qua Simacus papa synodico judicio purgavit se.

Ann. Incar. d°l°i°. Synodus universalis Constantinopolis celebratur, tempore Vigilii papæ, jubente Justiniano imperatore primo, contra Theodorum.

Ann. Incar. d°xc°v°. Synodus lxii^{orum} episcoporum congregata est apud Toletum, jussu Gregorii papæ primi, tempore Mauricii imperatoris et Ricaredi regis Wisigothorum, contra Arrianos.

Ann. Incar. dcvii. Synodus lxii^{orum} episcoporum habita est Romæ jussu Bonefacii papæ tertii, tempore Focæ imperatoris, contra electores episcoporum vivente episcopo.

---

[1] *Tempore . . . exuri*] om. A., which reads, "Synodus cccxviii. "episcoporum apud Niceam urbem "congregata est tempore Julii papæ, "residente Constantino imperatore "primo, contra Arrium."

[2] *vel patrum*] om. A.

List of synods.

Ann. Incar. DC°L°III°.	Synodus CV. episcoporum habita est Romæ jussu Martini papæ, tempore Constantini imperatoris, contra Sergium et Paulum hæreticos.
Ann. Incar. DCLXXXI.	Synodus universalis CCLXXX. episcoporum Constantinopolis congregata est tempore Agathonis papæ, et tempore Constantini imperatoris IIII^ti^, contra Macharium et Georgium patriarcham.
Ann. Incar. Verbi DCLXXXII.	Agatho papa contra Monocheritas Romæ synodum celebravit C. et XXV. episcoporum, in qua Wlfridus Eboracensis archiepiscopus absolutus est,
Anno Incarnati Verbi DC°XC°VIII°.	Synodus Aquileiæ celebratur, tempore Sergii papæ et tempore Justiniani imperatoris secundi, contra quintam synodum universalem.
Anno Incarn. DCCL.	Synodus universalis CCCXXX. episcoporum habita est Constantinopolis tempore Stephani papæ secundi, et tempore Constantini imperatoris V^ti^, contra ymagines Dei et sanctorum.
Anno Incarnati Verbi DCC°LXVI°.	Synodus generalis habita est in præsentia Pipini regis Francorum, inter Græcos et Romanos, de sanctorum ymaginibus, præsidente Paulo papa, tempore Constantini imperatoris V^ti^.
Anno Incarnati Verbi DCC°LX°VIII°.	Synodus generalis habita est Romæ, contra ordinatos a Constantino scismatico, præsidente Stephano papa tertio, tempore Constantini imperatoris quinti.
Anno Incarnati Verbi DCC°LXX°III°.	Synodus quinquaginta trium episcoporum habita est Romæ, præsidente Adriano papa primo, pro Karolo magno.[1]
DCCLXXXVIII.	Synodus universalis CCCL. episcoporum secundo fuit apud Niceam urbem, tempore Adriani papæ, pro imaginibus, et tempore Constantini quinti imperatoris.
Anno Incarnati Verbi DCCCCIII.	Synodus septuaginta quatuor episcoporum Ravennæ celebratur ad confirmandam Formosi papæ ordinationem, præsidente Johanne papa IX., tempore Ludovici imperatoris secundi.

[1] *magno*] om. A.

List of synods.

Anno Incarnati Verbi DCCCCLXIII. Synodus Romæ celebratur contra Johannem papam XII., tempore Ottonis imperatoris I.; eodem anno synodus habita est Romæ contra Leonem ut dicunt, scismaticum, præsidente Johanne papa XII., tempore Ottonis imperatoris I.

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°XL°IX°. Synodus apud Vicceliacum celebratur, præsidente Leone papa IX°., tempore Henrici imperatoris secundi, in qua Wlf Lincolniensis episcopus interfuit.[1]

Eodem anno synodus Remis celebratur ubi Alwinus abbas Ramesiensis et abbas Sancti Augustini interfuerunt.[2]

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°LXX°IIII. Synodus generalis habita est Romæ contra uxoratos sacerdotes, præsidente Gregorio papa septimo, tempore Henrici imperatoris secundi.

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°LXX°V°. Synodus celebratus est apud Clarummontem, præsidente Urbano papa II°., tempore Henrici imperatoris qui captus est a filio, in qua synodo Philippus rex Francorum excommunicatus est.

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°XC°IX°. Synodus habita est generalis apud Barrum contra Græcos, præsidente Urbano papa II°., tempore Henrici imperatoris, ubi Anselmus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus disputavit et obtinuit.

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°C°. Synodus generalis habita est Romæ, contra laicos investituras ecclesiarum dantes, præsidente Urbano papa secundo, tempore Henrici imperatoris.

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°C°XX°III°. Synodus generalis habita est Remis, præsidente Kalixto papa secundo, tempore Henrici qui cepit patrem suum Henricum imperatorem.[3]

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°C°XXX°I°. Synodus generalis habita est Remis, præsidente Innocentio papa secundo, tempore Lotharii qui dicebatur imperator, contra interfectores clericorum; causa i. q. iiii. c. quia præsulatus.[4]

---

[1] Above, vol. i., p. 188.

[2] Above, vol. i., p. 188.

[3] *suum . . . imperatorem*] contra scismaticos, A.

[4] Decr. II. caus. i. qu. iv. c. 5.

List of synods.

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°C°XXX°VIII°. Synodus generalis habita est Romæ, præsidente Innocentio papa secundo, tempore Conradi qui dicebatur imperator; ubi præsens fuit Theobaldus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis.

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°C°XXX°IX°. Synodus generalis congregata est Pisis, præsidente Innocentio papa secundo, tempore Conradi qui dicebatur imperator,[1] contra scismaticos, in qua Viennensis archiepiscopus degradatus est causa incontinentiæ.

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°C°XL°VII. Synodus generalis congregata est Remis, præsidente Eugenio papa tertio, tempore Conradi qui dicebatur imperator, in qua præsens fuit Theobaldus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Henricus Murdac Eboracensis archiepiscopus, et de sede eorum[2] habita est controversia, sed non est diffinita.

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°C°LX°III°. Synodus congregata est Turonis, præsidente Alexandro papa III°, tempore Frederici imperatoris, contra scismaticos. In ea synodo Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus sedit ad dexteram, Rogerus Eboracensis ad sinistram.

Anno Incarnati Verbi M°C°LXX°IX°. Synodus cccx. episcoporum Romæ congregata est, tempore Alexandri papæ tertii et Frederici imperatoris.[3]

---

[1] *qui . . . imperator*] supradicti, A.

[2] *eorum*] in concilio, ins. A.

[3] A. adds in the margin, "ubi "actum est de electione Romani "pontificis."

[1] *Decursis per ordinem vi. capitulis,*[2] *quæ prima facies hujus libelluli tibi poterit signanter ostendere, Flandrensium comitum sola nomina retexamus, quoniam egregie facta, vel civiliter dicta, si qua tamen præcesserint, ad nostram non pervenerunt notitiam.*

Comites Flandrenses.

List of the counts of Flanders.

Hildericus.
Ingelramus.
Audacer.

Baldewinus ferreus duxit Judith filiam Karoli Calvi.

Baldewinus Calvus duxit Ælfrudem filiam Aluredi regis Anglorum, de qua genuit Arnulfum et Aldulfum. Aldulfus autem factus est comes Bononiensis.

Arnulfus magnus duxit Adthelam filiam Hereberti comitis Viromandorum.

Baldewinus juvenis duxit Matildem filiam Heremanni ducis Saxonum.

Arnulfus duxit Ruzelam, quæ et Susannam, filiam Berengarii regis Longobardorum.

Baldewinus barbatus duxit Ælgivam filiam Gileberti comitis.

Baldewinus Insulanus duxit Adelam filiam Roberti regis Francorum.

Robertus Frisio duxit Getrudem viduam Florentii Frisionis.

Robertus Jerosolimitanus duxit Clementiam filiam Willelmi comitis Burgundionum; occisus in torneamento.

Baldewinus occisus in Normannia.

Karolus occisus in ecclesia.

Willelmus occisus in bello.

Theodoricus duxit Sibillam filiam Fulconis comitis Andegavensium et post regis Jerosolimorum.

Philippus duxit Isabellam filiam Radulfi comitis Viromandorum, qua defuncta duxit Beatricem filiam Edelfonsi regis Portugalensis.

---

[1] MS. Faustina A. 8, fo. 82; MS. Tib. A. 9, fo. 20. MS. A. fo. 154, gives only the names of the counts.

[2] The "sex capitula" here referred to would seem to be the foregoing sections: i., De prælatis ecclesiarum; ii., De Cæsaribus; iii., De regibus Francorum; iv., De diversis regnis; v., De regibus Britonum, etc.; and, vi., De synodis. But the order not being the same in the several MSS., it is not quite clear.

The Normans in Sicily and Apulia.

[1] Tempore Rollonis quidam a Normannia recedentes Apuliam adierunt. Rursus tempore regis Willelmi I. quidam alii Normanni Normanniam, relinquentes, Apuliam, Calabriam, Siciliam, Affricam subjugaverunt, sicut testatur monosticum illud Rogeri regis, "Appulus et Calaber, Siculus mihi servit et "Affer."

PRINCIPES NORMANNORUM IN APULIA ET SICILIA.

Turstinus.	Rogerus.
Rannulfus.	Rogerus primus rex.
Ricardus.	Willelmus rex.
Jordanes.	Willelmus rex.
Ricardus.	Tancredus rex.
Droco.	Rogerus.
Hunfridus.	Willelmus rex.
Robertus Wiscart.	

[2] EPITAPHIUM ANATOCLIS REGIS SICILIÆ.[3]

Epitaph of Agathocles.

Fictilibus cœnasse ferunt Anatoclea regem,
Atque abacum Samio sæpe onerasse luto.
Quærenti causam respondit, "Rex ego cum sim,
"Siciliæ figulo sum genitore satus.
"Fortunam reverenter habe, quicunque repente
"Pauper ab exili progrediere loco."

[4] EPITAPHIUM ROBERTI WISCARDI.

Epitaph of Robert Wiscard.

Per mare, trans mare, cis mare, victrix dextra putrescit,
Henrici terror, Venetum mors, victor Alexis.
Hic terror mundi Guiscardus hic expulit urbe
Quem Ligures regem, Roma, Lemannus, habet.
Parthus, Arabs, Macedumve falanx non texit Alexim,
At fuga, sed Venetum nec fuga nec pelagus.

---

[1] See above, p. 268.

[2] MS. Faustina A. 8, fo. 84; MS. Tib. A. 9, fo. 21.

[3] This is the epitaph or epigram of Ausonius on Agathocles, somewhat altered; the original stands thus:

"Fama est fictilibus cœnasse Agathoclea regem,
"Atque abacum Samio sæpe onerasse luto.
"Fercula gemmatis cum poneret horrida vasis,
"Et misecret opes pauperiemque simul.
"Quærenti, &c.," as above.

[4] William of Malmesbury, Gesta Regum, iii., § 262, gives the last four lines of this epitaph.

[1] *Regibus Francorum et Anglorum in campo dimicantibus, cui victoria cesserit audies in sequentibus.*

Annus ab Incarnatione Domini millesimus centesimus nonus decimus tunc temporis effluebat, quando Ludovicus grossus rex Francorum hominagium recepit a Willelmo Longaspata de ducatu Normanniæ, quem suus pater Robertus Curtahosa multis annis possederat hereditario jure. Quod audiens rex Anglorum Henricus respondit prædictum quidem Robertum fratrem suum esse primogenitum, sed ipsum tanquam fidei transgressorem, tanquam multorum violatorem sacramentorum, in prælio jure belli captum, tenebat in vinculis. Quare firmiter asserebat ad filium ejus nulla ratione spectare Normanniam. Accessit et aliud in illis diebus quod Baldewinus comes Flandrensis, mandato regis Francorum Willelmo veniens in auxilium, apud castellum Ou, quod obsidione vallaverat, interfectus est. Rex itaque Francorum videns negotium pro quo venerat in Normanniam dilationem non capere, viribus undique congregatis, nuncios suos Anglorum regi direxit, mandans quod si de jure suo confideret, certa die, certo loco, quid super eorum causa disposuerat Dominus Deus experirentur. Igitur de condicto communi congressuri duo reges conveniunt. Præposuit quidem rex Francorum aciem procerum cui præerat Willelmus Normanniæ dux: ipse vero rex erat in agmine sequenti. Rex vero Henricus ex adverso proceres suos in acie prima constituit. In acie secunda cum propria familia residebat et præsidebat. In acie tertia filios suos cum summis viribus pedites collocaverat. Acies prima Francorum primum agmen procerum Normanniæ statim equis depulit et dispersit. Postmodum aciei qua rex Henricus inerat collidens et ipsa protenus est dispersa. Regales ad invicem acies hinc et hinc acerrime pugnaverunt. Interim Willelmus Crispinus miles magnanimus regis Henrici caput bis gladio percussit. Cum autem impenetrabilis esset lorica, magnitudine tamen ictuum aliquantulum est inserta capiti regis ut sanguis prorumperet. Rex animi fervore commotus percussorem suum ita repercussit ut ictus mole subita tam equitem quam equum prosterneret. Qui mox ante regios pedes captus est a Rogero filio Ricardi de Clara. Pedestris acies regis Anglorum mox percussura surrexit ex adverso. Quod Franci videntes ex insperato liquefacti stupore terga dederunt. Rex autem Henricus victor præstitit in campo. Gesta sunt hæc prope villam quæ dicitur Estrepini.

A.D. 1119. Dispute between Henry I. and Lewis VI. as to the rights of William, son of duke Robert, to Normandy.

Arrangement of the two armies.

Battle at Estrepini.

[1] See above, vol. i., pp. 241, 242.

De Karolo Simplice.[1]

History of Charles the Simple.

Karoli simplicis ætatem Franciæ primores incongruam dominatui reputantes, Odonem filium Roberti comitis regni gubernatorem elegerunt. Quem unxit in regem Walterus Senonum archiepiscopus. Odone mortuo Robertus frater Odonis a quibusdam episcopis partim blanditiis, partim minis, coronatus est. Factum est itaque bellum civitate Suessionis inter Karolum Simplicem et Robertum factum regem. Ubi Robertus a Karoli ducibus interfectus est. Herebertus Vermandensis comes Karolum Simplicem revertentem a cæde reclusit in carcerem apud Peronam. Habebat autem Robertus sororem hujus Hereberti conjugem, de qua natus est Hugo Magnus. Karolus Simplex in custodia positus Radulfum filium Ricardi ducis Burgundiæ, quem de sacro fonte susceperat, pro se regnare præcepit. Unctus in regem Radulfus civitate Suessionis. Karolus in custodia defunctus est cum viginti septem annis regnasset.

---

[1] MS. T. fo. 100; MS. F. fo. 18 v°.: om. R.

Series causæ inter Henricum regem et Thomam archiepiscopum.[1]

[2] Viris religiosis commorantibus Senonis apud Sanctam Columbam divino mancipatis obsequio, Radulfus de Diceto decanus Londoniæ cum libello sequenti æternam salutem. Summary of the history of Thomas Becket.

Omissis omnibus quæ vel in juventute, vel in archidiaconatu, vel in præpositura, vel in officio cancellariæ, Thomas egerit, de quo scribere proposuimus, discordiam inter Henricum regem Anglorum Matildis imperatricis filium et eundem promotum in Cantuariensem archiepiscopum protractam diutius, sub certis capitulis breviter fine laudabili concludamus.

[3] Thomas, creatus archiepiscopus, regis resignavit sigillum. Abstract of the following sections

Archiepiscopus ad postulationem regis distulit archidiaconatum Cantuariensem transferre.

Clarenbaldus sine professione quærebat benedictionem accipere, regem habens fautorem.

Comes de Clara Rogerus homagium facere noluit archiepiscopo, rege consentiente.

Willelmus de Ros regem, non archiepiscopum, agnovit ut dominum.

Willelmus Einesfordiæ dominus Laurentium expulit ab ecclesia, quem excommunicavit archiepiscopus rege non certiorato.

Nuncii regis consuetudines, quas avitas appellant, a domino papa roborari non impetraverunt.

Ab archiepiscopis et episcopis confirmatæ sunt regni consuetudines.

---

[1] The following short work is found in several MSS. The text is taken from the MS. Cotton, Vespasian A. 22. The collations are with MS. Reg. 13 E. 6, from which it was printed by Twysden (C.), and from the Ripley MS., where it occurs on the inserted folio 10. I have not thought it necessary to reprint the portions of the text which are mere reproductions of passages occurring in the Imagines Historiarum. They are given in full in the Vespasian and Ripley MSS., but in the Royal MS. are denoted by references, as in this edition.

[2] *Viris . . salutem*] om. C.R.

[3] The following short paragraphs are omitted in MS. R.

Summary of the history of Thomas Becket.

Abstract of the following sections.

Philippus de Broc canonicus Bedefordiæ propter maleficium est expulsus a regno.

Johannes Mareschaldus, archiepiscopo pro manerio quodam adversarius, instructus est in curia regis.

Archiepiscopus adversus episcopos appellavit, et ab eis appellatus est.

Archiepiscopus, tractus in causam ante legatos Willelmum Papiensem et Johannem Neapolitanum, ablatorum petiit restitutionem, sed non impetravit.

Rex archiepiscopo dare signum pacis in osculo penitus abnegavit et abjuravit.

Archiepiscopus, post pacem factam in Angliam rediens, plures armatos occurrentes invenit.

Quæ circa personam archiepiscopi die Martis quater evenerint, invenietur.

Willelmus Senonensis archiepiscopus domino papæ litteras direxit.

Ab episcopis concurrentibus ecclesia Cantuariensis reconciliata fuit.

Thomas archiepiscopus canonizatus est a domino papa Alexandro.

Quotiens inter enumerandos interius[1] *Cantuarienses archiepiscopos tibi Thomas martyr gloriosus*[2] *inter legendum occurrerit, totiens ejus vitam laudabilem, actus eximios, exilium, passionem, in morte constantiam, et post transitum ab hac luce cœlestem ad patriam crebra miraculorum insignia sub silentio non prætereas.*

Clero totius provinciæ . . . non obtinuit.[3] (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 306, 307.)

I.

Nunciis . . . imperatoris, qui dicitur Prothonotarius.[4] (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 307, 308.)

Thomas . . . ostendit.[5] (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 308.)

---

[1] *enumerandos interius*] om. C.; enumeratos superius, R.

[2] *martyr gloriosus*] prothomartyr in Anglia Normannorum temporibus, C.

[3] *Clero . . obtinuit*] This section agrees in MS. C. with the passage referred to in the Imagines. MS. R. describes Thomas as "Cantuari- "ensis archidiaconus et regis can- "cellarius, præpositus Beverlaci, "canonicus in diversis per An- "gliam ascriptus ecclesiis"; and all the MSS. add after *Wintoniensi episcopo* "episcopo Lundoniensi "Ricardo secundo rebus humanis "exempto." MS. R. omits "quod "obtinuit."

[4] *Nunciis . . . . Prothonotarius*] See above, vol. i. p. 308, note 2.

[5] *Thomas . . ostendit*] Om. R.

II[a]. Thomas . . . agnovit. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 308.)

Summary of the history of Thomas Becket.

III[a]. Clarembaldus . . . in partem.[1] (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 308.)

Alexander papa capitulo Lundoniensi. Ex litteris karissimi in Christo filii nostri Henrici illustris Anglorum, etc. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 309.)

Alexander papa concilium congregavit Turonis in ecclesia Sancti Mauricii xii. kalendas Junii; ad cujus vocationem, etc. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 310.)

IIII[a]. Comes de Clara . . . archiepiscopum. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 311.)

V[ta]. Inquisitio generalis est facta per Angliam, cui quis in servitio seculari de jure teneretur obnoxius, etc. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 311.)

VI[a]. Thomas . . . archiepiscopum.[2] (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 311, not. 10.)

VII[a]. Rex Angliæ . . . potuerunt. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 312.)

Ab archiepiscopis et episcopis confirmatæ sunt regni consuetudines.

VIII[a]. Ex mandato . . . impetravit. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 312.)[3]

IX[a]. Rex Anglorum . . . biennium. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 313.)

X[a]. Thomas . . . incurrit. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 313.)

XI[a]. Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus tractus in causam . . . taxatione. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 313.)

---

[1] Here MS. R. adds, "Thomas "autem Cantuariensis archiepisco- "pus cum suffraganeis suis "sedit ad dexteram in con- "cilio Turonis habito, cum Dunel- "mensis, quem unicum habet suf- "fraganeum Eboracensis archiepi- "scopus, sedere jussus est ad "sinistram."

[2] *Thomas . . . . archiepiscopum*] The MSS. here correspond with the text of MS. B., as given in the note referred to above. The writer of B. apparently preferred the shorter form of the article as he found it in the *Series*.

[3] Here MS. C. adds, "Philippus "de Broc propter maleficium ex- "pulsus est ab Anglia."

Archiepiscopus appellavit et appellatus est.

Summary of the history of Thomas Becket.

Thomas Cantuariensis . . . . Flandriam. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 313, 314.) XII[a]

Nuncii a rege directi . . . parentaret. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 314, 315.)

Datum est . . . repertor. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 315–317.)

Thomas Cantuariensis . . . mandato. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 318, 319.)

Ricardo Pictavensi archidiacono quærenti consilium ab amico, Radulfo scilicet de Diceto, sic rescriptum est inter cætera. "Si tactus inconsulto calore Thomas Cantuariensis archiepi-
"scopus . . . coronam." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 319, 320.)

Regi Anglorum Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus. "De-
"siderio desideravi . . . sentietis." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 320, 321.)

Thomæ Cantuariensi archiepiscopo venerabili patri et domino, suffraganei . . . pater. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 321–323.)

Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus G. Lundoniensi episcopo, "quod semel hoc iterum . . . in cœlis." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 323–325.)

Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus suffraganeis suis. "Fra-
"ternitatis . . . tamen hoc ideo dicimus." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 328.)

Alexander papa Thomæ . . . constat. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 330.)

Willelmus Papiensis . . . curiam. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 329. XIII[a].

MCLXVI. Ludovicus rex Francorum . . . iiii. annos. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 329.)

Alexander papa regi Anglorum. "Quam paterne et benigne
"regiam sæpius excellentiam convenerimus . . ." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 332, 333.)

Gillebertus Lundoniensis . . . excommunicavit. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 333.)

"Thomas Dei gratia Cantuariensis archiepiscopus et aposto-
"licæ sedis legatus G. Lundoniensi episcopo, utinam vero
"fratri, declinare a malo et facere bonum. Excessus vestros
"dum licuit supportavimus . . . . computavimus." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 333.)

MCLXIX. "Thomas Dei gratia Cantuariensis archiepiscopus,
"et apostolicæ sedis legatus, decano, archidiacono et clero
"Lundoniensis ecclesiæ, salutem et a communione excommuni-

" catorum fideliter abstinere. Vestram non debet latere . . " . . abstinentis." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 334.)

Summary of the history of Thomas Becket.

Lundoniensis episcopus . . . ab ingressu ecclesiæ. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 334.)

Alexander papa regi Angliæ. " Serenitatem tuam per aposto- " lica scripta rogamus, monemus et exhortamur in Domino, " necnon in remissionem tibi peccatorum . . . recipias." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 334, 335.)

Inter Anglorum regem et archiepiscopum paci reformandæ multi multam multotiens operam impenderunt. Ad ultimum missos fuisse, etc. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 335.)

In octabis Sancti Martini habitum est colloquium inter regem Francorum et regem Angliæ proxime Parisius. . . . (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 335.)

Duobus articulis plenum non præbuit assensum rex Angliæ. Nec enim nomine restitutionis cum archiepiscopum non expulerit . . . (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 336.)

MCLXX. In nocte Natalis Domini tonitruum in Hybernia, tonitruum in Anglia, tonitruum in omni regno Francorum auditum est generale, subitum et horribile, portendens aliquid magnum, novum et inusitatum. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 350.)

Rex pater rediens in Angliam multis suorum subita maris tempestate perditis, ipse magno divinæ pietatis munere evasit incolumis. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 337.)

" Alexander papa Eboracensi archiepiscopo et universis An- " gliæ episcopis. Illius dignitatis " . . . (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 338.)

Habitum est colloquium apud Muntmirail . . . (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 338.)

Item apud Fractam vallem . . . archiepiscopi. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 339.)

Item apud Ambazium . . . metropolitano. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 339.)

Henricus rex Angliæ filio suo H. regi Angliæ. Sciatis quod Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus pacem fecit mecum . . . (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 339.)

Archiepiscopus statim ut appulsus est misit Eboracensi archiepiscopo apud Doveram litteras domini papæ hæc verba continentes;

" Alexander papa R. Eboracensi archiepiscopo et H. Dunel- " mensi archiepiscopo. Cum filium suum . . ." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 339, 340.)

Rursus Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus misit litteras domini papæ G. Lundoniensi et Joscelino Salesberiensi episcopis, auram prosperam apud Doveram expectantibus cum Rogero

Summary of the history of Thomas Becket.

Eboracensi archiepiscopo, continentes hæc verba; "Alexander "papa venerabilibus fratribus Lundoniensi, Salesberiensi, Exo- "niensi, Cestrensi, Rofensi, de Sancto Asaph, Landavensi epi- "scopis. Cum karissimus filius noster rex vester Henricus "filium suum coronari voluerit . . . ." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 340, 341.)

Thomas Cantuariensis postquam intravit in Angliam scripsit domino papæ litteras, in quibus inter alia hæc continebantur verba; "Adductus est nobiscum ex mandato domini regis Jo- "hannes decanus Salesberiensis; qui cum videret Reginaldum "de Warenna . . ." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 341, 342.)

Cum Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus tenderet . . . (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 342.)

MCLXXI. Die Natalis Domini Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus sermonem habiturus ad populum, ascendit in pulpitum. Sermone . . . (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 342.)

Quinta die Natalis Domini circiter horam vespertinam, dum archiepiscopus cum clericis suis resideret in thalamo, Willelmus de Traci, Reginaldus filius Ursi, Hugo de Morevill, Ricardus Brito . . . (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 343.)

Thomas Cantuariensis archiepiscopus sedit annis octo, mensibus sex, diebus viginti octo.[1]

Circa Pascha Dominus . . . (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 346, 347.)

Domino papæ Willelmus Senonensis archiepiscopus. "Vestro "apostolatui, pater sancte, data est omnis potestas in cœlo et "in terra . . ." (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 347.)

Rex pater regis navibus undique congregatis intravit Hyberniam xv. kalendas Novembris . . . (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 348.)

Cantuariensis ecclesia post necem gloriosissimi martyris Thomæ continuis diu . . . animam meam. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 349.)

In nocte . . . inusitatum. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 350.)

Ab ingressu . . . penetrare. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 350.)

Tandem die . . . conscendere. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 350.)

MCLXXII. Rotro Rothomagensis archiepiscopus et episcopus Ambianensis in mandatis susceperant a domino papa, quatinus congruo loco et tempore Lundoniensis episcopi purgationem . . . ecclesiam. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. p. 357.)

Postquam rex Angliæ appulsus est in Normanniam . . . juravit et promisit. (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 351, 352.)

---

[1] Here MS. R. ends.

Canonizatio Sancti Thomæ martyris.

Alexander episcopus servus servorum Dei . . . Datum Signiæ, iii^tio Martii.[1] (*Vide supra*, vol. i. pp. 369, 370, ii. 212.)

Summary of the history of Thomas Becket.

Majores regni Francorum quam affectionem habuerint erga beatum Thomam archiepiscopum Cantuariensem dum viveret, eodem canonizato solenniter ostendere decreverunt, Cantuariam venientes, nomine peregrinationis assumpto, stagneas in reditu dependentes a collo secum afferentes ampullas.[2]

MCLXXVIII. Willelmus Remensis archiepiscopus venit in Angliam Sancto Thomæ martyri vota soluturus orationum.

MCLXXIX. Ludovicus rex Francorum orationum vota Sancto Thomæ persolvit, cui per iiii. annos necessaria ministravit Senonis apud Sanctam Columbam, per triduum moram faciens Cantuariæ.

MCXCIV. Johannes Lugdunensis archiepiscopus venit in Angliam, et cum summa devotione, cum summa veneratione vota solvit orationum Sancto Thomæ martyri.

MCLXXII. Post passionem Sancti Thomæ martyris antequam ejus canonizatio pervenisset ad regem, rex intravit Hyberniam, ubi moram aliquamdiu faciens et suam in populos dominationem extendens, non ab Angliæ regno, non a Normannia, non a Minore Britannia, non ab Andegavia, non a Pictavia xx. continuis ebdomadibus audivit rumores, et, quia ventus contrarius plurimum adversabatur audire, non potuit aliqua ratione.

---

[1] See above, vol. ii. p. 212.

[2] *stagneas . . . . ampullas*] om. C. Here the tract in MS. Vespasian A. 22 ends. The three remaining paragraphs are added from MS. C.

FINIS.

GLOSSARY.

GLOSSARY.

ADMIRATUS, ii. 82. An Emir.
AMIRAS, i. 130. An Emir.
ARSACIDA, ii. 104. An assassin.

BERNEKES, i. 15. Barnacle-geese.

CASAMENTUM, i. 139. A fief or benefice.
CENTONIZARE, i. 106. To make literary patchwork.
CERCELLA, ii. 102. A teal.
CNIPULUS, i. 401. A knife.
COMEABILIS, ii. 64. Affable (commeabilis).
COMITIUM, ii. 241. A county.
CORISCUS, ii. 136. An obscure word, used here and by W. Cant., V.S. Thomæ, (ed. Robertson, p. 23), in conjunction with the word *coopertum*, for a scroll, the contents of which are not understood by the person to whom it is tendered for signature; perhaps connected with *corium*. It may, however, be a figurative or proverbial expression.
COTERELLUS, ii. 167. A mercenary soldier; a brigand.

DUPLOMA, ii. 23, 97. Double speed; originally the order requisite for proceeding at express speed.

FOCARIA, i. 249. A concubine.
FODRUM, i. 408. The imperial right of demanding provender for horses, &c. on a march.

GENICIUM, i. 99 (gynecæum). The woman's apartment.
GRISETA, i. 155. Grey.

HASTULA, i. 133. A pole or plank.

IMPETIGO, i. 148. Itch.
INSULARIUS, i. 297. An inhabitant.

LOGIA, i. 14. A stall in the market.

MACOMERIA, ii. 66
MAGUMERIA, ii. 80
} A mosque.
MANZERINA, ii. 12 (cuppa). A mazer cup, of maple wood.
MARABOTINUS, i. 420. A Maravedi.
MARCHIA, i. 355. A frontier.
MARCHIONES, i. 387; ii. 55. Inhabitants of the march.

OROLOGIUM, i. 94. A clock. Apparently used in this place for the market-place, near the church of S. Sophia, in which the Horologium stood; see Du Cange, Const. Chr. lib. i. p. 74.

PILONES, i. 99. Piles.

POLIANDRUM, ii. 81. A cemetery.

PROLETARIUS, i. 354. The father of a family.

RAMNUM, i. 92 Some material used in Mosaic: probably, in the place referred to, the mistranslation of some unknown word.

SAMBUCA, i. 92. Used for some precious stone; probably by a mistranslation.

SUFFLORIUM, i. 92. A furnace.

SUPARUM, ii. 246. A tunic.

INDEX.

INDEX.

A.

Aaron, the high priest, i. 27, 36.
(Haroun Al Raschid), the caliph, i. 130.
Abbeville, Ingelram, count of, ii. 259.
Abbotsbury, abbacy of, vacant, i. 401.
Abdera, Democritus of, i. 37.
Abernethy (Abernetici), submission of the Scots at, i. 207.
Abessan (Ibzan), judge of Israel, i. 36.
Abgarus, of Edessa, i. 57, 59.
Abia, king of Judah, i. 36.
Abiathar, high priest, i. 36.
Abimelech, judge of Israel, i. 36.
(Ahimelech), high priest, i. 36.
Abingdon, monastery of, founded by Cissa, ii. 211.
Sperhafoc, abbot of, i. 188, 189.
abbacy vacant, i. 401.
Abishua, high priest, i. 36.
Abraham, i. 18, 35.
Absalom, i. 356.
Achaia, i. 7.
Acheman, city of (Bath), i. 151; ii. 236.
Achialon (Elon), judge of Israel, i. 36.
Acre, besieged by the Saracens, ii. 50; besieged by the Christians in 1189, 70; siege of, 70, 79, 80; cemetery at, 80, 81; defenders of, 81; letter of Hubert Walter from, 88; arrival of Philip at, 92; and of Richard, 94; taken, *ib.*; repaired, 95; secured to the Christians, 105; Richard embarks at, 106.
Adalard, archbishop of Tours, i. 139; ii. 267.
Adalia (Jublains) in France, i. 8.
Adam, i. 35; ii. 180.
Adela, daughter of William the Conqueror, i. 174, 198, ii. 239; wife of Count Stephen of Blois, and mother of King Stephen, i. 247.
Adela, of Champagne, wife of Lewis VII., i. 303, 438; ii. 6.
daughter of Fulk Nerra, i. 163.
Adelgis, son of Desiderius, king of the Lombards, i. 126.
Adelina, sister of Richard of Belmeis, i. 251.
Adeliza, of Louvain, second wife of Henry I., i. 243, 342.
wife of Reginald, count of Burgundy, i. 167; ii. 242.
Adene, i. 222.
Adeodatus, pope, i. 113, 260; ii. 188.
Adrammelech, i. 356.
Adrian I., pope, i. 16, 124, 125, 260; ii. 189, 192, 197, 203, 209, 272.
II., pope, i. 16, 137, 138, 260; ii. 189.
III., pope, i. 140, 260; ii. 190.
IV., pope, i. 262, 298, 300, 301, 302, 303, 305; ii. 191.
Adrian, emperor, i. 64, 65.
Aelendis, heiress of Amboise, i. 139; ii. 267.
Aeliz, daughter of William the Conqueror, i. 173.
Æthiopia, i. 54.
Ætius (Echius), i. 85.
Africa, provinces of, i. 6, 7; proconsular, i. 7; locusts in, i. 50.
Aganippus, ii. 224.
Agapetus I., pope, i. 95, 260, 305; ii. 187.
II., pope, i. 16, 147, 261; ii. 190, 209.
Agatha, wife of Edward the Atheling, i. 170.

Agatho, pope, i. 16, 114, 116, 260; ii. 188, 272.
Agathocles, epigram on, ii. 276.
Agaune, monastery of, founded by S. Sigismund, i. 364, 427.
Agelmar, father of Ethelnoth, i. 171.
Agelmund, king of the Lombards, i. 427.
Agelwin, earl, founder of Ramsey, i. 189; ii. 211.
Agde, city in Provence, i. 9.
Agen, city of, i. 9, 124.
Agnes, daughter of Lewis VII., wife of Alexius Comnenus, i. 430; married to Andronicus, ii. 12.
Agoscio, in Spain, i. 419.
Agrippa, friend of Augustus, i. 53, 55.
king of Judæa, i. 58.
II., king, i. 59.
Agrippina. *See* Cologne.
Ahab, king of Israel, i. 36.
Ahaz, king of Judah, i. 37.
Ahaziah, king of Israel, i. 36.
Ahitub, high priest, i. 36.
Airewella, landing of the Flemings at, i. 381.
Aix, in Provence, i. 9; taken by Saracens, 121.
Aix la Chapelle, Charles the Great builds a church at, i. 128; he is buried at, 133; resignation of Lewis at, 134; Otho I. meets the French queen at, 152; Henry V. at, 236; Otho IV. crowned at, ii. 163.
Alan, of Tewkesbury. *See* Canterbury, priors of.
Alaric, king of the Visigoths, i. 26, 82.
king of the Visigoths, conquered by Clovis, i. 89.
Alban, S., the protomartyr of Britain, i. 72, 81.
Albania, i. 66.
Albano, Walter, bishop of, i. 219, 225.
Henry, bishop of, ii. 10.
Albanus, bishop of, ii. 106.
Albert, the subdeacon, i. 429, 430.
cardinal of S. Laurence in Lucina, i. 346, 351, 354, 366, 367; elected pope as Gregory VIII., ii. 50.
Albinus, S., bishop of Angers, i. 143.
opponent of the emperor Severus, i. 68.
Albion, i. 30.
Alboin, king of the Lombards, i. 99, 100.
Alchfrith, king of Northumbria, i. 113, 364.
Alcibiades, i. 40.
Alcimus, high priest, i. 50.
Alcobaça (Alcubaz), massacre by the Saracens at, ii. 29.
Alcuin, instructor of Charles the Great, i. 131, 133; ii. 178.
Alderi, William de, hanged, i. 220.
Aldfrid, king of Northumbria, i. 119.
Alençon, castle of, built by Henry I., i. 247; flight of Henry II.'s son from, i. 355; mentioned, ii. 257.
act of Richard I. at, ii. 122.
Aleppo, ii. 58, 82.
Alexander the Great, i. 48, 108, 358; ii. 128.
high priest, i. 50.
Severus, i. 69.
son of Herod, i. 360.
king of Egypt, i. 359.
Alexander I., pope, i. 64; ii. 185.
II., pope, i. 17, 193, 197, 200, 201, 203, 205, 230, 262; ii. 191.
III., pope, i. 262, 303; ii. 191; approves the appointment of Becket, and sends the pall, i. 307; approves the translation of Gilbert Foliot, 309; holds council at Tours, 310; sends the golden rose to Lewis VII., 310, 311; consecrates John of Poictiers, 311; ii. 120; comes to France, i. 312; receives the envoys of Henry II. at Sens, 314, 315; address of Becket to, 316, 317; letter of, to Becket, 330; letter to, on a German council, 331; letter of Foliot to, *ib.*; letters of, to Henry II., 332, 334; sends Gratian and Vivian, 335; Foliot goes to, 335, 337; letter of, to Foliot, 337; to Roger of York, 338; letter of Becket to, 339; letter of, to the bishops, 340; letter of Becket to, 341; embassy from Henry to, 345; sends Albert

Alexander III.—*cont.*
and Theodinus, 346; letter of the archbishop of Sens to, 347; orders the absolution of the bishops, 348; and the restoration of Foliot, 351; oath of Henry II. to, 352; letter of, announcing Becket's canonization, 369, 370; ii. 212, 213, 285; sends Nicholas the subdeacon, i. 378; confirms the election of Richard, archbishop of Canterbury, 389; letter to him, 390; letters to Lupus of Valentia, 390, 429; sends Hugo Pierleoni, 403; writes on the precedence of the see of Canterbury, 406; letter of Henry II. to, 410; authorizes the change at Waltham, 420; writes an account of his reconciliation with the emperor, 421; gives sentence in a dispute about S. Augustine's Canterbury, 425; letter of, to the bishops of London and Winchester, 427; summons the Lateran Council, 429; holds the council, 430; letter of, to Prester John, 440; empowered Roger of York to seize the goods of clerks dying, ii. 12; allows Richard Fitz-Neal to hold preferment, 74, 75.
bishop of Antioch, i. 413.
Alexandra, i. 50.
Alexandria, in Egypt, i. 68, 69.
in Italy, i. 397.
Alexius I., Commenus; ii. 217.
Alexius II., Commenus, i. 431; drowned by Andronicus, ii. 12.
III., Angelus, emperor, ii. 118.
Alfleda, wife of Edward the elder, i. 140.
Alfonso. *See* Aragon, Castille.
Alfred, king of Wessex, ii. 234; son of Ethelwulf, sent to Rome, i. 136; anointed, *ib.*; sends alms to India, 140.
Alfred, the son of Ethelred II., i. 167; ii. 259.
Allerton, North, battle of the Standard near, i. 250.
Alniensis, pagus, i. 159.
Alps, the, i. 6, 48, 150; Pennine, 7.
Peter of, i. 222.
Alsace, Thierri of (Auseis). *See* Flanders, counts of.
Alwestan, illness of William Rufus at, i. 217.
Amalric, king of Jerusalem. *See* Jerusalem.
Amandus, S., i. 111.
Amaziah, king of Judah, i. 36.
Amboise, i. 139, 161, 164, 165, 183, 199, 304, 339, 394; ii. 267.
Ambrieres, ii. 263.
Ambrose, S., i. 78, 79. *See* Milan.
Ambrosius Aurelius, king of the Britons i. 80; ii. 228.
Americ, the pope's chancellor, i. 250, 256.
Amesbury, monastery at, founded by Elfrida, ii. 211.
consecration of the bishop of Bangor at, i. 420.
Amiens, city of, i. 8, 62, 139; Firmin, bishop of, 62; marriage of Philip II. at, ii. 111.
bishop of, absolves archbishop Roger of York, i. 348; and Foliot of London, 351.
Amon, king of Judah, i. 37.
Amram, father of Moses, i. 35.
Amyntas, king of Macedonia, i. 358.
Anacletus I., pope, i. 5, 62, 63, 259; ii. 185.
Anacletus II., i. 246, 249; ii. 195.
Anagni, consecration of archbishop Richard at, i. 388, 389.
John of, legate to England, ii. 72.
Ananias, messenger of Abgarus, i. 57.
Jesus, son of, i. 60.
Anastasius I., pope, i. 79, 259; ii. 187.
II., pope, i. 89, 260; ii. 187.
III., pope, i. 144, 261; ii. 190.
IV., pope, i. 262, 296, 298; ii. 191.
antipope, i. 137; ii. 193.
Anastasius I., emperor, i. 89; sent a crown to Clovis, 90, 439.
II., emperor, i. 120.
Ancenis, i. 380.
Ancyra, i. 298.

Andely, burned by Lewis VII., i. 330; seized by Richard I., ii. 148; negotiations respecting, 148, 154, 155, 156–158, 160–162.
Androclus, story of, i. 40, 41.
Andronicus, usurpation and tyranny of, ii. 12, 37.
Anger, river, i. 164.
Angers, city of, described, i. 291, 292; mentioned, 162, 185, 200; ii. 267–270.
given by Charles Martel to Raginfred, i. 121; Theodulf exiled to, 133; taken by the Normans, 137; vision of Fulk at, 149; ii. 268.
Walter of Rouen consecrated at, ii. 145, in the church of S. Lo, 15.
abbey of S. Albinus at, i. 143, 156, 159.
church of S. Sergius at, i. 143.
church of S. Nicolas at, i. 185, 200.
Maurilius, bishop of, i. 137.
Raimo, bishop of, i. 139.
Angoulême, i. 9.
devastated, i. 124.
Wulgrin, count of, i. 407, 414.
Angoumois, ii. 117.
Anjou, history of, i. 135, 139, 143, 148, 154, 159, 161, 184, 199; ii. 14–16, 267–269.
counts of:
Torquatius, Tertullus, and Ingelger, i. 135, 136.
Ingelger, i. 139; ii. 15, 267.
Fulk Ruffus, i. 143; ii. 15, 269.
Fulk the Good, i. 148, 149; ii. 15, 267, 268.
Geoffrey Grisa-tunica, i. 154–156; ii. 268.
Maurice, i. 159; ii. 268.
Fulk Nerra, i. 161–165; ii. 15, 268.
Geoffrey Martel, i, 184, 185; ii. 268.
Fulk Rechin, i. 199, 200; ii. 15, 268.
Fulk V., i. 239; ii. 15, 268, 269; goes on crusade, i. 243; chosen king of Jerusalem, *ib.*
Geoffrey Plantagenet, ii. 15, 16, 269; succeeds his father, i. 243; marries
Anjou, counts of—*cont.*
the empress, 245; his son born, 246; invades Normandy, 249; takes Rouen, 255; gives Normandy to Henry, 291; dies at Chateau du Loir, 293; buried at S. Julian's, le Mans, 293.
Henry II. *See* Henry.
Geoffrey. *See* Geoffrey.
Anicius (Anicetus), pope, i. 65, 259; ii. 185.
Anna, story of, at Constantinople, i. 91, 92.
Annecy, city of, i. 9.
Ansa, Robert de, i. 222.
Ansbert, ancestor of Charles Martel, i. 120.
Anseis (Ansegis), i. 120.
Anselm, archbishop. *See* Canterbury.
abbot of S. Edmund's, elect of London, i. 249–252.
Anslec, ii. 249.
Anterus, pope, i. 69, 259; ii. 186.
Anthemius, emperor, i. 88.
Anthimus, patriarch of Constantinople, i. 95, 98.
Anthlena, in Spain, i. 49.
Antibes, in Provence, i. 9.
Antidius, bishop of Besançon, i. 81, 82.
Antioch, i. 58; council at, 70; siege of, by the crusaders, 222; taken, 231; threatened by the Saracens, 422; John Commenus poisoned at, ii. 11; rumoured defeat of Saladin at, 60; Caracos knighted at, 81; mentioned, ii. 84.
Bohemond I., prince of, i. 221, 231; ii. 266.
Raymond, prince of, ii. 11.
Bohemond III., prince of, ii. 58.
see of, ii. 60.
Antiochus, Epiphanes, ii. 76.
Antoninus I., emperor, i. 65, 66, 82.
II. (Caracalla), i. 68.
Antonius, Mark, ii. 57.
Aosta, Anselm born at, i. 223.
Apollo, story of, and Gregory, i. 70, 71.
Apollonius, i. 54.
Apte, city of, i. 9.

Aptol, in Spain, i. 419.
Apuleius, quotation from, i. 46.
Apulia, i. 6, 49, 156, 211 ; (*see* Sicily), ii. 276.
Aquileia, city of, i. 6, 132 ; see of, ii. 39.
council at, i. 118 ; ii. 272.
shipwreck of Richard near, ii. 106.
Ruffinus of, i. 21, 80.
Aquitania, provinces of, i. 6, 9 ; boundaries of, 24 ; described, 293 ; earl Patrick killed in, i. 331.
dukes of. *See* Poictou, counts of.
William, duke of, ii. 177.
Arabia (Arrabeh), in Palestine, ii. 28.
Aragon, kings of, ii. 240, 241.
Ramirus, ii. 240.
Sanctius, ii. 240.
Petrus, ii. 240.
Alfonso I., ii. 240 ; took Saragossa, 241.
Alfonso II., meets Henry II. at Montferrand, i. 353.
Arcadius, emperor, i. 80 ; persecutes S. Chrysostom, 81 ; pardoned after death, 84.
Archadia, i. 7.
Archelaus, king of Judæa, i. 56.
Arden, Ralph de, ii. 170.
Areth, i. 222.
Aretium, i. 50.
Arfaxat, i. 35.
Argentan, i. 248, 355.
Argentaria, i. 8.
Argenteuil, i. 302.
Argentoratum (Strasburg), i. 8.
Arians, heresy of, i. 76, 91, 104.
Ariminum founded, i. 48.
Aristobulus, i. 50, 51, 352.
Aristotle, i. 42, 43.
Arka, castle in Palestine, i. 232.
Arles, city of, i. 9, 132 ; Trophimus, bishop of, 62 ; councils at, 133 ; Augustine consecrated at, i. 106.
Frederick I. crowned at, i. 426, 427.
William, count of, i. 165.
Armenfrid, bishop of Sion, i. 201.
Armenia, i. 7, 356 ; ii. 82, 92.
Arnold, father of Arnulf, i. 120.
Arnulf, father of Ansegis, i. 120.
bishop of Lisieux. *See* Lisieux.
master, i. 307.
emperor, i. 140, 141.
Archbishop of Rheims, i. 157.
Arques, in Normandy, i, 373, 387.
William, count of, i. 172 ; ii. 259.
Arras, city of, i. 8 ; taken by Rollo, 139.
abbey of S. Vedast at, i. 141.
bishop of, i. 257.
Arsacides (Assassins), ii. 104.
Arsouf, battle of, ii. 95.
Artallus, archbishop of Rheims, i. 145.
Artaxerxes, i. 358.
Arthur, king of the Britons, i. 91, 96 ; ii. 229, 241 ; his oven, i. 113.
of Brittany. *See* Brittany.
abbot of Treport, ii. 156.
Arundel, castle of, i. 214.
William of Albini, earl of, i. 330 ; his death and burial, 415.
Ralph of, abbot of Westminster, ii. 172
Arvandus, story of, ii. 101, 102.
Asa, king of Judah, i. 36.
Ascalon, i. 233 ; ii. 50, 56, 82, 105.
Ascelin, bishop of Laon, i. 157.
Asia, provinces of, i. 6, 7.
Assandun, i. 171 ; ii. 211.
Assen, king of Bulgaria, ii. 60.
Assyria, list of the kings of, ii. 219.
Astasia, i. 358.
Astralix, ii. 60.
Astremonius, bishop of Auvergne, i. 62.
Asti, men of, i. 408.
Astur (Stura), i. 391.
Athaliah, queen of Judah, i. 36.
Athelheard, king of Wessex, i. 119.
Athelney, abbey founded, ii. 211.
Athelstan, king of England, i. 141, 144 ; ii. 211, 235 ; promotes Odo, i. 145.
Athens, philosophers of, i. 92.
Attila, king of the Huns, i. 86.
Auch, city of, i. 9.
Augustamnis, i. 7.
Augustine, bishop of Hippo, his writings, i. 22, 82 ; his correspondence with Jerome, i. 81 ; quoted, 26, 27, 49, 77, 82.

Augustine—*cont.*
archbishop of Canterbury. *See* Canterbury.
Augustus (Octavianus), i. 53, 56; ii. 182.
Aumâle, bought by William Rufus, i. 215.
Roger of York absolved at, 348; purgation of Foliot at, 351; taken, 373; conference at, ii. 38.
Stephen, count of, i. 220.
William, count of, taken prisoner, i. 373.
Hadewis, countess of, ii. 4.
William de Mandeville, count of. *See* Mandeville.
Aurelian, emperor, i. 70, 82.
Aurelius, emperor, i. 65.
(Heliogabalus), i. 69.
Aurenensium, civitas, i. 9.
Austrasians, i. 126, 427.
Austria, Leopold, duke of, ii. 110; letter of the chief of the assassins to, 127; death of, 124.
Autun, city of, i. 8.
Auvergne, ii. 64.
Astremonius, bishop of, i. 62.
Auxerre, city of, i. 8; honour of, ii. 167.
Germanus of, i. 81.
Avalon, Arthur retires to, i. 96; ii. 229.
Avaricum, ii. 244.
Avars, conquered by Charles the Great, i. 130, 131.
Avennicorum civitas, i. 9.
Aventicum, i. 8.
Avesnes, James of, i. 393; ii. 70, 80, 95.
Avitus, emperor, i. 86.
Avranches, purgation of Henry II. at, i. 351.
bishops of; Richard de Beaufo, i. 247.
R., i. 400.
William, elect of, in 1197; ii. 156; joins in the business of John's divorce, 167.
Axholm, isle of, i. 379.
Aymari, Philip, the moneyer, ii. 7.
Azai, ii. 64.
Azarias, king of Judah, i. 36.

B.

Baasha, king of Israel, i. 36.
Babylon, i. 37.
in Egypt, i. 243, 302.
Bactriana, i. 359.
Badrichsworth, monastery of S. Edmund at, i. 171, 175.
Baffa, in Cyprus, ii. 92.
Bailleul, Jocelin of, i. 318.
Baldwin, son of Saladin, ii. 71.
count of Flanders. *See* Flanders.
king of Jerusalem. *See* Jerusalem.
Balearic isles, i. 7.
Balian, of Ibelin, ii. 50, 56, 59, 86.
Ballon, castle of, ii. 62.
Balzo, ii. 248.
Bamborough, castle, i. 220, 302.
Bandanus, chancellor to Conrad of Montferrat, ii. 61.
Bangor, bishops of:
Hervey (*see* Ely), i. 238.
Guy, i. 420.
Robert, ii. 169.
Bapaumes, ii. 5.
Barak, judge of Israel, i. 36.
Barbeaux, Lewis VII. buried at, ii. 7.
Bardulf, Hugh, ii. 259; Hugh, justice under Richard I., ii. 90.
Barfleur, i. 299, 382, 391.
Bari, i. 211, 226, 301; ii. 273.
Barking, abbey of, founded, i. 115; ii. 211.
Mary, sister of Thomas Becket, abbess of, i. 371.
Barra, i. 231.
Barre, Richard, archdeacon of Lisieux, ii. 51.
Basil, emperor, i. 138.
S., of Cæsarea, i. 78.
Basilii, Petrus, the archer, who shot Richard I., ii. 166.
Bassus, accuser of pope Sixtus III., i. 83.
Bath, city of, i. 13; ii. 211; Edgar crowned at, i. 151; ii. 236; plundered by Robert Mowbray, i. 214; see removed to, 216; bishop Reginald buried at, ii. 104.
bishops of. *See* Wells.

Batilda, queen, ii. 243.
Battle abbey, founded, i. 200.
Odo, abbot of, i. 403.
Bavaria, i. 126, 131, 362 ; ii. 427.
Thassilo, duke of, i. 126.
Welf, duke of, i. 134.
Henry, duke of, i. 160, 161.
Bayeux, city of, i. 8 ; the Norsemen at, i. 147 ; ii. 246.
Waleran, archdeacon of, ii. 13.
Eiric, bishop of, ii. 247.
Odo, bishop of, i. 200, 209, 212, 213, 214.
Richard, bishop of, i. 247.
Henry, bishop of, i. 400 ; ii. 96.
bishop of, joins in the business of John's divorce, ii. 167.
Beatrice, daughter of the king of Portugal, ii. 28.
Beauchamp, Ralph de, ii. 99.
Beaufo, Richard de, i. 247.
Baugency, Lancelin de, i. 199.
Beaujeu, Humbert of, ii. 6.
Beaulieu, church built by Fulk Nerra at, i. 164 ; Richard marches on, ii. 117.
Beaumont, castle of, taken by Philip, ii. 62.
Beauvais, city of, i. 8, 62.
Hilderic, bishop of, ii. 252.
bishop of, absolves Foliot at Gisors, i. 347.
Philip bishop of, at Acre, ii. 79 ; divorces Henfrid of Toron from his wife, 86 ; taken prisoner, 152, 158.
Hugh, count of, i. 165.
Bec, abbey of, i. 176, 210, 215, 223, 227, 235.
Herluin, abbot of, i. 176, 210, 215.
Anselm, abbot of. *See* Canterbury.
Theobald, abbot of. *See* Canterbury.
Roger, abbot of, i. 354.
Bede, the Venerable, i. 23, 117, 119, 121. quoted, i. 29, 30, 66, 85, &c.
Bedford, Philip de Broe, canon of, i. 313.
Belesme, Robert of, i. 214, 233, 235 ; ii. 266 ; William of, ii. 257.
Belgica, provinces of, i. 6, 8, 24, 412.
Belinus and Brennus, ii. 224.
Belmeis, Richard of. *See* London.
Walter of, i. 251.
Belvoir, fortress in Palestine, ii. 28.
in France, ii. 38.
Benamus, i. 9.
Benedict, Biscop, i. 117.
Benedict I., pope, i. 100, 260 ; ii. 188.
Benedict II., pope, i. 117, 260 ; ii. 189.
Benedict III., pope, i. 137, 260 ; ii. 189, 193.
Benedict IV., pope, i. 142, 261 ; ii. 190.
Benedict V., pope, i. 151, 261 ; ii. 190, 193, 194.
Benedict VI., pope, i. 261 ; ii. 190.
Benedict VII., pope, i. 261 ; ii. 190.
Benedict VIII., pope, i. 17, 172, 261 ; ii. 190.
Benedict IX., pope, 187, 261 ; ii. 191, 194.
Benedict X., pope, i. 261 ; ii. 191.
Beneventum, i. 48, 126, 211, 318.
Eregis, duke of, i. 126.
Albert of, ii. 50.
Benregium, i. 164.
Beranensium civitas, i. 9.
Berbezeacum, i. 407.
Berengaria, of Navarre, wife of Richard I., ii. 86, 106.
Berengarius, count of Brittany, ii. 246, 247.
Bergevenni, i. 401.
Berkhampstead, i. 197, 314.
Bermundsey, ii. 100.
Bernard, son of Pipin, i. 133.
count, ii. 249, 250.
saint, i. 256, 296.
Berno, founder of Cluny, i. 140.
Bernulf, king of Mercia, i. 133.
Berry, province of, ii. 49, 65, 168.
Bertha, queen of Kent, i. 105.
Bertharius, mayor of the palace, i. 123.
Berthold, brother of the duke of Saxony, i. 156.
duke of Zähringen, i. 409.
Berwick, castle of, surrendered, i. 398.
Berytus, miracle at, i. 124.
Besançon, city of, i. 9, 132.
Antidius bishop of, i. 81.
Bethlehem, i. 56, 81.

Betica, i. 7.
Beverley, provosts of :
Thomas Becket, i. 300.
Geoffrey, i. 406, 422.
Beziers, city of, i. 9.
William Trinkavel murdered at, i. 346.
Bias, the wise man, i. 37.
Bier, the Norseman, adventures of, i. 136 ; ii. 243, 244.
Bigorre, city of, i. 9.
Bigot, Roger, i. 214. *See* Norfolk, earls of.
Birinus, apostle of Wessex, i. 111. *See* Winchester.
Bishop's Waltham, Henry II. makes his will at, ii. 10.
Bladud, story of, ii. 223.
Blanche, countess of Arles, i. 165.
Blancheguarde, in Palestine, ii. 56.
Blois, town of, i. 161, 183, 304.
William of, sub-dean of Lincoln, ii. 150.
counts of :
Stephen, count of, i. 174, 199.
Theobald, count of, married to a daughter of Lewis VII., i. 249 ; knights Geoffrey, brother of Henry II., 291 ; his sister marries Lewis VII., 303 ; assists Lewis against Henry, 304 ; is surety for Lewis, 375 ; at Acre, ii. 79.
Blurea, i. 183, 184.
Boaticorum civitas, i. 9.
Boetius, i. 91.
Bohemond of Tarentum, i. 221, 231 ; ii. 266.
of Tripoli (Raymond). *See* Tripoli.
Bologna, i. 54.
men of, letter of the Milanese to, i. 409.
Boniface I., pope, i. 83, 259 ; ii. 187, 192.
II., pope, i. 91, 260 ; ii. 187.
III., pope, i. 108, 260 ; ii. 188.
IV., pope, i. 108, 260 ; ii. 188.
V., pope, i. 16, 109, 260 ; ii. 188, 208.
VI., pope, i. 141, 260 ; ii. 190.
VII., pope, i. 261 ; ii. 190.
Bonmoulins, i. 247 ; ii. 57.
Bonneville, i. 381.
Boteilles, ii. 160.
Boulogne, i. 8.
counts of :
Eustace I., i. 180.
Eustace II., i. 181, 214.
Stephen. *See* Stephen.
William, i. 303 ; dies, *ib.*
Matthew, i. 303, 372, 387, 432 ; mortally wounded at Arques, 373, 387 ; his heiress marries the son of the duke of Louvain, 432.
count of, ii. 168.
Bourdeaux, i. 9, 132.
archbishop of, i. 311.
Bourges, i. 9, 132.
archbishops of, election of, i. 87.
Peter, i. 256.
Guarin, ii. 4, 5.
Boxley, abbot of, i. 345.
Brachatensis pagus, i. 192.
Bractiania, i. 6, 7.
Brai, i. 184.
Braiose, William de, i. 401.
Brescia, men of, i. 408.
Bridgnorth, i. 301.
Brienne, count of, ii. 79.
Brihtric, king of Wessex, i. 125.
Brionne, Gilbert of, i. 152.
Bristol, i. 214, 254.
Britain, i. 5, 6 ; commendation of, 10 ; wonders of, 11 ; Saxon conquest of, 85 ; kings of, ii. 222–231.
Brito, Richard, i. 343.
Brittany, counts of, ii. 254.
Alan and Berenger, ii. 246, 247.
Conan, i. 162.
Alan, i. 162.
Geoffrey, i. 167.
Conan, father of Constance, Geoffrey's wife, i. 332 ; ii. 18.
Geoffrey son of Henry II. born, i. 302 ; married, 332 ; has the homage of Brittany, 337 ; joins in his brother's rebellion, 355 ; submits and does homage, 398 ; knighted, 426 ; does homage to his elder brother, ii. 18 ; attacks Richard, 19 ; dies leaving two daughters, 41.

Brittany—*cont.*
Arthur, born, ii. 48; declared heir to Richard, 85, 86; John tries to supplant, 106; joins Philip, 167.
Brivatensis (of Brest), arch-priest, ii. 4.
Briwerre, William, justice, ii. 90.
Broc, Ranulf de, i. 341.
Robert de, i. 342, 344.
Broc, Philip de, i. 313.
Bruges, i. 186.
Bruis, ii. 114.
Brun, Hugh le. *See* La Marche.
Brundusium, ii. 27.
Brunichilda, letter of S. Gregory to, i. 107.
Bruno, count, killed, i. 236.
Brutia, i. 6.
Brutus, story of, ii. 222.
Bubaris, i. 358.
Bulgaria, Bulgarians, i. 89; ii. 37, 64, 84.
Bulot, Baldwin, i. 417.
Bungay, castle of, i. 384.
Bur, near Bayeux, i. 398.
Burgh, Hubert de, ii. 170.
Burgos, in Spain, i. 420.
Burgundians, origin of, i. 80, 136.
Sigismund, king of, i. 364, 427.
Burgundy, praises of, i. 427.
duke of, i. 421; ii. 9, 40, 95.
count of, i. 172.
Gerard, count of, i. 121.
Reginald, count of, i. 167, 172; ii. 256.
Burneville, i. 176.
Burriz, ii. 164.
Buzentiacum, i. 139; ii. 267.
Byzacenum, i. 7.
Byzantium, i. 7, 74, 130. *See* Constantinople.

C.

Cabellicorum civitas, i. 9.
Cadalus, of Parma, antipope, i. 200; ii. 194.
Cadwalader, king of the Britons, i. 113, 118, 123; ii. 230.
Cadwallanus, prince of the Welsh, i. 437.
Cadwallo, king of the Britons, i. 109, 110.
Caen, i. 212, 213, 224.
Cæsarea, i. 69.
Cæsarea Philippi, ii. 105.
Cahors, town of, i. 9; ii. 58.
Cainan, the patriarch, i. 35.
Calabria, i. 6. *See* Apulia, Sicily.
Calcivum, i. 190; ii. 260.
Calibureh, Arthur's sword, i. 96.
Caligula, emperor, i. 58.
Calixtus I., pope, i. 69, 260; ii. 186.
Calixtus II., pope, i. 17, 242, 243, 244, 262; ii. 191, 195, 273.
Calpe, i. 7.
Cambai, i. 173.
Cambray, i. 8, 139; ii. 137; Peter elect of, i. 387; bishops of, ii. 151.
Cambridge, castle of, ii. 100.
county of, i. 209.
Campania, i. 6, 56.
Candecastrum, i. 199.
Cannock, wonders of, i. 14.
Canterbury, built, i. 37.
S. Martin's at, i. 66.
Canterbury, archbishops of, list of, i. 16; ii. 196, 208.
Augustine, i. 16; comes to England, 105; consecrated, 106; account of his mission, *ib.*; mentioned, 153.
Laurentius, i. 16, 106, 107, 108, 109.
Mellitus, i. 16, 106, 107, 108, 109.
Justus, i. 16, 106, 107, 108, 109.
Honorius, i. 16, 110.
Deusdedit, i. 16, 112.
Theodore, i. 16, 113, 114, 116, 117.
Brihtwald, i. 16, 118.
Tatwin, i. 16, 120.
Nothelm, i. 16, 121.
Cuthbert, i. 16, 122.
Bregwin, i. 16, 123.
Jambert, i. 16, 124, 126.
Ethelhard, i. 16, 126, 128.
Wulfred, i. 16, 129.
Feologild, i. 16, 135.
Ceolnoth, i. 16, 135.
Ethelred, i. 16, 138.
Plegmund, i. 16, 140, 142, 143.

Canterbury, archbishops of—*cont.*
Athelm, i. 16, 142, 143, 144.
Wulfhelm, i. 16, 144.
Odo, i. 16, 145, 146, 147, 150.
Elfsin, i. 150.
Dunstan, i. 16, 149, 150, 151, 153, 156, 168.
Ethelgar, i. 16, 158.
Sigeric, i. 16, 158.
Elfric, i. 17, 158.
Elfege, i. 17, 161, 165, 166, 172.
Living, i. 17, 166, 169, 171.
Agelnoth, i. 17, 171, 172, 175, 183.
Eadsin, i. 17, 183, 186, 187, 188.
Robert, i. 17, 188, 190.
Stigand, i. 17, 183, 187, 193, 197, 200, 201.
Lanfranc, i. 17, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 209, 210, 213; his good works, 215.
Anselm, i. 17, 217, 218, 219, 221; life of, 223–227; extracts from letters of, 228–231; quarrel with Henry I., 234; reconciliation, 235; holds council, 236; acts and letters, 236, 237, 238; dies, 238.
Ralph, i. 17; bishop of Rochester, elected, 240; has the pall, *ib.*; crowns queen Adeliza, 243; dies, 244.
William, i. 17; of Corbeuil, prior of Chich, 244; acts of, 244, 245, 246; crowns king Stephen, 247, 248; dies, 249.
Theobald, i. 17; abbot of Bec, elected, 252; consecrates Robert of Lincoln, 258; goes to Rheims without the king's leave, 262; consecrates Richard of Belmeis, 295; makes peace between Stephen and Henry, 296; consecrates Roger of York, 298; and the bishop of Exeter, 301; crowns Henry II., 299; directs the consecration of the bishop of Exeter, 304; his death, *ib.*
Thomas, i. 17; archdeacon of Canterbury, 300; chancellor, *ib.*; goes to Paris to fetch Margaret, 302; elected and consecrated archbishop, 306, 307; circumstances of his quarrel with Henry II., 308–312; at Clarendon, 312; at Northampton, *ib.*; at Sens, 316; at Pontigny and Vezelai, 318; excommunicates the ministers, *ib.*; at S. Colombe at Sens, 329; negotiations with Henry II., 337, 338, 339; his return, 340–343; his martyrdom, 343, 344; his canonization, 369; letters of, 320, 323, 326, 333, 339, 341; letters to, 321, 330; summary of his history, ii. 279–285.
Richard, i. 17; prior of Dover, elected, 369; his consecration impeded, 372; goes to the pope, 387; is examined, consecrated, receives the pall, and is made legate, 388–390; his journey home, 391; consecrates the bishops, 392; visits S. Paul's, 395; and Winchester, 396; holds a council at Westminster, 399; at Woodstock, 401; consecrates the bishop of S. Asaph, 402; and the bishop of Norwich, 403; has a struggle with the archbishop of York, 405, 406; absent in 1176, 411; has the bishop of S. David's consecrated, 415; consecrates the bishop of Bangor, 420; his struggle with the abbot of S. Augustine's, 425; at the election of the bishop of Rochester, ii. 13; consecrates him, 14; consecrates the bishop of Lincoln, *ib.*; and two others abroad, 20; dies, 21.
Baldwin, i. 17; bishop of Worcester, elected, ii. 22–24; at the council of Clerkenwell, 33; letter of the pope to, 36; inthroned, *ib.*; consecrates Gilbert of Rochester, 38; visits Winchester, 41; consecrates bishops of Lincoln, Hereford, and Worcester, 41, 42; of Exeter, 43; visits S. Paul's, 47, 48; letter of, 48; forbidden by Urban III. to build his new church, 48, 49; letter of Con-

Canterbury, archbishops of—*cont.*
rad of Montferrat to, 60–62; summons the chapter of London to Normandy, 62; absolves Richard, 67; crowns Richard, 69; makes peace with the monks, 72; makes the bishop of London his deputy, 75; letter of, 77; claims the right of consecrating the archbishop of York, 78; goes to Acre, 84; dies, 88.
Hubert, i. 17 (*see* Salisbury); elected, ii. 108, 109; receives the pall, 111; and is inthroned, 112; made legate, 125, 126; consecrates John of Worcester, 146; writes to the clergy of York, 146, 147; who send letters in his favour, 148; illness of, 150; visits Christ Church, Canterbury, 151; letter of the pope to, *ib.*; returns from Normandy, 158; expels the canons from Coventry, 159; consecrates Eustace of Ely, *ib.*; and Geoffrey of Lichfield, 163; is ordered to demolish his church at Lambeth, 165; consecrates William bishop of London, 166; crowns John, *ib.*; holds a council at Westminster, 169; and consecrates bishops of Hereford and Norwich, *ib.*; goes to Normandy, 173.
Canterbury, priors of Christ Church:
Conrad, i. 239.
Jeremiah, i. 252.
Odo, i. 369; abbot of Battle, 403.
Alan, ii. 24.
Geoffrey, ii. 108.
Canterbury, S. Augustine's, i. 425; ii. 211.
Jambert, abbot of, i. 124.
abbot of, at the council of Rheims, i. 188.
Hugh, abbot of, blessed at Chichester, i. 246.
Clarembald, abbot of, i. 308, 354; ii. 279.
Roger, abbot of, i. 428; ii. 36.
Canterbury, city of, i. 172.
church of the Trinity Christ Church), i. 246, ii. 211; burned, i. 391; benefaction of Lewis VII. to, 433; visit of the legate to, ii. 72; the king of Scots at, ii. 72; John crowned at, 172.
Canute, king of England, i. 169; divides England in four, *ib.*; marries Emma, 170; goes to Denmark, 171; conquers Norway, 173; praises of, 174; his visit to Rome, 175; divides his dominions, 176; death and burial, 181; history of, ii. 237, 238.
Canute, king of Denmark, i. 207, 243.
king of Denmark, ii. 111.
Capua, i. 6; visited by Richard, ii. 82.
(Chapes), Peter of, ii. 167.
Capud Multonis, i. 185.
Caracalla, emperor, i. 68.
Caracos, Saracen Emir, ii. 80.
Carantanus river, i. 130.
Caria, i. 7.
Caribdis, i. 12.
Carlisle, i. 217, 291, 302; ii. 16.
Carpentras, i. 9.
Carthage, i. 20, 49, 50, 67.
Carthagena, i. 7.
Carus, emperor, i. 72.
Casellum Hymberti, in Palestine, ii. 105.
Caspian gates, i. 108.
Cassibellanus, ii. 225.
Cassiodorus, i. 22; quoted, 34, 87, 95.
character of, i. 101.
Castello, Hugh de, i. 378, 385.
Castellum Arnoldi, in Palestine, ii. 56.
Castellum Matildis, in Wales, ii. 163.
Castille, Alfonso II., king of, i. 297; ii. 240.
Alfonso, king of, marries Eleanor, daughter of Henry II., i. 334; refers a great dispute to Henry II., 415; Henry's decision, 418–420 his daughter married to Lewis of France, ii. 168; mentioned, 240.
Catalans, ii. 70.
Catigern, i. 85.
Caudine Forks, i. 48.
Ceadwalla, king of Wessex, i. 114.
Ceaulin, king of Wessex, i. 95.

Cecilia, daughter of William the Conqueror, i. 173.
Celestine I., pope, i. 83, 259 ; ii. 187.
Celestine II., pope, i. 255, 262 ; ii. 187.
Celestine III., pope, i. 17, 262 ; ii. 89, 187 ; crowned Henry VI., 89 ; letter of the English bishops to, 103 ; sends the pall to Hubert Walter, 111 ; orders the release of the English hostages, 119 ; makes Hubert legate, 125, 126 ; letter of, to the archbishop of Sens, 129 ; to the clergy of Canterbury, 133 ; to Hubert touching the abbot of Thorney, 151 ; dies, 159.
Cencius, the subdeacon, ii. 131.
Centronium, i. 9.
Cenwalh, king of Wessex, i. 109.
Ceolric, king of Wessex, i. 99.
Ceolwulf, king of Northumbria, i. 28.
king of Wessex, i. 100.
Cerantegadin, Saracen Emir, i. 89.
Cerne abbey, i. 234 ; ii. 211.
Chabot, Theobald, i. 407.
Chalcedon, council of, i. 86 ; ii. 271.
Châlons, i. 8, 133.
Hugh, count of, i. 172 ; ii. 256.
count of, ii. 6.
Chaluz, Richard wounded at, ii. 165.
Champagne, counts of :
Odo, i. 159, 164 ; ii. 255, 256.
Theobald and Stephen, i. 183.
Stephen, i. 174.
Henry, i. 294 ; married to a daughter of Lewis VII., 248 ; is surety for Henry at Verneuil, 375.
Henry, at Acre, ii. 79 ; chosen king of Jerusalem, 104.
Theobald, count of, dies, ii. 172.
Champagne, Odo of, i. 220.
Chamville, Richard, i. 417.
Charité, la, abbot of, ii. 173.
Charles Martel, i. 120–123.
Charles the Great, succeeds, i. 124 ; conquers the Lombards and Saxons and takes Saragossa, 125 ; his missions to the East, 126 ; his accomplishments, 128 ; becomes emperor, 129 ; has an elephant sent from Persia, 130 ; negotiates with Constantinople, *ib.* ; divides his dominions, *ib.* ; his wars, 131 ; is taught by Alcuin, 131 ; ii. 178 ; his armies, i. 131 ; his will, 132 ; his councils, 133 ; dies, *ib.*
Charles the Bald, i. 134, 135 ; gives a wife to Tertullus, 135 ; his daughter married to Ethelwulf, 136 ; blinds his son Karloman, 138 ; emperor, 139.
Charles the Fat, i. 139 ; emperor, *ib.*
Charles the Simple, i. 140 ; kills duke Robert, 144 ; imprisoned at Peronne, *ib.* ; dies, *ib.* ; ii. 278.
Charles, brother of king Lothair, overcome by Hugh Capet, i. 157 ; his sons Charles and Lewis, *ib.*
Charles, count of Flanders, i. 207, 243.
Chartres, i. 8, 142, 256 ; ii. 245.
Ivo of, i. 23, 32, 298, 305, 413.
Geoffrey, provost of, i. 352.
Fulbert, bishop of, ii. 177.
Geoffrey, bishop of, i. 221.
Walter, bishop of, i. 142.
William of Champagne, bishop of. *See* Rheims.
John of Salisbury, bishop of, i. 410, 412, 414.
Theobald, count of, ii. 252.
Stephen, count of. *See* Champagne.
Châteaudun, i. 161.
Châteauroux, i. 425 ; ii. 49, 55, 58, 63.
Châtillon, i. 139.
Chaumont, castle of, i. 304, 330, 347.
Hugh of, i. 199.
Cher, river, i. 164, 183.
Cherbourg, Danes at, ii. 251.
Cherdrehole, i. 11.
Cherin, in Cyprus, ii. 92.
Chertsey, abbey of, founded, i. 115 ; ii. 211.
Chester, earls of :
Hugh, i. 217.
Ranulf II., i. 255, 256, 301.
Hugh II., i. 371, 378.
bishops of. *See* Lichfield.
Cheverusa, Milo de, i. 257.
Chich, priory of S. Osyth at, i. 251.

Chichester, i. 246 ; see of the South Saxons fixed at, i. 202 ; Hugh, abbot of S. Augustine's blessed at, i. 246.
Jordan of, i. 307.
bishops of, list, ii. 205.
Stigand, i. 202.
Ralph, i. 238.
Hilary, i. 263.
John, dean of Chichester elected bishop, i. 368 ; consecrated, 392.
Seffrid, illness of, in 1200, ii. 169.
Childebert, king of the Franks, i. 118, 123.
Childeric, king of the Franks, i. 122.
Chilo, the wise man, i. 37.
Chilperic I., king of the Franks, i. 98.
II., i. 121, 123.
Chinon, i. 302 ; ii. 64.
Christopher, pope, i. 142, 261 ; ii. 190, 193.
Chrysostom, S. John, i. 22, 81, 84.
Chuci, Ralph de, ii. 11.
Chumeid, an emir, i. 130.
Cicero, i. 41.
Cilicia, i. 7.
Cirencester, i. 247.
Cîteaux, i. 232.
Civita Vecchia, i. 388.
Clare, Gilbert de, earl of Hertford, i. 255, 256.
Roger de, earl of Hertford, i. 311 ; ii. 279, 281.
Richard de, earl of Hertford, i. 385.
Clarendon, council at, i. 312.
Clarice, abbess of Winchester, i. 396.
Claudius I., emperor, i. 58, 59.
II., i. 71.
Clement I., pope, i. 19, 62, 65, 259 ; ii. 184, 185.
Clement II., pope, i. 187, 261.
Clement III., pope, i. 262 ; ii. 191 ; Paul bishop of Præneste, ii. 51 ; makes Longchamp legate, 83, 178 ; dies, 89.
Cleobulus, the wise man, i. 37.
Cleopatra, i. 359 ; ii. 57.
Clere, Matthew de, constable of Dover, ii. 100, 111.
Clerevals, castle of, ii. 18.
Clerkenwell, council of, ii. 33.
Clermont, in Auvergne, council of, i. 6, 220 ; ii. 273.
Sidonius, bishop of, i. 87.
Clermont, in Beauvaisis, count of, ii. 11, 86.
Cletus, pope, i. 19, 59, 62, 259 ; ii. 184, 185.
Clothar I., king of the Franks, i. 90, 98, 363 ; ii. 217.
Clothar II., ii. 217.
Clothar III., i. 117 ; ii. 217.
Clovis I., king of the Franks, i. 89, 90, 155, 439, 440.
Clovis II., i. 112, 117.
Clovis III., i. 122, 123.
Cluny, abbey of, i. 140, 304, 424 ; ii. 6, 173.
Odo, abbot of, i. 23, 150, 156.
Odilo, abbot of, i. 158.
Codiciacum, ii. 250.
Cœlesyria, i. 7.
Coenred, king of Wessex, i. 119.
Colchester, i. 378 ; ii. 152.
Ralph, archdeacon of, ii. 84.
Cologne, i. 132 ; besieged, 236.
archbishop of, chancellor in Italy, i. 308.
Gunthar, archbishop of, i. 137 ; ii. 131.
Heribert, archbishop of, i. 161.
Reginald, archbishop of, i. 318, 330.
Philip, archbishop of, ii. 12, 31, 32, 38.
Adolf, archbishop of, ii. 114.
Comminges, city of, i. 9.
Commodus, emperor, i. 67.
Conan. *See* Brittany.
Conche, mother of S. Patrick, i. 83.
Conches, i. 375.
Concretus, i. 163.
Connaught, king of, i. 348.
Conon, pope, i. 117, 260 ; ii. 189.
Conrad II., emperor, ii. 216.
Conrad III., emperor, i. 293 ; ii. 274.
Conrad, duke, i. 148, 362.
Constans I., emperor, i. 76.
Constans, king of Britain, i. 80.

Constantia, wife of king Robert of France, i. 165; conspires against Henry, 183; ii. 258.
wife of the emperor Maurice, i. 103.
daughter of William the Conqueror, i. 173.
daughter of Lewis VI., wife of Eustace, i. 303; married to the count of S. Giles, *ib.*
wife of the emperor Henry VI., ii. 39, 125.
of Brittany, bears a son named Arthur, ii. 48.
Constantine, the Great, ii. 183.
becomes emperor in Britain, i. 73; converted, 74; his dream, 74, 75; edict of, 76; baptism of, *ib.*; example of, 105, 176, 325, 431.
II., emperor, i. 76.
III., emperor, i. 112.
IV., emperor, i. 113.
V., emperor, i. 123.
VI., emperor, i. 125, 127, 129, 361.
VII., emperor, i. 142.
VIII., emperor, i. 147.
IX., emperor, i.
king of Britain, i. 80.
pope, i. 119, 260; ii. 189, 193.
Constantinople, i. 7, 176.
founded, i. 75; description of, *ib.*; dedicated, 76; council at, 79, 116; ii. 271, 272; earthquake at, i. 84; sixth general council at, 116; patriarch of, claims primacy, 108; empire transferred from, 130; cloth of, 428.
news from, ii. 59, 60.
church of S. Sophia at, i. 91–96, 97, 98.
Constantius I., emperor, i. 73; ii. 183.
II., emperor, i. 76.
Corbeuil, Mauger, count of, i. 152.
William of. *See* Canterbury.
Corboran, Saracen emir, ii. 81.
Cordeilla, story of, ii. 223, 224.
Cordova, i. 59.
Corfu, ii. 106.
Corinth, i. 46.
Cork, king of, i. 348.
Cornelius, has a vision of the victory of Cæsar, i. 43.
pope, i. 70, 259; ii. 186.
Cornhill, Gervase of, sheriff of Kent, i. 341.
Henry of, sheriff of Kent, ii. 100.
Cornwall, i. 66; ii. 167.
Reginald, earl of, dies, i. 401.
Corsica, i. 6.
Corvinensis (Ramsbury) Ethelstan, bishop of, i. 142.
Corylo, Bernard de, i. 338.
Cosdroes, son of Ormisdas, i. 100, 360.
son of Syroes, i. 109, 360.
Côtentin, Nigel of, ii. 254.
Courcelles, taken by Richard, ii. 164.
Coutances, city of, ii. 2.
Nigel of, ii. 254, 255.
Geoffrey, bishop of, i. 209, 213.
Walter of. *See* Rouen, archbishops of.
John of, dean of Rouen. *See* Worcester.
Coventry, foundation of Leofric, at, i. 192; ii. 211; monks restored to, 159; bishops of. *See* Lichfield.
Jobert, prior of, ii. 162.
Crannius, son of Clothar I., i. 98, 363.
Crediton, Eadulf, bishop of, i. 142.
Crema, John of, legate, i. 244.
Wido of, antipope, ii. 195.
Crêpy, the count of Flanders besieged at, ii. 9.
Crescentius, i. 160.
Crete, i. 7.
Creun, Maurice of, i. 380.
Cricklade, i. 219.
Crisopolis (Besançon), i. 306.
Crispin, William, taken at Tenchebrai, i. 235; strikes Henry I., 242; ii. 277.
Jocelin, joins the young Henry against his father, i. 371.
Croatia, ii. 41, 53, 54.
Crowland, i. 209, 401; ii. 211.
Crux Caroli, i. 280; ii. 119.
Cunimund, king of the Gepidæ, i. 100.
Curtius, Marcus, i. 48.

Cuthbert. *See* Canterbury.
Cuthburga, abbess of Wimburn, i. 120.
Cyclades, i. 7.
Cynedritha, wife of Offa, i. 128.
Cyprus, i. 7 ; ii. 91.
Isaac, emperor of, ii. 92.
Cyrus, heretic, i. 112.

D.

Dacia, i. 7, 55.
Dagobert I., king of the Franks, i. 111.
III., i. 120.
Dalmatia, i. 7, 55 ; ii. 41, 53, 54.
Damascus, i. 50 ; ii. 56, 82.
Damasus, I., pope, i. 21, 78, 79, 259 ; ii. 187.
II., pope, i. 262 ; ii. 191.
Dampiere, Guy de, ii. 79.
Dandulus, Janus, ii. 26.
Daniel, a clerk, made king of the Franks, i. 120.
Danube, river, i. 7, 75, 79.
Dardania, i. 7.
Darius, i. 358.
Daron (Daroum), ii. 56, 104.
Dartmouth, ii. 65.
David, king of Israel, i. 36.
king of Scots, defeated at the battle of the Standard, i. 250 ; knights Henry of Anjou, 291, 332.
prince of North Wales, i. 397.
bishop of Menevia, i. 98.
Dax, city of, i. 9.
Deborah, i. 36.
Decius, emperor, i. 70, 82.
Deira, i. 66.
Delphi, ii. 224.
Del pin, Jordan, ii. 86.
Demetrius, bishop of Alexandria, i. 68.
Democritus, of Abdera, i. 37, 38.
Demosthenes, i. 41, 46.
Denmark, Sweyn, king of. *See* Sweyn.
Canute, king of. *See* Canute.
Ingeburga, sister of Canute, king of, ii. 111, 129.
Deorhirst, i. 169.
Dermot, king of Dublin, i. 407.
Desiderius, king of the Lombards, i. 125.
antipope, Victor, i. 211.
Deusdedit, pope, i. 108, 260 ; ii. 188.
archbishop. *See* Canterbury.
Deuterus, an Arian bishop, i. 90.
Diablintum (Jublains), i. 8.
Diagoras, i. 40.
Diceto, Ralph de, dean of S. Paul's, i. 3, 263, 267, 291, 309 ; ii. 69, 167, 177, 180, 279.
letter of, to the archbishop of Lyons, and answer, i. 5 ; dates of the Imagines, 23 ; letter of, to Richard of Ilchester, 319, 282 ; summoned to Normandy, ii. 62, 69 ; officiates at Richard's coronation, 69 ; William his chaplain, 80, 81 ; is summoned to Normandy in 1198, 165 ; presents William of S. Mere l'Eglise as bishop elect, 166 ; letters of Walter of Coutances to, 112, 122, 135, 140, 141, 144, 148, 153 ; letter of, to Walter, 137 ; letter of, to William Longchamp, 177 ; to the clergy of Sens, 279.
Die, city of, i. 9.
Dieppe, ii. 161.
Dinensium civitas, i. 9.
Diocletian, reign of, i. 72, 73, 82 ; severity of, 95, 98.
Dionysius, pope, i. 70, 259 ; ii. 186.
bishop of Paris, i. 62.
cycle of, i. 19.
Dive, river, ii. 251.
Dogmersfield, ii. 104.
Dol, castle of, i. 209, 378 ; ii. 255.
Domfront, i. 248.
Domitian, emperor, i. 25, 62, 82.
Domnus, pope, i. 261 ; ii. 190.
Donus, pope, i. 114, 260 ; ii. 188.
Donzy, Hervey of, ii. 167.
Dorchester, bishops of, i. 111, 119, 217 ; see removed to Lincoln, 217.
Etla, i. 117.
Kenulf, i. 142.
Eadnoth, i. 166, 192.

Dorchester, bishops of—*cont.*
Wulfwy, i. 188.
Ulf, i. 190.
Remigius, i. 203, 217.
Dover, i. 198, 199, 226, 339, 433, 434; ii. 5, 43, 73, 97, 111.
John of, ii. 151.
Drepanum, rebuilt by Constantine, i. 75.
Dreux, Robert, count of, i. 375; ii. 79.
Driencourt, i. 247, 372, 386; ii. 47.
Dublin, Dermot, king of, i. 407.
archbishop of, ii. 68.
Dudley, castle of, i. 404.
Dunois, i. 161.
Dunwallo, story of, ii. 224.
Dunwich, see of, i. 126.
Durham, bishops of, list, ii. 207.
Egelwin, i. 203.
William, i. 213.
Ranulf Flambard, i. 233, 238.
Geoffrey, i. 246.
Hugh de Puiset, i. 338; allows the king of Scots to march through his estates, 376; at the council of Clerkenwell, ii. 33; goes abroad, 34.
Philip of Poictiers, conseerated, ii. 152.
presumption of the monks of, ii. 128.
Duvianus, i. 66; ii. 195.

E.

Eadbald, king of Kent, i. 108.
Eadburh, Saint, buried at Wimburn, i. 141.
Eadchida, i. 141.
Eadfleda, daughter of Edward the Elder, i. 141.
Eadgith, wife of Edward the Confessor, i. 189.
Eadiva, i. 141.
Eadric Streone, i. 169, 170.
Eadulfsnase, ii. 121.
Ealfgiva, i. 141.
East Anglia, bishops of, list, ii. 204; Hecca and Badewin, i. 111; Alfwin, 172; Alfric, Stigand and Grimketel, 183; Agelmar, 183; Stigand, 187.
Eata, bishop of Hexham, i. 115.
Ebalus, count of Poictou, ii. 246.
Ebba, sister of Oswald, i. 114.
Ebroin, mayor of the palace, i. 122.
Ecgfrith, king of Northumbria, i. 114, 117.
Edenen, i. 393.
Edgar, king of England, i. 150, 151, 153, 156.
Edgar Atheling, i. 170, 197, 200.
Edmund, king of England, i. 141, 146, 147.
Edmund Ironside, king of England, i. 169; his struggles, death, and burial, *ib.*; fate of his children, 170.
Edmund, king of the East Angles, i. 169.
Edred, king of England, i. 146.
Edris, messenger of the assassins, ii. 128.
Edward I., the elder, king of Wessex, i. 140, 141.
Edward II., king of England, the martyr, i. 153, 156.
Edward III., king of England, the Confessor, i. 167, 186, 193, 194.
son of Edmund Ironside, i. 170, 192; dies, 192.
Edwin, king of Northumbria, i. 110.
Edwin, earl, i. 197, 200.
Edwy, king of England, i. 150.
Egbert (Eadbert), king of Wessex, i. 127; conquers Mercia, 133.
Egypt, provinces of, i. 6, 7; S. Mark preaches in, 59; mission of Charles to, 126.
list of the kings of, ii. 220.
Ehud (Aioth), judge of Israel, i. 36.
Eiric, bishop, ii. 247.
Elah, king of Israel, i. 36.
Elbe, river, i. 131.
Eleanor, of Poictou, married to Lewis VII., i. 249; returns from Jerusalem, 291; divorced, 293; and married to Henry of Anjou, *ib.*; her son William born, 296; her son Henry born, 301; her daughter Matilda, 302; her daughter Eleanor, 306; her daughter Johanna, 317; her son John, 325; acts as regent in England, ii. 67; goes to Rome, 80; brings Berengaria to Messina, 86; manages the election of Hubert Walter to Canterbury, 108

Eleanor, daughter of Henry II., wife of Alfonso of Castille, born, i. 306, married, 334; ii. 17.
Eleazar, i. 36.
high priest, i. 49.
Eleuther, pope, i. 66, 259; ii. 185, 195.
Eleutheria, i. 95, 98.
Elfgiva, Emma, wife of Ethelred II., i. 152, 167, 170, 182.
Elfthritha, i. 151, 156.
Eli, judge of Israel, i. 36.
Eliashib, high priest, i. 47.
Elibert, king of the Franks, i. 98.
Elizabeth, sister of Geoffrey Martel, i. 199.
Elmham, see of, i. 126.
Elne, i. 9.
Elosaticum, i. 9.
Ely, monastery founded, i. 116; made an episcopal see, 239.
Etheldreda, abbess of, i. 116.
Sexburga, abbess of, i. 116.
Solomon, prior of, i. 392.
Richard, archdeacon of, ii. 69, 74, 75. *See* London, bishops of.
Wulfstan buried at, i, 172; the Atheling Alfred imprisoned at, 182; abbot of, 234.
bishops of, list, ii. 201, 208.
Hervey, i. 239, 413.
Nigel, i. 246, 253; banished, 253.
Geoffrey Ridel, i. 368, 392, 395; justiciar, 435; dies, ii. 69; his ring stolen, 75.
William Longchamp, elected, ii. 69; consecrated, 75; inthroned, *ib.*; made legate, 83, 178; and justiciar, *ib.*; holds council at Gloucester, 83; and Westminster, 85; consecrates the bishop of Worcester, 89; forbids the landing of archbishop Geoffrey, 96; orders his release, 97; his overthrow and exile, 97–101; in Germany, 113; transmits a letter to Ralph de Diceto, 127; dies on his way to Rome and is buried at le Pin, 150; letter of Ralph de Diceto to, 177.
Ely, bishops of:
Eustace, consecrated, ii. 159.
Embrun, i. 9, 132, 416.
Emerita (Merida), i. 7.
Emilia, province of, i. 6.
Emma, sister of Henry II., married to a Welsh prince, i. 397.
wife of duke Richard I. of Normandy, i. 152.
Enoch, the patriarch, i. 35.
Enos, the patriarch, i. 35.
Ephesus, council of, i. 83; seven sleepers at, 85; ii. 271.
Epirus, i. 7.
Episcopellus, ii. 111.
Erachea, i. 221.
Ercombert, king of Kent, i. 111.
Eregis, duke of Benevento, i. 126.
Erkenbald, of Bourbon, i. 199.
Erkenwald, bishop of London, i. 115; ii. 211.
Ermenburga, wife of Merewald, i. 114.
Ermenfrid, kills Ebroin, i. 122.
Ermengild, son of Levigild, i. 100.
Ernald (Arnold de Turre Rubea), master of the Temple, ii. 27, 32.
Escwine, king of Wessex, i. 112.
Esdras, i. 46.
Essex, Henry of, i. 310.
Earls of. *See* Mandeville.
Essparlum, i. 246.
Estrepinni, battle of, i. 241, 242; ii. 277.
Esturmy, Geoffrey de, i. 379.
Ethelbald, king of Wessex, i. 137; supplants his father, 136.
Ethelbert, king of Kent, i. 105, 106, 107.
king of the East Angles, i. 126, 128.
king of Wessex, i. 137.
Etheldreda, S., i. 114, 116, 117.
Ethelfleda, daughter of Edgar, i. 151.
Ethelhilda, i. 141.
Ethelred, king of Mercia, i. 117.
Ethelred I., king of Wessex, i. 137.
Ethelred II., king of England, i. 156, 160, 161, 166; dies, 168.
Ethelted, i. 155.
Ethelwulf, king of Wessex, i. 134, 135; pays Romescot, 136; his gift of a tenth, *ib.*

Ethelwulf, Dane, i. 154.
Etherius, archbishop of Arles, i. 106.
Ethicus (Euthicus), cosmographer, i. 21, 48.
Eu, castle of, i. 215; Baldwin of Flanders wounded at, 241.
county of, i. 373.
Godfrey, count of, i. 152; William, count of, *ib.*
William, count of, i. 214, 220.
Ralph, count of, ii. 156, 172.
Euathlus, story of, i. 39.
Eucratides, king of Bactria, i. 359.
Eudoxia, wife of Arcadius, i. 84.
Eugenius I., pope, i. 112, 260.
II., pope, i. 260.
III., pope, i. 256, 258, 262, 298.
Eulalius, antipope, i. 83; ii. 192.
Euphrates, i. 7.
Euphratesia, i. 7.
Eurydice, i. 358.
Eusebius, pope, i. 19, 21, 72, 259; ii. 186.
of Cæsarea, quoted, i. 25, 28, &c., 75; continued by Ruffinus, 76.
of Nicomedia, i. 76.
Eustace, son of king Stephen, i. 293, 296; dies, and is buried at Feversham, 296.
of Boulogne. *See* Boulogne.
Eutropius, i. 5, 21, 47, 48, 49, *sq.*
Eutyches, heresy of, i. 86.
Eutychianus, pope, i. 71, 259; ii. 186.
Evaristus, pope, i. 63, 259; ii. 185.
Evesham, i. 187, 307; ii. 211.
Adam, of, i. 307.
Evil Merodach, i. 357.
Evreux, i. 8, 62, 191, 199, 247; ii. 252.
bishops of:
Giles, i. 352.
John, ii. 14, 139.
Exeter, i. 200, 214, 248; ii. 173.
bishops of, list, ii. 205.
William Warelwast, i. 237.
Robert, consecrated by Theobald, i. 301.
Bartholomew, consecrated, i. 304; letter to, i. 337, 340; preaches at Canterbury, 349.
John the Chanter, consecrated, ii. 43.
Henry Marshall, ii. 145.
Eye, castle of, i. 314.
Eynesford, i. 311; ii. 279.
Eynsham, i. 403; ii. 41.

F.

Fabian, pope, i. 69, 259; ii. 186.
Faganus, i. 66; ii. 195.
Faie, Ralph de, i. 350.
Falaise, i. 396; ii. 257.
Famagust, in Cyprus, ii. 92.
Favorinus, discourse of, i. 43.
Fecamp, i. 215; ii. 253.
Felix I., pope, i. 71, 259; ii. 186.
II., pope, i. 89, 260; ii. 186.
III., pope, i. 260; ii. 187.
IV., i. 91, 260; ii. 187.
Ferrers, Robert of, earl of Derby, i. 385, 404.
Walkelin of, at Acre, ii. 79.
Ferté Bernard, ii. 62, 116.
Festus, i. 59.
Feversham, i. 295, 296.
Firmin, bishop of Amiens, i. 62.
FitzRalph, William, steward of Normandy, ii. 87, 89.
FitzUrse, Reginald, one of Becket's murderers, i. 343.
Flaminia, province of, i. 6.
Flanders, counts of, list of, ii. 275.
Baldwin I., i. 141.
Arnulf, i. 146, 152.
Baldwin, i. 152.
Arnulf II., ii. 275.
Baldwin the Bearded, i. 167, 173, 182.
Baldwin de Lisle, i. 173, 206, 207, 211.
Baldwin V., i. 173, 206.
Robert the Frisian, i. 173, 206, 207.
Robert of Jerusalem, i. 221.
Baldwin, mortally wounded at Eu, i. 241; dies, 243.
Charles, son of Canute of Denmark, i. 207, 243.
William Longsword, of Normandy, i. 245, 389.
Thierri of Alsace, i. 245; meets

Flanders, counts of– *cont.*
Henry II. at Rouen, 301 ; goes to Jerusalem, 302 ; mentioned, 387.
Philip joins the league against Henry II., i. 373 ; has to retreat, *ib.* ; threatens to invade England, 381 ; besieges Rouen, 386 ; makes peace, 398, 399 ; takes the Cross, 399 ; punishes his wife's lover, 402 ; sends an envoy to Henry, 416 ; goes to Jerusalem, 421 ; is at the coronation of Philip II., 438 ; marriage of Philip II. to his niece, ii. 5 ; quarrels with Philip 8 ; defeated and shut up in Crêpy, 9 ; makes peace, 10, 11 ; marries a daughter of the king of Portugal, 28, 29 ; comes to London, with the archbishop of Cologne, 31 ; attacks the count of Hainault, 32 ; makes peace again with France, 38 ; goes to Italy ; 39 ; meets the kings at Gisors, 40.
Baldwin of Hainault, father of the queen of France, ii. 5 ; his enmity with count Philip, 32 ; makes a treaty with Richard, 153; besieges S. Omer, 163 ; goes to Jerusalem, 168.
Flavia, province, i. 7.
Fleche, Helias de la, i. 183, 239.
Fleury, monastery of, i. 145 ; archbishop Odo goes to, *ib.*
Hamo (or Hugh) of, i. 15, 23, 135 ; quoted, 15, 48, 77, 78, 80, 101, 103, 116, 129, 131, 293.
Fontaines, ii. 116.
Walter de, i. 402.
Fontenay, battle of, i. 135.
Fontevraud, Henry II. buried at, ii, 64.
Forez, Reginald, son of Gigo count of, archbishop of Lyons, ii. 120.
Formosus, pope, i. 16, 141, 142, 143, 260 ; ii. 190.
Fougeres, Ralph of, i. 329, 378 ; ii. 63, 64.
Framlingham, castle of, i. 377, 384.
Franks, origin of, i. 79, 112.
kings of, ii. 217–219.
Frederick I. emperor, i. 293, 421, 426 ; becomes emperor, 293 ; crowned, 301 ; adheres to the antipope Octavian, 303 ; has a conference at Besançon, 306 ; ii. 51, 52, 56, 64 ; invades Italy, i. 397, 408 ; is defeated by the Lombards, 408 ; sends an envoy to Henry II., 416 ; returns from Italy and is crowned at Arles, 426 ; his wife at Vienne , 427 ; meets the pope at Verona, ii. 30 ; crowns his son, 31 ; his assent required for the peace between France and Flanders, 38 ; is crowned at Milan, 39 ; letter of Henry II. to, 51 ; answer, 52 ; letter on his relations with the papacy, 44–47 ; letter to Saladin, 56 ; starts for Palestine, 64 ; goes across Asia Minor, 83 ; and is drowned, 84.
Frederick II., birth of, ii. 125.
Fredewald, father of S. Osyth, i. 111.
founder of Chertsey, i. 115.
Frejus, town of, i. 9.
Freteval, i. 305, 339 ; ii. 117.
Frisia, converted by Wilfrid, i. 116.
Friuli, conquered by Charles, i. 125, 132.
Fulda, i. 201 ; abbot of, 178.
Fulk, count of Anjou. *See* Anjou.
archbishop of Rheims, i. 141.
Furnival, Gerard de, ii. 43.

G.

Gaath, i. 35.
Gainsborough, Sweyn at, i. 167.
Gaius, pope, i. 72, 260 ; ii. 186.
Galatia, i. 7, 55.
Galatitidis, in Palestine, ii. 56.
Galerius, emperor, i. 73.
Galicia, king of, i. 297 ; ii. 29.
Gallus, emperor, i. 70.
Galviniacum, i. 199.
Gamius, king, ii. 29.
Garnier, of Loches, i. 143.
of Nablous, ii. 44.
Garonne, river, i. 24, 293.
Garsias, king of Navarre. *See* Navarre.
Gascony, i. 295.

Gastinois, i. 136, 139, 185 ; ii. 15.
Gaul, provinces of, i. 6 ; description of, 25 ; allotted to Cæsar, 51.
Gaza, in Palestine, ii. 50, 56.
Gelasius I., pope, i. 89, 260 ; ii. 187.
II. pope, i. 241, 262 ; ii. 191.
Geldoin of Saumur, i. 159, 164, 165.
Gellius, Aulus, i. 20, 60 ; extracts from, i. 15, 37, 38–46, 181, &c.
Gemaladin, a Saracen Emir, ii. 81.
Genabensis civitas (Orleans), ii. 243.
Genebraudus, duke of the Franks, i. 79.
Gennadius of Constantinople, i. 87.
of Marseilles, i. 22, 80, 89.
Genoa, i. 388 ; ii. 83.
Genseric (Geiseric), king of the Vandals, i. 86.
Geoffrey (Vinsauf), the poet, ii. 118.
count of Brittany, i. 152.
of Anjou. *See* Anjou.
sons of Henry II. *See* Brittany, York.
chancellor of the young king Henry, i. 406, 422.
brother of Henry II., knighted, i. 291; subdued by his brother, i. 295 ; dies, i. 302.
George, patriarch of Constantinople, i. 116.
Gepidæ, i. 100.
Gerard, count of Burgundy, i. 121.
Gerberga, queen, i. 152 ; ii. 251, 252.
Gerberoi, i. 210.
Gerbert (Silvester II.), i. 157.
Gerinum, in Palestine, ii. 28.
Germanus, of Auxerre, i. 81.
Germany, provinces of, i. 6.
Ghent, Arnulf of, i. 170.
Gibilinum, in Palestine, ii. 56.
Gideon, judge of Israel, i. 36.
Gigny, monastery of, i. 140 ; Berno abbot of, *ib.*
Gigo, count of Forez, ii. 120.
Gilbert, son of Richard, lord of Tunbridge, ii. 214. *See* Clare.
Gildas, i. 22, 100.
Gilerval, Fulk of, ii. 164.
Gisla, wife of Rollo, i. 143 ; ii. 246.
Gisors, i. 244, 303, 330, 347; ii. 6, 44, 51, 55, 164.
Glanvill, Ranulf, the justiciar, ii. 14, 43, 84.
Glastonbury, i. 149, 169; ii. 211; Agelnoth, abbot of, i. 200 ; Henry, abbot of, i. 246.
Gloucester, i. 211, 214, 217, 244.
abbey of, i. 192 ; ii. 212.
castle of, i. 301.
Robert, earl of, i. 255.
William, earl of, i. 385, 415 ; joins Henry in 1174, i. 385 ; ii. 72, 166.
Godfrey, of Bouillon. *See* Jerusalem.
of Lorraine. *See* Lorraine.
Godin, castle of, in Spain, i. 419.
Godiva, i. 192.
Godwin, earl, i. 182, 186.
Metropolitan of Gaul, i. 118.
Gog and Magog, i. 48.
Gohet, William of, ii. 116.
Gonnor, the duchess, i. 152; her relations and descendants, ii. 265.
Gordianus, i. 69.
Goulet, le, ii. 174.
Gournay, Hugh de, i. 369.
Grad, see of, i. 132.
Grassai, ii. 58.
Gratian, cardinal, i. 335.
Gratz, in Austria, ii. 124.
Gravelines, ii. 73.
Gregory I., pope, i. 16, 101, 260 ; ii. 188 ; letters of, i. 102, 104, 105, 107.
II., pope, i. 119, 260 ; ii. 189.
III., pope, i. 16, 120, 260 ; ii. 189.
IV., pope, i. 16, 134, 260 ; ii. 189.
V., pope, i. 261 ; ii. 190.
VI., pope, i. 180, 187, 260, 261 ; ii. 179, 191.
VII., pope, i. 208, 210, 211, 261 ; ii. 191.
VIII., pope, ii. 50, 51, 261, 191 ; Albert of Beneventum, 50 ; letter of, 50, 51 ; dies, 51.
bishop of Pontus, i. 70, 71.
Grenoble, ii. 41, 171.
Grentemaisnil, Hugh de, i. 214.
Grimoald, mayor of the palace, i. 123.
Groby, castle of, i. 384.
Guelders, duke of, ii. 80, 83.
Guidomar, of Leon, i. 346.

Guildford, massacre at, i. 182; John at, ii. 171.
Guithelin, archbishop of London, i. 80.
Gundeville, Hugh de, i. 315, 342.
Gundulf, father of S. Anselm, i. 223.
Gunhilda, daughter of Canute, i. 174.
Gunthar, archbishop of Cologne, i. 137.
Guntran, king of the Franks, i. 98, 100.
Gurgi, a Saracen Emir, ii. 81.
Guthred, king of Wessex, i. 120.
Guy, bishop of Puy, i. 149.
count of Ponthieu, i. 193.
Gyrth, brother of Harold, i. 197.
Gyrvii, i. 115.

H.

Hacon, son of Sweyn, i. 98.
Hadwis, wife of Hugh of Paris, i. 152.
wife of Geoffrey of Brittany, i. 152.
Haia, Ralph de, i. 378, 381, 385.
Haifa (Cayphas), ii. 86, 184.
Haigroldus (Harold), i. 147.
Hainault, county of, i. 206, 207; ii. 32.
Baldwin, count of, i. 207; Ernulf, his son, i. 207.
Baldwin, count of, ii. 5. *See* Flanders.
Hakenet, castle of, i. 377.
Hakentune, near Canterbury, church of, ii. 72, 89, 90.
Haligeland, i. 159.
Hallinges, in Kent, ii. 21; the property of the bishop of Rochester, ii. 21.
Ham, abbey, ii. 146.
Hame, Odo de, ii. 80.
Hamo, bishop of Leon, i. 346.
Hamo, precentor of York, ii. 78.
Hangi, Florence of, at Acre, ii. 79.
Harderic, duke of the Austrasians, i. 126.
Hardicanute, king, i. 176, 181, 186.
Harecurt, Ausculf de, ii. 265.
Hareng, siege of, i. 423.
Harold I., king of England, i. 176, 181, 182; dies, 185; his burial, 186.
Harold II., i. 189, 193; king, 194; killed, 197; story of, 198.
king of the Danes, i. 153.
(Haigroldus), i. 147.
Harold—*cont.*
(Haravaghe), i. 194.
Harrow (Herges), church of, i. 342.
Hasting, exploits of, i. 136, 154; ii. 243, 244.
Hastings, battle of, i. 195, 196.
Hatfield, council of, i. 117.
Heber, the patriarch, i. 35.
Hegesippus, i. 20, 26, 27, 67.
Helena, mother of Constantine, i. 76, 105.
Helenopolis, i. 75.
Hellespont, i. 7.
Hemeriontus, i. 7.
Hengist, i. 85; ii. 228.
Henry I., king of Germany, i. 144; ii. 247, 248, 251.
Henry II., emperor, i. 161.
Henry III., emperor, i. 176, 187; anecdotes of, 176.
Henry IV., emperor, i. 191, 210; takes Rome, 211; attacked by his son, 235, 363; dies, 236.
Henry V., emperor, i. 235, 236, 363; marries Matilda, daughter of Henry I., 236; captures the pope, 239.
Henry VI., emperor, election of, ii. 31; marriage of, 39; coronation of, 89; Richard I. given up to, 106, 110; releases him, 113; letters of, 118, 125.
Henry, a heretic, i. 295.
duke of Lorraine, i. 155.
Henry, king of France, i. 174, 183, 190.
Henry I., king of England, i. 6, 212; ii. 239.
knighted, i. 211; his father leaves him his treasures, 212; becomes king, 233; his marriage, *ib.*; quarrels with Anselm, 227, 234; conquers Normandy, 235; makes peace with Anselm, 236; supports the archbishop of Canterbury against York, 241; victorious against the French, 241, 242; marries again, 243; meets the pope, 244; invades France, 246; attempts to secure the crown to Matilda, 245, 247; dies, 247; his great buildings, 247; story of his disinheriting Matilda, 248; buried at Reading, 247.

Henry II., born at le Mans, i. 246; fealty sworn to him, 247; knighted at Carlisle, 291; receives the duchy of Normandy, *ib.*; marries Eleanor of Aquitaine, 293; confederation against him, 294; humbles his brother Geoffrey, 295; comes to England and takes Malmesbury, *ib.*; his son William born, 296; makes peace with Stephen, 296, 297; comes to England on Stephen's death, 298; is crowned, 299; his descent traced to Noah, *ib.*; has a grant of Ireland, 300; his son Henry born, 301; goes to Normandy, *ib.*; takes Mirabel and Loudun, 302; returns, receives the northern counties, and is crowned at Worcester, *ib.*; visits Paris, *ib.*; besieges Toulouse, 303; accepts Alexander III. as pope, *ib.*; marries his son Henry to Margaret of France, *ib.*; takes Chaumont, 304; makes peace, 305; makes Thomas archbishop, 306–308; returns to England, 308; offended with Becket, 312; his policy at Clarendon, 313; negotiations on the Becket quarrel, 314–339; allows him to return, 339; receives the news of the murder, 345; comes to England and visits the bishop of Winchester, 347; goes to Ireland, 348, 350; is absolved at Avranches, 351, 352; goes into Auvergne, 353; rebellion of his sons, 355; orders the election of bishops, 366; is at Rouen during the rebellion, 373; puts Lewis to flight from Verneuil, 374, 375; subdues Maine and Anjou; 379, 380; is at Bonneville, 381; visits England, 382; at Canterbury, 383, 384; receives the submission of the rebels, 384, 385; returns to France 385; the enemy fly on hearing of his arrival, 386, 387; is reconciled with his sons, 393; makes peace, 394; takes no ransoms, 395;

Henry II.—*cont.*
makes peace with the Scots, 396; receives homage from his sons, 398; comes to England, 399; letter of, announcing the peace, 400; visited by cardinal Hugo, 403; pays his son's debts, 404; appoints justices itinerant, *ib.*; writes to the pope, 410; letter of the king of Sicily to, 413; sends Johanna to Sicily, 414; decides between the kings of Castille and Navarre, 415, 418–420; goes to France in 1177, and makes a treaty with Lewis, 421; has guardianship of the heiress of Châteauroux, 425; buys the county of La Marche, *ib.*; returns to England, 426; meets Lewis VII. at Dover, 433; his legal improvements, 434, 435; punishes the murderers of Cadwallon, 437; sends an embassy to Paris in 1180, ii. 4; keeps Easter at Le Mans, 5; reconciles Philip to his mother, 6; meets three kings, 7; makes his will, 10; writes to the bishop of Winchester, 11; seizes archbishop Roger's treasure, 12; second rebellion of his sons, 15; returns to England in 1184, 21; goes to Canterbury, 23; letter of Lucius III. to, 30; has a visit from the archbishop of Cologne, 31; asks advice of the council of Clerkenwell as to a crusade, 33; knights John, 34; visited by Philip at Belvoir, 38; meets the princes at Gisors, 40; comes to England, *ib.*; goes to Winchester, 41; receives Philip's envoys, 43; goes to Normandy in 1187, 47; meets Philip and takes the cross, 51; writes in preparation for crusade, 51–54; goes to France, in July 1188, 55; advances as far as Mantes, 55; has a conference with Philip and Richard, 58; summons the dean of S. Paul's to France, 62; more conferences, 62; flight from

Henry II.—*cont.*
Le Maus and peace, 63; dies at Chinon, 64; and is buried at Fontevraud, 65; verses about him, *ib.*
Henry III., son of Henry II., born, i. 301; betrothed to Margaret of France, 302, 303; homage done to him, 306; at Becket's election, 306; receives the homage of the Scots and Welsh, 311; crowned in 1170, 338; letter of Henry II. to, 339; swears in confirmation of his father's oath, 352; is crowned a second time, *ib.*; is at Montferrand in 1173, 353; his first rebellion, 354; captures Hugh de Gournai, 369; conspirators with him against his father, 371; impedes the consecration of the bishops, 372, 388; promises estates to the counts of Flanders and Boulogne, 373; besieges Seez, 379; joins in the siege of Rouen, 386; reconciled with his father, 393; takes heavy ransoms, 395; does homage to his father, 398; goes to Canterbury, 399; advises his father, 404; his exploits in France, 428; is at Philip's coronation, 438, 439; visits England, ii. 5; at a meeting of four kings in 1181, 7; supports Philip against the count of Sancerre, 9; story of his second rebellion and death, 15, 16, 17–19; his burial, 20, 239.
Heraclius, emperor, i. 108.
patriarch of Jerusalem, 27, 32.
Herebert, of Middlesex, archbishop in Italy, ii. 37.
of Maine. *See* Maine.
of Cologne. *See* Cologne.
count of Vermandois, i. 144.
Hereford, see of, i. 126.
castle of, ii. 100.
William Fitz Osbern, earl of, i. 195, 200, 207, 208.
Roger, earl of, i. 208, 209.
Henry of, i. 401.
Hereford, bishops of:
Walter, i. 193, 197, 202.
Robert, i. 219.
Gerard, i. 233.
Reiuelm, i. 234, 236.
Robert, i. 246, 251.
Gilbert Foliot, translated to London, i. 309.
Robert Foliot, archdeacon of Oxford, elected, i. 368; consecrated, 392.
William de Vere, ii. 41.
Giles de Braiose, consecrated, ii. 169.
Herleva, i. 173.
Herlewin, of Ponthieu, i. 146; ii. 248.
abbot of Bec. *See* Bec.
Hermenburga, mother of Anselm, i. 223.
Hermengarde, wife of Lewis the Pious, i. 133, 134.
Herod, the Great, i. 56, 360.
Hertford, council of, i. 115.
Hesdin, ii. 47.
Hexham, bishops of, i. 115, 117.
Hezekiah, king of Judah, i. 37.
Hilarus, pope, i. 87, 260; ii. 187.
Hilary, of Poictiers, i. 21, 78.
Hildebrand, i. 208. *See* Gregory VII.
Hinguar, the Dane, i. 159.
Hippo, i. 81.
Homer, i. 45.
Honorida, province, i. 7.
Honorius, emperor, i. 28, 80; ii. 192.
archbishop. *See* Canterbury.
I., pope, i. 16, 109, 110, 260; ii. 188.
II., pope, i. 244. 262; ii. 191.
Hophni, son of Eli, i. 36.
Horace, the poet, i. 53.
Hormead, church of, ii. 48.
Hormisdas, pope, i. 90, 260; ii. 187.
king of Persia, i. 100, 360.
Horsa, i. 85.
Hortensius, i. 41.
Hosea, king of Israel, i. 37.
Hospital, master of, ii. 27.
Hubert, legate of Alexander II., i. 206.
Hugh Pierleoni, legate, i. 402, 404, 410.
Hugh the Great, duke of the Franks, i. 152. 155; ii. 247, 278.

Hugh, Capet, i. 152, 155, 157, 440; dies 158.
king of Arles, i. 149.
marquis of Italy, i. 160.
archdeacon of Middlesex, i. 251.
of Vermandois, i. 221, 222.
Hulme, S. Bennet of, abbey, i. 401.
Humbald, bishop of Ostia, ii. 9. *See* Lucius III. pope.
Hungary, i. 192.
Solomon, king of, i. 170.
Bela, king of, ii. 41, 51, 53, 54; marries queen Margaret, 41.
Huns, ravages of, i. 80.
Huntingdon, castle of, i. 384; descent of the earldom of, 266.
county of, given to the king of Scots, ii. 35.
Hurley, Ralph, prior of, i. 173.
Hyde, abbey, i. 401.
Hyginus, pope, i. 65, 259; ii. 185.
Hylderic, king of the Franks, i. 86.
Hyllendune, battle of, i. 133.
Hylviones, i. 131.
Hyre, earl, i. 170.
Hyrcanus, prince of the Jews, i. 20, 51, 52.

I.

Iconium, sultan of, ii. 59.
Ida, of Boulogne, i. 180, 181.
Idacius, the historian, i. 22, 89.
Ignatius, architect of S. Sophia, i. 92, 98.
Ilchester, i. 214.
Richard of. *See* Winchester.
Ilium, i. 7.
Illyricum, i. 6, 7, 51, 55.
Inachus, i. 28.
India, i. 140.
Ingelger, ancestor of the counts of Anjou, i. 136, 139. *See* Anjou.
grandson of the former, i. 143.
Ini, king of Wessex, i. 114.
Innocent I., pope, i. 80, 81, 259; ii. 187.
II., pope, i. 246, 262; ii. 191, 273, 274.
III., pope, i. 262; ii. 191; elected, 151; confirms the exchange of Andely, 153–155.
Ipswich, i. 378.
Ireland, i. 10; ii. 34, 35; legation of John Paparon to, i. 295; given to Henry II. by Adrian IV., i. 300, 301; visited by him, i. 348, 350; Richard of Striguil in, 375; John sent to, ii. 34; legates sent to, 47.
Irene, empress, i. 125; deposed, i. 127; blinds her son, 129.
Isaac, the patriarch, i. 35.
Angelus, emperor, ii. 38, 52, 53, 118; blinded and imprisoned, 118.
Comnenus. See Cyprus.
Isabel, wife of John, ii. 170.
countess of Flanders, i. 402.
Isidore, of Seville, i. 23, 96.
Issoudun, ii. 58.
Italy, provinces of, i. 6; boundaries of, 48.
Ithamar, bishop of Rochester, i. 112.
Iveri, ii. 6.
Ivo, of Chartres, i. 23, 216.
quoted, i. 32, 33, 298, 305, 413.
Ixning, conspiracy at, i. 209.

J.

Jabdon, judge of Israel, i. 36.
Jacob, patriarch, i. 35.
Jaddus, high priest, i. 47, 48.
Jair, judge of Israel, i. 36.
James, S., martyrdom of, i. 25.
James, S., stoned, i. 59.
Jared, patriarch, i. 35.
Jehoahaz, king of Judah, i. 37.
Jehoiachin, king of Judah, i. 37.
Jehoiakim, king of Judah, i. 37, 357.
Jehu (Heiu), king of Israel, i. 36.
Jephthah, i. 36, 355.
Jeremiah, prior of Canterbury, i. 252.
Jeroboam I., king of Israel, i. 36.
II., i. 37.
Jerome, S., i. 21, 79, 80; translates the Bible, i. 77.
quoted, i. 25, 28, 58, 62, 67, 69, &c., 79, 80.

Jerusalem, sufferings of, ii. 76 ; taken by Titus, i. 61 ; rebuilt by Adrian, 65 ; discovery of the Cross at, i. 76 ; mission of Charles to, 126, 127 ; Fulk of Anjou at, 163, 164 ; taken by the Crusaders, i. 232 ; taken by Saladin, ii. 50, 56.
kings of :
Godfrey of Bouillon, i. 233.
Baldwin I., i. 181, 233.
Baldwin II., i. 241.
Fulk of Anjou, i. 243.
Amalric I., i. 385 ; ii. 47, 104.
Baldwin IV., i. 385.
Guy of Lusignan, ii. 47 ; taken captive, 49; released, 56.
Jesus, dates of the Incarnation, i. 56, 57, 58.
Josephus' account of, i. 61.
Jesus, son of Ananias, i. 60.
the high priest, i. 47.
(Jason), i. 50.
Jews, imprisoned in France, ii. 4 ; persecuted in England, 69, 75, 76.
Joachim, high priest, i. 47.
Joash, king of Judah, i. 36.
king of Israel, i. 37.
Jocelin, of Louvain, i. 342.
Johanna, daughter of Henry II., born, i. 317 ; married to William of Sicily, 414; restored by Tancred to Richard, ii. 86; leaves Palestine, 106.
John, emperor, i, 153.
John, Comnenus, emperor, ii. 11.
high priest, i. 47.
the Baptist, i. 57.
the Faster, i. 102.
I., pope, i. 91, 260; ii. 187.
II., pope, i. 91, 260; ii. 187.
III., pope, i. 260; ii. 188.
IV., pope, i. 111, 260; ii. 188.
V., pope, i. 117, 260; ii. 188.
VI., pope, i. 118, 260 ; ii. 189.
VII., pope, i. 119, 260 ; ii. 189.
VIII., pope, i. 138, 141, 260 ; ii. 189.
IX., pope, i. 142, 261 ; ii. 190.
X., pope, i. 144, 261 ; ii. 190.
John—*cont.*
XI., pope, i. 145, 261 ; ii. 190.
XII., pope, i. 150, 151, 261; ii. 190, 273.
XIII., pope, i. 150, 151, 261; ii. 190.
XIV., pope, i. 153, 261 ; ii. 190.
XV., pope, i. 261 ; ii. 190.
XVI., pope, i. 261 ; ii. 190.
XVII., pope, i. 261 ; ii. 190.
XVIII., pope, i. 261 ; ii. 190.
XIX., pope, i. 174, 261 ; ii. 190.
XX., pope, i. 261; ii. 191.
son of Henry II. born, i. 325 ; betrothed, 353 ; made heir of Gloucester, 415 ; knighted, ii. 34; sent to Ireland, 34 ; returns to England, 39; marries his cousin of Gloucester, 72 ; takes an active part in the overthrow of Longchamp, 97–100; the bishop of London sends him a curiosity, 102; he begins to aim at the crown, 106 ; is surety for Richard, 153 ; succeeds his brother, 166 ; is crowned and divorces his wife, 166, 167 ; makes peace, 168; proposes to marry the king of Portugal's daughter, 170 ; marries Isabella of Angoulême, 170; is at the funeral of S. Hugh of Lincoln, 171 ; is crowned at Canterbury, 172; goes to Normandy, *ib.* ; meets king Philip at le Goulet, 174.
John, of Oxford. See Norwich.
of Salisbury. See Chartres.
of Poictiers. See Lyons.
Jonathan, high priest, i. 50.
Joppa, ii. 47, 56, 58, 104, 105.
Joram, king of Judah, i. 36.
king of Israel, i. 36.
Jordanes, historian, i. 22, 96.
Josephus, historian, i. 20, 25, 28, 61, 62.
Joshua, judge of Israel, i. 36.
high priest, i. 50.
Josiah, king of Judah, i. 37.
Jotham, king of Judah, i. 37.
Jovian, emperor, i. 77.
Judas, high priest, i. 47, 49.

Judith, wife of Lewis I., i. 134.
duchess of Normandy, i. 167 ; daughter of Conan of Brittany, i. 162.
wife of Ethelwulf, i. 136.
Julian, emperor, i. 77.
bishop of le Mans, i. 62.
Julius I., pope, i. 76, 259; ii. 186.
Cæsar, i. 5, 24, 25, 51–53, 176, 293.
Africanus, i. 20, 28, 66.
Jumieges, Robert of, i. 188.
buildings of S. Philibert at, ii. 243; restored, 248.
Justin, the historian, i. 20, 24.
I., emperor, i. 90.
II., emperor, i. 98.
Justina, empress, i. 78.
Justinian I., emperor, i. 22, 91, 177.
his building of the church of S. Sophia, i. 91–96, 97.
II., emperor, i. 118.
Jutes, colonies of, i. 85.
Juvavum (Salzburg), i. 132.

K.

Karloman, son of Pipin, i. 122.
son of Lewis the Stammerer, i. 139.
Kenewalch, king of Wessex, builds Winchester cathedral, i. 112; expels bishop Wine, 113.
Kent, colonized by Jutes, i. 85.
Kent, Richard of, ii. 150.
Kentwine, king of Wessex, i. 112.
Kerak, in Palestine, ii. 27.
Kinegils, king of Wessex, i. 100, 111, 112.
Kinewulf, king of Wessex, i. 123.
Kingston, coronations at, i. 140, 144, 146, 147 ; ii. 235, 237.
Knaresborough, i. 346.
Kutepez, ii. 59.
Kynric, king of Wessex, i. 90.

L.

Lacy, Walter de, i. 209.
Hugh de, ii. 34.
Lagman, king of the Swedes, ii. 255.
La haie, i. 143.
Lais, story of, i. 46.
Lambert, brother of Herlewin of Montreuil, ii. 251.
Lambeth, consecrations at, i. 403 ; ii. 38, 41, 75.
council at, i. 354, Hubert Walter's return to, ii. 158.
church of St. Thomas at, ii. 165, 212.
death of Hardicanute at, i. 186.
Lamech, the patriarch, i. 35.
Landegrave, (Lewis of Thuringia), ii. 70, 80, 83.
Landiacum, Laudiacum, i. 184.
Lando, pope, i. 144, 261 ; ii. 190.
Landon, castle of, i. 136, 139, 154, 155, 162, 185, 199.
Landric, i. 161.
Langford, Ralph of, canon of St. Paul's, i. 250.
Langres, i. 8.
bishop of, goes on Crusade, i. 257.
Laodicea, taken by the Crusaders, i. 222.
Laon, i. 8, 145, 157 ; ii. 249.
Ascelin, bishop of, i. 157.
Laurence, chaplain of Thomas Becket, i. 311.
Laurence, S., martyrdom of, i. 70.
antipope, i. 89 ; ii. 193.
Lear, story of, ii. 223.
Lectoure, city of, i. 9.
Legin, in Spain, i. 419.
Legionum urbs, i. 66.
Leicester, town of, i. 376.
earl Robert of, the justiciar, i. 318.
earl Robert, (son of the other), i. 371, 385, 404.
bishops of, i. 116, 126; Leofwin, bishop of, i. 150, 151.
Leicestershire, i. 376.
Leo I., pope, i. 22, 84, 86, 260 ; ii. 187.
II., pope, i. 260 ; ii. 189.

Leo—*cont.*
III., pope i. 16, 260 ; ii. 189.
IV., pope, i. 260 ; ii. 189.
V., i. 145, 261 ; ii. 190, 193.
VI., i. 145, 261 ; ii, 190.
VII., i. 261 ; ii. 190.
VIII., i. 151, 152, 261 ; ii. 190.
IX., i. 188, 261 ; ii. 191, 273.
Leo, abbot, i. 157,
Leo I., emperor, i. 86.
III., the Isaurian, i. 120.
IV., avarice of, i. 125.
Leofric, earl of Mercia, i. 192.
Leofwin, brother of Harold, i. 197.
Leonine, city, i. 134.
Leontia, empress, i. 104.
Lesbos, i. 42.
Leudesius, mayor of the palace, i. 122.
Levi, i. 35.
Levigild, king of the Visgoths, i. 100.
Levin, river, i. 15.
Lewes, monastery of, ii. 173.
Lewis I., emperor, i. 133, 362.
Lewis II., emperor, i. 137.
the Stammerer, i. 139.
the Child, i. 142.
Outremer, i. 144.
V., son of Lothar, i. 157.
son of Charles, the competitor of Hugh Capet, i. 157.
VI., succeeds his father, i. 237 ; invades Normandy, 241 ; dies, 249.
Lewis VII. ; succeeds, i. 249 ; married to Eleanor of Aquitaine, 249 ; quarrels with the clergy of Bourges, 256 ; prepares for a crusade, 256 ; goes on crusade, 257 ; has a letter from Manuel Comnenus, 257 ; starts, 258 ; returns, 291 ; receives the homage of Henry of Normandy, 291 ; is divorced, 293 ; goes on pilgrimage to Compostella, 300 ; forms a league against Henry, 294 ; marries a Spanish princess, 297 ; visits Mont S. Michel, 302 ; loses his second wife, and marries Ala of Champagne, 303 ; defends Toulouse, 303 ; quarrels with Henry
Lewis VII.—*cont.*
II., 304 ; makes peace, 305 ; his son Philip born, 317 ; lodges Becket at Sens, 329 ; goes to war in 1167, 330 ; has a conference with Henry in 1169, 335 ; and another at Montmirail in 1170, 338 ; prompts the rebellion of Henry's sons, 355 ; besieges Verneuil, 372 ; flies before Henry, 375 ; besieges Rouen, 386 ; retires, 386, 387 ; opposes the confirmation of Henry's bishops, 388 ; makes peace, 394 ; writes to John of Salisbury, 412 ; makes a treaty with Henry in 1177, i. 421 ; his daughter marries Alexius Comnenus, 431 ; visits Canterbury in 1179, 432, 433 ; has his son crowned, 438 ; his illness, ii. 4 ; is deprived of his seal, 6 ; distributes his goods among the poor, and dies, 7.
had the golden rose from Alexander III., i. 310.
Lewis, son of Philip II. born, ii. 48 ; marries Blanche of Castile, 168.
Liberius, pope, i. 77, 259 ; ii. 186.
Libya, province, i. 7.
Licelina, ii. 242, 254.
Lichfield, bishops of, list of, ii. 202.
Cuthwin, bishop of, i. 116.
Aldulf, i. 126.
Robert (Chester), i. 211.
Richard, archdeacon of Coventry, consecrated, i. 305 ; letter to, 340.
Gerard la Pucelle, consecrated, ii. 20 ; dies, 21.
Hugh of Nunant, elect of, legate to Ireland, ii. 47 ; his conduct disapproved of by archbishop Baldwin, 77 ; letters touching him, 77, 78 ; plundered at Dover, 111 ; expels monks from Coventry, 159.
Geoffrey, elected and consecrated, ii. 162, 163 ; is at the council of Westminster, ii. 169.
archbishopric of, i. 126.
Licinius, emperor, i. 76.
Lidii, castrum, see Loir.

Liege, Henry IV. at, i. 236.
Liguria, i. 6.
Limerick, king of, i. 348.
Limeszun, in Cyprus, ii. 91, 92.
Limoges, see of, i. 9, 62; ii. 244.
Martial, bishop of, i. 62.
Sebrand, bishop elect of, ii. 4,
Lincoln, Paulinus consecrated at, i. 110; church founded, ii. 211.
see of, i. 151, 217; Stephen crowned at, i. 256.
Richard, dean of, ii. 41, (*See* London) allowed to hold preferment, ii. 74, 75.
bishops of; list, ii. 201.
Eadnoth (Dorchester), i. 166, 192.
Wulfwy, (Dorchester), i. 188.
Ulf (Dorchester), i. 190; ii. 273.
Remigius, i. 203, 217.
Robert Bloet, i. 218.
Alexander, i. 244, 251; arrested by Stephen, i. 252.
Robert de Chesney, i. 258, 310; dies, 329.
Geoffrey, elect of. *See* York.
Walter of Coutances. *See* Rouen.
Hugh of Avalon, elected, ii. 41; consecrated, 42; attends the king of Scots to Canterbury, 72; is at the election to Canterbury, 103; and at Rouen in 1196, 145; his death and burial, 171.
Lindisfarne, bishops of:
Aidan, i. 111.
Eata, i. 117.
Cuthbert, i. 117, 159, 171.
Eardulf, i. 159.
Edmund, i. 171.
Lindsey, Ethelwin, bishop of, 116; Eadhed, bishop of, 117; Leofwin, bishop of, 150.
Linus, pope, i. 19, 59, 60, 62; ii. 184, 185.
Lions, forest of, i. 247.
Lisbon, ii. 30, 65, 66.
Lisieux, see of, i. 8.
bishop consecrated at, ii. 14.
Gilbert Glanville, archdeacon of, ii. 38; Richard Barre, archdeacon of, 50.
Arnulf, bishop of, i. 257, 312.
William, bishop of, ii. 149; engaged in the business of John's divorce, 167.
Lismore, council of, i. 351.
Lisoi, Loches intrusted to, i. 161, 165, 183.
Liutprand, the historian, i. 23, 140.
King of the Lombards, i. 121.
Livy, historian, i. 54, 56.
Llandaff, bishops of:
Chevelliaue, i. 138.
Libau, i. 138.
Blederi, i. 158.
Joseph. i. 171.
Herewald, i. 203.
Urban, i. 236.
Nicolas, i. 340.
William, ii. 41.
Loches, castle of, i. 143, 156, 161, 164, 165; ii. 117.
Loddon, bridge over, ii. 98.
Lodeve, see of, i. 9.
Loegria, i. 66.
Logronium, i. 419.
Loidis, i. 216.
Loir, chateau du, Geoffrey Plantagenet dies at, i. 293; ii. 16, 269.
Loire, river, i. 7, 136, 292, 393.
Lombards, invade Italy, i. 99; conquered by Charles, i. 125.
list of kings, ii. 222.
London:
see of, archiepiscopal, i. 66.
council at, i. 229; again, 236.
Ranulf Flambard imprisoned at, i. 233; reception of the empress at, 254; expels her, 255; the tower surrendered by Geoffrey Mandeville, 255.
London, bishops of, list, ii. 198.
Mellitus, i. 107, 108, 150.
Cedda, i. 112, 115.
Wine, i. 113.
Erkenwald, i. 115.

London, bishops of—*cont.*
Theodoric, i. 136.
Dunstan, i. 150.
Alfhun, i. 166, 167.
Ailward, i. 187.
Robert, i. 188.
William, i. 189, 190.
Maurice, i. 211, 218, 233.
Richard I. of Belmeis, consecrated, i. 237; at the consecration of the archbishop of York, 238; paralyzed, 244; dies, 245.
Gilbert Universalis, i. 245; dies, 247; mentioned, 251.
Robert de Sigillo, i. 254.
Richard II. of Belmeis, canon of S. Paul's, i. 250; made archdeacon of Middlesex by his uncle, 251; ordained deacon, 252; consecrated, 295; baptizes the king's son, 301; is paralyzed, 304; dies, 306.
Gilbert Foliot, bishop of Hereford, translated, i. 309, 413; letter of Becket to, 323; writes to the pope, 331; is threatened by Becket, 333; excommunicated, 333, 334; sets out for Rome, 335; reaches Milan, 337; letter of the pope to, *ib.*; absolved at Rouen, 338; another letter, 340; absolved at Gisors in 1171, 347; restored to his functions, 351; forbidden to attend the second coronation of the young king, 353; goes to Normandy, 366; attends the election of the archbishop, 368, 369; is at the election of Baldwin, ii. 23; dies, 47.
Richard, dean of Lincoln, appointed, ii. 69; consecrated, 75; made the archbishop's deputy, *ib.*; letters to, 77, 78; attends council at Westminster, 85; is summoned to the council of the barons, 98; takes the oath to Richard with a saving clause, 99; blesses the abbot of Westminster, 100, 101; sends a hawk and pike to John, 102; summons the bishops to elect an archbishop, 103; letter of the king to him, touching the election, 107, 108; dies, 163.
William of S. Mere l'Eglise, elected and consecrated, ii. 166; at council at Westminster, 169; blesses the abbot of Westminster, 172; summoned to Normandy, 173.

London, church of S. Paul built, i. 107; ii. 211; S. Elfege buried at, i. 166; Ethelred buried at, 168; the bishop of Worcester consecrated at, 221; the archbishop of York consecrated at, 238; consecrations at, 244; history of the chapter, 248–252; appeal of Foliot at, 333; chapter summoned to Normandy, ii. 62, 69, 70; Richard visits, 114; the archbishop of Rouen at, 115; a whale thrown up on the estate of, 122; tumult of William FitzOsbert at, 143; chapter summoned to Normandy, 163, 164.
deans of:
William, nephew of Richard of Belmeis, i. 248, 249, 250, 252.
Ralph of Langford, i. 250.
Ralph de Diceto. *See* Diceto.

Longchamp, Henry de, ii. 100.
Osbert de, ii. 100.
Robert de, abbot of S. Mary's, York, ii. 151.

Longinus, exarch, i. 99.

Lorraine, i. 139; given up by Charles the Simple, 144; offered by Lewis to Otho, ii. 252.
Henry, duke of, i. 155.
Godfrey, duke of, i. 170.
Godfrey of Bouillon, duke of, i. 181, 221.

Lotbroc, king of the Danes, ii. 243.

Lothar I., emperor, i. 135, 362.
II., king, i. 137, 138; ii. 131.
king of France, i. 148, 157.
of Saxony, son of Henry the Lion, ii. 13.

Lothian, i. 302, 376.
Loudun, castle of, i. 302.
Louvain, duke of, i. 243.
Henry, duke of, ii. 32; his son marries the heiress of Boulogne, i. 432.
Louviers, ii. 156, 162.
Lucan, poet, i. 59; ii. 116.
Lucania, i. 6.
Lucian, bishop of Beauvais, i. 62.
Lucius I., pope, i. 259; ii. 186.
II., pope, i. 262; ii. 191.
III., i. 17, 262; ii. 191; elected, 9; letter of, 22; letter of the bishops to, 23; letter of, to Henry II., 30; letter to archbishop Baldwin, 36; dies, 38.
king of Britain, i. 66.
Roman magistrate conquered by Arthur, i. 96.
Luey, Richard de, justiciar, i. 318, 425.
Ludolf, son of Otto I., i. 147, 362.
Lummonui (loch Lomond), i. 15.
Luna, adventures of Hasting at, ii. 244.
Lund, archbishop of, ii. 132.
Lunverd, bishop of S. Davids, i. 138.
Lupus, king of Valentia, i. 390, 429.
Lusignan, Guy of. *See* Jerusalem.
Geoffrey of, ii. 54, 55.
Lusitania, i. 7.
Lycaonia, i. 7.
Lychus, i. 7.
Lycia, i. 7, 130.
Lydia, i. 7.
Lyons, provinces of, i. 5, 6, 7, 8; city of, 132; Albinus killed at, 68; Anselm at, 226.
primacy of the see of, i. 5, 6.
archbishops of,
Hugh, i. 6.
John of Poictiers, i. 5, 311; ii. 120.
Reginald of Forez, ii. 120.
Macarius, the Monothelite, i. 116.
Maccabees, i. 26.
Macedonia, i. 7.
Macedonius, heresy of, i. 79.
Macemut, sultan, ii. 29.
Macon, town of, i. 8.
Maerinus, emperor, i. 69.
Mæcenas, i. 53.
Mæsia, i. 7.
Magalona, i. 9.
Magdeburg, archbishop of, i. 331.
Magnus, S., in Saxony, i. 166.
Mahomet, false prophet, i. 111.
Maine, county of, i. 231; invaded, i. 207; conquered, i. 212, 231; submits to Henry in 1174, i. 379; famine in, i. 406; overrun by Philip, ii. 62.
counts of:
Herebert, i. 164, 183, 185; ii. 263, 264.
Helias de la Fleche, i. 239.
Malaleel, patriarch, i. 35.
Malcolm III., king of Scots, i. 207, 216, 233.
IV., i. 296; resigns the northern counties, 302; does homage at Woodstock, 311.
Malessart, castle of the Mowbrays at, i. 384.
Malmesbury, abbey of, i. 145; ii. 211.
Malua Miadach, ii. 34.
Mamertus, bishop of Vienne, i. 88.
Mamistra, i. 222.
Manasses, king of Judah, i. 37.
high priest, i. 49.
Mandeville, Geoffrey de, i. 255.
William de, earl of Essex and count of Aumâle, i. 375, 400, 421, 422, 428; ii. 3, 44, 75; assists the count of Flanders against Hainault, ii. 32.
Maniacutius, Nicolas, his list of the popes, i. 259–262.
Mans, le, city, i. 8, 62, 207, 379; ii. 5, 20, 63, 119, 207.
Henry II. born at, i. 246; Geoffrey Plantagenet buried at, 293; submission of Geoffrey and Richard at, 397; Henry II. keeps Easter 1180 at, ii. 5; he flies from, 63; taken, *ib.*; council at, 119.
Mantes, i. 212; ii. 55, 164.
Manuel, Comnenus, emperor, i. 257, 416, 418; ii. 11, 38.
Map, Walter, ii. 150.
Marcellinus, pope, i. 72, 259; ii. 186.

Marcellus, pope, i. 72, 259; ii. 186.
Marchadeus, ii. 152.
Marche, la, Aldebert, count of, i. 425.
Hugh le Brun, count of, ii. 85, 170.
Marcian, emperor, i. 86.
Marcomir, duke of the Franks, i. 79.
Marcus, pope, i. 76, 259; ii. 186.
Margaret, daughter of Lewis VII., wife of the younger Henry, i. 303, 352; ii. 31, 40.
countess of Hainault, sister of the count of Flanders, ii. 5.
queen of Philip II., ii. 5; anointed, 5; dies, 77.
Margarit, admiral of Sicily, ii. 58, 86.
Margeth (Merkeb), Isaac Comnenus confined at, ii. 92.
Marianus, Scotus, i. 19, 23, 201.
Marines, Alberic de, ii. 97, 98.
Marinus, pope, i. 141, 260; ii. 189.
II., pope, i. 146, 261; ii. 190.
Mark, S., the Evangelist, i. 59.
Marlborough, ii. 10.
Marne, river, i. 24.
Marra, i. 231.
Marseilles, i. 9; ii. 83.
Gennadius of, i. 22, 80, 89.
Marshall, William, justiciar, ii. 90.
Marshall, John, adversary of S. Thomas, i. 308, 313.
Martel, death of the younger Henry at, ii. 19.
Martial, poet, quoted, i. 294; ii. 276.
bishop of Limoges, i. 62.
Martin, S., of Tours, i. 80, 83; ii. 268.
monastery of, i. 127.
Martin I., pope, i. 112, 260; ii. 188.
Mary, S., Magdalene, relics of, i. 121.
abbess of Romsey, i. 303; marries count Matthew of Boulogne, i. 303.
sister of Becket, i. 371.
Mategriffon, ii. 86.
Matilda, wife of the Conqueror, i. 173, 206; crowned, 200; dies, 211; founder of the abbey of nuns at Caen, i. 213.
wife of Henry I., i. 233; dies, i. 241.
Matilda—*cont.*
wife of Stephen, i. 295; buried at Feversham, 295.
the empress, i. 236, 241, 245, 246; ii. 16, 17, 269; takes castles in Normandy, i. 248; comes to England, 253; to London, 254; expelled from London, 254; besieged by Stephen, 255.
daughter of Henry II., duchess of Saxony, ii. 16, 17, 269; born, i. 302; married, 318, 330; dies, ii. 65.
Matilda's castle, ii. 163.
Matthew, S., i. 58.
count of Boulogne. *See* Boulogne.
Matthias, father of Josephus, i. 25.
Matusalam, i. 35.
Mauger, count of Corbeuil, i. 152.
archbishop of Rouen. *See* Rouen.
Maurice, emperor, i. 100, 101, 102, 103.
of Anjou, i. 156, 159.
antipope (Gregory VIII.), i. 243; ii. 195.
Maurienne, count of, i. 353.
S. Jean de, i. 391.
Maurilius, bishop of Angers, i. 137.
Maurinus, i. 254.
Mauritania, provinces of, i. 7.
Maxentius, defeat of, i. 74.
Maxima, province, i. 7.
Maximian, emperor, i. 72, 82.
Maximin, emperor, i. 69, 82.
Maximus, king of Britain, i. 86; ii. 226.
Mayenne, i. 139, 162; river, i. 292; ii. 63, 64, 263, 264.
Geoffrey of, ii. 63, 64.
Meath, ii. 34.
Meaux, town of, i. 8.
Medeshamstede, i. 188. *See* Peterborough.
Media, list of the kings of, ii. 220.
Melcalez, ii. 81.
Melcalezis, ii. 81.
Melchiades, pope, i. 72, 259; ii. 186.
Mellent (Meulan),
count of, i. 230.
Waleran of, i. 244.
Robert of, i. 371; ii. 266.

Melrose, monastery of, i. 115.
Menahem, i. 37.
Menedemus, i. 42.
Menelaus (Onias), high priest, i. 50.
Mentz, city of, i. 132, 133, 181, 201, 362; coronation at, ii. 31; Richard at, 112.
archbishop of, i. 178; chancellor of Germany, 308.
Willigis, archbishop of, i. 161.
Christian, archbishop of, imprisoned by Conrad of Montferrat, ii. 4.
Conrad, archbishop of, ii. 112.
Mercia, bishops of, Winfrid, i. 115.
Saxulf, i. 115.
Merefyn, i. 115.
Merewald, king of Mercia, i. 114.
Merewell, Henry II. visits the bishop of Winchester at, ii. 41.
Merlin, prophecies of, i. 384; ii. 64, 67.
Merlou, William de, ii. 152.
Meroveus, king of the Franks, i. 84.
Mesopotamia, province, i. 7.
Messiac, ii. 128.
Messina, ii. 84, 90, 91.
Metz, i. 8, 165.
Meuse, river, i. 135, 236.
Michael, emperor, i. 136.
Michelney, monastery of, i. 401; ii. 211.
Milan, i. 6, 72, 78, 131, 132, 337, 408; ii. 39; coronation of Frederick at, ii. 39.
Humbert, archbishop of, elected pope, 39.
Milburga, S., i. 115.
Mildritha, S., i. 115.
Mildgitha, S., i. 115.
Milinandum (Milmandum), i. 172; ii. 256.
Milton, abbey of, i. 234; ii. 211.
Milvian bridge, i. 74.
Mimekin, i. 174.
Mirabel, castle of, i. 302; ii. 18.
Miralis, ii. 81.
Mithridates, i. 359.
Modred, nephew of Arthur, i. 96; ii. 229.
Molesme, Robert abbot of, i. 232.
Molmutinæ, leges, ii. 224.
Mons Budelli, i. 165.
Jani, i. 416; ii. 81.
Monstrieardum, i. 194, 183.
Montbazon, i. 165.
Montcolm, i. 247.
Mont Dieu, i. 338.
Montferrand, in Auvergne, i. 353.
Montferrat:
Conrad of, ii. 5, 60, 79, 104; marries the heiress of Jerusalem, 86; murdered, 104, 127.
Boniface of, ii. 123.
Montfort, Robert of, i. 310, 371.
Hugh of, taken prisoner, i. 244.
Amalric of, i. 199.
castle of, ii. 62.
Montgomery, Roger of, ii. 263.
Montmirail, i. 329, 338; ii. 117.
Montmorenci, i. 154; ii. 164.
Montpellier, i. 337.
William of, receives Alexander III., i. 307.
Montreal, Anser of, ii. 82.
Montreuil, i. 146; siege of, 291; ii. 248.
Mont S. Michel, i. 247, 302.
Moreal, i. 220.
Morini, i. 139.
Morkar, earl, i. 197, 204, 213.
Mortagne, in Perche, i. 355.
Mortain, in Normandy:
Robert, count of, i. 213, 214.
William, count of, i. 235.
Stephen, count of. *See* Stephen, king of England.
John, count of. *See* John, king.
Mortemer, battle of, i. 191; ii. 260.
abbey of, i. 247.
Mortimer, Ralph of, i. 214.
Hugh of, i. 301.
Morville, Hugh de, i. 343.
Moses, i. 28, 29, 35, 36.
Mountsorel, castle of, i. 384.
Mowbray, Robert, i. 214, 220.
Roger, i. 379, 384, 385, 404.
Mulla, ii. 59.
Musard, ii. 79.
Myra, i. 76, 130, 211.

N.

Nablous, in Palestine, ii. 28.
Nadab, king of Israel, i. 36.
Nahor, patriarch, i. 35.
Nantes, city of, i. 8, 136, 302, 337 ; ii. 243.
Naples, John of, Cardinal, i. 318, 329.
Narbonne, city of, i. 9 ; provinces, i. 6, 9.
Narses, i. 72.
  the eunuch, i. 99.
Navarre, i. 297 ; list of the kings, ii. 240.
  kings of ; Garsias, i. 297.
  Sancho VI., i. 415 ; ii. 117 ; award between him and Castille, 418–420.
Navarret, i. 419.
Navarri, i. 10.
Nero, emperor, i. 59, 60, 82.
Nerva, emperor, i. 59, 60, 82.
Nestorius, heresy of, i. 83.
Neufbourg, i. 304.
Neufmarché, i. 247, 294.
Nevers, city of, i. 8.
  bishop of, i. 339, 347.
  count of, ii. 167.
Nevidunus, i. 8.
Newcastle-on-Tyne, i. 302.
Newmarket, ii. 172.
Nicea, council of, i. 76 ; second council of, 126 ; ii. 272.
  death of duke Robert at, i. 181 ; ii. 258.
  battle at, i. 222.
Nicephorus, emperor, i. 131.
Nicolas, abbot of S. Ouen, i. 173.
Nicolas I. pope, i. 137, 260 ; ii. 189.
  II., pope, i. 156, 192, 193, 262 ; ii. 191.
  St., bishop of Myra, i. 76, 130, 211.
  the pope's subdeacon, i. 378.
  an Englishman, pope Adrian IV., i. 305.
Nicomedia, Diocletian, resigns the purple at, i. 72.
Nigasius, S. of Rouen, i. 62.
Ninus, king of Assyria, i. 20, 356.
Nismes, city of, i. 9.
Noah, i. 35.
Nonancourt, i. 247, 422 ; ii. 74.
Norfolk :
  earl of, Hugh Bigot, i. 248, 377, 381, 384, 385, 404.
Noricum, province, i. 7.
Normandy, dukes of :
  Rollo, i. 139 ; baptized, 143 ; history and adventures of, ii. 243–247.
  William Longsword, i. 143 ; succeeds, 144 ; war with Rieulf, 145 ; killed at Pinchinniacum, 146, 159 ; history of his reign, ii. 247–249.
  Richard I., i. 146 ; his wives and children, 152 ; his transactions with with Geoffrey of Anjou, 155 ; dies, 159 ; his daughter Emma, 160 ; history of his reign, ii. 249–253.
  Richard II., succeeds, i. 159 ; his marriage and family, 167 ; second marriage, 172 ; history of his reign, ii. 253–257.
  Richard III., i. 173 ; ii. 257.
  Robert II., i. 173 ; ii. 257.
  William, i. 173 ; succeeds, 181 ; history of his reign, ii. 258–262.
  Robert, son of William the Conqueror, claims Normandy, i. 209 ; wounds his father, 210 ; heads a party against William Rufus, 213, 215 ; makes peace with him, 216 ; goes on Crusade, 221 ; his exploits, 222, 223 ; visits Henry I., 234 ; taken prisoner at Tenchebrai, 235 ; dies, 247.
Northampton, i. 313, 344 ; ii. 70, 75.
  Savaric, archdeacon of, ii. 105.
Northumberland, Robert Mowbray, earl of, i. 213, 220.
Norwich, city of, i. 161, 219, 381 ; ii. 75.
  bishops of, list, ii. 203.
  Herbert Losing, i. 219.
  William Turbe, dies, i. 354.
  John of Oxford, dean of Salisbury, i. 341 ; elected bishop, 403 ; and

Norwich—*cont.*
consecrated, *ib.*; goes to Palermo with Johanna, 415; itinerary home, 416, 417; is one of the chief justices, 435.
John de Gray consecrated, ii. 169; summoned to Normandy, 173.
Nottingham, i. 301, 417; Richard's council at, ii. 114.
Novem populana, province, i. 6, 9.
Noville, Alan de, i. 318, 332.
Noyon, city of, i. 157; ii. 8, 43.
Numeneus, king of the Bretons, i. 137.
Numidia, i. 7, 50.

O.

Octavian (Augustus), i. 53.
cardinal, ii. 47.
antipope, i. 303; ii. 195.
Octodorus, i. 9.
Odilo, of Cluny, i. 158, 159.
Odo, abbot of Battle, i. 403; prior of Canterbury, i. 369.
bishop of Bayeux. *See* Bayeux.
master of the Temple, i. 423.
of Cluny, i. 23, 127, 156.
bishop of Ostia, i. 216.
king of France, i. 140; ii. 278.
brother of Henry, king of France, i. 190.
of Champagne, father of Stephen of Aumâle, i. 220.
Offa, king of Essex, i. 119.
king of Mercia, i. 126, 128; ii. 211.
Oisi, Hugh of, ii. 11.
Olaf II., king of Norway, i. 173, 194; ii. 256.
Olympia, victory at, i. 42.
Omri, king of Israel, i. 36.
Onias I., high priest, i. 49.
II., high priest, i. 49.
III., high priest, i. 49.
IV., high priest, i. 50.
Orange, city of, i. 9.
Ording, prior of S. Edmunds, i. 250, 252.
Orient provinces, i. 6, 7.
Origen, account of, i. 68, 69.
Orkney islands, i. 59.
Orleans, city of, i. 8, 71, 132, 139, 157, 162; ii. 243.
Theodulf, bishop of, i. 133.
Manasses, bishop of, ii. 5.
Ormesta, i. 28.
Orodes, king of Parthia, i. 359.
Orosius, i. 19, 22, 28, 82.
Osdroene, i. 7.
Osismii, i. 8.
Osmund, contrives the rescue of duke Richard of Normandy, ii. 249, 250.
Ostia, bishop of, Alberic, i. 250, 252.
Ostreham, i. 382.
Ostrieres, i. 247.
Oswald, king of Northumbria, i. 111, 114.
Oswin, monastery of, Tynemouth, i. 220.
Osyth, S., i. 111.
monastery of, i. 244.
Otford, ordination at, ii. 38.
Othniel, judge of Israel, i. 36.
Otho, Otto I., emperor, i. 141, 146, 155; ii. 193, 252; his decision about representation, i. 146; rebellion of his son, 147; crowned at Rome, 150.
II., i. 151; crowned, 153, 156; his expedition to Italy, 156.
III., visits Italy and is poisoned, i. 160.
IV. of Saxony, ii. 13, 118; crowned, 118.
Ovid, poet, i. 56.
Owen, prince of North Wales, i. 311.
Oxford, i. 170, 255; Richard born at, 302; council at, 318.
John of, i. 315. *See* Norwich.
Oximensis pagus, i. 173; ii. 253.

P.

Paganellus, i. 404.
Pagham, consecration of the bishop of London at, i. 237; court of the archbishop at, 437.
Palatine, Conrad, count, ii, 113.
Palermo, i. 414, 417, 418; ii. 123.

Palladius, apostle of the Scots, i. 83.
Pallas, bones of, discovered, i. 187.
Palumbus, story of, i. 179.
Pampeluna, taken by Charles, i. 125; by Sancho, ii. 241.
Pamphylia, i. 7.
Pampica, i. 7.
Pannonia, i. 7, 99, 131.
Paphlagonia, i. 7.
Papia, wife of Richard II. of Normandy, i. 172.
Papirius, story of, i. 43.
Papiro, John, legate to Ireland, i. 295.
Paris, i. 8, 62, 256, 258, 302, 335, 337, 387, 402, 433,; ii. 5, 141, 142.
besieged, i. 154; ii. 243, 246.
visited by Henry II., i. 302, 303; meeting of the kings near, i. 335.
Maurice, bishop of, i. 411; ii. 5, 142.
church of S. Genevieve at, i. 256, 258; ii. 142.
Paris, archdeacon of Rochester, i. 417.
Parma, i. 200; ii. 194.
Paschal I., pope, i. 133, 260; ii. 189.
II., pope, i. 17, 227, 228–230, 233, 262; ii. 91.
Pasey, castle of, i. 367.
Patricius, William, i. 371, 378.
in Palestine, ii. 59.
Patrick, St., i. 83.
Earl of Salisbury, i. 331.
Paul, St., the apostle, i. 59.
I., pope, i. 123, 124, 260; ii. 189.
abbot of S. Alban's, i. 215.
the heretic, i. 70.
the deacon, i. 21, 96, 99, 131.
Paulinus, letter of S. Jerome to, i. 54.
Pavia, Boetius writes at, i. 91; Charles visits, 124; takes, 121, 124, 125; men of, 408.
William of, cardinal, i. 304, 318, 329.
Peak, caverns of, i. 11.
Pedreda, synod of, i. 203.
Pekah (Facee), king of Israel, i. 37.
Pekahiah (Faccia), king of Israel, i. 37.
Pelagians, heresy of, i. 81.
Pelagius, I., pope, i. 96, 260; ii. 188.
II. pope, i. 100, 260; ii. 188.
Peleg (Faleeh), i. 35.
Penda, king of Mercia, i. 110, 111.
Perche, Robert count of, i. 294, 379.
Perefont, surrendered by Flanders to France, ii. 11.
Periander, i. 37.
Perigueux, i. 9; ravaged, 124; ii. 244.
Peronne, i. 144; ii. 278.
Pertinax, emperor, i. 67.
Pershore, abbey of, i. 176, 234.
Persia, list of kings of, ii. 221.
Peter, S. i. 58, 59, 60, 70, 185, 259.
missionary to Britain, i. 106.
of Flanders, elect of Cambray, i. 387, 398.
Bermundi, ii. 31.
Peterborough founded, i. 115, 189, 234; ii. 211.
William, abbot of, i. 402.
Peter Leonis. *See* Anacletus II.; Hugo.
writes from Aere, ii. 70.
Petra Plata, ii. 56.
Petronilla, abbess of Fontevraud, i. 252.
countess of Leicester, i. 377.
wife of Tertullus, ancestress of the house of the house of Anjou, i. 136.
Pevensey, i. 195, 214.
Peverell, William, i. 301.
Pharamond, king of the Franks, i. 155.
Pharnaces, son of Mithridates, i. 359.
Pharpar, river of, i. 222.
Philip, emperor, i. 70.
Philip I., king of Macedon, i. 358.
I., king of France, i. 193, 209, 210, 216, 235; dies, i. 237.
son of Lewis VI., i. 246.
II., king of France, born, i. 317; crowned in his father's lifetime, 438; imprisons the Jews, ii. 4; marries Isabella of Hainault, 5; makes a a treaty with Henry, 6; follows Henry's advice, 8; league against him, 8; sustained by Henry, 9; meets the kings at Senlis, ii. 10, 11; visits Henry at Belveir, 38; meets the kings at Gisors, 40; marriage

Philip II.—*cont.*
of his sister to the king of Hungary, 41; visited by the archbishop of of Rouen, 43; negotiations with Henry in 1186, 43; concludes a truce for two years in 1187, 49; his eldest son born, *ib.*; meets Henry in 1188 and takes the cross, 51; goes to war and takes Châteauroux, 55; meets Henry near Gisors, *ib.*; is joined by Richard, 58; another conference, 62; overruns Maine and reduces Henry to despair, 63; makes peace, *ib.*; writes Richard about the Crusade, 71; joins him in a proclamation of the engagement, 73; meets Richard at Vezelai, 83; proceeds to Genoa, *ib.*; arrives at Messina, 84; the marriage of his sister with Richard broken off, 86; sails from Messina, 91; reaches Acre, 92; Acre surrendered to him and Richard, 94; embarks on his return, 95; arrives at Paris, 104; conspires with John, 106; marries Ingeberga of Denmark and puts her away, 111; besieges Verneuil, 114; besieges Fontaines, 116; enters Touraine but retreats, 117; to Châteaudun, 118; makes a truce, 120; proposes a trial by combat, 121; reconciled with the archbishop of Rouen, 122; letter of the pope on the divorce, 129–132; meeting with Richard and obscure negotiations, 135–137; gives safe conduct to the archbishop of Rouen, 138, 139, 140; meets him at Pontoise, 141; receives him at Paris, *ib.*; is driven by floods up to S. Genevieve's, 142; proposes to relieve S. Omer, 163; is beaten by Richard, 164; undertakes the cause of Arthur against John, 167; his divorce discussed in a council at Dijon, *ib.*; his land placed under interdict, 168; has an interview with John in March 1202, 174.

Philip, the notary, ii. 168.
Philippicus, i. 119.
Philippides, i. 39.
Philo Judæus, i. 20, 58.
Phinehas, high priest, i. 36.
son of Eli, i. 36.
Phocas, emperor, i. 103, 104, 108.
Photinus, bishop of Lyons, i. 62.
Phrygia, provinces of, i. 7.
Piacenza, i. 138, 388, 408.
Picenum, i. 6.
Picts, Trumwine, bishop of the, i. 117.
Pilate, Pontius, i. 25, 57, 58.
Pin, le, monastery of ii. 150, 154.
Pinchinniacum, i. 146.
Pipewell, council at, i. 69, 78.
Pipin, father of Charles Martel, i. 122.
son of Charles Martel, i. 121, 123.
son of Charles the Great, i. 127, 131, 361.
son of Lewis I., i. 134.
Pisa, i. 416; council of, i. 253, ii. 274; men of, ii. 70.
Henry of, i. 304.
Pisidia, i. 7.
Pissiaco, Gatius de, ii. 43.
Pitagoras (Protagoras), i. 37, 38, 39.
(Pythagoras), i. 39, 40, 46.
Pittaeus, i. 37.
Pius I., pope, i. 65, 259; ii. 185.
Planes, Roger de, justiciar of John, ii. 99.
Plato, i. 39, 46, 58.
Pleshey, marriage of William Mandeville at, ii. 3.
Poictiers, city of, i. 9, 380; ii. 244.
John, bishop of, i. 307, 311.
Richard, archdeacon of (Ilchester), i. 312, 318, 319, 320, 354.
Poictou, William, count of, i. 184, 240, 366; ii. 177.
Raymond, count of, i. 159.
Pompey, i. 50, 51, 52.
Ponthieu, i. 146, 193, 198; Herlewin, count of, i. 146; Guy, count of, i. 191, 193;
Pontianus, pope, i. 69, 259; ii. 186.
Pontigny, abbey of, i. 318, 329.
abbot of, i. 347.

Pontilevium, i. 164, 183.
Pontoise, ii. 141.
Pontorson, i. 247.
Pontus, provinces of, i. 6, 7.
Popa, wife of Rollo, i. 143; ii. 241, 247.
Poppo, i. 153.
Porchester, i. 351.
Porphyry, i. 28.
Portel, in Spain, i. 419.
Porto Ercole, i. 416.
Porto Venere, i. 416.
Portsmouth, ii. 5, 10, 114.
Portugal, ii. 65.
  Alfonso, king of, ii. 28; marriage of his daughter to the count of Flanders, ii. 28; his war with the Saracens, ii. 29; obtains the aid of the Crusaders to take Silvia, ii. 65, 66.
Portus, bishop of, i. 141.
Postard, William, abbot of Westminster, ii. 100, 101.
Priam, leader of the Franks, i. 79.
Principatu, Richard de, i. 222.
Probus, emperor, i. 72.
Proculus, translates the body of Chrysostom, i. 84.
Prosper, Aquitanus, historian, i. 22, 87.
Ptolemy Philadelphus, i. 9.
  kills Pompey, i. 51.
Puintel, Alexander, ii. 97, 98.
Punic wars, i. 49.
Puy, in Dauphiné, i. 149, 222.
  Guy, bishop of, i. 149.
  Drogo, bishop of, i. 149.
Pyrenees, i. 80, 293.

R.

Raculf (Reculver) monastery, i. 118.
Raginfred, Angers given to, i. 121.
Raimo, bishop of Angers, i. 139.
Ralph, king of France, i. 144.
  Earl of East Anglia, i. 209.
  canon of Cirencester, prior of Waltham, i. 420.
Ramma, in Dalmatia, ii. 41, 53, 54.
Ramsbury, bishops of, Ethelstan, i. 142; Elfric, i. 158.
Ramsey, monastery, i. 187, 188, 189, 219, 234; ii. 211.
  Ailwin, abbot of, i. 188; ii. 274.
  William, abbot of, transferred to Cluny, i. 424.
Rancon, Geoffrey de, i. 431; ii, 177, 119.
Ranulf, conspires against Stephen, i. 253.
Ratisbon, i. 362; ii. 64.
Ravenna, i. 6, 128, 132, 409; council at, ii. 272.
  Peter Chrysologus, bishop of, ii. 124.
  Gerbert, archbishop of, i. 158.
  Wibert of, antipope, i. 216.
  Jordanes of, i. 22, 96.
Reading, i. 247, 401; ii. 5, 32, 98; council at, 22; on the crusade, 32.
Recared, king of the Visigoths, i. 105; ii. 271.
Reginald, duke of the Franks, ii. 245.
Regino of Prum, i. 23, 143, 360.
Regulus, bishop of Senlis, i. 62.
Rehoboam, i. 36.
Reiner, Richard fitz, ii. 99.
Rennes, i. 8, 135, 400.
Restibulus, ii. 250.
Reu, the patriarch, i. 35.
Rheims, i. 8, 132, 133; council at, 188; under Gelasius II., 241; under Calixtus II., 244; under Eugenius III., 258, 262; ii. 273, 274.
  Remigius, archbishop of, i. 90.
  Folko, archbishop of, i. 140, 141.
  Artallus, archbishop of, i. 144.
  Arnulf, archbishop of, i. 157.
  Gerbert, archbishop of, i. 157.
  Samson, archbishop of, i. 303; ii. 16.
  Henry, archbishop of, i. 403.
  William of Champagne, archbishop of Sens, i. 335, 339, 347; his several promotions, 412; sends an envoy to Henry II., 416; visits Canterbury, 426; is at the meeting of princes at Senlis, ii. 10; and at Aumâle, 38.
Rhine, river, i. 6, 79, 80, 134.

Rhodes, i. 42 ; ii. 91.
Rhodopa, province, i. 7.
Rhone, river, i. 6.
Rhys, prince of Wales, i. 311, 384.
Ribaumont, Anselm of, i. 221, 222, 232.
Riccale, i. 194.
Richard, duke of Normandy. *See* Normandy.
bishop of Bayeux, i. 247.
king, son of Henry II., born, i. 302 ; betrothed to a daughter of Lewis VII., 331 ; homage of Toulouse due to, 353, 354 ; joins in his brother's rebellion, 355 ; submits and does homage, 398 ; Theobald Chabot his captain, 407 ; subdues the count of Angoulême, 414 ; helps Philip of France against the count of Sancerre, ii. 9 ; attacked by his elder brother, 18, 19 ; attacks the count of Toulouse, 44 ; takes the cross, 50 ; attacks the count of Toulouse, 55 ; joins Philip, 58 ; has a conference with the kings, 62 ; enters Le Mans, 63 ; succeeds his father, 65 ; is absolved at Seez, 67 ; crowned, 68, 69, 239 ; fills up vacant sees, 69 ; makes peace between the archbishop and monks of Canterbury, 72 ; sails from Dover, 73 ; letter of Philip to, *ib.* ; departure postponed, 73, 77 ; appoints Longchamp his representative, 83, 178 ; meets Philip at Vezelai, 83 ; arrives at Messina, 84 ; makes a treaty with Tancred, 85 ; sails from Messina, 86 ; writes to the justices nominating Walter of Coutances, 90 ; sails to Cyprus, 91 ; conquers Cyprus, 92 ; takes the Saracen ship, 93 ; arrives at Acre, 94 ; takes it, *ib.* ; fights Saladin at Arsouf, 95 ; fealty sworn to him at S. Paul's, 99 ; captures a great caravan and takes Daroum, 104 ; recovers Joppa, 104, 105 ; makes a truce with Saladin, 105 ; is taken prisoner and given up to the emperor, 106, 107 ; writes to
Richard, king--*cont.*
the bishops, 107 ; money raised for his ransom, 110 ; writes to the archbishop of Rouen, 111 ; is liberated, 112 ; comes home by Cologne, holds council at Nottingham, and is crowned at Winchester, 114 ; drives the French from Verneuil, 115 ; receives money at Tours, 117 ; takes Loches, *ib.* ; letter to, from the emperor, 118 ; goes to Poictou, *ib.* ; holds a council at Le Mans, 119 ; makes a truce with Philip, 120 ; sells licences for tournaments, *ib.* ; restores the property of the clergy of Tours, 122 ; letter of the chief of the assassins exculpating, 127, 128 ; promises redress to the archbishop of Rouen, 139 ; letter of, to the bishop of Evreux, *ib.* ; begins to fortify Andely, 149 ; burns S. Valery, 152 ; makes a treaty with Flanders, 153 ; announces the exchange for Andely, 154–156 ; takes Courcelles, 164 ; summons the canons of S. Paul's to Normandy, 165 ; is wounded at Chaluz and dies, 166.
Richmond, i. 384.
Ricimer, patrician, i. 88.
Rieulf, i. 145 ; ii. 247.
Ripon, Wilfrid, abbot of, i. 113 ; Eadhed, bishop at, 117 ; translation of the bones of S. Wilfrid from, 113.
Roger of, ii. 148.
Rivers, Baldwin de, i. 214, 248.
Robert, king of France, i. 154, 157, 158 ; dies, i. 175.
duke of Paris, father of Hugh the Great, i. 141, 144 ; ii. 278.
Wiscard, ii. 276.
de Monte, abbot of S. Michael's, i. 23, 30, 263.
elect of Cambray, i. 393.
son of Gerard, i. 223.
duke of Normandy. *See* Normandy.
Roche Corbon, i. 199.
Rochelle, ii. 28.

Rochester, i. 214 ; ii. 211.
bishops of, list, ii. 210.
Justus, i. 107, 108, 109.
Paulinus, i. 110.
Ithamar, i. 112.
Hernostus, i. 215.
Gundulf, i. 225.
Ralph, i. 238.
John, i. 244.
Walter, i. 304, 340, 415 ; dies, ii. 13.
Waleran, archdeacon of Bayeux, chosen, ii. 13 ; consecrated at Lisieux, 14, 20.
Gilbert Glanvill chosen, ordained priest, and consecrated, ii. 38 ; ambassador to France, 43 ; conducts Longchamp to Dover, 100 ; present at the election to Canterbury, 103; attends the council at Westminster, 169.
Rocilla, i. 143 ; ii. 267.
Rodingar, i. 174.
Roger, son of Tancred, king of Sicily, ii. 113.
the almoner of Henry II., ii. 43.
archdeacon of Middlesex, i. 251.
master of the Hospital, ii. 32, 33, 34.
Rollo, i. 139, 142. *See* Normandy.
Rollright, i. 11.
Romanus, pope, i. 142, 261 ; ii. 190.
emperor, i. 147.
Rome, city of, i. 48.
visits of Charles the Great to, i. 124, 132.
councils at, i. 83, 116, 124 ; ii. 271, 272, 273, 274.
Romescot, i. 136.
Romney, i. 313.
Romsey abbey, i. 303 ; ii. 211.
Romulus, i. 37.
Roquemadour, i. 337.
Ros, William de, i. 311.
Rouen, besieged by Rollo, i. 140 ; taken by Geoffrey Plantagenet, i. 255 ; absolution of Foliot at, i. 338 ; besieged by Lewis VII., i. 386 ; relieved, 387 ; Henry II. keeps Easter 1185 at, ii. 34 ; Richard at, ii. 67.
Rouen—*cont.*
archbishops of :
Franco, baptizes Rollo, i. 143 ; ii. 245.
Robert, son of duke Richard, i. 152.
Malger, son of duke Richard II., i. 172.
Hugh, i. 6.
Rotro de Beaumont, i. 339, 348, 351 ; crowns the younger Henry, 352 ; is surety for the younger Henry, 400.
Walter of Coutances, canon of Rouen and vice-chancellor, i. 367 ; seal-bearer to Henry II., ii. 4 ; elected bishop of Lincoln, 14 ; enthroned, 21, 33 ; elected archbishop of Rouen, *ib.* ; at Dover, 43 ; absolves Richard at Seez, 67 ; at the coronation, 68 ; appointed justiciar, 90 ; comes to England, *ib.* ; is forbidden to go to Canterbury, 93 ; is at the meeting of barons at S. Paul's, 99 ; manages the election of the archbishop, 108 ; letter of Richard to, 111 ; letters of, to Ralph de Diceto, 112, 122, 135, 140, 141, 144, 148, 153 ; goes to Germany, 112, 113 ; arrives in London, 115 ; goes to Normandy, *ib.* ; letter of Ralph de Diceto to, 137 ; his troubles, 135–142 ; his transactions about Andely, 148–158, 160–162.
Robert dean of, ii. 20.
John of Coutances, dean of, ii. 146.
Roxburgh, castle of, i. 397.
Rubicon, i. 52.
Ruffinianus, sent by Gregory to Britain, i. 106.
Ruffinus, the historian, i. 21, 76, 80.
Rusci, Alan de, ii. 164.

S.

S. Alban's, monastery of, i. 218 ; ii. 211.
dedication of, i. 241.
Paul, abbot of, i. 215.

S. Asaph, bishops of :
Geoffrey Arthur, i. 295.
Godfrey, i. 318, 340.
Adam, canon of Paris, i. 402.
Reiner, ii. 169.
S. Brice, castle of, ii. 9.
S. Christina, ii. 5.
S. Clement Danes, i. 186.
S. David's, Henry II. at, i. 351.
bishops of :
Lunverd, i. 138.
Tramerin, i. 158.
Elnod, i. 158.
Bleduc, i. 171.
Bernard, i. 240, 244.
Peter, prior of Wenlock, i. 415.
S. Denys, abbey of, ii. 6.
S. Edmund's, abbey of, i. 167, 377, 378, 384, 389 ; ii. 75, 172, 173, 211.
S. Genevieve, at Paris, church of, i. 257, 258 ; ii. 7, 142.
S. Germain, i. 154.
S. Giles on the Rhone, i. 417.
counts of, i. 303, 337, 353 ; ii. 44, 55.
S. Hilary, Hasculf of, i. 371, 378.
S. Ives, ii. 173.
S. John of Maurienne, i. 391.
S. Mariestoue, i. 192 ; ii. 211.
Sainte More, Hugh de, i. 350.
S. Omer, ii. 163.
S. Osyth's, i. 244.
S. Quintin's, ii. 243.
S. Saen, Lambert of, ii. 266.
S. Valery, castle of, i. 195, 215 ; ii. 152.
Bernard of, ii. 43.
S. Victor, Hugh of, i. 23, 31, 246, 364.
church of, ii. 143.
Sabaria (Save) river, i. 130.
Sabinian, pope, i. 108, 260 ; ii. 188.
Sackville, Nigel de, i. 342.
Sadoch, high priest, i. 36.
Safadin (Sisidin, Seifeddin), brother of Saladin, ii. 25, 81, 95 ; letter of, to the pope, 25 ; his great ship taken, 93.
Saintes, city of, i. 9, 185, 380 ; ii. 244.
Saintonge, Haimeri, count of, i. 159.
county of, i. 184, 185.
Saladin, sultan, i. 422, 423 ; ii. 25, 81, 88 ; letter of, to the pope, 25 ; attacks Kerak, 27 ; ravages Palestine, 28 ; captures the king and the true cross, 49, 50 ; releases him, 56 ; letter of Frederick I. to, 56, 57 ; false intelligence about, 58–60 ; his lords in Acre, 81 ; attacked by the Crusaders, 84 ; defeated at Arsouf, 95, 96.
Saleh, the patriarch, i. 35.
Salerno, John of, cardinal, ii. 173 ; Gaimar of, ii. 266.
Salisbury, i. 211, 220 ; ii. 115, 116.
see of Sherburn removed to, i. 202.
bishops of :
Herman, i. 202.
Roger, i. 237 ; arrested by Stephen, 252 ; his example of secular labour, i. 435 ; ii. 77.
Jocelin, i. 340, 341, 342, 346 ; dies, ii. 32.
Hubert Walter elected, ii. 69 ; consecrated, ii. 71 ; goes to Acre, 79, 84 ; is executor to archbishop Baldwin, 88 ; writes to the bishop of London, 88, 89. *See* Canterbury.
Herbert, archdeacon of Canterbury, i. 403 ; elected, ii. 116 ; consecrated and inthroned, 116 ; at Rouen in 1196, 145 ; at council at Westminster, 169 ; summoned to Normandy, 173.
Walter, precentor of, ii. 116.
John of, i. 307. *See* Chartres.
Robert, dean of, made bishop of Exeter, i. 301.
Patrick, earl of, i. 331.
Salzburg, i. 132.
Samford, Adam of, ii. 48.
Samnites, i. 48.
Samnium, i. 6.
Samson, judge of Israel, i. 36.
Samuel, prophet, i. 36.
Sancerre, Stephen, count of, ii. 9.
Sancho, king of Navarre, i. 415.
Sandwich, i. 166, 339 ; ii. 114.
Sannio, duke of the Franks, i. 79.
Santarem, ii. 29.

Santiago, order of, ii. 32.
Saone river, i. 172.
Sapheth (Salef), river, ii. 84.
Saragossa taken by Charles, i. 125; by Alfonso, ii. 241.
Sardinia, i. 6.
Satalia (Salteleia), ii. 127.
Saturninus, bishop of Toulouse, i. 62.
Saul, king of Israel, i. 36.
Saumur, town of, i. 159.
Geldoin of, i. 159, 164, 165.
Savigny, in Normandy, i. 351.
Saxony, Henry duke of, i. 353.
Henry the Lion, duke of, i. 318, 330, 416; ii. 12, 38.
Henry of, son of Henry the Lion, ii. 13, 113.
Scheldt river, i. 139.
Scipio Africanus, i. 49.
Sclavonians, Sclaves, i. 126, 131.
Scotland, i. 10, 11.
Scythia, i. 7.
Sebaste, in Palestine, ii. 28.
Sebbe, king of Essex, i. 115.
Seburch (Sexburga), queen of Wessex, i. 112.
Seez, city of, i. 8, 379; ii. 67.
bishop of, Gerard, i. 256; Lisiard, ii. 156.
Seguin, archbishop of Sens, i. 157.
Seine river, i. 7, 24.
Semiramis, i. 28, 356, 357.
Seneca, i. 59.
Senlis, city of, i. 8; meeting of princes at, ii. 10, 11.
county of, ii. 8; Wido count of, i. 143; Bernard of, ii. 250; Simon of, ii. 266.
Henry, bishop of, ii. 6.
the butler of, ii. 86.
Sennacherib, i. 356.
Sens, city of, i. 8, 132, 314, 316; ii. 122.
province of, i. 5, 6, 8.
church of S. Colombe at, i. 329.
archbishops of:
Seguin, i. 157.
Walter, ii. 278.
William of Champagne, i. 335, 339, 347, 412. *See* Rheims.
Sens, archbishops of—*cont.*
Guy of Noyers, i. 414; ii. 5.
Michael, ii. 129.
Sergius I, pope, i. 118, 260; ii. 189.
II., pope, i. 136, 260; ii. 189.
III., pope, i. 142, 260; ii. 190.
IV., pope, i. 164, 261; ii. 190.
heretic, I., 112.
Seruch, patriarch, i. 35.
Seth, i. 35.
Seuraigl, mountain, i. 12.
Seusa (Susa), i. 397.
Severinus, pope, i. 111, 260; ii. 188.
Severn river, i. 209.
Severus, emperor, i. 67, 68, 82.
Alexander, emperor, i. 69.
Seville, ii. 66.
Isidore of, i. 23.
Shaftesbury, foundation of a monastery at, ii. 211.
Shallum, king of Israel, i. 37.
Shem, i. 35.
Sherburn, see of, i. 119, 202.
bishops of, list, ii. 199.
Aldhelm, i. 119.
Swithelm, i. 140.
Werstan, i. 142.
Herman, i. 202.
Shoreham, ii. 90, 166, 173.
Shrewsbury, Roger, earl of, i. 214; ii. 263.
Sibilla, city taken by the king of Sicily, i. 302.
Sibyll, the, i. 37; Erythrean and Cumæan, *ib.*
Sibylla, countess of Flanders, i. 301, 302, 387.
countess of Maine, i. 183.
Sicambria, i. 79.
Sicily, i. 6; ii. 123.
kings of, ii. 123, 266, 267.
Roger I., crowned, i. 246; ii. 123; dies, i. 297.
William I. succeeds his father, i. 297; destroys Bari, 301; takes Sibilla, 302.
William II. proposes to marry Johanna, i. 400; writes to Henry II., 413; marries, 414; at Palermo, *ib.*; promoted Herbert of Middlesex, ii. 37;

Sicily, kings of—*cont.*
goes to war with Andronicus, 37, 38; dies, 73.
Tancred, ii. 73, 113.
William III., ii. 113, 114, 123.
Roger II., ii. 113, 114.
Sidnacester, see of, i. 126.
Sidon, Reginald, lord of, ii. 50, 56, 86, 127.
Sidonius, Apollinaris, i. 87, 88, 409, 421; ii. 101.
Sigebert, king of Wessex, i. 122.
king of the Franks, i. 98.
son of Dagobert, baptized, i. 111.
of Gemblours, historian, i. 21, 23, 79, 208, 233.
Sigeric, son of Sigismund, king of Burgundy, i. 90.
Sighere, king of Wessex, i. 115.
Sigismund, king of the Burgundians, i. 90, 364, 429.
Signia (Segni), i. 370.
Siher, husband of S. Osyth, i. 111.
Sihtric, king of Northumbria, i. 141.
Silverius, pope, i. 95, 260; ii. 187.
Silvester I., pope, i. 72, 75, 259; ii. 186.
II. pope, i. 158, 261; ii. 190.
Silvia, in Portugal, ii. 65, 66.
Silvius Eneas, ii. 65, 222.
Simon, earl of Northampton, i. 373; ii. 35.
monk of Canterbury, i. 307.
high priest, i. 49, 50.
Simplicius, pope, i. 88; ii. 187.
Sirefontanum, ii. 164.
Siricius, pope, i. 79, 259; ii. 187.
Sirmium, i. 7.
Sisinnius, pope, i. 119, 260; ii. 189.
Siward, earl, i. 191.
Barn, i. 204.
Sixtus I., pope, i. 65, 259; ii. 185.
II., pope, i. 70, 259; ii. 186.
III., pope, i. 83, 259; ii. 187.
Socrates, the philosopher, i. 40, 46.
the historian, i. 22, 84.
Soencis, John, count of, i. 371.
Soissons, city of, i. 8, 155; ii. 278.
Guy, bishop of, i. 143, 147; ii. 11, 111.
Ingeburga lives at, ii. 111.
Solinus quoted, i. 5, 24.
Solomon, king, i. 36, 95.
prior of Ely, i. 392.
Solon, i. 37.
Sophia, wife of Justin II., i. 99.
Sophoene, province, i. 7.
Sother, pope, i. 66, 259; ii. 185.
Southampton, i. 308, 383; ii. 40.
Southwark, i. 342.
Southwell, i. 189.
Sozomen, i. 22, 84.
Spain, i. 6, 7, 51, 297, 334, 353, 415, 418, &c.
Sperhafoc, abbot of Abingdon, i. 188, 189.
Sprota, ii. 247.
Stagno, William de, ii. 170.
Staines, ii. 99.
Stamford, ii. 75.
Stamfordbridge, i. 195.
Statius, quoted, i. 421.
Stephen, S., martyr, i. 28, 58.
I., pope, i. 70, 259; ii. 186.
II., pope, i. 123, 260; ii. 189.
III., pope, i. 123, 260; ii. 189.
IV., pope, i. 124, 260; ii. 189.
V., pope, i. 133, 260; ii. 190.
VI., pope, i. 140, 261; ii. 190.
VII., pope, i. 141, 261; ii. 190.
VIII., pope, i. 145, 262; ii. 190.
IX., pope, i. 146, 261; ii. 191.
and Constantine, emperors, i. 147.
of Blois, king of England, ii. 239; as count of Boulogne, swears fealty to Matilda, i. 245; and to her son, 247; is crowned king, 247, 248; holds a council, 248; takes offence at the chapter of S. Paul's, *ib.*; takes Exeter, *ib.*; invades Normandy and makes a league with Lewis VI., 249; quarrels with the bishops, 252; taken prisoner at Lincoln, 253, 254; imprisoned at Bristol, 254; besieges the empress at Oxford, 255; takes the earl of Chester, *ib.*; is crowned at Lincoln, 256; refuses the bishops leave to attend the council at Rheims, 262; his wife dies, 295; his son dies, 296; makes peace with Henry of Anjou, *ib.*; dies, and is buried at Feversham, 298.

Stonehenge, i. 111.
Stortford, castle of, i. 250.
Stratilius, the master of Justinian's workmen, i. 94.
Struguil, Richard de Clare, earl of, i. 330, 375, 407.
Struma, John of, i. 426 ; ii. 195.
Stuteville, Robert de, i. 235.
Styr, major-domus, i. 186.
Suchar, Saracen emir, ii. 81.
Suetonius, historian, i. 51, 52, 53.
Suevia, i. 7.
Sugger, abbot of S. Denys, i. 257.
Suncordoedar, emir, ii. 81.
Supplicius, i. 165.
Sussex, bishops of, Eadrith, i. 121 ; Berneeh, 142 ; Ethelgar, 158 ; Grimketel, 183.
Swabia, ii. 80.
Sweyn, king of the Danes, i. 171, 166 ; ii. 254 ; his death, i. 167.
son of Canute, i. 176.
Symmachus, pope, i. 89, 90, 91, 260 ; ii. 187, 193.
Syroes, king of Persia, i. 109, 360.

T.

Tacaldin, emir, ii. 71.
Tacitus, emperor, i. 72.
Tailefer, i. 196.
Taillebourg, i. 431 ; ii. 118.
Tanais, i. 28.
Tancred, crusader, i. 222.
king of Sicily. *See* Sicily.
Tankarville, William of, i. 244.
William of, i. 371.
Tarentaise, i. 9, 391.
Tarentum, i. 6.
Tarragona, province of, i. 7.
Hugh, archbishop of, i. 345.
Tarsus, i. 113, 222.
Tatian, i. 28.
Taurinus, bishop of Evreux, i. 62.
Tavistock, i. 188, 234.
Telesphorus, pope, i. 65, 259 ; ii. 185.
Temple, Odo, master of, i. 423 ; Arnold, master of, ii. 27, 32 ; Theoderic, ii. 56.
Tenebebrai, battle of, i. 235, 378.
Terah (Thare), patriarch, i. 35.
Tertullian, i. 19, 67.
Tertullus, ancestor of the house of Anjou, i. 135.
Tewkesbury, ii. 173.
Thaddeus, apostle, i, 59.
Thales, i. 37.
Tharasius, patriarch of Constantinople, i. 126.
Thassilo, duke of Bavaria, i. 126.
Theobaldus, præfectus, ii. 70.
Theoderic, master of the Temple, ii. 56.
son of Arnulf, of Ghent, i. 170.
king of the Ostrogoths, i. 89, 91.
king of the Visigoths, i. 86, 88.
king of the Franks, i. 113, 115, 122, 123.
Theodin, cardinal of S. Vitalis, i. 310, 346, 351, 354, 366.
Theodora, empress, i. 93, 97.
Theodore, of Mopsuestia, i. 96.
I., pope, i. 260 ; ii. 188.
II. pope, i. 142, 261 ; ii. 190.
Theodoret, historian, i. 22, 84.
Theodosius I., emperor, i. 22, 78, 79, 91, 177 ; ii. 102.
II., emperor, i. 83, 84.
III., emperor, i. 120.
Theodulf, bishop of Orleans, i. 133.
Theodwald, mayor of the palace, i. 123.
Theophilus, i. 95.
Theophrastus, i. 42, 43.
Thessaly, i. 7.
Thessalonica, i. 78.
Thetford, William, bishop of, i. 211 ; Herbert, bishop of, i. 219. *See* Norwich.
Thietberga, i. 137 ; ii. 131.
Thietgaud, archbishop of Treves, i. 137 ; ii. 131.
Thirsk, castle of, i. 385.
Thobites, i. 66.
Thola, judge of Israel, i. 36.
Thomas. *See* Canterbury.
Thorney, monastery of, i. 170, 401 ; ii. 211.

Thrace, provinces of, i. 6, 7.
Tiberias, ii. 53 ; Hugh of, ii. 80.
Tiberius, emperor, i. 56–58.
II., emperor, i. 100.
III., emperor, i. 118.
Ticinum (Pavia), i. 408.
Tingitana, province, i. 7.
Tirel, Walter, i. 233.
Titus, emperor, i. 25, 60, 62, 176.
Tivelcres, Gilbert of, i. 371.
Toeni, Ralph de, i. 191.
Toledo, councils of, i. 105 ; ii. 271.
Tongres, city of, i. 8.
Toron, Henfrid of, ii. 86.
Torquatius, ancestor of the house of Anjou, i. 135.
Tosti, earl of Northumbria, i. 193, 194, 195.
Toul, city of, i. 8.
Toulouse, city of, i. 9, 90.
county of, i. 353.
war of, i. 303.
Tournay, i. 8, 139, 192.
Tours, city of, i. 8, 62, 127, 132, 133, 137 ; ii. 64, 117.
province of, i. 5, 6, 8.
council of, i. 310 ; ii. 274.
Gregory, archbishop of, i. 22, 101, 103.
Adalard, archbishop of, i. 139.
Bartholomew, archbishop of, ii. 50, 96.
Ansell, dean of, ii. 139.
Tracy, William de, i. 343.
Trajan, emperor, i. 63, 64, 82, 166, 176.
Transmundus, ii. 36.
Trencheville, William, i. 346.
Tresoni, Odo of, ii. 79.
Treves, city of, i. 6, 8, 132 ; ii. 46.
Thietgaud, archbishop of, i. 137 ; ii. 131.
Fulmar, archbishop of, ii. 68, 70.
Tricastinum, i. 9.
Trie, ii. 6.
Trifels, imprisonment of Richard at, ii. 107.
Trinovantum, founded, i. 36.
Tripoli, in Africa, i. 7.
in Palestine, count Raymond of, ii. 50, 56.
Trogus, Pompeius, i. 20, 24, 56, 357.
Trone, (Truncus), ii. 6.
Trophimus, bishop of Arles, i. 62.
Troy, i. 7, 36, 47, 79.
Troyes, i. 8 ; ii. 172.
counts of. *See* Champagne.
Tunbridge, castle of, i. 214, 311.
Turenne, viscount of, ii. 19.
Turkill, earl, i. 170, 171.
Turnebu, Thomas of, i. 342.
Turnham, Robert of, ii. 118.
Turstin, rebellion of, ii. 259.
Tuscia, Tuscany, i. 6.
Tusculum, i. 429 ; destroyed, ii. 89.
Tutbury, castle of, i. 384, 385.
Tyburn, ii. 143.
Tyne river, i. 194.
Tyre, ii. 26, 50, 51, 56, 128.

U.

Ulpian, the jurist, i. 69.
Ulf, son of Harold, i. 213.
Ulger, bishop of Angers, i. 252.
Urban I. pope, i. 68, 259 ; ii. 186.
II. pope, i. 6, 17, 216, 219, 220, 224, 262 ; ii. 191.
III., pope, i. 262 ; ii. 191 ; Humbert, archbishop of Milan, ii. 38, 39; writes to archbishop Baldwin, 39 ; and the bishops, *ib.* ; encourages Baldwin's design, 42 ; letter of the German clergy to, 44–47 ; letter forbidding Baldwin's new church, 48, 49 ; dies, 50.
Ursinus, antipope, i. 78.
Urso, the chamberlain, ii. 139.
sheriff of Worcestershire, i. 209.
Uter pendragon, i. 80.
Uzziah, king of Judah, i. 36.

V.

Valence, city of, i. 9, 416.
Valenciennes, i. 393.
Valens, emperor, i. 77.

Valentine, pope, i. 134, 260; ii. 189.
Valentinian, emperor, i. 77, 79, 80.
Valeria, province, i. 7.
Valerian, emperor, i. 70, 82.
Valerius Maximus, i. 20, 56.
Valesdunes, battle of, i. 187; ii. 260.
Valle, Guy de, ii. 63, 64.
Valognes, peace of, i. 396.
Varro, i. 39, 42.
Vaudreuil, i. 247; ii. 34, 154.
Vaux, Hugh de, ii. 44.
Ralph de, ii. 44.
Vavaci, Alfred de, i. 379.
Vedast, S., of Arras, i. 141.
Vegetius, quoted, i. 95.
Vendome, ii. 117, 118.
Venice, i. 6, 131, 421.
Vere, Henry de, ii. 44, 98.
William de. *See* Hereford.
Vergei, Wido of, ii. 40.
Vermandois, Herbert, count of, i. 144; ii. 247, 278.
Ralph, count of, ii. 40.
Verneuil, i. 247, 372, 374, 386; ii. 114, 115, 116, 117, 118.
Vernon, ii. 55.
Verona, i. 125; ii. 38, 43, 119; meeting of pope and emperor at, ii. 30; the master of the Temple dies at, 32.
Vespasian, emperor, i. 25, 60.
Vetus de Monte, ii. 127.
Vexin, ii. 86.
Simon, count of, i. 173.
Vezelai (Viceliacum), S. Mary Magdalene translated to, i. 122; Becket at, i. 318; meeting of the kings at, ii. 83.
Viceliacum (Vercelli), council at, i. 188; ii. 273.
Vicenis, B. de, ii. 141.
Victor I., pope, i. 67, 259; ii. 185.
II., pope, i. 191, 262; ii. 191.
III., pope, i. 211, 262; ii. 191.
Tunnunensis, i. 22, 99.
Vienna, ii. 106.
Vienne, province of, i. 6, 9.
city of, i. 9, 56, 132, 427.
Mamertus, bishop of, i. 88.
Gerard, count of, i. 353.
Vigilius, pope, i. 95, 96, 98, 118, 260; ii. 187.
Vilentras, i. 143; ii. 267.
Virgil, i. 25, 45, 53.
Visigoths, i. 80; ii. 221.
Vitalian, pope, i. 16, 112, 260; ii. 188.
Vitalis, Oliver, ii. 25.
Vivian, cardinal, i. 335.
Vortigern, i. 85.

W.

Wacey, Ralph de, i. 152; son of the archbishop of Rouen, *ib.*
Wahelle, Walter, i. 378.
Waldrada, i. 137.
Wales, i. 210.
Waltham, i. 395.
Wido, Guy, dean of, i. 315, 395, 420
Waltheof, earl, i. 209; ii. 211, 266.
Walton, in Suffolk, i. 377.
Warato, mayor of the palace, i. 122, 123.
Warenne, counts of, ii. 173.
Reginald of, i. 341.
Warewast, William, i. 226, 227.
Warneville, Ralph de, chancellor, i. 367.
Warwick, descent of the earls of, ii. 266.
Waverley, i. 415.
Welf, duke of Bavaria, i. 134, 362.
Wellebum (Quillebœuf), i. 173.
Wenlock, prior of, i. 415.
Wells, bishops of, list, ii. 252.
Athelm, i. 142, 143.
Wulfhelm, i. 144.
Brihthelm, i. 150.
Gisa, i. 193, 202.
John, i. 216.
Godfrey, i. 244, 310.
Reginald, archdeacon of Salisbury, i. 368; consecrated, 391; inthroned, 398; elected archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 103; dies, 104.
Savaric, archdeacon of Northampton consecrated, ii. 105.
Werewell, i. 189.

Westminster, i. 194, 197, 213, 233, 240, 245, 248, 252, 298, 299, 311, 318, 368, 399, 400; ii. 68, 85, 152, 212.
abbots of:
Wulfsin, i. 150.
Laurence, i. 404.
Walter, i. 404.
William Postard, ii. 100, 101.
Ralph of Arundel, ii. 172, 173.
Westwood, monastery founded at, i. 426.
Whithern (Candida Casa),
John, bishop of, ii. 78.
Whitsand, i. 301, 377, 381, 428.
Wibert of Ravenna, antipope, i. 211, 216, 225; ii. 195.
Wich, fountain of, i. 13.
Wido, count of Senlis, i. 143.
Wight, Isle of, i. 85, 193.
Wigmore, castle of, i. 301.
Wilburga, daughter of Penda, i. 111.
Wilfhere, king of Mercia, i. 113.
Wilfthritha, wife of Edgar, i. 151.
William I., the Conqueror. *See* Normandy.
visits England, i. 189; wins the battle of Hastings, 195, 196; crowned, 197; goes to Normandy, 198; takes Exeter, 200; seizes the treasures of the English, 201; his church appointments, 202; has homage from the Scots, 207; conquers Maine, *ib.*; punishes the rebellious earls, 209; besieges Dol, *ib.*; attacked by his son Robert, 210; invades Wales, *ib.*; takes the Domesday survey, 211; his death and character, 212.
William II., i. 200; ii. 238, 239.
becomes king, i. 213; represses Robert's party, 214; acquires part of Normandy, 215; promises amendment and nominates Anselm as archbishop, 217; puts down the rebellion of Robert Mowbray, 220; persecutes Anselm, 226; his bravery, 231; killed in the New Forest, 233.
William, king of Scots, invades England in 1173, i. 376; is taken prisoner, 384; taken to Normandy, 385; and
William, king of Scots—*cont.*
back to England, 398; having made peace at Valognes, 396; meets the kings in 1181, ii. 7; has the county of Huntingdon, 35; his pedigree, *ib.*; does homage and purchases his freedom, 72; comes to Richard's coronation at Winchester, 114; is at the funeral of S. Hugh of Lincoln, 171.
king of Sicily. *See* Sicily.
son of Stephen. *See* Boulogne.
son of Henry I., i. 243.
son of Henry II., i. 296.
son of Robert of Normandy. *See* Flanders.
Fitz Osbern, earl of Hereford, i. 195, 200, 207.
chaplain to Ralph de Diceto, ii. 80, 81.
Fitz Osbert, the demagogue, ii. 143.
Wilton, i. 141, 397; ii. 211.
Wimburn, monastery of, i. 120; ii. 211.
Winchester, city of, i. 112, 136, 141, 181, 185, 186, 190, 213, 240, 414; ii. 67, 68, 211; council at, i. 201, 206; Waltheof beheaded at, 209; visited by archbishop Richard, ii. 41; coronation of Richard at, 114; William of Saxony born at, ii. 22; visited by Henry II., i. 347; ii. 41.
Alfric, provost of, i. 172.
bishops of, list, ii. 199.
Birinus, i. 111.
Wine, i. 113.
Daniel, i. 119.
Athelard, i. 126.
Frithestan, i. 142, 145.
Brinstan, i. 145.
Elfsin, i. 150.
Ethelwold, i. 153.
Elfege, i. 161.
Walkelin, i. 202, 218.
William Giffard, i. 233, 234, 236, 238, 244.
Henry of Blois, abbot of Glastonbury, i. 246; undertakes the charge of the see of London, 252; ordains Richard of Belmeis, *ib.*; Lucius II.

Winchester, bishops of—*cont.*
sends him a pall, 255; besieges the empress, *ib.*; agrees to the consecration of Richard of Belmeis, 295; makes peace between Stephen and Henry, 296; leaves England, 301; is at Cluny in 1161, 304; is at the election of Becket, 307; consecrates him, *ib.*; does not go to the council of Tours, 310; is visited by Henry II., 347; dies, *ib.*
Richard of Ilchester. *See* Poictiers; elected bishop of Winchester, i. 368; sent to report the state of England to Henry II., 381; consecrated, 392; inthroned, 395; provides the escort for Johanna to Palermo, 414; justiciar of Normandy, 415; returns home, 425; letter of the pope to, 427; excused attendance at the Lateran council, 430; is one of the chief justiciars, 435; goes as ambassador to France, ii. 56; visited by Henry II. at Merewell, 41; dies, 51.
Godfrey de Lucy, elected, ii. 69; consecrated, 71; attends a council at Westminster, 85; is ill in 1200, 169.
Windichind, the historian, i. 23, 153.
king of the Saxons, i. 125.
Windsor, i. 202, 206, 220, 243, 245, 353, 415; ii. 22.
Winsatum, i. 236, 363.
Winemar, i. 141.
Wiscard, Robert, i. 221; ii. 266, 267.
Wlf, king of East Anglia, i. 117.
Wlfohald, mayor of the palace, i. 122.
Wlmar, story of, i. 167.
Woodstock, i. 311, 342, 401, 426.
Worcester, city of, i. 160.
see of, i. 126.
bishops of, list, ii. 200.
Bosel, i. 116.
Oftfor, i. 117.
Egwin, i. 119.
Dunstan, i. 150.
Oswald, i. 150.
Worcester, bishops of—*cont.*
Aldulf, i. 160.
Wulfstan, i. 160.
Leofsi, i. 170.
Brihteag, i. 176.
Living, i. 186.
Aldred, i. 188, 192.
Wulfstan, i. 193, 197, 201, 203, 219.
Samson, i. 221.
Theulf, I., 240.
Simon, i. 244, 245.
Roger, consecrated by Becket, i. 212; confirms the election of Walter of Coutances, 401; assists to consecrate the bishop of S. David's, 415; dies, 432.
Baldwin, ii. 22–24. *See* Canterbury.
William of Northall, elected and consecrated, ii. 42.
Robert FitzRalph, consecrated, ii. 89.
John of Coutances, consecrated, ii. 146.
Mauger, consecrated at Rome, ii. 168.
priors of, ii. 42.
Worms, ii. 10.
Wulfnoth, son of Godwin, i. 198, 213.
Wulfstan, abbot of Gloucester; i. 192.
Wymondham, i. 415.

X.

Xantippe, i. 40.
Xenophon, i. 39.
Xerxes, king of Persia, i. 69.

Y.

York, city of, i. 36, 66, 68, 73; ii. 75, 211.
dignity of the see of, i. 202 203.
archbishops of, list, ii. 206.
Paulinus, i. 106, 109, 110.
Ceadda, i. 113.
Wilfrid, i. 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 119.
Bosa, i. 115, 116.

York, archbishops of—*cont.*
Oswald, i. 150, 151, 153, 156, 160, 189.
Aldulf, i. 160.
Wulfstan, i. 160, 171.
Alfric, i. 172, 189.
Kinsige, i. 189.
Aldred, i. 188, 192, 193, 194, 200; dies, 201.
Thomas, I., i. 202, 217, 218, 230, 233.
Gerard, i. 229, 230, 236.
Thomas II., i. 237, 238.
Thurstan, i. 240, 242; goes to Rome, 244; attempts to crown the king, 245; absents himself from a council at Westminster, *ib.*; defeats the Scots at Northallerton, i. 250; writes to the pope about the election to London, 250; dies, 253.
Henry Murdac, ii. 274.
William, succeeds Thurstan, i. 253; deprived and restored, 297, 298.
Roger, archdeacon of Canterbury, consecrated, i. 298; at Henry's coronation, 299; crowns the younger Henry, 338; letter of the pope to, 339; at Dover expecting the return of Becket, 340; his purgation and absolution, 348, 349; forbidden to attend the second coronation, 352; refuses to attend a council at Westminster, 399; claims precedence over Canterbury, 405, 406; dies and the king seizes his treasures, ii. 12.
Geoffrey, son of Henry II., elected bishop of Lincoln, i. 368; his consecration deferred, 393; resigns, ii. 10; and is made chancellor, *ib.*; appointed archbishop, 69; attends the king of Scots to Canterbury, 72; elected archbishop, 78; and confirmed, 78, 79; his landing in England forbidden, 96; consecrated, 96; is arrested and released, 97; swears fealty to Richard, 99.
York, S. Mary's Abbey, Robert Longchamp, abbot of, ii. 151, 152.
Ypres, William of, i. 255.
Yvor, son of Cadwalader, i. 123.

Z.

Zachariah, pope, i. 122, 123, 260; ii. 189.
Zachariah, king of Israel, i. 37.
Zedekiah, king of Judah, i. 37.
Zeno, emperor, i. 89.
Zephyrinus, pope, i. 67, 259; ii. 185.
Zimri, king of Israel, i. 36.
Zosimus, pope, i. 82, 259; ii. 187.

4606-124